This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

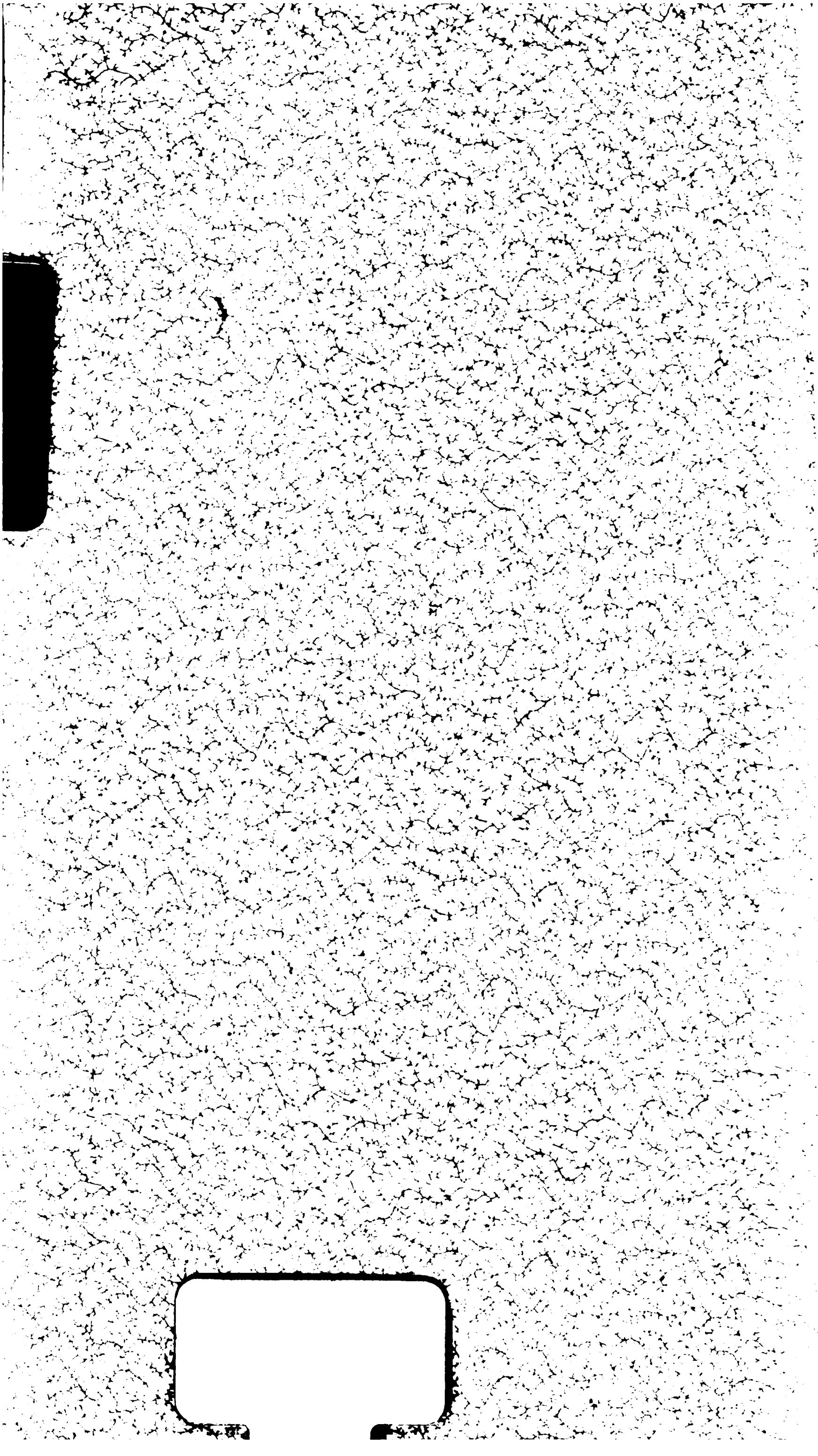
We also ask that you:

- *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

NYPL RESEARCH LIBRARIES
3 3433 06909509 3



[illegible]

OK

Trigonometry (I C)

LIBRARY OF USEFUL KNOWLEDGE. [illegible]

v. 2

ELEMENTS

OF

TRIGONOMETRY.

BY

W. HOPKINS, ESQ., M.A.

PUBLISHED UNDER THE SUPERINTENDENCE OF THE SOCIETY
FOR THE DIFFUSION OF USEFUL KNOWLEDGE.

LONDON:
BALDWIN AND CRADOCK, PATERNOSTER ROW.

MDCCCXXXIII.

LONDON:
PRINTED BY WILLIAM CLOWES,
Duke Street, Lambeth.

ELEMENTS

OF

TRIGONOMETRY.

INTRODUCTION.

The term Trigonometry is derived from the two Greek words, Τρίγωνον, a triangle, and μετρέω, I measure, and originally signified simply the science by which those relations are determined which the sides and angles of a triangle bear to each other, being called *plane* or *spherical* trigonometry according as the triangle was described on a plane or spherical surface. At present, however, the term has a much more extensive signification, as the science now embraces all the theorems expressing the relations between angles and those functions of them to be hereinafter described; the terms *plane* and *spherical* still denoting those branches of the science immediately connected respectively with plane and spherical triangles. The present treatise will be found to contain the fundamental theorems of the science, with their applications to plane trigonometry and to the construction of trigonometrical tables. A knowledge of these theorems should be acquired by the student before he proceeds to the Differential Calculus; the remainder of the subject, as a branch (and a most important one) of pure analysis, he may, in many respects, read more advantageously when some knowledge of the Calculus shall have prepared him to enter on a wider field of analytical investigation.

The ancients, it is well known, cultivated astronomy with considerable assiduity and success; but as little advance could be made in it without a knowledge of trigonometry, their cultivation of this branch of mathematics was necessarily co-existent with that of astronomical science. Little, however, of what was written by them on this subject is come down to us. During the dark ages which overshadowed the nations of Europe, trigonometry, in common with other sciences, seems to have made some little progress among the Arabians, from whom it was derived by the Europeans after the revival of literature and science among them, about the beginning of the fifteenth century. After this period, the attention of scientific men, in imitation of the ancients, was principally directed to astronomy; and those to whom that science was most indebted for its progress were those to whom trigonometry also was equally indebted. Among the first of these may be mentioned George Purbach, professor of mathematics and astronomy at the University of Vienna, and John Müller, his pupil and successor, sometimes called Regiomontanus, from Mons Regius, or Koningsberg, a small town in Franconia, the place of his nativity. The former was born in 1423, and died in 1462; the latter was born in 1436, and died in 1476. Copernicus also, the celebrated astronomer, wrote a treatise on trigonometry about the year 1500. Several others might also be mentioned, the greater part of whom were natives of Germany, the progress of astronomy and trigonometry, for a considerable period after their revival in Europe, having been due very principally to the philosophers of that country. Vieta, a native of France, was born in 1540, and was one of the first mathematicians of his time. He gave improved methods of calculating trigonometrical tables, and enriched the science with a variety of theorems. He appears to have been the first who made any considerable application of algebra to this subject. The following authors also wrote on trigonometry: George Joachim Rheticus, professor of mathematics in the University of Wittemburg, who died in 1576; Pitiscus; Valentine Otho, mathematician to the electoral Prince Palatine; and Christopher Clavius, a German Jesuit. These authors lived during the latter part of the sixteenth century.

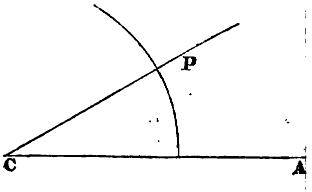
At the period we have just mentioned, all the fundamental formulæ of trigonometry, and their applications to the calculation of tables and the sides and angles of triangles, were well known; but the immense progress of modern analysis has since opened a wide field for the applications of trigonometry, beyond those primary objects of the science to which the first part of this treatise will be devoted. Further historical notices will be reserved, to be made in immediate connexion with such parts of the subject as they may tend to elucidate, or render more interesting to the student.

SECTION I.

Trigonometrical definition of an Angle—Complements and Supplements of Angles, and of the arcs subtending them—Numerical measure of Angular space—Sexagesimal and Centesimal divisions of the Circle.

(1.) Def. An *angle*, in geometry, denotes the inclination of one straight line to another, and, in this simple acceptation, must be less than two right angles. In trigonometry, the term has a more extended meaning. (See Geom. III. § 2. Prop. 13. Schol.)

Let C A be a fixed line, and C a given point in it; and suppose C P to revolve in one plane about C, coinciding at first with C A; then is the whole angular space described by C P in its revolution about C, called an *angle*, which may, therefore, in this case, be of any magnitude whatever; also, if with the centre C and any radius we describe a circular arc, subtending any angle A C P, this arc cannot, according to the geometrical definition of an angle, be greater than th semi-circumference of the circle; but, according to the trigonometrica definition of an angle, the subtending arc may be of any magnitude consisting of any number of circumferences, or any part of a circumference.



(2.) If we denote the angle A C P by A, the subtending arc by α, th sum of two right angles by $\pi_{,}$, and the length of the semicircumference the circle by Π, the angle $\left(\frac{\pi_1}{2}-A\right)$ is called the *complement* of A,

and (π_1-A) . . . *supplement* of A

the arc $\left(\frac{\Pi}{2}-\alpha\right)$ . . . *complement* of α,

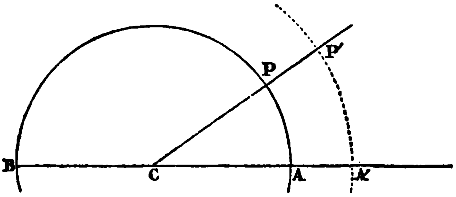
and $(\Pi-\alpha)$ . . . *supplement* of α.

(3.) Prop. To express the magnitude of an angle in terms of the subtending arc and its radius.

It is proved (see Geom. III. § 2. Prop. 33. and Schol. Prop. 34.), that the ratio which the circumference of any circle bears to its radius, is a constant quantity.

Let its numerical value be denoted by 2 π.* The circumf. = 2 π. rad.

Also, if A C P be an angle, which we will call A, and with centre C and any rad. C A we describe a semicircular arc A P B, any angle at C will be proportional to the arc subtending it.



Hence

$$\frac{A}{2.r^t\angle^s}=\frac{AP}{APB}$$

$$=\frac{\alpha}{\pi r}$$

if $AP=\alpha$ and $AC=r$

Therefore

$$A=\frac{2.r^t\angle^s}{\pi}.\frac{\alpha}{r}.$$

(4.) This equation may be made to assume a more simple form; but before we proceed with it, we will make a few remarks on the manner in which *quantity* may be estimated and expressed *numerically* (on which this simplification will depend), though it might perhaps be allowed us to assume that the student, in his progress through algebra, before entering even on this elementary part of trigonometry, had acquired sufficient knowledge on this subject for our purpose. We think it better, however, to direct his attention particularly to it, because clear and distinct notions on this point are so essential for the right numerical interpretation, not only of trigonometrical formulæ, but of those also which result from the application of algebra to every other science; it being more particularly our object to guard him against erroneous conceptions respecting the numerical estimates of angles.

We may observe, then, that our estimate of quantity is either *absolute* or *relative*—absolute when formed without reference to another quantity of the same nature, and relative when formed by means of such reference. Our estimate is ordinarily of the latter kind; for if we would form an accurate notion, for example, of the length of a line, the extent of a surface, or the content of a solid, we usually consider how many yards, feet, or inches there may be in the line, how many square yards, square feet, or square inches in the surface, or how many cubic yards, cubic feet, or cubic inches in the solid content: thus forming a *relative* estimate of the quantity proposed, by referring it to some other fixed quantity of the same kind as a standard with which to compare it, and which may be assumed as we please. In the relative estimate of length, this standard may be an inch, a foot, a yard, or any other established length to which it may be convenient to refer, and the same will hold with respect to quantities of any other kind.

---

* $\pi=3\cdot14159$2... See Geom. B. III. § 4. Prop. 34. Schol. Also art. 66 of this work.

This manner of estimating quantity relatively not only assists us in forming ourselves an accurate idea of the *absolute* magnitude or quantity of anything, but becomes essential if we would convey that idea to the minds of others, which is effected by expressing the relation which exists between the proposed quantity and some other of the same kind generally recognized as the standard to which such quantities shall be referred. This relation is most easily and most accurately expressed by numbers: for if we represent the standard quantity by the number *one*, or unity, the quantity which is five times as large will be exactly represented by the number 5; that which is seven times and a half as large, by $7\frac{1}{2}$, or (in the decimal notation) by 7·5, and so on, whatever be the relation to be expressed. Any quantity thus arbitrarily chosen to be represented by *unity* is called the *unit* of that quantity; and the number expressing the relation which the proposed quantity bears to the standard or unit is called the *numerical value* of that quantity. It will manifestly depend, not only on the *absolute* value of the quantity to be expressed, but also on that of the quantity selected as the unit. Thus, if a foot be taken for the unit of length, the numerical value of a line two yards long will be 6; but if an inch be taken for the unit, the numerical value of this line will be 72. Conversely, if we assume a given number for the numerical value of a given quantity, the absolute quantity which must be represented by unity is easily determined. Thus, if 36 be assumed for the numerical value of a line a yard in length, a line whose length is one inch must be the linear unit; if the yard be represented numerically by 18, a line two inches long must be the linear unit, and so on. All this produces no uncertainty or ambiguity in our formulæ and results, provided we carefully bear in mind, in the interpretation of them, the suppositions which may have been made respecting the units of the quantities involved in our investigations. No such assumptions are necessarily made in deducing algebraical results, because the operations of algebra are altogether independent of them: if, however, they have been made, they will affect the form of the resulting equations, and must therefore be carefully borne in mind in the interpretation of such equations, or in deducing from them those *numerical* results which are almost always necessary in problems of practical importance.

(5.) The equation of art. (3), to which we may now return, may exemplify the observations of the last paragraph. This equation is

$$A = \frac{2r' \angle'}{\pi} \cdot \frac{a}{r}$$

and expresses the relation which exists generally between the angle, the subtending arc, and its radius, no assumption having been made respecting the magnitude of the angle or of the line which shall be taken respectively for the angular and linear units. Suppose, now, we denote a right angle by unity, or make that angle our angular unit, and denote also by N′ the number of such units or parts of a unit contained in the angle of which the general symbol is A. Then, putting also for π its numerical value,

$$N' = \frac{2}{3{\cdot}14159\ldots} \cdot \frac{a}{r}$$

$$= {\cdot}6366\ldots . \frac{a}{r}$$

Again, if we take half a right angle for our angular unit, and N″ to denote the number of such units or parts of the unit contained in A, we have

$$N'' = \frac{4}{3{\cdot}14159\ldots} \cdot \frac{a}{r}$$

$$= 1{\cdot}2733\ldots . \frac{a}{r}$$

N′ and N″ are the *numerical* values of the angle whose absolute magnitude is denoted by A. The latter is evidently twice as large as the former; but considering the magnitude of the angular unit in each case, it is manifest that each of these numerical values indicates an angle of the same *absolute* magnitude.

We may also observe that the numerical value of the angle is independent of the linear unit, since the ratio $\frac{a}{r}$ depends only on the absolute values of a and r, and not at all on their numerical values. It is manifest, for instance, that, whether a and r be estimated in feet or inches, the numerical fraction which expresses the value of the ratio $\frac{a}{r}$ will, when reduced to its lowest terms, be necessarily the same.

(6.) The above assumptions as to the magnitude of the angular unit do not, however, lead to convenient equations expressing the relation between the numerical value of the angle and that of the ratio $\frac{a}{r}$, since, as we have seen, the numerical multipliers of $\frac{a}{r}$ in those equations are not whole numbers. By following an inverse process, however, to those above, we may assume the value of this coefficient, and determine the corresponding magnitude of the angular unit. Thus, suppose we wished the equation to be

$$N_{,} = 2\frac{a}{r}$$

then must we have

$$\frac{2 r^t \angle'}{3{\cdot}14159\ldots} = 2$$

$$\therefore\ a\, r^t \angle = 3{\cdot}14159\ldots$$

which shows that the angular unit, in order that the above equation may be true, must be rather less than the third of a right angle.

(7.) The simplest relation, however, between the quantities in question is

$$\mathrm{N} = \frac{a}{r}$$

in which case we must have

$$\frac{2r^t\angle^s}{3\cdot14159\ldots} = 1$$

$$\text{or } 2r^t\angle^s = 3\cdot14159\ldots$$

which shows that the angular unit must in this case be rather less than two-thirds of a right angle. Also we may observe that N, the numerical value of the angle, becomes unity when $a = r$, which shows that, in order that the equation $2r^t\angle^s = 3\cdot14159\ldots.$ may be true, *the unit of angle must be that angle, the subtending arc of which is equal in length to the radius.*

We have thought it better to denote the numerical values of the angle by symbols N, N′, &c., that the student may not confound them with the *absolute* value denoted by A. This distinction, however, is frequently not attended to, and the equation

$$\mathrm{N} = \frac{a}{r}$$

is written

$$\mathrm{A} = \frac{a}{r}$$

In such cases it must be carefully recollected that A represents the numerical value of the angle, on the supposition just mentioned as to the angular unit.

(8.) The value of an angle expressed by the last equation is generally and often tacitly assumed in investigations involving relations between the angle itself and any of its trigonometrical functions to be hereafter described, and therefore should be carefully borne in mind by the student. At the same time, this is not the most convenient method to adopt when it is simply our object to express numerically the value of any proposed angle, independent of any formulæ or investigations such as those just alluded to. For this purpose the following is much more convenient.

Suppose the circumference of the circle A P B (fig. Art. 3) completed, and divided into 360 equal portions called *degrees*[*]; each degree into 60 equal parts called *minutes*; each minute into 60 equal parts called *seconds*; &c. The magnitude of the angle A C P is expressed by the number of degrees, minutes, &c. contained in the subtending arc A P. A right angle will contain 90 of these degrees.

This measure of the angle is quite independent of the length of the subtending arc or its radius; for if, with any other radius C A′, we describe another circle about C, it is manifest that the lengths of the degrees in each circumference will have the same ratio as the arcs A P, A′ P′, and therefore that the number of degrees, &c. in the one will equal that in the other.

If we take an angle of one degree for the angular unit, 90 will be the numerical value of a right angle, 180 of an angle equal to two right angles, 2·5 will be that of an angle of 2° 30′, 3·75 of an angle of 3° 45′, and so on.

---

[*] Degrees are denoted by the symbol (°), minutes by (′), seconds by (″), thirds by (‴), &c. Thus 5 degrees 10 minutes and 15 seconds are written 5° 10′ 15″.

(9.) Having given the numerical value (N°) of a proposed angle when the angular unit is one degree, to find the numerical value (N) when the angular unit is the angle subtended by an arc whose length equals the radius.

The numerical value of an angle equal to the sum of two right angles is 180 on the former supposition, and π on the latter. Hence, since the numerical value of any proposed angle increases in the same ratio as that in which the angular unit is diminished, it is manifest that

$$N : N^\circ :: \pi : 180$$

$$\therefore\ N = \frac{\pi}{180} N^\circ$$

which gives a rule for passing from the numerical value in one case to that in another.

If an angle of one minute be taken for the angular unit, and N' denote the numerical value in this case, or the number of minutes in the angle, we shall have

$$N = \frac{\pi}{180 \cdot 60.} N'$$

Similarly, if N'' denote the number of seconds in the angle, and an angle of one second be taken for the angular unit,

$$N = \frac{\pi}{180 \cdot 60 \cdot 60}. N''$$

Ex. Let $N' = 1$

$$N = \frac{3 \cdot 14159265 \ldots}{10800}$$
$$= \cdot 0002908882 \ldots$$

(10.) If, in the equation Art. (3), we put 180 for the numerical value of an angle equal to two right angles, and, as before, N° for the corresponding numerical value of A, we have

$$N^\circ = \frac{180}{\pi}. \ \frac{a}{r}$$

Ex. 1. To find the length of an arc subtending an angle of one degree.

Since $N^\circ = 1$

$$a = \frac{\pi}{180}. r$$

Ex. 2. To find the length of the arc subtending an angle of 6° 12′ 36″.

Here $N^\circ = 6 \cdot 21$

$$\therefore\ a = \frac{3 \cdot 1415}{180} \times 6 \cdot 21 \times r$$
$$= \cdot 1083 \ldots \times r$$

Ex. 3. To find the number of degrees, minutes, &c. in an angle subtended by an arc whose length equals that of the radius.

In this case $a = r$

$$\therefore\ N^\circ = \frac{180}{3 \cdot 14159 \ldots} = 57 \cdot 29578$$

Or, expressing the decimals in minutes, seconds, &c.

$$N^\circ = 57^\circ\ 17'\ 44''\ 48'''$$

The division of the circumference of a circle, which we have noticed, into 360 degrees, &c. is called the *sexagesimal* division, and was that adopted by the ancients. Soon after the restoration of the sciences in Europe, many eminent mathematicians recommended the adoption of the *centesimal* division, by which the circumference is divided into 100 degrees, each degree into 100 minutes, &c. Our countryman Briggs, to whom mathematicians have been so much indebted for his laborious calculations of trigonometrical and logarithmic tables, afterwards attempted to get this division generally adopted; and had his attempt been somewhat earlier, it might probably have succeeded; but just at that period some trigonometrical tables were published by Vlacq, of greater extent than had been previously attempted, in which he had adopted the sexagesimal division; and at a time when mathematical tables were comparatively scarce, and the methods of calculating them extremely laborious, it was probably felt as too great a sacrifice to the advantage of the centesimal division to render these tables comparatively useless by its adoption, in addition to those inconveniences respecting the works of previous authors, which must necessarily be the consequence of a change from the one system to the other. From whatever cause, however, the attempt to introduce the new division of the circle failed, as did also another plan, which was suggested about the same time for preserving the sexagesimal division of the circle into 360 degrees, and introducing the centesimal division of each degree into 100 minutes, each minute into 100 seconds, &c.

Another attempt was made in France at the time of the revolution to introduce the centesimal division, which was adopted by many eminent mathematicians in that country. Their example, however, seems to have been little followed in other countries, but as a considerable number of scientific works have been published in the French language in which this division of the circle is made use of, we shall give the rules for converting degrees, &c. in one scale to those of the other, with a few examples which will best explain the advantages of the centesimal division in the abbreviation of arithmetical computations.

(11.) Let F represent the number of degrees contained in a given angle in the centesimal division: E the number according to the sexagesimal division.

$$\frac{E}{F} = \frac{90}{100}$$

$$E = \frac{9}{10}F = F - \frac{F}{10}$$

Ex. Convert 7° 15′ 2″ of the centesimal scale into degrees, minutes, &c., of the sexagesimal scale.

$$\text{Since } 15' = \frac{15}{100} = .15 \text{ of a degree}$$

$$\text{and } 2'' = \frac{2}{10000} = .0002 \text{ of a degree}$$

$$F = 7.1502 \text{ degrees}$$

$$\frac{F}{10} = .71502$$

$$\begin{array}{r} E = 6.43518 \text{ degrees} \\ 60 \\ \hline 26.11080 \\ 60 \\ \hline 6.64800 \end{array}$$

$$\therefore E = 6^\circ 26' 6''$$

(12.) Again $F = \frac{10}{9} E$

Ex. Find the number of degrees, &c., in the centesimal scale corresponding to $3^\circ 5' 33''$ of the sexagesimal scale.

We must first convert $5' 33''$ into the decimal of a degree as follows :

$$\begin{array}{r} 60 \underline{|33.00} \\ 60 \underline{|\ 5.55} \\ \cdot 0925 \end{array}$$

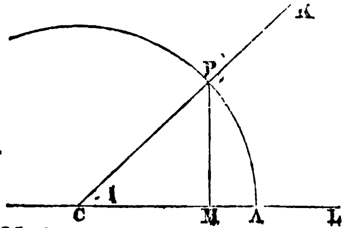
$$\begin{aligned} \therefore E &= 3^\circ 5' 33'' \\ &= 3.\ 0925 \\ \frac{10}{9} E &= 3.\ 4361 \\ &= 3^\circ 43' 61'' \end{aligned}$$

These examples show obviously the advantage of the centesimal division in the superior facility it affords of expressing minutes, seconds, &c., in the decimal notation, which is done merely by inspection, without the labour of successive division, as in the sexagesimal scale.

Section II.

Definitions of certain functions of an Angle, and of the Arc subtending it—Fundamental formulæ—Conventional use of the negative sign—its utility in Trigonometry.

(13.) Let C L be a fixed line passing through the given point C ; and let the line C K form the angle L C K (which we will denote by the letter A) with C L. With any radius C A describe an arc of a circle about C as centre, meeting C L in A and C K in P, and draw P M perpendicular to C A. The ratio of P M to C P is called the *sine* of the angle A ; and the ratio of C M to C P is called the *cosine* of that angle ; or as they are usually written



$$\frac{MP}{CP} = \text{sin. } A ; \quad \frac{CM}{CP} = \text{cos. } A$$

The ratio which the sine of an angle bears to its cosine is called the *tangent* of the angle.

The inverse of this ratio is called the *cotangent.*

The ratio of unity to the cosine of an angle is denominated the *secant ;* and that of unity to the sine, the *cosecant.*

The difference between unity and the cosine is called the versed-sine.

The difference between unity and the sine of an angle is called the coversed-sine.

Thus we have,

$$\frac{\text{sin. A}}{\text{cos. A}} = \text{tan. A}$$
$$\frac{\text{cos. A}}{\text{sin. A}} = \text{cotan. A}$$
$$\frac{1}{\text{cos. A}} = \text{sec. A}$$
$$\frac{1}{\text{sin. A}} = \text{cosec. A}$$
$$1 - \text{cos. A} = \text{vers. A}$$
$$1 - \text{sin. A} = \text{covers. A.}$$

(14.) In the triangle C M P, we have

$$\text{M P}^2 + \text{C M}^2 = \text{C P}^2$$
$$\left(\frac{\text{M P}}{\text{C P}}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{\text{C M}}{\text{C P}}\right)^2 = 1$$

or by definition,

$$(\text{Sin. A})^2 + (\text{cos. A})^2 = 1$$
$$\therefore \text{cos. A} = \sqrt{1 - (\text{sin. A})^2}\,{}^*$$
$$\text{Tan. A} = \frac{\text{sin. A}}{\text{cos. A}}$$
$$= \frac{\text{sin. A}}{\sqrt{1 - (\text{sin. A})^2}}$$
$$\text{Cot. A.} = \frac{\text{cos. A}}{\text{sin. A}}$$
$$= \frac{\sqrt{1 - (\text{sin. A})^2}}{\text{sin. A}}$$
$$\text{Sec. A} = \frac{1}{\text{cos. A}}$$
$$= \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 - (\text{sin. A})^2}}$$
$$\text{Cosec. A} = \frac{1}{\text{sin. A}}$$
$$\text{Vers. sin. A} = 1 - \text{cos. A}$$
$$= 1 - \sqrt{1 - (\text{sin. A})^2}$$

(15.) Thus each of the trigonometrical functions of an angle above defined is easily expressed in terms of the sine of that angle; and in a similar manner each might be expressed in terms of any other.

Thus we have

$$1 + (\text{tan. A})^2 = 1 + \frac{(\text{sin. A})^2}{(\text{cos. A})^2}$$
$$= \frac{(\text{cos. A})^2 + (\text{sin. A})^2}{(\text{cos. A})^2}$$

---

* In some treatises, $(\text{sin A})^2$ is denoted by sin^2A. This latter notation is however now fallen in some degree into disuse, it being used to denote an operation of a different kind.

$$
\begin{aligned}
&= \frac{1}{(\cos.\ A)^2} \\
&= (\sec.\ A)^2 \\
\therefore\ \sec.\ A &= \sqrt{1 + (\tan.\ A)^2}.
\end{aligned}
$$

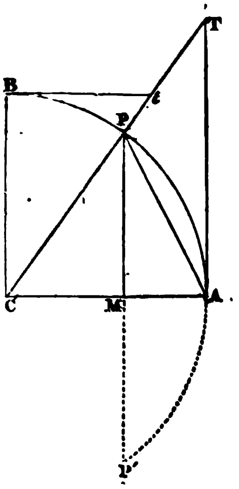
In a similar manner we find

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{cosec.} A &= \sqrt{1 + (\cot.\ A)^2} \\
\operatorname{vers.} A &= 1 - \cos.\ A \\
&= 1 - \frac{1}{\sec.\ A} \\
&= \frac{\sec.\ A - 1}{\sec.\ A} = \frac{\sqrt{1 + (\tan.\ A)^2} - 1}{\sqrt{1 + (\tan.\ A)^2}}
\end{aligned}
$$

(16.) The sine, cosine, tangent, &c., as above defined, are functions of the *angle*, and are quite independent of the absolute length of the arc subtending it, or of the radius of that arc.

The following are definitions of functions of the *arc*:—

Having a figure A C P as above, complete the quadrant A P B, draw A T perpendicular to the radius C A from its extremity A, meeting the line C P produced indefinitely in T, and B t, Pm perpendiculars to the rad. C B, meeting the same line in t. Draw M P perpendicular to A C and join P, A.



M P is called the *sine* of the *arc* A P
C M . . . *cosine* . . . .
A T . . . *tangent* . . .
B t . . . *cotangent* . . .
C T . . . *secant* . . .
C t . . . *cosecant* . . .
A M . . . *versed sine* . .
B m . . . *coversed sine* . .
A P . . . *chord* . . . .

(17.) If we denote the length of the arc A P subtending the angle A, by a, and that of the radius C P by r, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sin.\ A &= \frac{MP}{CP} = \frac{\sin.\ a}{r} \\
\cos.\ A &= \frac{CM}{CP} = \frac{\cos.\ a}{r} \\
\tan.\ A &= \frac{\sin.\ A}{\cos.\ A} = \frac{MP}{CM} \\
&= \frac{AT}{AC} \left(\begin{matrix}\text{by similar triangles} \\ CMP,\ CAT\end{matrix}\right) \\
&= \frac{\tan.\ a}{r} \\
\cot.\ A &= \frac{\cos.\ A}{\sin.\ A} = \frac{CM}{MP}
\end{aligned}
$$

$$= \frac{B\,t}{C\,B} \left(\begin{matrix}\text{by similar triangles} \\ C\,M\,P,\ C\,B\,t\end{matrix}\right)$$

$$= \frac{\text{cot. } \alpha}{r}$$

$$\text{sec. A} = \frac{1}{\text{cos. A}} = \frac{C\,P}{C\,M}$$

$$= \frac{C\,T}{C\,A} \left(\begin{matrix}\text{by similar triangles} \\ C\,M\,P,\ C\,A\,T\end{matrix}\right)$$

$$= \frac{\text{sec. } \alpha}{r}$$

$$\text{cosec. A} = \frac{1}{\text{sin. A}} = \frac{C\,P}{M\,P}$$

$$= \frac{C\,t}{C\,B} \left(\begin{matrix}\text{by similar triangles} \\ C\,M\,P,\ C\,B\,t\end{matrix}\right)$$

$$= \frac{\text{cosec. } \alpha}{r}$$

$$\text{vers. A} = 1 - \frac{C\,M}{C\,P} = \frac{C\,P - C\,M}{C\,P} = \frac{\text{vers. } \alpha}{r}$$

$$\text{covers. A} = 1 - \frac{P\,M}{C\,P} = 1 - \frac{C\,m}{C\,B}$$

$$= \frac{C\,B - C\,m}{C\,B} = a$$

$$= \frac{B\,m}{C\,B} = \frac{\text{covers. } a}{r}$$

(18.) Hence, if we have any formulæ expressing the relation between functions of an angle, we may obtain those for the corresponding functions of the arc by substituting, for the former functions, their values in terms of the latter. Thus by substitution in the equations Art. (10) we have

$$\frac{\text{Tan. } \alpha}{r} = \frac{\frac{\text{Sin. } \alpha}{r}}{\frac{\text{cos. } \alpha}{r}}$$

$$\therefore \text{Tan. } \alpha = r.\ \frac{\text{sin. } \alpha}{\text{cos. } \alpha}$$

Similarly

$$\text{Cot. } \alpha = r.\ \frac{\text{cos. } \alpha}{\text{sin. } \alpha}$$

$$\frac{\text{Sec. } \alpha}{r} = \frac{1}{\frac{\text{cos. } \alpha}{r}}$$

$$\text{Sec. } \alpha = \frac{r^2}{\text{cos. } \alpha}$$

Similarly

$$\text{Cosec. } \alpha = \frac{r^2}{\text{sin. } \alpha}$$

$$\frac{\text{Vers. } a}{r} = 1 - \frac{\cos. a}{r}$$

$$\therefore \text{Vers. } a = r - \cos. a.$$

These equations may also be easily deduced directly from the definitions of the functions of the arc by merely geometrical reasoning.

(19.) Produce the arc P A till it meet P M produced in P′. It is manifest that P A P′ will equal 2. A P, and that P P will equal 2. M P; or

$$\text{Chord, } 2\, a = 2 \sin. a$$
$$= 2\, r \sin. A$$

(20.) As further examples of converting formulæ containing functions of angles to those for corresponding functions of arcs we may take the equations Art. (11) from which we obtain by substitution

$$\frac{\text{Cos. } a}{r} = \sqrt{1 - \left(\frac{\sin. a}{r}\right)^2}$$

$$\therefore \cos a = \sqrt{r^2 - \sin.^2 a}$$

$$\frac{\text{Tan. } a}{r} = \frac{\frac{\sin. a}{r}}{\sqrt{1 - \left(\frac{\sin. a}{r}\right)^2}}$$

$$\therefore \tan. a = \frac{r \sin. a}{\sqrt{r^2 - (\sin. a)^2}}$$

And similarly for the other cases. As further examples, also, we may take the following, in which the formulæ involving the angle A and its trigonometrical functions will be investigated in a subsequent part of this treatise.

$$\text{Sin. A} = \text{A} - \frac{\text{A}^3}{.1.2.3} + \frac{\text{A}^5}{1.2.3.4.5} - \&c.$$

where the angular unit is the angle subtended by an arc whose length equals that of the radius. See Art. (4.)

$$\therefore \frac{\sin. a}{r} = \frac{a}{r} - \frac{\left(\frac{a}{r}\right)^3}{1.2.3} + \frac{\left(\frac{a}{r}\right)^5}{1.2.3.4.5} - \&c.$$

$$\therefore \text{Sin. } a = a - \frac{a^3}{1.2.3\, r^2} + \frac{a^5}{1.2.3.4.5. r^4} - \&c.$$

Again, let A B be two angles, α β their subtending arcs;

$$\text{Sin. (A + B)} = \sin. \text{A}. \cos. \text{B} + \cos. \text{A}. \sin. \text{B}$$

$$\frac{\sin. (\alpha + \beta)}{r} = \frac{\sin. \alpha}{r} \cdot \frac{\cos. \beta}{r} + \frac{\cos. \alpha}{r} \frac{\sin. \beta}{r}$$

$$r \sin. (\alpha + \beta) = \sin. \alpha \cos. \beta + \cos. \alpha. \sin. \beta$$

(21.) If the radius C P be taken equal to the linear unit or $r = 1$, we have

$$\text{Sin. A} = \sin. a$$

by which we must understand that the number of linear units, or the portion of a unit, contained in M P (C P being equal to one such unit) expresses the value of the ratio which the line M P bears to C P.

On the same supposition,

$$\cos. A = \cos. a$$
$$\tan. A = \tan. a$$
$$\&c. = \&c.$$

With this supposition, then, as to the value of the radius, it appears that the formulæ above given, as well as any others for the functions of *angles*, will hold equally for the corresponding functions of the subtending *arcs*, and that therefore we might speak indifferently of the sine, cosine, &c., of an angle, or the same functions of the arc. Accordingly, we find that most writers on Trigonometry have frequently used the terms *arc* and *angle* almost indiscriminately. No ambiguity necessarily arises from this; but as it may have a tendency to produce in the mind of the student confused and inaccurate notions of some of the formulæ which we shall hereafter investigate, we think it advisable never to make an indiscriminate use of these terms. The functions we shall always make use of in the investigation of general theorems are those of *angles*, the definition of which we shall consider as the essential and fundamental ones.

The functions of the *arc*, whenever they may be spoken of, will be in strict accordance with the above definitions.

We may observe that the *chord* must necessarily, according to our definition, be considered as a function of the *arc*.

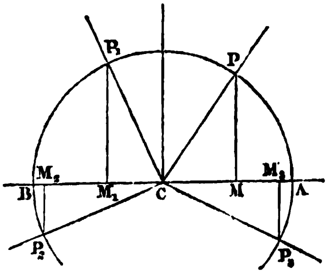
It may, perhaps, be demanded,—what utility is there in thus increasing the number of trigonometrical terms and definitions, since, as we have before observed, all the functions above-mentioned may be easily expressed in terms of any one of them. It is not that they are all absolutely *necessary*, but they are found *convenient* in the varied constructions and applications of trigonometrical formulæ; and this convenience is proportionate to the degree of complexity in the formulæ themselves, or of the cases to which they are applied.

The ancients, in whose hands the use of trigonometry was confined to the expressing of the relations between the sides and angles of triangles, appear to have made use only of the *chord* of an arc of definite radius; and to this the Arabians seem to have added the use of the *sine*. After the revival of science in Europe, trigonometry made rapid advances, and soon came to be considered, not merely as furnishing solutions of triangles, but rather as a science of more extensive application, by which was expressed the relations between certain lines drawn in and about a circle in connexion with an angle at the centre, and these lines were denominated chord, sine, tangent, secant, &c. The latter terms were then first introduced in addition to the two first, on account of the facility which they afforded for the expression and application of trigonometrical formulæ.

At the period now alluded to, all trigonometrical investigations were *geometrical*, and consequently the terms above-mentioned were naturally applied to *lines* (according to our definitions of them as functions of the *arc*), rather than to the *ratios* of lines which they become, according to our definitions of them, as functions of the *angle*. At present, however, when algebra is so extensively applied to trigonometrical investigations, there seems no reason why we should adhere to definitions of a strictly geometrical character; and since, in the numberless applications of trigonometry to other branches of mathematics, sines, tangents, &c. are, almost without exception, considered as functions of *angles*, we have thought it better to make these definitions which render them such the *fundamental* ones of the science. It will be observed that the definitions and formulæ of this section have been applied only to angles which are less than 90°, and to arcs which are less than a quadrant, and which are considered positive.

It will now be our object to show how these definitions and the formulæ which flow from them, for such angles and arcs, may be extended to those of any magnitude, considered as positive or negative.

(22.) Take the angle A C P, greater than $\frac{\pi}{2}$, and A C P_2 greater than π. Describe the subtending arc A P_1 P_2, and from P_1 P_2 draw $P_1 M_1$ $P_2 M_2$ perpendiculars to the diameter A C B. The definitions of the sines and cosines of these angles will be the same as for the angle A C P, less than $\frac{\pi}{2}$, with this understanding or convention; viz. that any line, as C M, measured from C, along C A; and any line, as M P, perpendicular to C A, measured *upwards* from the diameter A C B, being considered *positive;* then shall any line, as C M_1, measured from C along C B; and any line, as $M_2 P_2$, perpendicular to A B, measured *downwards*, be called *negative.* With this understanding, the values of the lines C M, M P, $M_1 P_1$ will be properly represented by + C M, + M P, + $M_1 P_1$; and those of the lines C M_1, C M_2, $M_2 P_2$, $M_3 P_3$, by − C M_1, − C M_2, − $M_2 P_2$, − $M_3 P_3$. The lines C P, C P_1, C P_2, &c. having no definite direction in space, are always considered positive.



Then, denoting the angle A C P_1 by A_1, and A C P_2 by A_2, we have

$$\text{Sin. } A_1 = \frac{M_1 P_1}{C P_1};\ \text{cos. } A_1 = \frac{-C M_1}{C P_1}$$

$$\text{Sin. } A_2 = \frac{-M_2 P_2}{C P_2};\ \text{cos. } A_2 = \frac{-C M_2}{C P_2};$$

Also, if the arc A P, and the angle A C B subtended by it, be called *positive*, the arc A P_3, measured in the opposite direction (*i. e.* downwards from A), and the angle A C P_3 subtended by it are called *negative.* Thus, denoting A C P_3 by − A_3, we have

$$\text{Sin. } (-A_3) = -\frac{M_3 P_3}{C P_3};\ \text{cos. } (-A_3) = \frac{C M_3}{C P_3}.$$

The definitions of the tangents, secants, &c. will be the same for all angles: thus

$$\text{Tan. } (-A_3) = \frac{\text{sin. } (-A_3)}{\text{cos.} (-A_3)};\ \text{sec. } (-A) = \frac{1}{\text{cos. } (-A)}, \text{ \&c.}$$

(23.) Again, if a_1 a_2 be the arcs subtending A_1 A_2, &c.

$$\text{Sin. } a_1 = M_1 P_1;\ \text{cos. } a_1 = -C M_1$$
$$\text{Sin. } a_2 = M_2 P_2;\ \text{cos. } a_2 = -C M_2.$$

The signs of the tangents *, secants, &c. of these arcs may be determined by means of those of the sines and cosines; according to the relations established in Art. (17.)

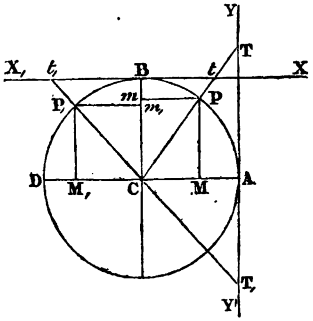
---

* We have recommended the student to regard our definitions of the sine, cosine, &c. as functions of the angle, as the essential ones of the science; and do not wish therefore at first to distract his attention by directing it particularly to the consideration of the somewhat complicated figure by which these lines for arcs of different magnitudes are exhibited and their proper signs determined. After having made himself, howev

(24.) The rule we have here laid down for the use of the negative sign, with reference to the directions in which lines are measured, must not be considered as necessary, but entirely conventional. The reader who has no previous knowledge of analytical geometry will necessarily have a difficulty in understanding, at first, the advantage to be derived from it; which consists in the generality thus given to our investigations. Thus, suppose we investigate the relations which exist between any of the trigonometrical functions of two angles A and B, and those of an angle equal to their sum $A + B$, in the particular case in which A and B are positive, and their sum (and consequently each of them) is less than a right angle; then, if it necessarily followed that the same relations would hold for angles of any magnitude, we should have no occasion to use the negative sign in expressing the values of particular lines, in order to give entire generality to our formulæ. But this will not necessarily follow, except by that conventional use of the negative sign above mentioned, *by which this desired generality is obtained in all cases.* The proof we shall offer of this, as a general proposition, will be inductive, and will develope itself as the reader proceeds: for, in this and the following section, it will be shown to be true

---

acquainted with the above-mentioned definitions, he will not find the examination of the following figure, and the construction of similar ones for other arcs, an unprofitable exercise. It will also qualify him for making more easy reference to other works on the subject. The annexed figure represents the different trigonometrical lines for an arc $CP_{\prime}$, greater than a quadrant and less than a semicircle, as well as those for the arc A P less than a quadrant.

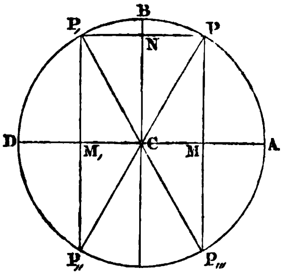


It must be observed that the tangents of all arcs are measured *from* A on the line YY' perpendicular to A C, and the cotangents *from* B, one extremity of the quadrant A B, on the line XX', perpendicular to YY'. Thus $AT_{\prime}$ is the tangent of $AP_{\prime}$, and since A T, the tangent of A P, has been considered positive, the tangent of $AP_{\prime}$ will be properly represented by $-AT_{\prime}$. Again, as Bt is the cotangent of A P, so $Bt_{\prime}$ is the cotangent of $AP_{\prime}$, which, since Bt has been considered positive, will be represented by $-Bt_{\prime}$.

The secants and cosecants of all arcs are measured along the line passing through C and the extremities $PP_{\prime}$, &c. of the respective arcs. This line must be produced to meet the line YY' for the secant, and XX' for the cosecant. Thus $CT_{\prime}$ is the secant of $AP_{\prime}$, and Ct' its cosecant. They are not measured along lines having any definite direction in space, and therefore do not appear to fall immediately under the convention above-mentioned respecting the negative sign. Their proper signs, however, are easily determined from that of the cosine and sine of the same arc; since they are equal to the square of the rad. divided by the cosine and sine respectively. We may also observe that the signs thus determined will coincide with those which are obtained from the rule which is sometimes given, that the secants and cosecants shall be called positive or negative according as the direction in which they are measured *from* C is *towards* the extremity of the arc or opposite to that direction. Thus $CT_{\prime}$, the secant of $AP_{\prime}$, is negative, and $Ct_{\prime}$, its cosecant, is positive.

The versed sine of $AP_{\prime}$ is $AM_{\prime}$. These lines are always measured in the same direction from A along A D, and therefore are always positive, as are also the co-versed sines Bm Bm'.

in such a number of cases of important elementary formulæ as justifies the conclusion, by induction, that the proposition is generally true.



(25.) The following formulæ, involving only the angle A and multiples of a right angle, are important.

Take the angles DCP_1, $DCP_{,,}$, $ACP_{,,,}$, each equal to A C P. Draw M P, M_1P_1 perpendicular to A D; then also will $M_1P_{,,}$, $MP_{,,,}$ be manifestly so likewise. Let A represent the numerical value of the angle A C P, the unit being the same as in Art. (7.); then will $\frac{\pi}{2}$ be the numerical value of a right angle.*

It is manifest that any trigonometrical function of the angle A, subtended by the arc A P, will be the same as that of the angle $A + 4r^t. \angle^s$ or the angle subtended by the arc A P D $P_{,,,}$ A P greater by A P than the circumference of the circle described with any radius about C. Hence

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Sin. } A = \frac{MP}{CP} &= \sin.\,(2\pi + A) \\ &= \sin.\,(2\pi + 2\pi + A)\Big\}\text{by the same rule,} \\ &= \sin.\,(4\pi + A) \\ &= \&c.\end{aligned}$$

Or generally $\sin. A = \sin. (2n\,\pi + A)$; n being any whole number in the series 0, 1, 2, 3, &c.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Also } \sin. A = \frac{MP}{CP} = \frac{M_1P_1}{CP_1} &= \sin.\,(\pi - A) \\ &= \sin.\,(2\pi + \pi - A) \\ &= \sin.\,(3\pi - A) \\ &= \sin.\,(5\pi - A) \\ &= \&c.\end{aligned}$$

Or generally $\sin. A = \sin. (\overline{2n + 1}.\pi - A)$.

Again,

$$\frac{MP}{CP} = -\frac{M_{,}P_{,,}}{CP_{,,}}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Or } \sin. A &= -\sin.\,(\pi + A) \\ &= -\sin.\,(2\pi + \pi + A) \\ &= -\sin.\,(3\pi + A) \\ &= \&c.\end{aligned}$$

And generally $\sin. A = -\sin. (\overline{2n + 1}\,\pi + A)$

Also similarly,

$$\begin{aligned}&= -\sin.\,(2\pi - A) \\ &= -\sin.\,(4\pi - A) \\ &= \&c. \\ \sin. A &= -\sin.\,(2n\,\pi - A)\end{aligned}$$

(26.) $\text{Cos. } A = \frac{CM}{CP} = \frac{CM_{,}}{CP_{,}}$

---

* If A represent the number of degrees, minutes, &c., the right angle must of cou be represented by 90°.

$$= -\text{cos. } A C P'$$
$$= -\text{cos. } (\pi - A)$$

Similarly we have

$$\text{cos. } A = -\text{cos. } (\pi + A)$$
$$\text{cos. } A = \text{cos. } (2\pi - A)$$
$$\text{cos. } A = \text{cos. } (2\pi + A)$$

Or generally

$$\text{Cos. } A = \text{cos. } (2n\,\pi \pm A)$$

Also $\text{cos. } A = -\text{cos. } (\overline{2n + 1}.\,\pi \pm A)$.

(27.) $$\text{Sin. } A = \frac{M P}{C P} = \frac{C N}{C P} = \text{cos. } (D C P) = \text{cos.}\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - A\right)$$
$$\text{Cos. } A = \frac{C M}{C P} = \frac{N P}{C P} = \text{sin. } D C P = \text{sin.}\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - A\right)$$

Or the sine of an angle is equal to the cosine of its complement, and *vice versâ.*

(28.) $$\text{Tan. } A = \frac{\text{sin. } A}{\text{cos. } A} = \frac{\text{sin. } (2\pi + A)}{\text{cos. } (2\pi + A)}$$
$$= \text{tan. } (2\pi + A)$$
$$= \text{tan. } (4\pi + A)$$
$$= \&c.$$
$$= \text{tan. } (2n.\,\pi + A);$$

Also,

$$\text{Tan. } A = \frac{\text{sin. } A}{\text{cos. } A} = \frac{\text{sin. } (\pi + A)}{\text{cos. } (\pi + A)}$$
$$= \text{tan. } (\pi + A)$$
$$= \text{tan. } (3\pi + A)$$
$$= \&c.$$
$$= \text{tan. } (\overline{2n + 1}.\pi + A)$$

(29.) $$\text{Sec. } A = \frac{1}{\text{cos. } A} = \frac{1}{\text{cos. } (2\pi \pm A)}$$
$$= \text{sec. } (2\pi \pm A)$$
$$= \text{sec. } (4\pi \pm A)$$
$$= \&c.$$
$$= \text{sec. } (2n\,\pi \pm A).$$

(30.) Again,

$$\text{Tan. } A = \frac{\text{sin. } A}{\text{cos.} A} = -\frac{\text{sin. } (\pi - A)}{\text{cos. } (\pi - A)}$$
$$= -\text{tan. } (\pi - A);$$

Also,

$$\text{Tan. } A = -\text{tan. } (2\pi - A)$$
$$\text{Sec. } A = \frac{1}{\text{cos. } A} = \frac{1}{-\text{cos. } (\pi \pm A)}$$
$$= -\text{sec. } (\pi \pm A).$$

(31.) We have also

$$\text{Tan. } A = \frac{\text{sin. } A}{\text{cos. } A} = \frac{\text{cos.}\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - A\right)}{\text{sin.}\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - A\right)}$$

$$= \cot.\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - A\right)$$

$$\text{Sec. } A = \frac{1}{\cos. A} = \frac{1}{\sin.\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - A\right)}$$

$$= \text{cosec.}\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - A\right).$$

(32.) Again, taking the negative angle $A\,C\,P''' = -A$, we have

$$\text{Sin. }(-A) = -\frac{M\,P_{'''}}{C\,P_{'''}} = -\frac{M\,P}{C\,P} = -\sin.\ A$$

$$\cos.\ (-A) = \frac{C\,M}{C\,P_{'''}} = \frac{C\,M}{C\,P} = \cos.\ A$$

$$\therefore \tan.(-A) = -\tan.\ A;\ \cot.(-A) = -\cot.\ A$$

$$\sec.(-A) = \sec.\ A;\ \text{cosec.}(-A) = -\text{cosec}.\ A$$

$$\text{vers.}(-A) = \text{vers.}\ A.$$

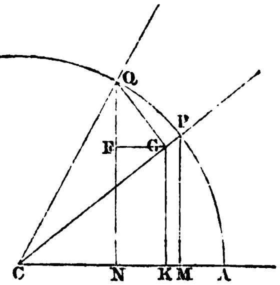
(33.) It will be easily seen that all the formulæ of this section hold for angles greater than 90°, or for negative angles, as well as for those which are positive and less than 90°.

SECTION III.

Trigonometrical Functions of the Sum and Difference of two Angles.—Formulæ resulting therefrom.

The formulæ which we shall now proceed to investigate are among the most important of Trigonometry.

Fig. 1.



(34.) To find the sine of the sum or difference of two angles in terms of the sines and cosines of the angles themselves :—

Let the angle $A\,C\,P = A$, $P\,C\,Q = B$; then will $A\,C\,Q = A + B$. With centre C and any radius C A describe the arc A P Q. Draw M P, K G, N Q perpendiculars to C A; Q G perpendicular to C P, and F G to N Q; Then

$$\frac{Q\,N}{C\,Q} = \sin.\ (A + B)$$

$$\frac{M\,P}{C\,P} = \sin.\ A \qquad \frac{Q\,G}{C\,Q} = \sin.\ B$$

$$\frac{C\,M}{C\,P} = \cos.\ A \qquad \frac{C\,G}{C\,Q} = \cos.\ B;$$

$$\text{Also } \angle\ Q\,G\,F = \frac{\pi}{2} - F\,G\,C = C\,G\,K = C\,P\,M,$$

and the angles at F and M are right angles ∴ the triangles Q F G, C M P are similar.

$$\text{Now } Q\,N = N\,F + F\,Q = K\,G + F\,Q;$$

But by similar triangles

$$\frac{\mathrm{KG}}{\mathrm{CG}} = \frac{\mathrm{MP}}{\mathrm{CP}} \qquad \therefore \mathrm{KG} = \frac{\mathrm{MP}.\mathrm{CG}}{\mathrm{CP}}$$

$$\frac{\mathrm{FQ}}{\mathrm{GQ}} = \frac{\mathrm{CM}}{\mathrm{CP}} \qquad \therefore \mathrm{FQ} = \frac{\mathrm{CM}.\mathrm{GQ}}{\mathrm{CP}}$$

$$\therefore \mathrm{QN} = \frac{\mathrm{MP}.\mathrm{CG}}{\mathrm{CP}} + \frac{\mathrm{CM}.\mathrm{GQ}}{\mathrm{CP}}$$

$$\text{Or } \frac{\mathrm{QN}}{\mathrm{CP}} = \frac{\mathrm{MP}}{\mathrm{CP}} \cdot \frac{\mathrm{CG}}{\mathrm{CP}} + \frac{\mathrm{CM}}{\mathrm{CP}} \cdot \frac{\mathrm{GQ}}{\mathrm{CP}}.$$

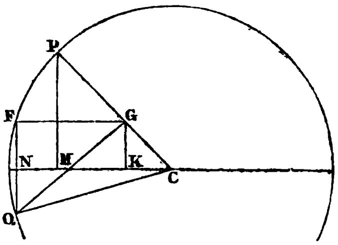
Or sin. $(A + B) = \sin. A . \cos. B + \cos. A \sin B$.

In the above case, $A + B$ has been taken less than $\frac{\pi}{2}$. The construction, however, will be exactly similar, whatever be the magnitude of the angles. In fig. 2. $A + B$ is greater than π, and A greater than $\frac{\pi}{2}$. Proceeding exactly as in the former case, we find

$$\frac{\mathrm{QN}}{\mathrm{CP}} = \frac{\mathrm{MP}}{\mathrm{CP}} \cdot \frac{\mathrm{CG}}{\mathrm{CP}} - \frac{\mathrm{CM}}{\mathrm{CP}} \cdot \frac{\mathrm{GQ}}{\mathrm{CP}};$$

Or, since in this case $\cos. A = -\frac{\mathrm{CM}}{\mathrm{CP}}$,

Fig. 2.



$$\text{Sin. } (A + B) = \sin. A \cos. B + \cos A . \sin. B,$$

the same form as that above deduced.

In the same manner it may be shown in any other case in which $A + B$ is less than 2π, that *by virtue of the convention established in* Art. (22.), the same formulæ will be true; and since all the trigonometrical functions of an angle are the same as for the angle increased by 2π, this must hold for angles of all magnitudes.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Sin. } (A - B) &= \sin. (\overline{\pi - A} - B) \quad \text{Art. (25.)} \\ &= \sin. (\overline{\pi - A} + B) \\ &= \sin. (\pi - A) . \cos. B + \cos. (\pi - A) \sin. B \\ &= \sin. A . \cos. B - \cos. A \sin. B; \end{aligned}$$

since $\sin. (\pi - A) = \sin. A$ Art. (25.)
and $\cos. (\pi - A) = -\cos. A$ Art. (26.)

(35.) To find the expression for the cosine of the sum or difference of two angles:—

The value of $\frac{\mathrm{CN}}{\mathrm{CP}}$ (which $= \cos. (A + B)$) might be investigated in the same manner as that of $\frac{\mathrm{QN}}{\mathrm{CP}}$, or the sin. $(A + B)$, or it may be simply deduced from the above expression for this latter quantity, in the following manner:—

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Cos. } (A + B) &= \sin. \left(\frac{\pi}{2} - \overline{A + B}\right) \quad \text{Art. (27.)} \\ &= \sin. \left(\overline{\frac{\pi}{2} - A} - B\right) \end{aligned}$$

$$= \sin.\left(\frac{\pi}{2}-A\right)\cos. B-\cos.\left(\frac{\pi}{2}-A\right)\sin. B \quad \text{Art. (34.)}$$
$$= \cos. A . \cos. B - \sin. A \sin. B,$$

Again,

$$\text{Cos. }(A - B) = \sin.\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - \overline{A - B}\right)$$
$$= \sin.\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - A + B\right)$$
$$= \sin.\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - A\right)\cos. B + \cos.\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - A\right)\sin. B$$
$$= \cos. A \cos. B + \sin. A . \sin. B.$$

(36.) These formulæ afford instances of the generalization effected by the use of the negative sign. The formulæ also for the difference of two angles is such as results from the substitution of $-$ B for B in the formulæ for the sum of those angles.

Thus

$$\text{Sin. }(A - B) = \sin. (A + (- B))$$
$$= \sin. A . \cos. (- B) + \cos. A \sin. (- B)$$
$$= \sin. A . \cos. - \cos. A \sin. B$$

$$\cos. (A - B) = \cos. (A + (- B))$$
$$= \cos. A \cos. (- B) - \sin. A . \sin. (- B)$$
$$= \cos. A \cos. B + \sin. A \sin. B.$$

(37.) From what has now been stated, it appears that, with respect to the formulæ of this and the preceding section (which are the fundamental ones of the science), we may consider as proved the proposition in Art. (24.), which asserts that, by virtue of the convention there stated respecting the *signs* of lines, all formulæ which hold for angles less than 90°, hold equally for angles of any magnitude. Therefore, we conclude, by induction, that the rule will hold in all cases *.

---

* The explanation here given of this conventional use of the negative sign is such as will, we conceive, be most easily understood by the student in his earlier progress in mathematical investigations. The subject may, however, be placed in a somewhat different and more general point of view. Suppose a and b to represent the magnitudes of two known lines in the data of a geometrical problem to be solved algebraically; and let the magnitude of a line, measured in an assumed direction from a given point along an indefinite line given in position, be denoted by x, the object of the problem being the determination of the value of x; and suppose the resulting equation to be $x = a - b$. If a be greater than b, the geometrical interpretation of this equation presents no possible difficulty; the magnitude of the required line must equal the difference of a and b, and the line must be measured in the direction first assumed. But let us suppose b greater than a; our result will become $x = -(b-a)$, and the question arises—what meaning attaches to this negative value of x? Does it indicate a geometrical impossibility, and admit of no geometrical interpretation; or does the circumstance of b being greater than a merely present a modification of our problem, still leaving it susceptible of a geometrical solution? The latter supposition is the true one. A general *rule of interpretation* may be established for all such cases accordant with the conventional use of the negative sign explained in the text, as indicating the *directions* of lines; consequently the equation $x = -(b - a)$ shows that the line represented by x must be measured in a direction opposite to that in which it must be measured when a is greater than b. The reasoning, however, on which the proof of the generality of elementary propositions of this nature depends, can hardly be fully appreciated by the student in his first advances in mathematics; and we have therefore thought it better to present the subject to him under the more simple rather than under the more general form, referring him for the latter to our treatise on the Application of Algebra to Geometry. The utility of this application of the negative sign will in all cases be similar to what we have shown it to be in trigonometry.

(38.) By addition and subtraction the following formulæ are deduced immediately from those investigated in Art. (34.):—

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{Sin.}\ (A + B) + \text{sin.}\ (A - B) &= 2\ \text{sin.}\ A\ .\ \text{cos.}\ B \\
\text{sin.}\ (A + B) - \text{sin.}\ (A - B) &= 2\ \text{cos.}\ A\ \text{sin.}\ B \\
\text{cos.}\ (A - B) + \text{cos.}\ (A + B) &= 2\ \text{cos.}\ A\ .\ \text{cos.}\ B \\
\text{cos.}\ (A - B) - \text{cos.}\ (A + B) &= 2\ \text{sin.}\ A\ .\ \text{sin.}\ B.
\end{aligned}$$

(39.) By multiplication we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
&\text{Sin.}\ (A + B\ .\ \text{sin.}\ (A - B) \\
&= (\text{sin.}\ A\ .\ \text{cos.}\ B + \text{cos.}\ A\ \text{sin.}\ B)\ (\text{sin.}\ A\ .\ \text{cos.}\ B - \text{cos.}\ A\ \text{sin.}\ B) \\
&= (\text{sin.}\ A)^2\ .\ (\text{cos.}\ B)^2 - (\text{cos.}\ A)^2\ (\text{sin.}\ B)^2 \\
&= (\text{sin.}\ A)^2\ (1 - (\text{sin.}\ B)^2) - (1 - (\text{sin.}\ A)^2)\ (\text{sin.}\ B)^2 \\
&= (\text{sin.}\ A)^2 - (\text{sin.}\ B)^2
\end{aligned}$$

(40.) By division, we have from the same formulæ,

$$\frac{\text{Sin.}\ (A+B)}{\text{sin.}\ (A-B)} = \frac{\text{sin.}\ A\ .\ \text{cos.}\ B + \text{cos.}\ A\ .\ \text{sin.}\ B}{\text{sin.}\ A\ .\ \text{cos.}\ B - \text{cos.}\ A\ \text{sin.}\ B}$$

$$= \frac{\dfrac{\text{sin.}\ A}{\text{cos.}\ A} + \dfrac{\text{sin.}\ B}{\text{cos.}\ B}}{\dfrac{\text{sin.}\ A}{\text{cos.}\ A} - \dfrac{\text{sin.}\ B}{\text{cos.}\ B}}$$

(dividing numerator and denominator by cos. A . cos. B).

$$= \frac{\text{tan.}\ A + \text{tan.}\ B}{\text{tan.}\ A - \text{tan.}\ B}$$

(41.) Since $A = \frac{A + B}{2} + \frac{A - B}{2}$

$$B = \frac{A + B}{2} - \frac{A - B}{2}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\therefore\ \text{sin.}\ A &= \text{sin.}\left\{\frac{A + B}{2} + \frac{A - B}{2}\right\} \\
\text{sin.}\ B &= \text{sin.}\left\{\frac{A + B}{2} - \frac{A - B}{2}\right\}.
\end{aligned}$$

Expanding the right-hand sides of these equations by the formulæ of Art. (34.), we have, by addition and subtraction,

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{Sin.}\ A + \text{sin.}\ B &= 2\ \text{sin.}\frac{A + B}{2}\ .\ \text{cos.}\ \frac{A - B}{2} \\
\text{sin.}\ A - \text{sin.}\ B &= 2\ \text{cos.}\frac{A + B}{2}\ .\ \text{sin.}\ \frac{A - B}{2} \\
\text{cos.}\ B + \text{cos}\ A &= 2\ \text{cos.}\frac{A + B}{2}\ .\ \text{cos.}\ \frac{A - B}{2} \\
\text{cos.}\ B - \text{cos.}\ A &= 2\ \text{sin.}\ \frac{A + B}{2}\ \ \text{sin.}\ \frac{A - B}{2}
\end{aligned}$$

(42.) From these formulæ we obtain, by division,

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{\text{Sin.}\ A + \text{sin.}\ B}{\text{sin.}\ A - \text{sin.}\ B} &= \text{tan.}\frac{A + B}{2}\ .\ \text{cot.}\ \frac{A - B}{2} \\
\frac{\text{cos.}\ A + \text{cos.}\ B}{\text{cos.}\ A - \text{cos.}\ B} &= \text{cot.}\frac{A + B}{2}\ .\ \text{cot.}\frac{A - B}{2}.
\end{aligned}$$

(43.) In formulæ, Art. (34.) let B = A

$$\text{Sin. } 2A = 2 \sin. A . \cos. A$$
$$\begin{aligned} \cos. 2A &= (\cos. A)^2 - (\sin. A)^2 \\ &= (\cos. A)^2 - (1 - (\cos. A)^2) \\ &= 2 (\cos. A)^2 - 1 \end{aligned}$$
$$\therefore\ 1 + \cos. 2A = 2 (\cos. A)^2;$$
$$\text{Also, } \cos. 2A = (\cos. A)^2 - (\sin. A)^2$$
$$= 1 - 2 (\sin. A)^2$$
$$\therefore\ 1 - \cos. 2A = 2 (\sin. A)^2$$

(44.) Since $(\cos. A)^2 + (\sin. A)^2 = 1$,

and $2 \sin. A . \cos. A = \sin. 2A$,

we have, by addition,

$$(\cos. A)^2 + 2 \sin. A . \cos. A + (\sin. A)^2 = 1 + \sin. 2A$$
$$\text{Or } (\cos. A + \sin. A)^2 = 1 + \sin. 2A$$
$$\cos. A + \sin. A = \pm \sqrt{1 + \sin. 2A};$$
$$\text{Similarly, } \cos. A - \sin. A = \pm \sqrt{1 + \sin. 2A};$$

Hence, by addition and subtraction,

$$\text{Cos. } A = \tfrac{1}{2} \{ \sqrt{1 + \sin. 2A} \pm \sqrt{1 - \sin. 2A} \}$$
$$\sin. A = \tfrac{1}{2} \{ \sqrt{1 + \sin. 2A} \mp \sqrt{1 - \sin. 2A} \}.\text{*}$$

---

* These formulæ, under the most general form which results from the algebraical investigation of them, are:

$$\cos. A = \tfrac{1}{2} \{ \sqrt{\pm 1 + \sin. 2A} \pm \sqrt{1 - \sin. 2A} \}$$
$$\sin. A = \tfrac{1}{2} \{ \sqrt{\pm 1 + \sin. 2A} \mp \sqrt{1 - \sin. 2A} \}$$

and as they may thus appear to the student to present some ambiguity, it may be as well to point out to him how the signs are to be interpreted. The greatest value which the quantity $\sqrt{1 + \sin. 2A}$ admits of is $\sqrt{2}$, which corresponds to $2A = 90°$. It continues positive, while $2A$ varies from 90° to 270°, when it becomes zero. When $2A$ exceeds 180°, sin. $2A$ becomes negative, and consequently $\sqrt{1 + \sin 2. A}$ becomes $\sqrt{1 - \sin. 2A}$, sin. $2A$ representing the *numerical* value; and also the quantity $\sqrt{1 + \sin. 2A}$ having become zero, must then become *negative*, since, in order to give all possible generality to our interpretation, we must suppose it to vary continuously with the continuous variation of A between its greatest and least *algebraical* values, which are $\sqrt{2}$ and $-\sqrt{2}$, the latter corresponding to the case in which $2A = 360° + 90°$. In the same manner it will pass back from the least to the greatest limit through zero. The other quantity, $\sqrt{1 - \sin. 2A}$, will of course follow the same law in its change of value.

Hence, then, if the proper signs be determined for any particular value of $2A$, they may be easily ascertained for any other value. Suppose A very small and positive; then must we have cos. A positive and nearly equal unity, and sin. A positive and very small, which conditions can only be satisfied by taking the signs for this case as follows:

$$\cos. A = \tfrac{1}{2} \{ \sqrt{1 + \sin. 2A} + \sqrt{1 - \sin 2A} \}$$
$$\sin. A = \tfrac{1}{2} \{ \sqrt{1 + \sin. 2A} - \sqrt{1 - \sin. 2A} \}$$

If $2A = 90°$, $\sqrt{1 - \sin. 2A} = 0$; and therefore if $2A$ be greater than 90° and less than 180°,

$$\cos. A = \tfrac{1}{2} \{ \sqrt{1 + \sin. 2A} - \sqrt{1 - \sin. 2A} \}$$
$$\sin. A = \tfrac{1}{2} \{ \sqrt{1 + \sin. 2A} + \sqrt{1 - \sin. 2A} \}$$

If $2A$ be between 180° and 270°, sin. $2A$ is negative, and

$$\cos. A = \tfrac{1}{2} \{ \sqrt{1 - \sin. 2A} - \sqrt{1 + \sin. 2A} \}$$
$$\sin. A = \tfrac{1}{2} \{ \sqrt{1 - \sin. 2A} + \sqrt{1 + \sin. 2A} \}$$

It is not necessary to state the formulæ for other particular cases. The most useful application of them will be pointed out hereafter; and as there is, in that case, no risk of error from the apparent ambiguity of the signs, we should not have thought it necessary to say thus much on the subject, were it not likely to be of some service in familiarizing the mind of the student to similar interpretations in other cases.

(45.) Again, $\tan. A + \cot. A + \frac{\sin. A}{\cos. A} + \frac{\cos. A}{\sin. A}$

$$= \frac{2\left((\sin. A)^2 + (\cos. A)^2\right)}{2 . \sin. A . \cos. A}$$
$$= \frac{2}{\sin. 2 A}$$
$$= \frac{2}{\sec. 2 A}$$

Similarly, $\cot. A - \tan. A = \frac{(\cos. A)^2 - (\sin. A)^2}{\sin. A . \cos. A}$

$$= \frac{2 \cos. 2 A}{\sin. 2 A} = 2 \cot. 2 A.$$

(46.) By formula, Art. (38.),

$$\text{Sin.} (A + B) = 2 \sin. A . \cos. B - \sin. (A - B).$$

Let $A = n B$,

$$\text{Sin.} (n + 1 B) = 2 \sin. n B . \cos. B - \sin. (\overline{n - 1} B);$$

and if $n = 1$,

$$\text{Sin.} 2 B = 2 \sin. B . \cos. B;$$

$n = 2$,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Sin.} 3 B &= 2 \sin. 2 B . \cos. B - \sin. B \\ &= 2 \cos. B \{ 2 \sin. B . \cos. B \} - \sin. B \\ &= 4 \sin. B (\cos. B)^2 - \sin. B. \\ &= 4 \sin. B (1 - (\sin. B^2)) - \sin. B \\ &= 3 \sin. B - 4 (\sin. B)^3 : \end{aligned}$$

if $n = 3$,

$$\text{Sin.} 4 B = 2 \sin. 3 B . \cos. B - \sin. 2 B;$$

which, by substitution and reduction,

$$= (4 \sin. B - 8 (\sin. B)^3 \cos. B;$$

similarly, we find

$$\text{Sin.} 5 B = 5 \sin. B - 20 (\sin. B)^3 + 16 (\sin. B)^5$$

&c.

(47.) Also, by formula, Art. (38.),

$$\text{Cos.} (A + B) = 2 \cos. A . \cos. B - \cos. (A - B);$$

and, if $A = n B$,

$$\text{Cos.} \overline{n + 1} . B = 2 \cos. n B \cos. B - \cos. \overline{n - 1} B;$$

Whence, by putting $n = 1, 2, 3$, &c. successively, we find, in a manner similar to the above,

$$\begin{aligned} \cos. 2 B &= 2 (\cos. B)^2 - 1 \\ \cos. 3 B &= 4 (\cos. B)^3 - 3 \cos. B \\ \cos. 4 B &= 8 (\cos. B)^4 - 8 (\cos. B)^2 + 1 \\ \cos. 5 B &= 16 (\cos. B)^5 - 20 (\cos. B)^3 + 5 \cos. B, \end{aligned}$$

&c. &c.

(48.) To find the tangents of the sum or difference of two angles, in terms of the tangents of the angles themselves:—

$$\text{Tan.} (A + B) = \frac{\sin. (A + B)}{\cos. (A + B)}$$
$$= \frac{\sin. A . \cos. B + \cos. A . \sin. B}{\cos. A . \cos. B - \sin. A . \sin. B}$$

$$= \frac{\frac{\text{sin. A}}{\text{cos. A}} + \frac{\text{sin. B}}{\text{cos. B}}}{1 - \frac{\text{sin. A}}{\text{cos. A}} \cdot \frac{\text{sin. B}}{\text{cos. B}}}$$

(dividing numerator and denominator by cos. A . cos. B)

$$= \frac{\text{tan. A} + \text{tan. B}}{1 - \text{tan. A . tan. B}}$$

(49.) Similarly, we find

$$\text{Tan. (A} - \text{B)} = \frac{\text{tan. A} - \text{tan. B}}{1 + \text{tan. A . tan. B}}.$$

(50.) Putting B = A, in the formula for tan. (A + B), we have

$$\text{Tan. 2 A} = \frac{2 \text{ tan. A}}{1 - (\text{tan. A})^2}$$

(51.) Also, by the same formula,

$$\text{Tan. (A + B + C)} = \frac{\text{tan. (A + B) + tan. C}}{1 - \text{tan. (A + B) tan. C}}$$

$$= \frac{\frac{\text{tan. A + tan. B}}{1 - \text{tan. A . tan. B}} + \text{tan. C}}{1 - \frac{1 - \text{tan. A . tan. B}}{\text{tan. A + tan. B}} \cdot \text{tan. C}}$$

$$= \frac{\text{tan. A + tan. B + tan. C} - \text{tan. A . tan. B . tan. C.}}{1 - \{\text{tan. A . tan. B + tan. A . tan. C + tan. B . tan. C}\}}$$

$$\text{(52.) Sec. (A+B)} = \frac{1}{\text{cos. (A + B)}} = \frac{1}{\text{cos. A . cos. B} - \text{sin. A . sin. B}}$$

$$= \frac{\frac{1}{\text{cos. A}} \cdot \frac{1}{\text{cos. B}}}{1 - \frac{\text{sin. A}}{\text{cos. A}} \cdot \frac{\text{sin. B}}{\text{cos. B}}} = \frac{\text{sec. A . sec. B}}{1 - \text{tan. A . tan. B}}$$

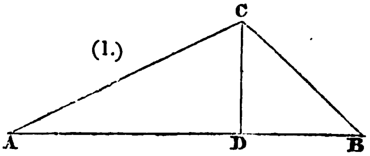
$$= \frac{\text{sec. A . sec. B}}{1 - \sqrt{(\text{sec. A})^2 - 1} \cdot \sqrt{(\text{sec. B})^2 - 1}}, \text{ by Art. (15.)}$$

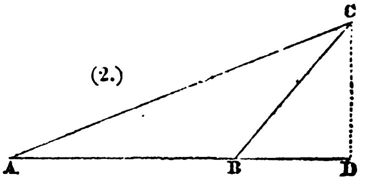
This and the preceding sections contain all those formulæ which may be regarded as the fundamental ones of the science. By different combinations of these, an almost infinite variety of other formulæ may be deduced, the investigation of which forms an excellent exercise for the student. Such as are of practical importance will be investigated in connexion with those parts of the subject to which they are immediately applicable.

We shall now proceed to the second division of this portion of the treatise, comprising *Plane Trigonometry* (by which we ascertain the relations between the sides and angles of triangles described on a plane surface), and also an explanation of the calculation and formation of such trigonometrical tables as are necessary to determine the numerical values of the quantities required, whether in Plane Trigonometry, or in any other application of trigonometrical formulæ.

SECTION IV.

Relations which exist between the sides, the Angles, and the area of Triangles, and of certain Quadrilateral Figures—Relations between the Radius of a Circle, and sides, angles, &c. of Triangles, or regular Polygons inscribed in, or circumscribed about it.





(53.) THE sides of a triangle are proportional to the sines of the opposite angles.

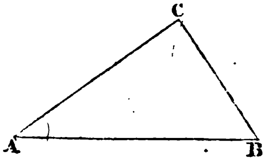
Let A, B, C be the angles, a, b, c the sides opposite to them respectively of the triangle A B C. From C draw C D, a perpendicular on the base, or the base produced, A B; then

$$\sin. A = \frac{CD}{AC};\ \sin. B\ (\text{which} = \sin. CBD \text{ in } \textit{fig.}\ 2) = \frac{CD}{CB}$$

$$\therefore \frac{\sin. A}{\sin. B} = \frac{CB}{AC} = \frac{a}{b}.$$

$$\text{Similarly } \frac{\sin. A}{\sin. C} = \frac{a}{c};\ \frac{\sin. B}{\sin. C} = \frac{b}{c}.$$

(54.) Let C be a right angle, then



$$\begin{array}{lclcl}
\sin. A & = & \dfrac{BC}{AB} & = & \dfrac{a}{c} \\
\cos. A & = & \dfrac{AC}{AB}. & = & \dfrac{b}{c} \\
\tan. A & = & \dfrac{BC}{AC} & = & \dfrac{a}{b} \\
\sin. B & = & \dfrac{AC}{AB} & = & \dfrac{b}{c} \\
\cos. B & = & \dfrac{BC}{AB} & = & \dfrac{a}{c} \\
\tan. B & = & \dfrac{AC}{BC} & = & \dfrac{b}{a}
\end{array}$$

(55.) To express the cosine of an angle of a triangle in terms of the sides.

$$\left.\begin{array}{l}
\text{By Euclid, Props. 12 and 13, b. ii., and Geometry, I. § 6. Prop. 37, we have} \\
AC^2 = AB^2 + BC^2 - 2\,AB.BD \\
\quad \text{when the angle B is acute; or} \\
AC^2 = AB^2 + BC^2 + 2\,AB.BD, \\
\quad \text{when B is obtuse.}
\end{array}\right\}\text{Figs. 1 and 2, Art. 53.}$$

$$\text{But } \frac{BD}{BC} = \cos. B$$

$$\therefore \text{B D} = \text{B C, cos. B when B is acute,}$$
$$\text{and B D} = \text{B C cos. C B D.}$$
$$= -\text{B C cos. B (since cos. C B D} = -\text{ cos. B)}$$
$$\text{when B is obtuse.}$$

Hence in both cases we have (denoting the sides as before)

$$b^2 = c^2 + a^2 - 2\,ac \text{ cos. B}$$
$$\text{cos. B} = \frac{a^2 + c^2 - b^2}{2ac}$$

Similarly

$$\text{cos. A} = \frac{b^2 + c^2 - a^2}{2bc}; \quad \text{cos. C} = \frac{a^2 + b^2 - c^2}{2ab}.$$

(56.) To express the sine of an angle of a triangle in terms of the sides, we have, Art. (11.)

$$(\text{sin. A})^2 = 1 - (\text{cos. A})^2$$
$$= (1 + \text{cos. A})\,(1 - \text{cos. A})$$

$$\text{But } 1 + \text{cos. A} = 1 + \frac{b^2 + c^2 - a^2}{2bc}$$
$$= \frac{b^2 + 2bc + c^2 - a^2}{2bc}$$
$$= \frac{(b+c)^2 - a^2}{2bc}$$
$$= \frac{(a+b+c)\,(b+c-a)}{2bc},$$

since the difference of the squares of two quantities = the product of their sum and difference. See Geometry I. § 5., and Schol. Prop. 35.; also Euc. II. 5.

$$\text{Also } 1 - \text{cos. A} = 1 - \frac{b^2 + c^2 - a^2}{2bc}$$
$$= \frac{a^2 - (b^2 + c^2 - 2bc)}{2bc}$$
$$= \frac{a^2 - (b-c)^2}{2bc}$$
$$= \frac{(a+c-b)\,(a+b-c)}{2bc}.$$

Let

$$\frac{a+b+c}{2} = \text{S}$$
$$\text{then } \frac{b+c-a}{2} = \text{S} - a$$
$$\frac{a+c-b}{2} = \text{S} - b$$
$$\frac{a+b-c}{2} = \text{S} - c$$

$$\therefore 1 + \text{cos. A} = \frac{2\,\text{S}\,.\,\overline{\text{S} - a}}{bc}$$
$$1 - \text{cos. A} = \frac{2\,.\,\overline{\text{S} - b}\,.\,\overline{\text{S} - c}}{bc}$$

$$\therefore \text{sin.}^2 A = \frac{4}{b^2 c^2} \,.\, S \,.\, \overline{S-a} \,.\, \overline{S-b} \,.\, \overline{S-c}$$

$$\text{sin. } A = \frac{2}{bc} \sqrt{S \,.\, \overline{S-a} \,.\, \overline{S-b} \,.\, \overline{S-c}}$$

Similarly

$$\text{sin. } B = \frac{2}{ac} \sqrt{S \,.\, \overline{S-a} \,.\, \overline{S-b} \,.\, \overline{S-c}}$$

$$\text{sin. } C = \frac{2}{ab} \sqrt{S \,.\, \overline{S-a} \,.\, \overline{S-b} \,.\, \overline{S-c}}$$

(57.) By Art. (43.) we have

$$2 \text{ cos.}^2 \frac{A}{2} = 1 + \text{cos. } A$$

$$= \frac{2.S.\overline{S-a}}{bc}$$

$$\therefore \text{cos. } \frac{A}{2} = \sqrt{\frac{S.\overline{S-a}}{bc}}$$

$$\text{Also } \left(2 \text{ sin. } \frac{A}{2}\right)^2 = 1 - \text{cos. } A$$

$$= \frac{2\overline{S-b}.\overline{S-c}}{bc}$$

$$\therefore \text{sin. } \frac{A}{2} = \sqrt{\frac{\overline{S-b}.\overline{S-c}}{bc}}$$

$$\text{And tan. } \frac{A}{2} = \frac{\text{sin. } \frac{A}{2}}{\text{cos. } \frac{A}{2}}$$

$$= \sqrt{\frac{\overline{S-b}.\overline{S-c}}{S.\overline{S-a}}}.$$

In the same manner are obtained,

$$\text{cos. } \frac{B}{2} = \sqrt{\frac{S.\overline{S-b}}{ac}}; \qquad \text{sin. } \frac{B}{2} = \sqrt{\frac{\overline{S-a}.\overline{S-c}}{ac}}$$

$$\text{cos. } \frac{C}{2} = \sqrt{\frac{S.\overline{S-c}}{ab}}; \qquad \text{sin. } \frac{C}{2} = \sqrt{\frac{\overline{S-a}.\overline{S-b}}{ab}}$$

$$\text{tan. } \frac{B}{2} = \sqrt{\frac{\overline{S-a}.\overline{S-c}}{S.\overline{S-b}}}; \qquad \text{tan. } \frac{C}{2} = \sqrt{\frac{\overline{S-a}.\overline{S-b}}{S.\overline{S-c}}}$$

(58.) To express the area of a triangle in terms of the sides, see *figs.* Art. (53.). Geom. I. § 4. prop. 26.

$$\text{Area} = \frac{1}{2} \text{ AB.CD}$$

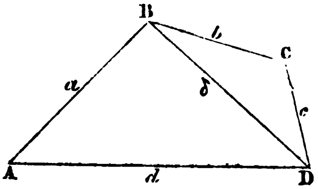
$$= \frac{1}{2} \text{ AB . AC . sin. A}$$

$$= \frac{cb}{2} \text{ . sin. A}$$

$$= \sqrt{\text{S} . \overline{\text{S} - a} . \overline{\text{S} - b} . \overline{\text{S} - c}}$$

We may very easily obtain expressions very similar to those given above for triangles, for the sines, cosines, &c. of angles of quadrilateral figures, when the opposite angles are supplemental to each other, or the quadrilaterals are such as can be inscribed in circles. As such formulæ, however, are of little utility, we shall deduce only that for the cosine of one of the angles, and leave the others, which we shall indicate as exercises for the student.

(59.) To express the cosine of an angle of a quadrilateral which may be inscribed in a circle in terms of the sides.



Let A B C D be the quadrilateral; A B C D the angles,

And let AB $= a$, BC $= b$,
CD $= c$, DA $= d$

join B D, and let B D $= \delta$

Then

$$\delta^2 = a^2 + d^2 - 2\,ad \text{ cos. A}$$

Also $\delta^2 = b^2 + c^2 - 2\,bc$ cos. C Art. (55.)

$$= b^2 + c^2 + 2\,bc \text{ cos. A; since}$$

$$\text{C} = 180^\circ - \text{A, and } \therefore \text{ cos. C} = - \text{cos. A}$$

∴ subtracting

$$0 = a^2 + d^2 - b^2 - c^2 - 2\,(ad + bc) \text{ cos. A}$$

$$\therefore \text{ cos. A.} = \frac{a^2 + d^2 - b^2 - c^2}{2\,(ad + bc).}$$

(60.) By a process exactly similar to that by which the expression for the sine of an angle of a triangle in terms of the sides is determined, we find

$$\text{sin. A} = \frac{2}{ad + bc} \sqrt{\overline{\text{S} - a} . \overline{\text{S} - b} . \overline{\text{S} - c} . \overline{\text{S} - d}}$$

$$\text{Where S} = \frac{a + b + c + d}{2}$$

$$\text{tan. } \frac{\text{A}}{2} = \sqrt{\frac{\overline{\text{S} - a} . \overline{\text{S} - d}}{\overline{\text{S} - b} . \overline{\text{S} - c}}}$$

$$\delta = \sqrt{\frac{(a^2 + d^2)\,bc + (b^2 + c^2)\,ad}{ad + bc}}$$

$$\text{Area of the quadrilateral} = \sqrt{\overline{\text{S} - a} . \overline{\text{S} - b} . \overline{\text{S} - c} . \overline{\text{S} - d}}$$

See Geom. Note to the Index, pp. 271, 272.

A general expression may also be obtained for the area of any quadrilateral the investigation of which may afford a useful example to the student. Let angle C $= \gamma$, and the supplement of A $= \alpha$ (see fig. Art. 59.) :—

$$a^2 + d^2 + 2\,ad\,.\cos.\,\alpha = \delta^2$$
$$= b^2 + c^2 - 2\,bc\,.\cos.\,\gamma$$
$$\frac{b^2+c^2}{2^2} - \frac{a^2+d^2}{2^2} = \frac{bc\,.\cos.\,\gamma}{2} + \frac{ad\,.\cos.\,\alpha}{2} \quad . \quad . \quad (1).$$

Now

$$\frac{2\,bc}{2^2} + \frac{2\,ad}{2^2} = \frac{bc}{2} + \frac{ad}{2} \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (2);$$

adding (1) and (2),

$$\left(\frac{b+c}{2}\right)^2 - \left(\frac{a-d}{2}\right)^2 = \frac{bc}{2}\,.\,\frac{1+\cos.\,\gamma}{2} + ad\,.\,\frac{1+\cos.\,\alpha}{2} \quad . \quad (3),$$

and, subtracting (1) from (2),

$$-\left(\frac{b-c}{2}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{a+d}{2}\right)^2 = bc\,.\,\frac{1-\cos.\,\gamma}{2} + ad\,.\,\frac{1-\cos.\,\alpha}{2} \quad (4);$$

Or,

$$(\mathrm{S}-a)\,(\mathrm{S}-d) = bc\,.\,\frac{1+\cos.\,\gamma}{2} + ad\,.\,\frac{1+\cos.\,\alpha}{2}$$

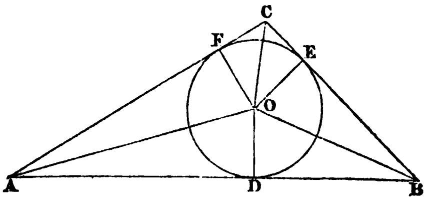
and

$$(\mathrm{S}-b)\,(\mathrm{S}-c) = bc\,.\,\frac{1-\cos.\,\gamma}{2} + ad\,.\,\frac{1-\cos.\,\alpha}{2}$$

&c.

$$\therefore\ (\mathrm{S}-a)\,(\mathrm{S}-b)\,(\mathrm{S}-c)\,(\mathrm{S}-d) = b^2c^2\,.\,\frac{1-(\cos.\,\gamma)^2}{4}$$
$$+\,a^2d^2\,\frac{1-(\cos.\,\alpha)^2}{4} + \frac{abcd}{4}\,(2 - 2\cos.\,\alpha\cos.\,\gamma)$$
$$= \left(\frac{bc\sin.\,\gamma}{2}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{ad\sin.\,\alpha}{2}\right)^2 + \frac{abcd}{2}.\,(1 - \cos.\,\alpha\cos.\,\gamma)$$
$$= \left(\frac{bc\sin.\,\gamma}{2} + \frac{ad\sin.\,\alpha}{2}\right)^2 - \frac{abcd\sin.\,\gamma\sin.\,\alpha}{2} + \frac{abcd}{2}(1-\cos.\alpha\cos.\gamma)$$
$$= \left(\frac{bc\sin.\,\gamma}{2} + \frac{ad\,.\sin.\,\alpha}{2}\right)^2 + \frac{abcd}{2}(1 - \cos.\,(\alpha-\gamma))$$
$$= (\text{area A B C D})^2 + \frac{abcd}{2}\ \text{vers.}\,(\alpha-\gamma)$$
$$\therefore\ \text{area ABCD} = \sqrt{(\mathrm{S}-a)\,(\mathrm{S}-b)\,(\mathrm{S}-c)\,(\mathrm{S}-d) - \frac{abcd}{2}\text{vers.}(\alpha-\gamma)}.$$

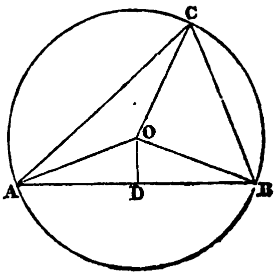
(61.) To express the radius of a circle inscribed in a triangle in terms of the sides of the triangle.



Let A B C be the triangle, O the centre of the inscribed circle, D F E its points of contact with the sides, and therefore O D, O E, O F, respectively perpendicular to the sides; and let $r =$ radius of the circle.

Area of A B C = sum of the areas A O B, B O C, and C O A; and ∴ Art (58.)

$$\sqrt{S.\overline{S-a}.\overline{S-b}.\overline{S-c}} = \tfrac{1}{2}AB.DO + \tfrac{1}{2}BC.OE + \tfrac{1}{2}CA.OF$$
$$= r\left(\frac{a+b+c}{2}\right) = r.S\,;$$
$$\therefore r = \frac{\sqrt{S.\overline{S-a}.\overline{S-b}.\overline{S-c}}}{S}$$

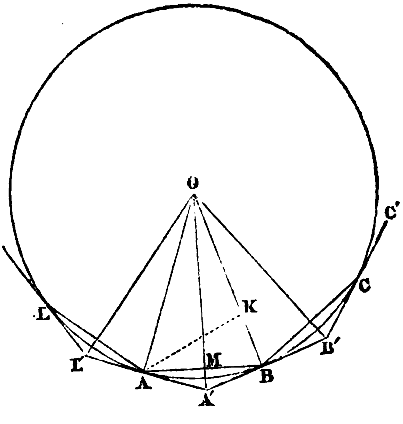


(62.) To express the radius of the circle circumscribing a triangle in terms of its sides.

Let A B C be the triangle, O the centre of the circle; R its radius. Join A O, B O, and draw O D a perpendicular on A B; then O A $=$ O B $=$ R, and A D $=$ D B $= \frac{1}{2}c$. Also the angle A O B at the centre $=$ twice the angle A C B at the circumference, by Euc. III. § 20., and Geometry, III. § 2. prop. 14.

$$\text{Now } \frac{AD}{OA} = \sin. AOD$$
$$= \sin. \tfrac{1}{2}AOB$$
$$= \sin. C$$
$$\therefore \frac{\frac{1}{2}c}{R} = \frac{2}{ab}\sqrt{S.\overline{S-a}.\overline{S-b}.\overline{S-c}}$$
$$\therefore R = \frac{abc}{4.\sqrt{S.\overline{S-a}.\overline{S-b}.\overline{S-c}}}$$

(63.) To express the relations between the sides of regular polygons (such as are equiangular and equilateral) inscribed in, or circumscribed about a circle, and the radius of the circle. Let A B C, &c., A′ B′ C′, &c., be the inscribed and circumscribed polygons; O the centre of the circle.



$$OA = r$$
$$AB = a,\ A'B' = a'$$
$$n = \text{number of the sides.}$$
$$AOB = \frac{360}{n} = A'OB'$$
$$\therefore AOM = \frac{180^\circ}{n} = BOA'$$

$$\text{Then } \frac{AM}{AO} = \sin. AOM$$

$$\text{or } \frac{\frac{1}{2}a}{r} = \sin. \frac{180^\circ}{n}$$

$$a = 2r . \sin. \frac{180^\circ}{n}$$

$$\text{Also } \frac{A'B}{OB} = \tan. A'OB$$

$$\therefore \quad a' = 2r \tan. \frac{180^\circ}{n}$$

Hence the perimeter of the inscribed figure,

$$= na = 2nr \sin. \frac{180^\circ}{n}$$

And that of the circumscribed figure

$$= na' = 2nr \tan. \frac{180^\circ}{n}$$

(64.) Draw A K a perpendicular on O B

Area of the inscribed polygon $= n$ Area A O B

$$= n. \frac{OB.AK}{2}$$

$$= \frac{n}{2} r^2 \sin. \frac{360^\circ}{n}$$

Area of the circumscribed polygon $= n$ area A′ O B′

$$= n\, OB.A'B$$

$$= n\, r^2 \tan. \frac{180^\circ}{n}$$

(65.) By Art. (63.) we have (a being the side of the inscribed polygon)

$$\frac{a}{2} = r \sin. \frac{180^\circ}{n}$$

$$= \sin. \frac{180^\circ}{2^m}, \text{ if } r = \text{unity and } n = 2^m.$$

$$\text{Now } 1 - \cos. A = 2\left(\sin. \frac{A}{2}\right)^2 \quad \text{Art. (43.)}$$

$$\text{whence } \left(\sin. \frac{A}{2}\right)^2 = \tfrac{1}{2} - \tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{1 - (\sin. A)^2}$$

$$\therefore \quad \sin. \frac{A}{2} = \tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{2 - 2\sqrt{1 - (\sin. A)^2}}$$

$$\therefore \sin. \frac{180^\circ}{2^m} = \tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{2 - 2\sqrt{1 - \left(\sin. \frac{180^\circ}{2^{m-1}}\right)^2}}$$

$$= \tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{2 - 2\sqrt{1 - \tfrac{1}{4}\left(2 - 2\sqrt{1 - \left(\sin. \frac{180^\circ}{2^{m-2}}\right)^2}\right)}}$$

$$= \tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{2 - \sqrt{2 + 2\sqrt{1 - \left(\sin. \frac{180^\circ}{2^{m-2}}\right)^2}}}$$

$$a = \tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{2 - \sqrt{2 + \sqrt{2 - \&c. \pm \sqrt{2}}}}$$

This expression will terminate when the sign of the square root has been separated $m - 1$ times, for we shall come at length to $\sqrt{1 - \left(\sin. \frac{180^\circ}{2}\right)^2}$ which $= 0$; since by definition $\sin. 90^\circ =$ unity, $\therefore$ the circumference of the polygon $= na$

$$= n\sqrt{2 - \sqrt{2 + \sqrt{2 - \&c. \pm \sqrt{2}}}}$$

(66.) It is obvious that the greater the number of sides the more nearly will the circumference of the polygon approach to that of the circle, and by this means we might obtain an approximate value of the ratio (denoted by the symbol π) which the circumference of a circle bears to its diameter. For suppose we find, by performing the operations indicated in the above expression, that the numerical value of the circumference of a polygon of s sides, and of that of another of $2s$ sides, agree as far as a certain number of decimal places; then it will easily be understood that the value of the circumference of a polygon of any greater number of sides will also coincide with that in which there are s sides, to the same number of decimal places; and consequently the same may be said of the circumference of the circle, to which, by constantly increasing the number of sides of the polygon as above-mentioned, the circumference of the polygon constantly approximates as its limit. It was, in fact, by the laborious method of actually extracting the square roots as indicated in the above expression that the earlier mathematicians calculated the value of π. About the year 1600, Ludolph van Collen or à Ceulen, a Dutch mathematician, by means of the same formula, and certain artifices by which he abridged the numerical computation, determined the value of π to be between

3.14159 26535 39793 23846 26433 83279 50288, and
3.14159 26535 39793 23846 26433 83279 50289.

By means of certain series which will be given hereafter, this computation can be performed with great comparative facility.

SECTION V.

Numerical Values of Trigonometrical Functions of Angles whose Magnitude is given numerically.—Construction and Arrangement of Tables of Natural Sines, Cosines, &c. Examples of the Use of these Tables.

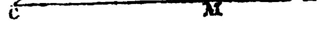
THE formulæ of the preceding sections express the general relations existing between the quantities involved in them, without reference to their *numerical values.* In the practical applications, however, of mathematics, the determination of numerical values forms, for the most part, the ultimate object of our investigations; and therefore it becomes essential that we should be able to assign such values to the different trigonometrical functions of an angle whose magnitude is numerically given. To prevent the labour, however, of making these numerical computations for each particular problem, which (particularly in astronomical calculations) would be immense, tables have been formed in which these values are tabulated, for every angle ascending in arithmetical progression from 0 to 90°, the common difference being some small quantity, usually one minute or one second. Before we proceed farther with the solutions of triangles, we shall explain the methods of computing and arranging these tables of natural sines, cosines, &c.

Possessed as we now are of such tables, computed with great accuracy, the detail of the methods of calculating them might, at first sight, appear superfluous ; they form, however, a useful exercise for the student, and, moreover, it may sometimes become necessary, in investigations of a delicate nature, to obtain the values of the trigonometrical functions to a greater degree of accuracy than that afforded by the tables in common use, in which they are given to seven or eight places of decimals. We shall now, therefore, proceed to explain these methods. The most important is that by which the values of the sines of successive angles are computed, by means of the values of the sines of those immediately preceding; but there are certain angles for which these values can be computed independently, without ascending to them by these successive steps, and to these we shall first direct our attention.

(67.) The numerical values contained in the following table result immediately from our definitions of the respective trigonometrical functions; and it is also shown for what values of the angle these values are positive or negative.

Angle.	Sine.	Cosine.	Tan.	Secant.	Cotan.	Cosec.	Ver-sine.
0°	0	1	0	1	*∞	∞	0
0° to 90°	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
90°	1	0	∞	∞	0	1	1
90° to 180°	+	−	−	−	−	+	+
180°	0	−1	0	−1	∞	∞	2
180° to 270°	−	−	+	−	+	−	+
270°	−1	0	∞	∞	0	−1	1
270° to 360°	−	+	−	+	−	−	+

(68.) Let the ∠ P C M = 45°, then since the ∠ at M is a right ∠, M P C = 45°



$\therefore CM = MP$ { Euclid, Book 1. }

And $CM^2 + MP^2 = CP^2$

$\therefore 2\,MP^2 = CP^2$

$$2\left(\frac{MP}{CP}\right)^2 = 1$$

or $2\,(\sin.\ 45^\circ)^2 = 1$

$$\sin.\ 45^\circ = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$$

$$\text{And } \cos.\ 45^\circ = \frac{CM}{CP} = \frac{MP}{CP}$$

$$= \sin.\ 45^\circ$$

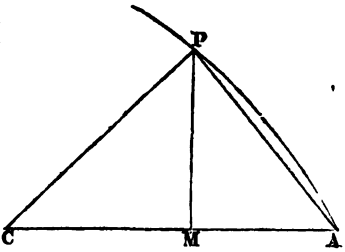
$$= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$$

---

* The symbol ∞ denotes a quantity whose value is infinitely great. See Algebra, 116, 117.

Hence also

$$\text{Tan. } 45^\circ = 1$$



(69.) Let the $\angle ACP = 60^\circ$. Join AP; then will the triangle ACP be equilateral; for

$$CA = CP$$
$$\therefore \angle CPA = CAP$$
$$\text{And } \angle C + \angle P + \angle A = 180^\circ$$
$$\text{or } \quad 60 + 2\angle P = 180^\circ$$
$$\therefore \quad \angle P = 60^\circ$$
$$\text{and } \angle A = 60^\circ$$
$$\therefore AP = AC = CP$$

And the perpendicular MP on AC bisects AC in M

$$\therefore \frac{CM}{CP} = \tfrac{1}{2}$$
$$\text{or cos. } 60^\circ = \tfrac{1}{2}$$
$$\text{Also } MP^2 + CM^2 = CP^2$$
$$\left(\frac{MP}{CP}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{CM}{CP}\right)^2 = 1$$
$$\left(\frac{MP}{CP}\right)^2 + \quad \tfrac{1}{4} \quad = 1$$
$$\therefore \text{sin. } 60^\circ \quad = \quad \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$$

(70.) $$\text{Sin. } 30^\circ = \text{cos. } (90^\circ - 30^\circ)$$
$$= \text{cos. } 60^\circ$$
$$= \tfrac{1}{2}$$
$$\text{cos. } 30^\circ = \text{sin. } 60^\circ$$
$$= \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$$

(71.) By Art. (46), we have

$$\text{cos. } 3A = 4\,(\text{cos. } A)^3 - 3 \text{ cos. } A$$
$$\therefore \text{cos. } 54^\circ = 4\,(\text{cos. } 18^\circ)^3 - 3 \text{ cos. } 18^\circ$$
$$\text{But cos. } 54^\circ = \text{sin. } 36^\circ$$
$$= 2 \text{ sin. } 18^\circ \text{ cos. } 18^\circ. \quad \text{Art. (43.)}$$

Hence substituting and dividing by cos. 18°, we have,

$$2 \text{ sin. } 18^\circ = 4\,(\text{cos. } 18^\circ)^2 - 3$$
$$= 4\left\{(1 - (\text{sin. } 18^\circ)^2\right\} - 3$$
$$= 1 - 4\,(\text{sin. } 18^\circ)^2$$
$$\therefore (\text{sin. } 18^\circ)^2 + \tfrac{1}{2} \text{ sin. } 18^\circ = \tfrac{1}{4}$$

which gives

$$\text{sin. } 18^\circ = \frac{\sqrt{5}-1}{4} = \text{cos. } 72^\circ$$

$$\text{cos. } 18^\circ = \sqrt{1 - (\text{sin. } 18^\circ)^2}$$
$$= \frac{\sqrt{10 + 2\sqrt{5}}}{4} = \text{sin. } 72^\circ$$

(72.) Thus we have, by independent methods, the sines and cosines of 18°, 30°, 45°, 60°, 72°, and 90°. Also, we have, Art. (44.), if A be less than 45°,

$$\text{sin. } A = \tfrac{1}{2}\{\sqrt{1 + \text{sin. } 2A} - \sqrt{1 - \text{sin. } 2A}\}$$

$$\text{Let } A = 15^\circ$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{sin. } 15^\circ &= \tfrac{1}{2}\{\sqrt{1 + \text{sin. } 30^\circ} - \sqrt{1 - \text{sin. } 30^\circ}\}\\ &= \tfrac{1}{2}\{\sqrt{\tfrac{3}{2}} - \sqrt{\tfrac{1}{2}}\}\\ &= \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}}\left\{\sqrt{3} - 1\right\}\end{aligned}$$

By the same formula the sine of 9° may be calculated; and

$$\begin{aligned}\text{sin. } 3^\circ &= \text{sin. } (18^\circ - 15^\circ)\\ &= \text{sin. } 18^\circ \ \text{cos. } 15^\circ - \text{cos. } 18^\circ, \text{sin. } 15^\circ.\end{aligned}$$

Whence sin. 3° is known; and in a similar manner we obtain the sines of every angle in the series 3°, 6°, 9°, 12°, &c.,...90°. The following table exhibits these values:

$$\text{Sin. } 3^\circ = \frac{\sqrt{3}+1}{8\sqrt{2}}(\sqrt{5} - 1) - \frac{\sqrt{3}-1}{8}\sqrt{5 + \sqrt{5}}$$

$$\text{sin. } 6^\circ = -\frac{1}{8}(\sqrt{5} - 1) + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{4\sqrt{2}}\sqrt{5 - \sqrt{5}}$$

$$\text{sin. } 9^\circ = \frac{1}{4\sqrt{2}}(\sqrt{5} + 1) - \tfrac{1}{4}\sqrt{5 - \sqrt{5}}$$

$$\text{sin. } 12^\circ = -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{8}(\sqrt{5} - 1) + \frac{1}{4\sqrt{2}}\sqrt{5 + \sqrt{5}}$$

$$\text{sin. } 15^\circ = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}}(\sqrt{3} - 1)$$

$$\text{sin. } 18^\circ = \tfrac{1}{4}\ (\sqrt{\ } - 1)$$

$$\text{sin. } 21^\circ = -\frac{\sqrt{3}-1}{8\sqrt{2}}(\sqrt{5} + 1) + \frac{\sqrt{3}+1}{8}\sqrt{5 - \sqrt{5}}$$

$$\text{sin. } 24^\circ = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{8}(\sqrt{5} + 1) - \frac{1}{4\sqrt{2}}\sqrt{5 - \sqrt{5}}$$

$$\text{sin. } 27^\circ = -\frac{1}{4\sqrt{2}}(\sqrt{5} - 1) + \tfrac{1}{4}\sqrt{5 + \sqrt{5}}$$

$$\text{sin. } 30^\circ = \tfrac{1}{2}$$

$$\text{sin. } 33^\circ = \frac{\sqrt{3}+1}{8\sqrt{2}}(\sqrt{5} - 1) + \frac{\sqrt{3}-1}{8}\sqrt{5 + \sqrt{5}}$$

$$\text{sin. } 36^\circ = \ldots\ldots\ldots \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}}\sqrt{5 - \sqrt{5}}$$

$$\text{sin. } 39^\circ = \frac{\sqrt{3}+1}{8\sqrt{2}}(\sqrt{5}+1) - \frac{\sqrt{3}-1}{8}\sqrt{5-\sqrt{5}}$$

$$\text{sin. } 42^\circ = -\tfrac{1}{8}(\sqrt{5}-1) + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{4\sqrt{2}}\sqrt{5+\sqrt{5}}$$

$$\text{sin. } 45^\circ = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$$

$$\text{sin. } 48^\circ = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{8}(\sqrt{5}-1) + \frac{1}{4\sqrt{2}}\sqrt{5+\sqrt{5}}$$

$$\text{sin. } 51^\circ = \frac{\sqrt{3}-1}{8\sqrt{2}}(\sqrt{5}+1) + \frac{\sqrt{3}+1}{8}\sqrt{5-\sqrt{5}}$$

$$\text{sin. } 54^\circ = \tfrac{1}{4}(\sqrt{5}+1)$$

$$\text{sin. } 57^\circ = -\frac{\sqrt{3}-1}{8\sqrt{2}}(\sqrt{5}-1) + \frac{\sqrt{3}+1}{8}\sqrt{5+\sqrt{5}}$$

$$\text{sin. } 60^\circ = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$$

$$\text{sin. } 63^\circ = \frac{1}{4\sqrt{2}}(\sqrt{5}-1) + \tfrac{1}{4}\sqrt{5+\sqrt{5}}$$

$$\text{sin. } 66^\circ = \frac{1}{8}(\sqrt{5}+1) + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{4\sqrt{2}}\sqrt{5-\sqrt{5}}$$

$$\text{sin. } 69^\circ = \frac{\sqrt{3}+1}{8\sqrt{2}}(\sqrt{5}+1) + \frac{\sqrt{3}-1}{8}\sqrt{5-\sqrt{5}}$$

$$\text{sin. } 72^\circ = \cdots\cdots\cdots \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}}\sqrt{5+\sqrt{5}}$$

$$\text{sin. } 75^\circ = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}}(\sqrt{3}+1)$$

$$\text{sin. } 78^\circ = \frac{1}{8}(\sqrt{5}-1) + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{4\sqrt{2}}\sqrt{5+\sqrt{5}}$$

$$\text{sin. } 81^\circ = \frac{1}{4\sqrt{2}}(\sqrt{5}+1) + \frac{1}{4}\sqrt{5-\sqrt{5}}$$

$$\text{sin. } 84^\circ = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{8}(\sqrt{5}+1) + \frac{1}{4\sqrt{2}}\sqrt{5-\sqrt{5}}$$

$$\text{sin. } 87^\circ = \frac{\sqrt{3}-1}{8\sqrt{2}}(\sqrt{5}-1) + \frac{\sqrt{3}+1}{8}\sqrt{5+\sqrt{5}}$$

$$\text{sin. } 90^\circ = 1$$

To find the values of the trigonometrical functions of angles intermediate to the above we must proceed as follows:—

(73.) To find the numerical value of the sine of 1′.

$$2\ (\text{cos. A})^2 = 1 + \text{cos. } 2\text{A by Art. (43.)}$$
$$2\ (\text{cos. } 30^\circ)^2 = 1 + \text{cos. } 60^\circ$$
$$= 1 + \tfrac{1}{2}$$
$$\therefore \text{cos. } 30^\circ = \sqrt{\frac{1+\frac{1}{2}}{2}} = C_1 \text{ suppose}$$
$$\text{cos. } 15^\circ = \text{cos. } \frac{30^\circ}{2} = \sqrt{\frac{1+C_1}{2}} = C_2$$
$$\text{os. } 7^\circ\, 30' = \text{cos. } \frac{30^\circ}{2^2} = \sqrt{\frac{1+C_2}{2}} = C_3$$

and so by successive bisection we find,

$$\text{cos. } 52''\ 44'''\ \tfrac{1}{16} = \text{cos. } \frac{30^\circ}{2''} = \sqrt{\frac{1+C_{11}}{2}}$$
$$= .9999999674$$
$$\text{and sin. } 52\ \ 44'''\ \tfrac{1}{16} = \sqrt{1 - (\text{cos. } 52''\ 44'''\ \tfrac{1}{16})^2}$$
$$= .0002556254.$$

Now, we should find exactly in a similar manner—

$$\text{sin. } \frac{30^\circ}{2^9} = .0010224959$$
$$\text{sin. } \frac{30^\circ}{2^{10}} = .0005112482$$
$$\text{sin. } \frac{30^\circ}{2^{11}} = .0002556254.$$

The first of these three angles is to the second, and the second to the third, in the ratio of 2 : 1; and it will be observed, by inspection of the above values, that their sines are very nearly in the same ratio, and, indeed, if we took only 8 places of decimals would appear exactly so. Hence we conclude that, when the angles are very small, we may consider, without sensible error, that the sines are proportional to the angles. Hence to find the sine of 1′ we have—

$$\text{sin. } 1' : .0002556254 :: 60'' : 52''\ 44'''\ \tfrac{1}{16},$$
$$\text{whence sin. } 1' = .0002908882\ *$$

and therefore

$$\text{cos. } 1' = .9999999577$$

(74.) To find the sine of 2′, 3′, 4′, &c.

By Art. (38.)

$$\text{sin. (A} + \text{B)} + \text{sin. (A} - \text{B)} = 2 \text{ sin. A cos. B}$$
$$= 2 \text{ sin. A} \left\{1 - 2\left(\text{sin. } \frac{\text{B}}{2}\right)^2\right\}$$

---

* Comparing this value of the sine of 1′ with the numerical value of an angle of one minute, found in the example to Art. (10.), where the angular unit is that mentioned in Art. (7.), it appears that those values coincide for at least ten places of decimals.

$$\therefore \text{sin.}\,(A+B) = 2\,\text{sin.}\,A - \text{sin.}\,(A-B) - 4\,\text{sin.}\,A\left(\text{sin.}\,\frac{B}{2}\right)^2$$

Let B = 1′; and put A successively equal to 1′, 2′, 3′, &c., then—

$$\begin{aligned}\text{sin.}\,2' &= \text{sin.}\,1' + (\text{sin.}\,1' - \text{sin.}\,0') - 4\,\text{sin.}\,1'\,(\text{sin.}\,30'')^2\\ \text{sin.}\,3' &= \text{sin.}\,2' + (\text{sin.}\,2' - \text{sin.}\,1') - 4\,\text{sin.}\,2'\,(\text{sin.}\,30'')^2\\ \text{sin.}\,4' &= \text{sin.}\,3' + (\text{sin.}\,3' - \text{sin.}\,2') - 4\,\text{sin.}\,3\,\ (\text{sin.}\,30'')^2\\ \&\text{c.} &= \qquad \&\text{c.}\end{aligned}$$

The sine of 30″ is known immediately from the sine of 1′; and therefore the value of 4 $(\text{sin.}\,30'')^2$ is easily computed. This being done beforehand, and having tabulated the values of the sines of 1′, 2′, 3′, &c., n', then to find the sine of $(n+1')$, take the last tabulated value, add to it the difference between that and the preceding one, and from the result subtract the last tabulated value multiplied by a constant quantity, the value of 4 $(\text{sin.}\,30'')^2$.

If we wished to calculate successively the values of the series 2°, 3°, &c., knowing those of 1° and of 30′, the same formula will evidently apply.

(75.) The values of the cosines may be calculated from those of the sines, or they may be found as follows: since—

$$\text{cos.}\,\overline{n+1}.A = 2\,\text{cos.}\,A\,\text{cos.}\,n\,A - \text{cos.}\,\overline{n-1}.A. \quad \text{Art. (47.)}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{cos.}\,2' &= 2\,\text{cos.}\,1'\,\text{cos.}\,1' - 1\ (\text{for cos.}\,(1'-1') = \text{cos.}\,0 = 1)\\ \text{cos.}\,3' &= 2\,\text{cos.}\,1'\,\text{cos.}\,2' - \text{cos.}\,1'\\ \text{cos.}\,4' &= 2\,\text{cos.}\,1'\,\text{cos.}\,3' - \text{cos.}\,2'\\ \&\text{c.} &= \qquad \&\text{c.}\end{aligned}$$

(76.) In this manner the sines and cosines of all angles may be computed. It is not necessary, however, to carry the operation farther than for 45°, since the sines of all angles less than 45° would give the cosines of their complements, and the cosines of all such angles the sines of their complements.

(77.) After we have proceeded as far as 30°, the labour of calculation may be considerably abridged by the following formula:—

Sin. $(A+B) = 2\,\text{sin.}\,A\,\text{cos.}\,B - \text{sin.}\,(A-B)$, which gives, making $A = 30^\circ$ (since $\text{sin.}\,30^\circ = \frac{1}{2}$).

Sin. $(30^\circ + B) = \text{cos.}\,B - \text{sin.}\,(30^\circ - B)$, and putting B equal to 1′ 2′, 3′, &c. successively.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{sin.}\,30^\circ\,1' &= \text{cos.}\,1' - \text{sin.}\,29^\circ\,59'\\ \text{sin.}\,30^\circ\,2' &= \text{cos.}\,2' - \text{sin.}\,29^\circ\,58'\\ \&\text{c.} &= \quad \&\text{c.}\end{aligned}$$

Whence the values of the sines of all angles may be formed from 30° to 45°, by simply taking the difference of previously tabulated values.

(78.) Also since

$$\begin{aligned}\text{cos.}\,(A+B) &= \text{cos.}\,(A-B) - 2\,\text{sin.}\,A\,\text{sin.}\,B\\ \text{cos.}\,30^\circ\,1' &= \text{cos.}\,29^\circ\,59' - \text{sin.}\,1' \quad (\text{since } 2\,\text{sin.}\,30^\circ = 1)\\ \text{cos.}\,30^\circ\,2' &= \text{cos.}\,29^\circ\,58' - \text{sin.}\,2'\\ \&\text{c.} &= \&\text{c.}\end{aligned}$$

which formula possesses the same advantage as the previous one.

(79.) The values of the sines and cosines of all angles at any given interval, as far as 90°, having been found, the values of the tangents of the same angles may be obtained by dividing that of the sine by that of the cosine. Having thus calculated as far as 45°, the labour of computation may be abridged by the following formula:

$$^{*}\tan.\,(45^\circ+B) = 2\tan.\,2\,B + \tan.\,(45^\circ-B)$$
$$\tan.\,45^\circ\,1' = 2\tan.\,2' + \tan.\,44^\circ\,59'$$
$$\&c. \quad = \quad \&c.$$

Whence the values of all angles between 45° and 90° are determined by means of values previously tabulated.

(80.) The values of the cotangents of angles are the same as those of the tangents of their complements, and are therefore known directly from what precedes. Also,

$$\sec.\,A = \frac{1}{\cos.\,A};\ \operatorname{cosec}.\,A = \frac{1}{\sin.\,A}$$

whence the values of the secants and cosecants may be computed.

(81.) When the values of the functions of successive angles are calculated from the previously tabulated values, it is manifest that any error in one value will extend to the succeeding ones. To obviate this danger it is necessary to make use of *formulæ of verification*, by which the value of any function is calculated by some independent method. The agreement of the value thus found, with that obtained by the first-mentioned method, is the test of accuracy. Any of the methods used in the first part of this section might be applied for this purpose. The formulæ,

$$\left.\begin{aligned}\sin.\,A &= \tfrac{1}{2}\,\{\sqrt{1+\sin.\,2\,A} \mp \sqrt{1-\sin.\,2\,A}\,\}\\ \cos.\,A &= \tfrac{1}{2}\,\{\sqrt{1+\sin.\,2\,A} \pm \sqrt{1-\sin.\,2\,A}\,\}\end{aligned}\right\}\ \text{Art (44.)}$$

are convenient, as well as that which is frequently termed Euler's formula of verification. It is this:

$$\sin.\,A + \sin.\,(72^\circ+A) - \sin.\,(72^\circ-A) = \sin.\,(36^\circ+A) - \sin.\,(36^\circ-A).$$

To prove this formula, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\sin.\,(72^\circ+A) - \sin.\,(72^\circ-A) &= 2\cos.\,72^\circ\,\sin.\,A \quad \text{Art. (38.)}.\\ &= \frac{\sqrt{5}-1}{2}\,\sin.\,A \quad \text{Art. (71.)}.\end{aligned}$$

Also

$$\begin{aligned}\sin.\,(36^\circ+A) - \sin.\,(36^\circ-A) &= 2\cos.\,36^\circ\,\sin.\,A\\ &= 2\,(1-2\,(\sin.\,18^\circ)^2\,\}\,\sin.\,A\\ &= 2\,\left(1-2.\frac{(\sqrt{5}-1)^2}{16}\right\}\sin.\,A\\ &= \frac{\sqrt{5}+1}{2}\,\sin.\,A\end{aligned}$$

---

* This formula is easily found—

$$\tan.\,(45^\circ+B) = \frac{1+\tan.\,B}{1-\tan.\,B}$$

$$\tan.\,(45^\circ-B) = \frac{1-\tan.\,B}{1+\tan.\,B}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore \tan.\,(45^\circ+B) - \tan.\,(45^\circ-B) &= \frac{(1+\tan.\,B)^2-(1-\tan.\,B)^2}{1-(\tan.\,B)^2}\\ &= \frac{4\tan.\,B}{1-(\tan.\,B)^2} = 2\tan 2\,B,\end{aligned}$$

which proves the formula.

From these values the truth of the formula is evident.

Another formula of the same kind, called Le Gendre's formula, may be found in a similar manner. It is

$$\cos. A = \sin. (45^\circ + A) + \sin. (54^\circ - A) - \sin. (18^\circ + A) - \sin. (18^\circ - A).$$

(32.) The above methods enable us, without any very serious labour, to calculate the values of the trigonometrical functions of angles to any required degree of accuracy, and to a greater number of decimals, if required, than are usually found in trigonometrical tables. The labour of calculating these values for a series of consecutive angles is also very much diminished by the method of *interpolation*, which requires a knowledge of a higher analysis than the reader of an elementary treatise like the present can be supposed to be acquainted with. The values of any function, as the sine, of two angles at a considerable interval, being calculated by some of the previous methods, the values of the sines of the intermediate angles are computed by this method of interpolation. It has been furnished by comparatively modern analysis, at least it was quite unknown to the first laborious calculators of mathematical tables, as well as other convenient formulæ which the progress of trigonometry has since afforded. Industry, however, supplied the place of more compendious methods, and before the beginning of the sixteenth century, tables of natural sines, tangents, &c. were already computed, very nearly equal in accuracy to those we possess at present. That the student may the more readily understand the arrangement of tables of this description, we shall give specimens of two pages extracted from Hutton's tables. The first of these is the first page of the tables, the second the last page.

0 Deg. NATURAL SINES, &c.

′	Sine.	Dif.	Covers.	Cosec.	Tang.	Cotang.	Secant.	Vers.	D.	Cosine.	′
0	0000000	2909	1.000000	Infinite.	0000000	Infinite.	1·0000000	0000000	0	1000000	60
1	0002909	2909	9997091	3437·7468	0002909	3437.7467	1·0000000	0000000	2	1000000	59
2	0005818	2909	9994182	1718.8735	0005818	1718·8732	1·0000002	0000002	2	9999998	58
3	0008727	2909	9991273	1145·9157	0008727	1145·9153	1·0000004	0000004	3	9999996	57
4	0011636	2908	9988364	859·43689	0011638	859·43630	1·0000007	0000007	4	9999993	56
5	0014544	2909	9985456	687·54960	0014544	687·54887	1·0000011	0000011	4	9999989	55
6	0017453	2909	9982547	572·95809	0017453	572·95721	1·0000015	0000015	6	9999985	54
7	0020362	2909	9979638	491·10702	0020362	491·10600	1·0000021	0000021	6	9999979	53
8	0023271	2909	9976729	429·71873	0023271	429·71757	1·0000027	0000027	7	9999973	52
9	0026180	2909	9973820	381·97230	0026180	381·97099	1·0000034	0000034	8	9999966	51
10	0029089	2909	9970911	343·77516	0029089	343·77371	1.0000042	0000042	9	9999958	50
11	0031998	2909	9968002	312·52297	0031998	312·52137	1·0000051	0000051	10	9999949	49
12	0034907	2908	9965093	286·47948	0034907	286·47773	1·0000061	0000061	11	9999939	48
13	0037815	2909	9962185	264·44269	0037816	264·44080	1.0000072	0000072	11	999992	47
14	0040724	2909	9959276	245·55402	0040725	245·55198	1·0000083	0000083	12	9999917	46
15	0043633	2909	9956367	229·18385	0043634	229·18166	1·0000095	0000095	13	9999905	45
16	0046542	2909	9953458	214·85995	0046542	214·85762	1.0000108	0000108	14	9999892	44
17	0049451	2909	9950549	202·22122	0049451	202·21875	1·0000122	0000122	15	9999878	43
18	0052360	2908	9947640	190·98680	0052360	190·98419	1.0000137	0000137	16	9999863	42
19	0055268	2909	9944732	180·93496	0055269	180·93220	1·0000153	0000153	16	9999847	41
20	0058177	2909	9941823	171·88831	0058178	171·88540	1·0000169	0.00169	18	9999831	40
21	0061086	2909	9938914	163·70325	0061087	163·70019	1·0000187	0000187	18	9999813	39
22	0063995	2909	9936005	156·26228	0063996	156·25908	1·0000205	0000205	19	9999795	38
23	0066904	2909	9933096	149·46837	0066905	149·46502	1·0000224	0000224	20	9999776	37
24	0069813	2908	9930187	143·24061	0069814	143·23712	1·0000244	0000244	20	9999756	36
25	0072721	2909	9927279	137·51108	0072723	137·50745	1·0000264	0000264	22	9999736	35
26	0075630	2909	9924370	132·22229	0075632	132·21851	1·0000286	0000286	22	9999714	34
27	0078539	2909	9921461	127·32526	0078541	127·32134	1·0000308	0000308	24	9999692	33
28	0081448	2909	9918552	122·77803	0081450	122·77396	1·0000332	0000332	24	9999668	32
29	0084357	2908	9915643	118·54440	0084360	118·54018	1·0000356	0000356	25	9999644	31
30	0087265	2909	9912735	114·59301	0087269	114·58865	1·0000381	0000381	26	9999619	30
31	0090174	2909	9909826	110·89656	0090178	110·89205	1·0000407	0000407	26	9999593	29
32	0093083	2909	9906917	107·43114	0093087	107·42648	1·0000433	0000433	28	9999567	28
33	0095992	2908	9904008	104·17574	0095996	104.17094	1·0000461	0000461	28	9999539	27
34	0098900	2909	9901100	101·11185	0098905	101·10690	1·0000489	0000489	29	9999511	26
35	0101809	2909	9898191	98·223033	0101814	98·217943	1·0000518	0000518	30	9999482	25
36	0104718	2909	9895282	95·494711	0104724	95·489475	1·0000548	0000548	31	9999452	24
37	0107627	2908	9892373	92·913869	0107633	92·908407	1·0000579	0000579	32	9999421	23
38	0110535	2909	9889465	90·468863	0110542	90·463336	1·0000611	0000611	32	9999389	22
39	0113444	2909	9886556	88·149244	0113451	88·143572	1·0000644	0000644	34	9999357	21
40	0116353	2908	9883647	85·945609	0116361	85·939791	1·0000677	0000677	34	9999323	20
41	0119261	2909	9880739	83 849470	0119270	83·843507	1·0000711	0000711	35	9999289	19
42	0122170	2909	9877830	81·853150	0122179	81·847041	1·0000746	0000746	36	9999254	18
43	0125079	2908	9874921	79·949684	0125088	79·943430	1·0000782	0000782	37	9999218	17
44	0127987	2909	9872013	78·132742	0127998	78.126342	1·0000819	0000819	38	9999181	16
45	0130896	2909	9869104	76·396554	0130907	76·390009	1·0000857	0000857	38	9999143	15
46	0133805	2908	9866195	74·735856	0133817	74·729165	1.0000895	0000895	40	9999105	14
47	0136713	2909	9863287	73·145827	0136726	73·138991	1·0000935	0000935	40	9999065	13
48	0139622	2908	9860378	71·622052	0139635	71·615070	1.0000975	0000975	41	9999025	12
49	0142530	2909	9857470	70·160474	0142545	70·153346	1·0001016	0001016	42	9998984	11
50	0145439	2909	9854561	68·757360	0145454	68·750087	1·0001058	0001058	42	9998942	10
51	0148348	2908	9851652	67·409272	0148364	67·401854	1·0001101	0001100	44	9998900	9
52	0151256	2909	9848744	66·113036	0151273	66·105473	1·0001144	0001144	44	9998856	8
53	0154165	2908	9845835	64·865716	0154183	64·858008	1·0001189	0001188	46	9998812	7
54	0157073	2909	9842927	63.664595	0157093	63·656741	1·0001234	0001234	46	9998766	6
55	0159982	2908	9840018	62·507153	0160002	62·499154	1·0001280	0001280	47	9998720	5
56	0162890	2909	9837110	61·391050	0162912	61·382905	1·0001327	0001327	48	9998673	4
57	0165799	2908	9834201	60·314110	0165821	60·305820	1·0001375	0001375	48	9998625	3
58	0168707	2909	9831293	59·274308	0168731	59·265872	1·0001423	0001423	50	9998577	2
59	0171616	2908	9828384	58·269755	0171641	58·261174	1·0001473	0001473	50	9998527	1
60	0174524		9825476	57·298688	0174551	57·289962	1·0001523	0001523		9998477	0
′	Cosine.	Dif.	Vers.	Secant.	Cotan.	Tang.	Cosec.	Covers.	D.	Sine.	′

NATURAL SINES, &c. 89 Deg.

44 Deg. NATURAL SINES, &c.

'	Sine.	Dif.	Covers.	Cosec.	Tang.	Cotan.	Secant.	Vers.	Dif.	Cosine.	'
0	6946584	2092	3053416	1·4395565	9656888	1·0355303	1·3901636	2806602	2021	7193393	60
1	6948676	2091	3051324	1·4391231	9662511	1·0349277	1·3905543	2808623	2022	7191377	59
2	6950767	2091	3049233	1·4386900	9668137	1·0343254	1·3909453	2810645	2022	7189355	58
3	6952858	2091	3047142	1·4382574	9673767	1·0337235	1·3913366	2812667	2023	7187333	57
4	6954949	2090	3045051	1·4378251	9679399	1·0331220	1·3917283	2814690	2023	7185310	56
5	6957039	2089	3042961	1·4373932	9685035	1·0325208	1·3921203	2816713	2024	7183287	55
6	6959128	2089	3040872	1·4369616	9690674	1·0319199	1·3925127	2818737	2025	7181263	54
7	6961217	2088	3038783	1·4365305	9696316	1·0313195	1·3929054	2820762	2925	7179238	53
8	6963305	2087	3036695	1·4360997	9701962	1·0307194	1·3932985	2822787	2026	7177213	52
9	6965392	2087	3034608	1·4356693	9707610	1·0301196	1·3936918	2824813	2026	7175187	51
10	6967479	2086	3032521	1·4352393	9713262	1·0295203	1·3940856	2826839	2027	7173161	50
11	6969565	2086	3030435	1·4348097	9718917	1·0289212	1·3944796	2828866	2028	7171134	49
12	6971651	2085	3028349	1·4343805	9724575	1·0283226	1·3948740	2830894	2028	7169106	48
13	6973736	2085	3026264	1·4339516	9730236	1·0277243	1·3952688	2832922	2029	7167078	47
14	6975821	2084	3024179	1·4335231	9735901	1·0271263	1·3956639	2834951	2030	7165049	46
15	6977905	2083	3022095	1·4330950	9741569	1·0265287	1·3960593	2836981	2030	7163019	45
16	6979988	2083	3020012	1·4326672	9747240	1·0259315	1·3964551	2839011	2030	7160989	44
17	6982071	2082	3017929	1·4322399	9752914	1·0253346	1·3968512	2841041	2032	7158959	43
18	6984153	2081	3015847	1·4318129	9758591	1·0247381	1·3972477	2843073	2032	7156927	42
19	6986234	2081	3013766	1·4313863	9764272	1·0241419	1·3976445	2845105	2032	7154895	41
20	6988315	2081	3011685	1·4309600	9769956	1·0235461	1·3980416	2847137	2033	7152863	40
21	6990396	2080	3009604	1·4305342	9775643	1·0229506	1·3984391	2849170	2034	7150830	39
22	6992476	2079	3007524	1·4301087	9781333	1·0223555	1·3988369	2851204	2034	7148796	38
23	6994555	2078	3005445	1·4296836	9787027	1·0217608	1·3992351	2853238	2035	7146762	37
24	6996633	2078	3003367	1·4292588	9792724	1·0211664	1·3996336	2855273	2036	7144727	36
25	6998711	2078	3001289	1·4288345	9798424	1·0205723	1·4000325	2857309	2036	7142691	35
26	7000789	2077	2999211	1·4284105	9804127	1·0199786	1·4004317	2859345	2037	7140655	34
27	7002866	2076	2997134	1·4279868	9809833	1·0193853	1·4008313	2861382	2037	7138618	33
28	7004942	2076	2995058	1·4275636	9815543	1·0187923	1·4012312	2863419	2038	7136581	32
29	7007018	2075	2992982	1·4271407	9821256	1·0181997	1·4016315	2865457	2039	7134543	31
30	7009093	2074	2990907	1·4267182	9826973	1·0176074	1·4020321	2867496	2039	7132504	30
31	7011167	2074	2988833	1·4262961	9832692	1·0170155	1·4024330	2869535	2039	7130465	29
32	7013241	2073	2986759	1·4258743	9838415	1·0164239	1·4028343	2871574	2041	7128426	28
33	7015314	2073	2984686	1·4254529	9844141	1·0158326	1·4032360	2873615	2041	7126385	27
34	7017387	2072	2982613	1·4250319	9849871	1·0152418	1·4036380	2875656	2041	7124344	26
35	7019459	2072	2980541	1·4246112	9855603	1·0146512	1·4040403	2877697	2043	7122303	25
36	7021531	2070	2978469	1·4241909	9861339	1·0140610	1·4044430	2879740	2042	7120260	24
37	7023601	2071	2976399	1·4237710	9867079	1·0134712	1·4048461	2881782	2044	7118218	23
38	7025672	2069	2974328	1·4233514	9872821	1·0128817	1·4052494	2883826	2044	7116174	22
39	7027741	2070	2972259	1·4229323	9878567	1·0122925	1·4056532	2885870	2044	7114130	21
40	7029811	2068	2970189	1·4225134	9884316	1·0117038	1·4060573	2887914	2045	7112086	20
41	7031879	2068	2968121	1·4220950	9890069	1·0111153	1·4064617	2889959	2046	7110041	19
42	7033947	2067	2966053	1·4216769	9895825	1·0105272	1·4068665	2892005	2047	7107995	18
43	7036014	2067	2963986	1·4212592	9901584	1·0099394	1·4072717	2894052	2047	7105948	17
44	7038081	2066	2961919	1·4208418	9907346	1·0093520	1·4076772	2826099	2047	7103901	16
45	7040147	2066	2959853	1·4204248	9913112	1·0087649	1·4080831	2898146	2048	7101854	15
46	7042213	2065	2957787	1·4200082	9918881	1·0081782	1·4084893	2900194	2049	7099806	14
47	7044278	2064	2955722	1·4195920	9924654	1·0075918	1·4088958	2902243	2050	7097757	13
48	7046342	2064	2953658	1·4191761	9930429	1·0070058	1·4093028	2904293	2050	7095707	12
49	7048406	2063	2951594	1·4187605	9936208	1·0064201	1·4097100	2906343	2050	7093657	11
50	7050469	2063	2949531	1·4183454	9941991	1·0058348	1·4101177	2908393	2051	7091607	10
51	7052532	2062	2947468	1·4179306	9947777	1·0052497	1·4105257	2910444	2052	7089556	9
52	7054594	2061	2945406	1·4175161	9953566	1·0046651	1·4109340	2912496	2053	7087504	8
53	7056655	2061	2943345	1·4171020	9959358	1·0040807	1·4113427	2914549	2053	7085451	7
54	7058716	2060	2941284	1·4166883	9965154	1·0034968	1·4117517	2916602	2053	7083398	6
55	7060776	2059	2939224	1·4162749	9970953	1·0029131	1·4121612	2918655	2054	7081345	5
56	7062835	2059	2937165	1·4158619	9976756	1·0023298	1·4125709	2920709	2055	7079291	4
57	7064894	2059	2935106	1·4154493	9982562	1·0017469	1·4129810	2922764	2056	7077236	3
58	7066953	2058	2933047	1·4150370	9988371	1·0011642	1·4133915	2924820	2056	7075180	2
59	7069011	2057	2930989	1·4146251	9994184	1·0005819	1·4138024	2926876	2056	7073124	1
60	7071068		2928932	1·4142136	1·0000000	1·0000000	1·4142136	2928932		7071068	0
'	Cosine.	Dif.	Vers.	Secant.	Cotan.	Tang.	Cosec.	Covers	Dif.	Sine.	'

45 Deg.

(83.) At the top of the page on the left-hand side is placed the number of degrees, and in the left-hand column each minute of the degree, opposite to which are arranged the numerical values of the sine, coversed sine, &c., of the corresponding angle in those columns, at the *top* of which those terms are placed. The table proceeds thus until we come to the 44th deg. on the top of the page, with the minutes of that degree as before in the left-hand column.

Also at the bottom of this last page of the table will be found Deg. 45 and the minutes of the degree arranged in a column on the right-hand side, beginning at the bottom, so that the angles thus read off on the right-hand side are complementary to those read off at the points exactly opposite on the left-hand side, the values of the sines, coversed sines, &c. of the former being found in the columns at the *bottom* of which those terms are found. In each page will be found an exactly similar arrangement, which is rendered practicable by the circumstance of the sines, tangents, &c., of angles, being respectively equal to the cosines, cotangents, &c., of the complements of the same angles.

It will be observed that the decimal point is omitted whenever the numerical value is less than unity. It must, in such cases, be placed immediately before the left-hand figure.

Example—

sin. 0° 55′ = ·0159982
cos. 89° 11′ = ·0142530
cosec. 44° 31′ = 1·4262961
tan. 45° 17′ = 1·0099394

(84.) Besides the columns headed sine, tangent, &c., are two smaller columns headed *Diff.*, one next to that for the sine, the other next to that for the cosine. They contain the *differences* between the values of the sines and of the cosines of consecutive tabulated angles, as is easily seen by inspection. They are inserted for the convenience of finding the values of the sines and cosines of angles, which are expressed in degrees, minutes, and parts of a minute or seconds. And it must be observed that the right-hand digit of this *difference* corresponds to the right-hand digit of the decimal given in the tables; so that, for example, 2088 means 0002088, where the tables are carried to seven places of decimals. Thus, to find the sine of 44° 7′ 30″, we have

$$\begin{array}{lcr} \text{sin. } 44^\circ\ 7' & = & 6961217 \\ \text{sin. } 44^\circ\ 8' & = & \underline{6963305} \\ \text{Diff.} & = & 2088 \end{array} \quad \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{omitting the} \\ \text{decimal point.} \end{array} \right.$$

And we conclude that the difference between the sines of 44° 7′ and 44° 7′ 30″ will be half the above difference, *i. e.*, that the differences of the sines will be proportional to the differences of the angles. This conclusion is not strictly accurate; but the error is not sensible (except in particular cases) in the first seven or eight places of decimals, which are all that are found in the tables commonly used. Hence

$$\begin{array}{lcr} \text{sin. } 44^\circ\ 7' & = & 6961217 \\ \text{diff.} = \dfrac{2088}{2} & = & \underline{1044} \\ \text{sin. } 44^\circ\ 7'\ 30'' & = & .6962261. \end{array}$$

To find cos. 45° 11′ 24″

cos. 45° 11′ = 7048406 Diff. = 2064

$$^{*}\text{diff.} = 2064.\frac{24}{60} = \quad -825$$

$$\text{cos. } 45^\circ\ 11'\ 24'' = \overline{.7047581}$$

(85.) This rule constitutes what is called the method of *proportional parts.* It is easily proved as follows:—

Let A be any proposed angle expressed in degrees and minutes only; δ the difference between sin. $(A + n'')$ and sin. A; Δ the difference between sin. $(A + 1')$ and sin. A; the successive values of Δ, corresponding to successive tabulated values of A differing by $1'$, will then be those registered in the small columns above-mentioned, headed *Diff.*

Now

$$\text{sin. } (A + n'') = \text{sin. } A \text{ cos. } n'' + \text{cos. } A \text{ sin. } n'';$$

and by Art. (21), if n be not too large (as less than $60''$) cos. $n'' = 1$ very nearly: also since the numerical value of a small angle, estimated as in Art. (7.), is very nearly equal that of its sine. (See note, p. 40.)

sin. n'' = numerical value nearly of the angle containing n''. (See note, p. 40, and Art. 9.)

$$= \frac{3.14159}{180.60.60}.n; \text{ and hence}$$

$$\delta = \text{sin. } (A + n'') - \text{sin. } A = \text{cos. } A \frac{3.14159}{180.60.60} n$$

$$\Delta = \text{sin. } (A + 1') - \text{sin. } A = \text{cos. } A \frac{3.14159}{180.60.60}.60,$$

$$\therefore \frac{\delta}{\Delta} = \frac{n}{60}; \quad \delta = \frac{n}{60} \Delta,$$

which proves the rule. A similar investigation would prove it for the tangent, secant, &c.

(86.) It will easily appear, from an inspection of the tables, that the proportionality on which this method of proportional parts depends, no longer exists for the sine, tangent, or secant, when the angle is nearly equal to 90°, or for the cosine, cotangent, or cosecant, when the angle is very small. Thus, for example, sin. 89° 58′ − sin. 89° 56′ is not *twice* as great as sin. 89° 58′ − sin. 89° 57′, though the difference of the angles is *twice* as great in one case as in the other. In fact we have supposed, in our investigation of the rule, that

$$\text{sin. } (A + n'') - \text{sin. } A = \text{cos. } A.h$$

where $h = \frac{3.14159}{180.60.60}.n$ a very small quantity; whereas a closer investigation (very easily made by the aid of the Differential Calculus) shows that

$$\delta = \text{sin. } (A + n'') - \text{sin. } A = \text{cos. } A\,h - \text{sin. } A \frac{h^2}{2} + \&\text{c.},$$

$$\text{and if } k = \frac{3.14159}{180.60.60}.60,$$

$$\Delta = \text{sin. } (A + 1') - \text{sin. } A = \text{cos. } A\,k - \text{sin. } A \frac{k^2}{2} + \&\text{c.},$$

---

* Cos. 45° 12′ is less than cos. 45° 11′: the *difference* is therefore properly *negative.*

$$\therefore \frac{\delta}{\Delta} = \frac{\cos. A\, h - \sin. A \frac{h^2}{2} + \&c.}{\cos. A\, k - \sin. A \frac{k^2}{2} + \&c.}$$

Now this becomes $\frac{h}{k}$, or $\frac{n}{60}$ only when the second and following terms in these expansions are respectively so much smaller than the first terms, that the value of the above ratio will not be sensibly affected by omitting them; and since h and k are very small, this will always be the case unless cos. A is very small, in which case the second terms cannot be omitted without sensible error. A similar investigation would apply to the other cases.

(87.) The values of trigonometrical functions for all angles greater than 90°, are immediately known by the formulæ of Section (II.)

(88.) If, instead of having the angle given to determine the sine or tangent, &c., we have these latter functions given to determine the angle, the process will manifestly be exactly the reverse of that described above; and if we would determine the angle with accuracy we must have recourse to the method of proportional parts, whenever the given values of the function is not to be exactly found among the tabulated ones.

(89.) In determining the angle, however, from any of its trigonometrical functions, there will be the same objection to the use of the tables of proportional parts, as in the converse operation, in the cases above-mentioned. There is also a second difficulty of a different nature in some cases which may be easily explained. We have

$\sin. (A + 1') - \sin. A = \cos. A \frac{3.14159}{180.60}$ very nearly; and consequently if cos. A be very small, the difference of the sines of two or more consecutive tabulated angles may be too small to be expressed by any significant figure within the first seven or eight places of decimals, in which case it will be impossible, from the common tables, to ascertain the value of the angle with accuracy. This difficulty will only occur with respect to the sine when the angle is nearly equal 90°, which is the case in which the first-mentioned objection also applies.

(90.) Hence, then, we cannot conveniently, by a table of natural sines, cosines, &c., determine the value of the angle from that of its sine, tangent, or secant, when the angle is near 90°; or from the cosine, cotangent, or cosecant, when the angle is small. In such cases the angle must be determined by means of some other functions.

(91.) Examples:

In Art. (53.) we have shown that

$$\frac{\sin. B}{\sin. C} = \frac{b}{c}$$

B C being two angles of a triangle and b c the sides opposite.

Let $B = 44° 3'$
$C = 45° 59' 5''$
$c = 23.25$

then $b = \frac{\sin. 44° 3'}{\sin. 45° 59' 5''} \times 23.25$

$$= \frac{.6952858}{.7191545} \times 23.25 \text{ (by the tables),}$$

which, on performing the numerical operations, will be found $= 22.4783$.

Again, by Art. (4),

$$\text{sin. A} = \frac{2}{bc}\sqrt{\text{S} \,.\, \overline{\text{S}-a} \,.\, \overline{\text{S}-b} \,.\, \overline{\text{S}-c}.}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Let } a &= 22 \\ b &= 33 \\ c &= 45 \\ \text{then S} &= 50 \\ \text{S} - a &= 28 \\ \text{S} - b &= 17 \\ \text{S} - c &= 5 \\ bc &= 1485. \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{sin. A} &= \frac{1}{742.5}\sqrt{50.28.17.5} \\ &= .521287 \end{aligned}$$

Whence we find by the tables,

$$\text{A} = 31^\circ\, 25'\, 7''$$

We have stated that, at the latter end of the sixteenth century, the tables of natural sines, cosines, &c., were brought to great perfection. In fact, the attention of the most distinguished mathematicians of that and the preceding century had been in succession devoted to the perfecting of them. Their importance, at that period, will be easily understood; but the facilities which they afforded in numerical computations were far from meeting the demand for such facilities created by the more extensive applications of trigonometry to astronomy, leading to the most tedious arithmetical operations, the labours of which were, in fact, only augmented in proportion to the greater number of decimal places to which the numerical values of the quantities involved were computed. It was natural, therefore, that the minds of mathematicians should be much directed to the discovery of methods for abridging the labour of arithmetical calculations; and several contrivances for this purpose were invented, all of which, however, were entirely and immediately superseded by the invention of logarithms, a circumstance which forms an epoch in the history of mathematical science.

From the nature of demonstrative science, in which we ascend from simple elementary truths to the more abstruse propositions under the guidance of close and accurate reasoning, and not by the devious ways of conjecture and experiment, different men will arrive by similar steps at the same points in the boundaries of knowledge, and, it may be expected, will not unfrequently be endeavouring to pursue the same paths of discovery by similar means. The same idea, the germ of some future discovery, may exist simultaneously more or less matured in different minds; and the process of its development may be going on at the same time though with different degrees of rapidity and vigour; and consequently we ought not, perhaps, to be surprised if, in the history of science, we meet with instances of disputed claims to priority of invention, which, at first sight, might appear to indicate, in some at least of the contending parties, a want of candour and ingenuousness which it must ever be painful to recognize among those who have otherwise assisted in dignifying the human character by extending the bounds of human knowledge. The invention of logarithms was not without its disputed claimants; and, in fact, there seems no doubt but that some notion of it, though little matured, did exist in the minds of several mathematicians about the close of the sixteenth century. To these we may allow their share of merit without lessening the tribute due to Napier, a Scotch baron, whose claims to originality and to priority of publication have never been doubted. He devoted himself much to mathematical pursuits, and discovered several trigonometrical theorems, some of which are still distinguished by his name. His great discovery of logarithms was made known to the world in his work entitled *Mirifici Logarithmorum Canonis Descriptio*, which was published in 1614.

The importance of this invention could not but be immediately acknowledged, but can only be fully appreciated by those who are acquainted with the applications of mathematics to plane and physical astronomy in the present age, and the complicated arithmetical computations arising therefrom. Without logarithmic tables, the labours of a modern observatory would far surpass the efforts of human industry, and, consequently, even with all the theoretical knowledge and acquaintance with pure mathematics, which we actually possess, the sublime deductions of the mathematical philosopher respecting the constitution of the solar system, could never have received that verification which can alone be derived from the repeated and refined observations of the practical astronomer. On the other hand, the difficulty of the invention (on which much of the merit of the inventor will naturally be thought to depend) can hardly be appreciated by those who have considered logarithms only under the point of view in which they are presented to us by our improved analysis, and which is so much more simple than that in which Napier considered them. His methods of computing them were also much less simple than those which we possess, and consequently the labour much greater. It would be useless to enter into any detail respecting them ; and for the demonstrations of the general properties of logarithms, the present methods of computing them, with the construction and use of the logarithmic tables of natural numbers, we shall refer to our treatise on Algebra *, reserving a place in the present treatise for the description and use of the tables of logarithmic sines, cosines, &c.

SECTION VI.

Explanation of the Tables of Logarithmic Sines, Tangents, &c.

(39.) Having logarithmic tables for all the natural numbers as far as may be necessary for our computations; and having, also, a table of the values of the natural sines, tangents, &c., up to 90°, we may construct a table of logarithmic sines, tangents, &c. of the same angles by merely taking the logarithms of these values from our logarithmic table; a method which has been preferred by some writers, while others have given the preference to the independent methods by which these tables may be calculated. These latter, however, have the advantage of not being liable to the errors which may previously exist in the other tables, and may also serve to calculate logarithms, if required, to a greater degree of accuracy than those in the common tables. As they are not, however, absolutely necessary, we shall postpone any investigation of them to a future part of this work, to which they will more properly belong.

---

* See Algebra, Arts. (234—254.) and (326—337.)

Description of the Table of Logarithmic Sines, Tangents, &c.

(40.) The arrangement of this table is precisely similar to that of the natural sines, tangents, &c., as will be seen by the extracts in the two pages at the end of this section, which are copied from Hutton's tables.

The greatest value of the sine being unity, the sines of all angles less than 90° will be expressed by a decimal fraction, and its logarithms will consequently be negative. This will also be the case with the cosine, with the tangents of angles sufficiently small, and, in fact, in all cases in which the numerical value of the function is less than unity. *To avoid these negative logarithms,* ten *has been added to each logarithm, or its characteristic has been increased by that number.* This must be carefully borne in mind in using the table.

If the angle whose logarithmic sine, tangent, &c., is required to be given in degrees and minutes, look for the degrees, if the angle be less than 45°, at the top of the page, and for the minutes in the left hand column; if the angle be greater than 45°, look for the degrees at the bottom of the page, and for the minutes in the right hand column; the logarithm of the proposed function of the angle will be found opposite the minutes in its proper column.

If the angle be expressed in degrees, minutes, and seconds, the method of proportional parts must be used exactly in the same manner as in making use of the table of Natural Sines, &c. (See Art. 84.) This will generally give the result with sufficient accuracy.

If the angle be greater than 90°, the values of its logarithmic sine, tangent, and secant, will be expressed by the same numbers respectively as those of the sine, tangent, and secant of the supplement. We must, of course, be careful to affix the proper sign + or −. The above values, then, are easily determined from the table. The value of the versed sine of an angle greater than 90° is not, however, so easily determinable from that of its supplement. It may be thus found:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{vers. } A &= 1 - \cos. A\\ &= 2\left(\sin. \frac{A}{2}\right)^2\end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore \log. \text{vers. } A = \log. 2 + 2 \log. \sin. \frac{A}{2}$$

or denoting the *tabular* logarithm by $\log_t$., since $\log_t \text{vers. } A = \log. \text{vers. } A + 10$, and therefore $\log. \text{vers. } A = \log_t, \text{vers. } A - 10$; we have

$$\log_t \text{vers. } A - 10 = \log_t 2 + 2\left(\log_t \sin. \frac{A}{2} - 10\right)$$

$$\begin{aligned}\log_t \text{vers. } A &= \log_t 2 + 2 \log_t \sin. \frac{A}{2} - 10\\ &= .3010300 + 2 \log_t \sin. \frac{A}{2} - 10\end{aligned}$$

Whence the required logarithm is found by means of the tables, $\frac{A}{2}$ being less than 90°.

Examples.

Find $\log_t \sin. 10^\circ\, 5'\, 22''$

$\log_t \sin. 10^\circ\, 5'$ . . . . . . $= 9.2432374$

$\text{Prop}^1\,\text{p}^t = \text{tab. diff.} \times \frac{22}{60} = 7098.\frac{11}{30} =$ $+\ 2602$

$\log_t 10^\circ\, 5'\, 22''$ 9.2434976

Find $\log_t \cos. 6^\circ\, 8'\, 42''$

$\log_t \cos. 6^\circ\, 8'$ . . . . $= 9.9975069$

$\text{Prop}^1\,\text{p}^t = \text{tab. diff.} \times \frac{42}{60} = -\ 136.\frac{21}{30} =$ -95

$\log_t \sin. 6^\circ\, 8'\, 22''$ . . . . . . $= 9.9974974$

Find $\log_t \cot. 39^\circ\, 4'\, 12''\, 30'''$

$\log_t \cot. 39^\circ\, 4'$ . . . . $= 10.0905978$

$\text{Prop}^1\,\text{p}^t = \text{tab. diff.} \times \frac{12.5}{60} = -\,2581 \times .208 =$ -537

10.0905441

(41.) The rule for the method of proportional parts may be thus proved in a manner very similar to the proof of it for natural sines, &c.

Let $\delta = \log_t \sin. (A + n'') - \log_t \sin. A$

$\Delta = \log_t \sin. (A + 1') - \log_t \sin. A,$

then

$$\delta = \log_t \frac{\sin. (A + n'')}{\sin. A}$$

$$= \log_t \{\cos. n'' + \cot. A \sin. n''\}$$

$$= \log_t \left\{1 + \cot. A . \frac{3.14159}{180.60.60} . n\right\} \text{nearly, Art. (9.) and note, p. 40.}$$

$$= M \cot. A . \frac{3.14159}{180.60.60}\, n \text{ nearly; (Algebra, Art. 332.)}$$

$$\therefore\ \Delta = M \cot. A\, \frac{3.14159}{180.60.60} . 60$$

$$\therefore\ \frac{\delta}{\Delta} = \frac{u}{60}\ :\ \delta = \frac{n}{60}\, \Delta$$

and $\log. \sin. (A + n'') = \log_t \sin. A + \frac{n}{60}\, \Delta$

which proves the rule for the sine. In a similar manner we may prove it for the tangent.

(42.) Thus let

$$\delta' = \log_t \tan. (A + n'') - \log_t \tan.$$

$$= \log_t \frac{\tan. (A + n'')}{\tan. A}$$

$$= \log_t \frac{1 + \frac{\tan. n''}{\tan. A}}{1 - \tan. A. \tan. n''}$$

Now, when the angle is very small, the numerical value of its tangent differs very little from that of its sine, or of the angle itself. Therefore instead of tan. n'' we put its approximate value

$$\frac{3.14159}{180.60.60}.n \text{ or } h\text{; thus}$$

$$\delta' = \log_t \left(1 + \frac{h}{\text{tan. A}}\right)\left(1 - \text{tan. A}. h\right)^{-1}$$

$$= \log_t \left\{1 + \left(\text{tan. A} + \frac{1}{\text{tan. A}}\right)h\right\} \text{(omitting higher powers of } h.)$$

$$= \log_t \left\{1 + \frac{1 + (\text{tan. A})}{\text{tan. A}}h\right\}$$

$$= \text{M}. \quad \frac{1 + (\text{tan. A})^2}{\text{tan. A.}}h \text{ nearly.}$$

$$= \text{M}. \quad \frac{1 + (\text{tan. A})^2}{\text{tan. A}}.\frac{3.14159}{180.60.60}.\, n$$

$$\Delta' = \text{M}. \quad \frac{1 + (\text{tan. A})^2}{(\text{tan. A})}.\frac{3.14159}{180.60.60}.\, 60$$

$$\therefore \delta' = \frac{n}{60}.\ \Delta'$$

$$\text{and } \log_t \text{tan. } (\text{A} + n'') = \log_t \text{tan. A} + \delta'$$

$$= \log_t \text{tan. A} + \frac{n}{60}\Delta'$$

(43.) These rules admit of exceptions exactly similar to those which have been pointed out in the analogous rules for the natural sines, tangents, &c. (Arts. 85, 86.) By means of the differential calculus it is very easily shown with respect to the sine, that

$$* \delta = \text{M. cot. A. } h - \text{M (cosec. A)}^2\frac{h^2}{1.2.} + \&\text{c.}$$

$$\Delta = \text{M. cot. A } k - \text{M (cosec. A)}^2\frac{k^2}{1.2.} + \&\text{c.}$$

k being the value of h when $n = 60$, as in Art. (34;) and as in that article the ratio of $\frac{\delta}{\Delta}$ will no longer be expressed by $\frac{h}{k}$ or $\frac{n}{60}$ if cosec. A be very large, or A very small, for in such case the second terms in the above expansions cannot be neglected, and the method of proportional parts will not apply.

With respect to the tangent we find

$$\delta' = \text{M } \{\text{tan. A} + \text{cot. A}\}h + \text{M}\{(\text{sect. A})^2 - (\text{cosec. A})^2\}\frac{h^2}{1.2.} + \&\text{c.}$$

(44.) These formulæ will show that the method of proportional parts will

---

* As this is merely introduced that nothing may be wanting in our explanation of the tables, the reader who is not acquainted with the elementary principles of the differential calculus may take this expression for granted. A slight knowledge of the calculus will enable him to deduce it; for, by Taylor's theorem,

$$= \frac{d\,(\log_t \text{sin. A})}{d\text{A}}\, h + \frac{d^2\,(\log_t \text{sin. A})}{d\text{A}^2}\, \frac{h^2}{1.2} + \&\text{c.}$$

The differentiations being performed give the above series.

not hold for the tangent when the angle is small or nearly equal 90°, and for the sine when the angle is small. In such cases, in order to determine the values of $\log_t \sin. (A + n'')$ or of $\log_t \tan. (A + n'')$ from the formulæ

$$\log_t \sin. (A + n'') = \log_t \sin. A + \delta$$
$$\log_t \tan. (A + n'') = \log_t \tan. A + \delta'$$

we must use as many terms in the values of δ and δ' as cannot be neglected without sensible error. This is a troublesome process, and should therefore, if possible, be avoided.

(45.) In a table calculated for every *minute*, the above use of the method of proportional parts, in the cases just mentioned, might lead to the error of several seconds in the determination of the angle from its logarithmic sine or tangent; but this is in a great measure avoided in most tables by a table of logarithmic sines and tangents for every *second* of the first two degrees, which in the determination of small angles precludes any error above the fractional part of a second.

(46.) There is also another difficulty, an analogous one to which we have pointed out in the tables of Natural Sines, &c. (Art. 89), arising from the circumstance of several tabulated values of the logarithmic sines of successive angles not differing much from 90°, being the same, it being then of course impossible to determine the angle exactly from its logarithmic sine. This difficulty is of much more importance than the previous one, because it cannot, like that, be obviated merely by an adaptation in the tables; for it would require not only that, for angles nearly equal 90°, the logarithmic sines should be tabulated for every second to a sufficient number of places of decimals to exhibit the small differences between consecutive values, but it would also be necessary to calculate other values in each particular problem in which the sines of such angles might occur, to the same number of decimal places as that just mentioned, a process which would necessarily be in general extremely laborious. Consequently angles which nearly equal 90° are much better determined from some other functions than their logarithmic sines.

That this equality in successive tabulated logarithmic sines exists for angles which are nearly 90° appears from the small value of δ in Art. (41.) in such case. With respect to the tangent, an inspection of the value of δ' shows that it is never very small; and consequently the objection we have just pointed out with respect to the logarithmic sine will not be found at all with regard to the logarithmic tangent.

(47.) Similar reasoning will easily be applied to the other trigonometrical functions; and we conclude that, on account of the difficulty just stated, *When the angle is small, it cannot be conveniently determined from its logarithmic cosine or secant; or when it is near 90° from its sine or cosecant. The determination of the angle from its logarithmic tangent is never liable to this objection.*

Without the table which we have mentioned, in which the logarithmic sines and tangents are given for every second of the first two degrees of the quadrant, it is manifest that one or other of the difficulties of which we have spoken would necessarily occur in the determination of very small angles, which shows the importance of such a table to the calculator.

In the two following pages are the extracts from Hutton's tables mentioned in Art. 40.

0 Deg. LOG. SINES, &c.

′	Sine.	Diff.	Cosec.	Verseds.	Tang.	Diff.	Cotang.	Covers.	Secant.	D	Cosine	′
0	Inf. Neg.	Infin.	Infinite.	Inf. Neg	Inf. Neg.	Infin.	Infinite.	10·000000	10·0000000	0	10·000000	60
1	6·4637261	3010300	13·5362739	2·6264222	6·4637261	3010301	13.5362739	9·9998737	10·0000000	1	10·000000	59
2	6·7647561	1760912	13·2352439	3·2284822	6·7647562	1760913	13·2352438	9·9997473	10 0000001	1	9·9999999	58
3	6·9408473	12.9387	13·0591527	3 5806647	1·9408475	1249388	13·0591525	9·9996205	10·0000002	1	9·9999998	57
4	7·0657860	969100	12·9342140	3·8305422	7·0657863	969101	12·9342137	9·9994944	10 0000003	2	9·9939997	56
5	7·1626960	791811	12·8373040	4·0243622	7·1626964	791814	12·8373036	9·9993679	10·0000005	2	9·9999995	55
6	7·2418771	669468	12·7581229	4·1827246	7·2418778	669470	12·7581222	9·9992414	10·0000007	2	9·9999993	54
7	7·3088239	579918	12·6911761	4·3166182	7·3088248	579921	12·6911582	9·9991148	10·0000009	3	9·9999991	53
8	7·3668157	511584	12·6331843	4·4326020	7·3668169	511527	12·6331831	9·9989882	10.0000012	3	9·9999988	52
9	7·4179681	457574	12·5820319	4·5349070	7·4176696	457577	12·5820304	9·9988615	10·0000015	3	9·9999985	51
10	7·4637255	413926	12 5362745	4·6264219	7·4637273	413930	12·5362727	9·9987348	10·0000018	4	9·9999982	50
11	7·5051181	377884	12·4948819	4·7092072	7·5051203	377888	12·4948797	9·9986081	10·0000022	4	9 9999978	49
12	7·5429065	347619	12·4570935	4·7847843	7·5429091	347624	12·4570909	9·9984814	10·0000026	5	9·9999974	48
13	7·5776684	321846	12·4223316	4·8543084	7·5776715	321851	12.4223285	9·9983546	10·0000031	5	9·9999969	47
14	7·6098530	299630	12·3901470	4·9186777	7·6098566	299635	12·3901434	9·9982278	10·0000036	5	9·9999964	46
15	7·6398160	280285	12·3601840	4·9786041	7·6398201	280291	12·3601799	9·9981009	10.0000041	6	9·9999959	45
16	7·6678445	263288	12·3321555	5 0346614	7·6678492	963294	12·3321508	9·9979740	10.0000047	6	9·9999953	44
17	7·6941733	248233	12·3058267	5·0873192	7·6941786	248240	12·3058214	9·9978471	10·0000053	7	9·9999947	43
18	7·7189966	234809	12·2810034	5·1369663	7·7190026	234815	12·2809974	9·9977201	10.0000060	6	9·9999940	42
19	7·7424775	222762	12·2575225	5·1839283	7·7424841	222769	12·2575159	9·9975931	10·0000066	7	9·9999934	41
20	7·7647537	211890	12·2352463	5·2284810	7·7647610	211898	12·2352390	9·9974660	10·0000073	8	9·9999927	40
21	7·7859427	202031	12·2140573	5·2708595	7·7859508	202039	12.2140492	0·9973389	10·0000081	8	9·9999919	39
22	7·8061458	193049	12·1938542	5·3112661	7·8061547	193057	12·1938453	9·9972118	10·0000089	8	9·9999911	38
23	7·8254507	184831	12·1745493	5·3498763	7·8254604	184840	12·1745396	9·9970846	10·0000097	9	9·9999903	37
24	7·8439338	177285	12·1560662	5·3868430	7·8439444	177294	12·1560556	9·9969574	10·0000106	9	9.9999894	36
25	7·8616623	170330	12·1383377	5·4223003	7·8616738	170339	12·1383262	9·9968302	10·0000115	9	9·9999885	35
26	7·8786953	163901	12·1213047	5·4563669	7·8787077	163911	12·1212923	9·9967029	10·0000124	10	9·9999876	34
27	7·8950854	157939	12·1049146	5·4891475	7·895 988	157950	12·1049012	9·9965756	10·0000134	10	9·9999866	33
28	7·9108793	152397	12·0891207	5·5207359	7·9108936	152406	12·0891062	9·9964483	10·0000144	11	9·9995856	32
29	7·9261190	147229	12·0738810	5·5512157	7·9261344	147240	12·0738656	9·9963209	10·0000155	10	9·9999845	31
30	7·9408419	142400	12·0591581	5·5806620	7·9408584	142412	12·0591416	9·9961935	10.0000165	12	9.9999835	30
31	7·9550819	137879	12·0449181	5·6091427	7·9550996	137890	12·0449004	9.9960660	10.0000177	11	9·9999823	29
32	7·9688698	133636	12·0311302	5·6367191	7·9588886	133648	12·0311114	9·9959385	10·0000188	12	9 9999812	28
33	7·9822334	129646	12·0177666	5·6634468	7·9822534	129658	12·0177466	9·9958110	10·0000200	12	9·9969800	27
34	7·9951980	125887	12·0048020	5·6893765	7·9052192	125900	12·0047808	9·9956834	10 0000212	13	9·9999788	26
35	8·0077867	122340	11·9922133	5·7145546	8·0078092	122353	11.9921908	9·9955558	10·0000225	13	9·9999775	25
36	8·0200207	118988	11·9799793	5·7390233	8·0200445	119001	11·9799555	9·9954282	10·0000238	14	9·9999762	24
37	8·0319195	115814	11·9680805	5·7628815	8·0319446	115828	11·9680554	9·9953005	10·0000252	13	9·9999748	23
38	8·0435009	112805	11·9564991	5·7859850	8·0435274	112820	11·9564726	9·9951728	10·0000265	14	9·9999735	22
39	8·0547814	109949	11·9452186	5·8085468	8·0548094	109963	12·9451906	9·9950450	10·0200279	15	9·9999721	21
40	8·0657763	107234	11·9342237	5·8305373	8·0658057	107249	11·9341943	9·9949172	10·0000294	15	9·9999706	20
41	8·0764997	104649	11·9235003	5·8519848	8·0765306	104664	11·9234694	9·9947894	10.0000309	15	9·9999691	19
42	8·0869646	102186	11·9130354	5·8729154	8·0869970	102202	11.9130030	9.9946615	10·0000324	16	9·9999676	18
43	8·0971832	99837	11·9028168	5·8933535	8·0972172	99873	11·9027828	9·9945336	10 0000340	16	9·9999660	17
44	8·1071669	97598	11·8928331	5·9133217	8·1072025	97609	11·8927975	9·9944057	10·0000356	16	9·9999644	16
45	8·1169262	95448	11·8830738	5·9328411	8·1169634	95465	11·8830366	9·9942777	10·0000372	17	9·9999628	15
46	8·1264710	93394	11·8735290	5·9519314	8·1265099	93411	11·8734901	9·9941497	10·0000389	17	9·9999611	14
47	8 1358104	91428	11·8641896	5·9706112	8·1358510	91446	11·8641490	9·9940217	10.0000406	17	9·9999594	13
48	8·1449532	89543	11·8550468	5·9888977	8·1449956	89560	11·8550044	9·9938936	10·0000423	18	9·9999577	12
49	8·1539075	87733	11·8460925	6·0068070	8·1539516	87751	11·8460484	9·9937654	10·0000441	18	9·9999559	11
50	8·1626808	85996	11·8373192	6·0243546	8·1627267	86015	11·8372733	9·9936373	10·0000459	19	9·9999541	10
51	8·1712804	84325	11·8287196	6·0415546	8·1713282	84344	11.8286718	9·9935091	10·0900478	19	9·9999522	9
52	8·1797129	82719	11·8202871	6·0584206	8·1797626	82738	11·8202374	9·9933808	10·0000497	19	9·9999503	8
53	8·1879848	81172	11·8120152	6·0749654	8·1880364	81192	11·8119636	9·9932526	10·0000516	20	9·9999484	7
54	8·1961020	79683	11·8038980	6·0912008	8·1961556	79703	11·8038444	9·9931243	10·0000536	20	9·9999464	6
55	8·2040703	78246	11·7959297	6·1071384	8·2041259	78267	11·7958741	9·9929959	10·0000556	20	9·9999444	5
56	8·2118949	76862	11·7881051	6·1227857	8·2119526	76882	11·7880474	9·9928675	10·0000576	21	9·9999424	4
57	8·2195811	75524	11·7804189	6·1381620	8·2196408	75545	11·7803592	9·9927391	10·0000597	21	9·9999403	3
58	8·2271335	74233	11·7728665	6·1532679	8·2271953	74255	11·7728047	9·9926106	10·0000618	22	9·9999382	2
59	8·2345568	72985	11·7654432	6·1681156	8·2346 08	73007	11·7653792	9 9924821	10 0000640	22	9·9999360	1
60	8·2418553		11·7581447	6·1827137	8·2419215		11·7580785	9·9923536	10·0000662		9·9999338	0
′	Cosine.	Diff.	Secant.	Covers.	Cotang.	Diff.	Tang.	Verseds.	Cosec.	D	Sine.	′

LOG. Deg. 89.

44 Deg. LOG. SINES, &c.

′	Sine.	Dif.	Cosec.	Verseds.	Tang.	Dif.	Cotang.	Covers.	Secant.	D.	Cosine.	′
0	9·8417713	1308	10·1582287	9·4481808	9·9848372	2528	10·0151628	9·4847860	10·1430659	1220	9·8569341	60
1	9·8419021	1307	10·1580979	9·4484934	9·9850900	2528	10·0149100	9·4844883	10·1431879	1221	9·8568121	59
2	9·8420328	1306	10·1579672	9·4488059	9·9853428	2528	10·0146572	9·4841905	10·1433100	1222	9·8566900	58
3	9·8421634	1305	10·1578366	9·4491183	9·9855956	2528	10·0144044	9·4838926	10·1434322	1223	9·8565678	57
4	9·8422939	1305	10·1577061	9·4494305	9·9858484	2528	10·0141516	9·4835946	10·1435545	1223	9·8564455	56
5	9·8424244	1304	10·1575756	9·4497426	9·9861012	2528	10·0138988	9·4832964	10·1436768	1224	9·8563232	55
6	9·8425548	1303	10·1574452	9·4500546	9·9863540	2523	10·0136460	9·4829981	10·1437992	1224	9·8562008	54
7	9·8426851	1303	10·1573149	9·4503664	9·9366063	2528	10·0133932	9·4826997	10·1439216	1226	9·8560784	53
8	9·8428154	1302	10·1571846	9·4506781	9·9868596	2527	10·0131404	9·4824012	10·1440442	1226	9·8559558	52
9	9·8429456	1301	10·1570544	9·4509897	9·9871123	2528	10·0128877	9·4821026	10·1441668	1226	9·8558332	51
10	9·8430757	1300	10·1569243	9·4513011	9·9873651	2528	10·0126349	9·4818038	10·1442894	1228	9·8557106	50
11	9·8432057	1299	10·1567943	9·4516124	9·9876179	2527	10·0123821	9·4815049	10·1444122	1228	9·8555878	49
12	9·8433356	1299	10·1566644	9·4519236	9·9878706	2528	10·0121294	9·4812059	10·1445350	1229	9·8554650	48
13	9·8434655	1298	10·1565945	9·4522346	9·9881234	2527	10·0118766	9·4809068	10·1446579	1229	9·8553421	47
14	9·8435953	1297	10·1564047	9·4525456	9·9883761	2528	10·0116239	9·4806075	10·1447808	1231	9·8552192	46
15	9·8437250	1297	10·1562750	9·4528564	9·9886289	2527	10·0113711	9·4803082	10·1449039	1231	9·8550961	45
16	9·8438547	1295	10·1561453	9·4531670	9·9888816	2528	10·0111184	9·4800087	10·1450270	1231	9·8549730	44
17	9·8439842	1295	10·1560158	9·4534776	9·9891344	2527	10·0108656	9·4797091	10·1451501	1233	9·8548499	43
18	9·8441137	1295	10·1558863	9·4537880	9·9893871	2528	10·0106129	9·4794093	10·1452734	1233	9·8547266	42
19	9·8442432	1293	10·1557568	9·4540982	9·9896399	2527	10·0103601	9·4791095	10·1453967	1234	9·8546033	41
20	9·8443725	1293	10·1556275	9·4544084	9·9898926	2527	10·0101074	9·4788095	10·1455201	1235	9·8544799	40
21	9·8445018	1292	10·1554982	9·4547181	9·9901453	2528	10·0098547	9·4785094	10·1456436	1235	9·8543564	39
22	9·8446310	1291	10·1553690	9·4550283	9·9903981	2527	10·0096019	9·4782092	10·1457671	1236	9·8542329	38
23	9·8447601	1290	10·1552399	9·4533380	9·9906508	2527	10·0093492	9·4779088	10·1458907	1237	9·8541093	37
24	9·8448891	1290	10·1551109	9·4556477	9·9909035	2527	10·0090965	9·4776083	10·1460144	1237	9·8539856	36
25	9·8450181	1289	10·1549819	9·4559572	9·9911562	2527	10·0088438	9·4773078	10·1461381	1238	9·8538619	35
26	9·8451470	1288	10·1548530	9·4562665	9·9914089	2527	10·0085911	9·4770070	10·1462619	1239	9·8537381	34
27	9·8452758	1287	10·1547242	9·4565758	9·9916616	2527	10·0083384	9·4767062	10·1463858	1240	9·8536142	33
28	9·8454045	1287	10·1545955	9·4568849	9·9919143	2527	10·0080857	9·4764052	10·1465098	1240	9·8534902	32
29	9·8455332	1286	10·1544668	9·4571939	9·9921670	2527	10·0078330	9·4761042	10·1466338	1241	9·8533662	31
30	9·8456618	1285	10·1543382	9·4575027	9·9924197	2527	10·0075803	9·4758030	10·1467579	1242	9·8532421	30
31	9·8457903	1285	10·1542097	9·4578115	9·9926724	2527	10·0073276	9·4755016	10·1468821	1243	9·8531179	29
32	9·8459188	1283	10·1540812	9·4581201	9·9929251	2527	10·0070749	9·4752002	10·1470064	1243	9·8529936	28
33	9·8460471	1283	10·1539529	9·4584286	9·9331778	2527	10·0068222	9·4748986	10·1471307	1244	9·8528693	27
34	9·8461754	1282	10·1538246	9·4587369	9·9934305	2527	10·0065695	9·4745969	10·1472551	1245	9·8527449	26
35	9·8463036	1282	10·1536964	9·4590451	9·9936832	2527	10·0063168	9·4742951	10·1473796	1245	9·8526204	25
36	9·8464318	1281	10·1535682	9·4593532	9·9939359	2527	10·0060641	9·4739932	10·1475041	1246	9·8524959	24
37	9·8465599	1280	10·1534401	9·4596612	9·9941886	2527	10·0058114	9·4736911	10·1476287	1247	9·8523713	23
38	9·8466879	1279	10·1533121	9·4599690	9·9944413	2527	10·0055587	9·4733889	10·1477534	1248	9·8522466	22
39	9·8468158	1278	10·1531842	9·4602767	9·9946940	2526	10·0053060	9·4730866	10·1478782	1248	9·8521218	21
40	9·8469436	1278	10·1530564	9·4605843	9·9949466	2527	10·0050534	9·4727841	10·1480030	1249	9·8519970	20
41	9·8470714	1277	10·1529286	9·4608918	9·9951993	2527	10·0048007	9·4724816	10·1481279	1250	9·8518721	19
42	9·8471991	1276	10·1528009	9·4611991	9·9954520	2527	10·0045480	9·4721789	10·1482529	1251	9·8517471	18
43	9·8473267	1276	10·1526733	9·4615063	9·9957047	2526	10·0042953	9·4718761	10·1483780	1251	9·8516220	17
44	9·8474543	1274	10·1525457	9·4618134	9·9959573	2527	10·0040427	9·4715732	10·1485031	1252	9·8514969	16
45	9·8475817	1274	10·1524183	9·4621203	9·9962100	2527	10·0037900	9·4712701	10·1486283	1252	9·8513717	15
46	9·8477091	1274	10·1522909	9·4624271	9·9964627	2527	10·0035373	9·4709669	10·1487535	1254	9·8512465	14
47	9·8478365	1272	10·1521635	9·4627338	9·9967154	2526	10·0032846	9·4706636	10·1488789	1254	9·8511211	13
48	9·8479637	1272	10·1520363	9·4630404	9·9969680	2527	10·0030320	9·4703602	10·1490043	1255	9·8509957	12
49	9·8480909	1271	10·1519091	9·4633468	9·9972207	2527	10·0027793	9·4700566	10·1491298	1256	9·8508702	11
50	9·8482180	1270	10·1517820	9·4636531	9·9974734	2526	10·0025266	9·4697530	10·1492554	1256	9·8507446	10
51	9·8483450	1270	10·1516550	9·4639593	9·9977260	2527	10·0022740	9·4694492	10·1493810	1257	9·8506190	9
52	9·8484720	1269	10·1515280	9·4642654	9·9979787	2527	10·0020213	9·4691452	10·1495067	1258	9·8504933	8
53	9·8485989	1268	10·1514011	9·4645713	9·9982314	2526	10·0017686	9·4688412	10·1496325	1258	9·8503675	7
54	9·8487257	1267	10·1512743	9·4648771	9·9984840	2527	10·0015160	9·4685370	10·1497583	1260	9·8502417	6
55	9·8488524	1267	10·1511476	9·4651828	9·9987367	2526	10·0012633	9·4682327	10·1498843	1260	9·8501157	5
56	9·8489791	1266	10·1510209	9·4654884	9·9989893	2527	10·0010107	9·4679283	10·1500103	1260	9·8499897	4
57	9·8491057	1265	10·1508943	9·4657938	9·9992420	2527	10·0007580	9·4676237	10·1501363	1262	9·8498637	3
58	9·8492322	1264	10·1507678	9·4660991	9·9994947	2526	10·0005053	9·4673190	10·1502625	1262	9·8497375	2
59	9·8493586	1264	10·1506414	9·4664043	9·9997473	2527	10·0002527	9·4670142	10·1503887	1263	9·8496113	1
60	9·8494850		10·1505150	9·4667093	10·0000000		10·0000000	9·4667093	10·1505150		9·8494850	0
′	Cosine.	Dif.	Secant.	Covers.	Cotang.	Dif.	Tang.	Verseds.	Cosec.	D.	Sine.	′

45 Deg.

SECTION VII.

Solutions of Triangles.

HAVING in the last section explained the methods of ascertaining the numerical value of any trigonometrical function, we may now proceed with the subject of Section V., and show how the general formulæ there investigated may be most conveniently applied for the determination of the *numerical* values of the unknown parts of a triangle. It will be seen by a reference to those formulæ, that all the sides and angles are determinable if any three of them are known, except the three angles, which it is manifest cannot determine the length of the sides. We shall begin with right-angled triangles.

(48.) Case 1. Let the sides a, b, (Fig. Art. 2.) be given.

$c = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$ by Eucl. B. I. Prop. 47.

Where c is determined

$$\tan. A = \frac{a}{b} \quad \text{(Art. 2.)}$$

$$\log_t \tan. A - 10 = \log_t a - \log_t b,$$

whence tan. A is known from the logarithmic tables.

Also $B = 90° - A$, and is therefore known when A has been determined.

Ex.
$$\begin{aligned} a &= 101 \\ b &= 103 \\ c &= \sqrt{(101)^2 + (103)^2} \\ &= 144.257 \\ \log_t \tan. A &= 10 + \log_t 101 - \log_t 103 \\ 10 + \log_t 101 &= 12.0043214 \\ \log_t 103 &= \underline{2.0128372} \\ \therefore \log_t \tan. A &= 9.9914842 = \log_t \tan. 44° \, 26' \, 20'' \text{ (See p. 56.)} \\ A &= 44° \, 26' \, 20'' \\ B &= 45° \, 33' \, 40'' \end{aligned}$$

(49.) Case 2. Given A and c.

$$\begin{aligned} b &= c. \cos. A \quad \text{(Art. 2.)} \\ a &= c. \sin. A \\ \log_t b &= \log_t c + \log_t \cos. A - 10 \\ \log_t a &= \log_t c + \log_t \sin. A - 10 \end{aligned}$$

Ex.
$$\begin{aligned} A &= 44° \, 1' \, 10'' \\ c &= 170.235 \\ \log_t c &= 2.2310489 \\ \log_t \cos. A &= \underline{9.8568324} \quad \text{(See p. 56.)} \\ & 2.6878813 = \log. 122.243 \\ \therefore b &= 122.243 \\ \log_t c &= 2.2310489 \\ \log_t \sin. A &= \underline{9.8419239} \\ & 2.0729728 = \log_t 118.297 \\ a &= 118.297 \\ B &= 45° \, 59' \, 50'' \end{aligned}$$

(50.) Case 3. Given A and b.

$$a = b \tan. \mathrm{A} \quad \{ \text{Art. (54.)} \}$$

$$c = \frac{b}{\cos. \mathrm{A}}$$

$$\log_t a = \log_t b + \log_t \tan. \mathrm{A} - 10$$

$$\log_t c = \log_t b - \log_t \cos. \mathrm{A} + 10$$

Ex. $b = 31.76$

$\mathrm{A} = 17^\circ \; 12' \; 51''$

therefore $\mathrm{B} = 72^\circ \; 47' \; 9''$

$$\log_t b = 1.5018805$$

$$\log_t \tan. \mathrm{A} = \underline{9.4911132}$$

$$.9929937 = \log_t 9.8399$$

$$a = 9.8399$$

Again,

$$10 + \log_t b = 11.5018805$$

$$\log_t \cos. \mathrm{A} = \underline{9.9800967}$$

$$1.5217838 = \log_t 33.249$$

$$\mathrm{C} = 33.249$$

We will now take the cases of oblique-angled triangles.

(51.) Case I. Given A B and a scale opposite, one of the known angles, as a.

$$\mathrm{C} = 180^\circ - (\mathrm{A}+\mathrm{B})$$

$$\frac{b}{a} = \frac{\sin. \mathrm{B}}{\sin. \mathrm{A}} \quad \text{(Art. 53.)}$$

$$\therefore \quad \log_t b = \log_t a + \log_t \sin. \mathrm{B} - \log_t \sin. \mathrm{A}$$

$$\frac{c}{a} = \frac{\sin. \mathrm{C}}{\sin. \mathrm{A}} = \sin. \frac{(\mathrm{A}+\mathrm{B})}{\sin. \mathrm{A}}$$

$$\therefore \quad \log_t c = \log_t a + \log_t \sin. (\mathrm{A}+\mathrm{B}) - \log_t \sin. \mathrm{A}.$$

(52.) Case II. Given a b with an angle A opposite to one of them.

$$\sin. \mathrm{B} = \sin. \mathrm{A}. \frac{b}{a}$$

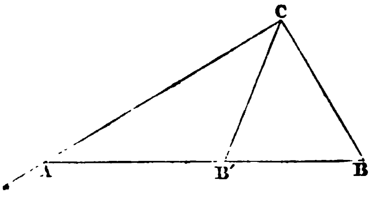
$$\log_t \sin. \mathrm{B} = \log_t \sin. \mathrm{A} + \log_t b - \log a$$

$$\text{or,} \quad = \log_t \sin. \mathrm{A} + \log_t b + \text{Arith}^{\text{l}}.\ \text{Comp.}\ \log_t a - 10.$$

This solution gives us the value of the sine of B, but since the sine of an angle and that of its supplement are the same, it will be impossible to determine without other considerations which we ought to take of the angles, which correspond to the value of the sine determined as above. If b be greater than a, this ambiguity will exist; but if b be less than a, it will not. For if b be greater than a, B must be greater than A, and therefore A will necessarily be acute, since there cannot be two obtuse angles in a triangle; and consequently B may be acute or obtuse, and we have nothing to guide us in the choice of the one or the other. But if b be less than a, B must be less than A, and must therefore necessarily be acute, which consideration removes the ambiguity.

(53.) This may be easily illustrated by means of the annexed figure.

Let A B C be a triangle in which the angle A is acute, and C B less than A C, whose sides being given equal to a and b respectively. Now, if we draw C B′ making the same angle with A B′ as C B does, the point B′ will evidently fall between A and B, since C A is greater than



C B; and C B′ will equal C B $= b$. Hence the data of the problem will apply equally to the triangle A C B′ and A C B, and the sine of the angle opposite A C, as above determined, applies equally to the angle C B A and C B′ A. The solution may therefore belong to either triangle.

(54.) The following is an example of the ambiguous case:—

$$\text{Let } a = 145.3,\ b = 178.3, A = 41^\circ\ 10'$$

$$\begin{aligned} \log_t \sin. A &= 9.8183919 \\ \log_t b &= 2.2511513 \\ \text{Arith. Comp.} \log_t a &= \underline{7.8386329} \\ \log_t \sin. B &= 9.9081752 \\ &= \log_t 54^\circ\ 2'\ 22'' \text{ or } \log_t 125^\circ\ 57'\ 38''. \end{aligned}$$

Here b is greater than a, and therefore B must be greater than A, which condition is satisfied by either of the above values of B. The case is therefore ambiguous.

If we take A, as before, equal $41^\circ\ 10'$;

$$a = 178.3 \text{ and } b = 145, \text{ we find}$$

$$\log_t \sin. B = 9.7286086$$

which gives $B = 32^\circ\ 21'\ 54''$, or $147^\circ\ 38'\ 6''$; but B must be less than A, a condition which is satisfied only by the first angle. This case, therefore, is not ambiguous.

(55.) The angles being determined, the side C is easily found by Case I.

(56.) Case III. Given two sides $a\,b$, and the included angle C.

By Art. (1.) we have

$$\frac{a+b}{a-b} = \frac{\tan. \dfrac{A+B}{2}}{\tan. \dfrac{A-B}{2}}$$

$$\text{But } \frac{A+B}{2} = \frac{180-C}{2} = 90 - \frac{C}{2}$$

$$\text{therefore } \tan. \frac{A+B}{2} = \cot. \frac{C}{2}$$

$$\text{and } \tan. \frac{A-B}{2} = \frac{a-b}{a+b}. \cot. \frac{C}{2}$$

$$\log_t \tan. \frac{A-B}{2} = \log_t (a-b) + \text{Arith. Comp. } \log_t (a+b) + \log_t \cot. \frac{C}{2} - 10$$

$$\begin{aligned} &\text{Let } A - B = D \text{ as thus determined,} \\ &A + B = 180 - C \\ \therefore\ &A = \tfrac{1}{2}\{180 + D - C\} \\ &B = \tfrac{1}{2}\{180 - D - C\} \end{aligned}$$

whence A and B are known.

The side C may then be found by Case I.

Ex. Let $a = 874.56, b = 859.56$

$$\begin{aligned}
C &= 91^\circ\ 58'\ 10''\\
a - b &= 15.\\
a + b &= 1734.12\\
\frac{C}{2} &= 45^\circ\ 59'\ 5''\\
\log_t (a - b) &= 1.1760913\\
\text{A.C.}\log_t (a + b) &= 6.7609209\\
\log_t \cot.\ \frac{C}{2} &= 9.9851111\\
&\overline{7.9221233} = \log_t \tan.\ 28'\ 44''\ 30'''\ *\\
\therefore \frac{A - B}{2} &= 0^\circ\ 28'\ 44''.5\\
A - B &= 0^\circ\ 57'\ 29''\\
A + B &= 88^\circ\ 1'\ 50''\\
\therefore\ A &= 44^\circ\ 29'\ 39''.5\\
B &= 43^\circ\ 32'\ 10''.5
\end{aligned}$$

Also $\frac{c}{a} = \frac{\sin.\ C}{\sin.\ A}$

$$\begin{aligned}
\therefore \log_t c = \log_t 874.56 &+ \log_t \sin.\ 91^\circ\ 58'\ 10'' - 10\\
&+ \text{A.C.}\log_t \sin.\ 44^\circ\ 29'\ 39''.5
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\log_t 874.56 &= 2.9417896\\
\left.\begin{aligned}\log_t \sin.\ 91^\circ\ 58'\ 10''\\ = \log_t \sin.\ 88^\circ\ 1'\ 50''\end{aligned}\right\} &= 9.9997434\\
\text{A.C.}\log_t \sin.\ 44^\circ\ 29'\ 39''.5 &= \underline{0.1543821}\\
\log_t c &= \underline{3.0959151}\\
\therefore c &= 1247.14
\end{aligned}$$

This method of determining the side c, requires the previous determination of one of the angles A, B, and is therefore, when it is only required to calculate the side c, less convenient than the following method, by which the side c is calculated immediately from the two sides and angle which are given.

(57.) By Art. (55.) we have

$$c = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2 - 2\,ab.\ \cos.\ C}$$

This expression, however, is not adapted to logarithmic computation; we must, therefore, give it a more convenient form for this purpose.

$$\begin{aligned}
c &= \sqrt{a^2 - 2\,ab + b^2 + 2\,ab\,(1 - \cos.\ C)}\\
&= \sqrt{(a - b)^2 + 2\,ab.\ \text{vers.}\ C.}\\
&= (a - b)\sqrt{1 + \frac{4\,ab}{(a - b)^2}\left(\sin.\frac{C}{2}\right)^2}, \text{since} \frac{\text{vers.}\ \frac{C}{2}}{2} = \left(\sin.\ \frac{C}{2}\right)
\end{aligned}$$

Now, if we take an angle θ such that

$$(\tan.\ \theta)^2 = \frac{4\,ab}{(a - b)^2}\left(\sin.\ \frac{C}{2}\right)^2$$

we shall have

$$\begin{aligned}
c &= (a - b)\sqrt{1 + (\tan.\ \theta)^2}\\
&= (a - b)\ \sec.\ \theta
\end{aligned}$$

---

* This is an instance in which the angle is too small to be determined with accuracy from its logarithmic tangent by means of a table calculated for minutes only. The above value is found from a table calculated for each second.

Where θ is determined from the expression

$$2 \log_t \tan. \theta = \log_t 4 + \log_t a + \log_t b + 2 \log_t \sin. \frac{C}{2}$$
$$+ 2 . \text{A} . \text{C} . \log_t (a - b) - 20$$

And we have

$$\log_t C = \log_t (a - b) + \log_t \sec. \theta$$
or
$$\log_t C = \log_t (a - b) + \log_t \sec. \theta - 10.$$

We will solve the last example by this method.

To find the angle θ we have

$$\begin{array}{lcl} \log_t 4 & = & 0.6020600 \\ \log_t a & = & 2.9417896 \\ \log_t b & = & 2.9342762 \\ 2 \text{A.C.} \log_t \overline{a - b} & = & 17.6473174 \\ 2 \log_t \sin. \frac{C}{2} & = & \underline{19.7136446} \\ \therefore 2 \log_t \tan. \theta & = & 23.8395878 \\ \therefore \log_t \tan. \theta & = & 11.9197939 \\ \theta & = & 89^\circ\ 18'\ 39''.5 \end{array}$$

and to find c we have

$$\begin{array}{lcl} \log_t \overline{a - b} & = & 1.1760913 \\ \log_t \sec. \theta & = & \underline{11.9198238} \\ \therefore \log_t c & = & 3.0959151 \\ \therefore c & = & 1247.14 \quad \text{as before.} \end{array}$$

(58.) In the first of these solutions we have to determine a small angle, and in the second an angle nearly 90° from their logarithmic tangents. With a table in which these tangents are calculated for every second, this may be done with accuracy; but if our table be computed for minutes only, this cannot be done conveniently, because the method of proportional parts will not apply. It may, therefore, sometimes be desirable to avoid this difficulty, which may be done as follows:

$$c = \sqrt{a^2 + 2\,ab + b^2 - 2\,ab\,(1 + \cos. C}$$
$$= \overline{a + b} \sqrt{1 - \frac{4\,ab}{(a + b)^2} \left(\cos. \frac{C}{2}\right)^2}$$

Assume $$\frac{4\,ab}{(a + b)^2} \left(\cos. \frac{C}{2}\right)^2 = (\sin. \theta)^2$$

then $c = \overline{a + b} \cos. \theta$

$\log_t c = \log_t \overline{a + b} + \log_t \cos. \theta - 10$

By using this formula we should avoid, in the above example, the objection above-mentioned.

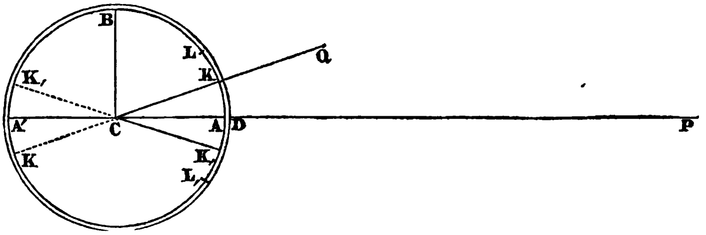
Any of the above formulæ would be theoretically sufficient for the complete solution of the case we have been considering; but the observation we have made on the last example, will show that different formulæ will be preferable in different cases. It is the business of the analyst to investigate these formulæ, and of the computist to select that which most applicable to the particular circumstances of his problem. In th selection he will be guided by such considerations as the above, or oth which experience will suggest.

SECTION VIII.

General Account of the Method of observing Angles.—Principles on which Observations are corrected.—Examples of the Measurement of Heights and Distances.

IN this section we shall explain the methods of ascertaining heights and distances by means of trigonometry. In the operations necessary for this purpose, the length of at least one line must be ascertained by actual *admeasurement*, and the magnitude of certain angles by actual *observation*.

(59.) The former may be effected without difficulty, when no great accuracy is required, by means of a string, chain, or pole of given length; when extreme nicety is essential, as in extensive trigonometrical surveys, many precautions must be taken, which, however, it is not now our object particularly to point out. We shall proceed to show generally how the angular distance of two points, as seen from any proposed station, may be observed.



(60.) Let P Q be the two points, C the position of the eye of the observer, the plane passing through these points being supposed to coincide with the plane of the paper. Suppose a circular rim divided into degrees, minutes, &c., to have its centre at C, and its plane in that passing through P and Q; then let a line C D, moveable round C, be made to coincide with C A, a fixed radius of the instrument (A being the point where the graduation begins), and then the rim turned round an axis through C, and perpendicular to its plane, till C D be directed to P. Let C D be then moved till it be directed to Q, the rim remaining fixed; the graduation at K (supposed to proceed in direction A K) will give the number of degrees, minutes, &c., in the angle P C Q.

(61.) If, instead of moving C D while the rim remains fixed, C D be supposed to remain fixed, and the rim be made to revolve till C A be directed to Q, and C K be directed to P, the graduation of A K will determine the magnitude of the angle P C Q.

Nothing can appear more simple than this operation; but in cases of great nicety, where, perhaps, an error of a few seconds would be fatal to the required accuracy of our calculations, it will be easily conceived that many precautions become necessary to avoid such errors. The different instruments for observing angles are, in fact, so many contrivances for performing the operation we have described with greater facility and accuracy than the simple apparatus above-mentioned would admit of. They all possess the graduated rim, the perfect circularity and exact graduation of which are most essential, and though this graduating is done in the present day with wonderful precision, it is a matter of too much practical difficulty not to admit of some correction by methods the principles of which are independent of mere mechanical skill.

(62.) The most important is the principle of *repetition*, by which any error in the graduation and in the *reading off* of the numbers of degrees, &c., to which a single observation is liable, is divided among many *repeated* observations, so that by a sufficient number of repetitions the required angle, as far as it depends on the above circumstances, can be obtained to any assignable degree of accuracy. This is easily explained.

When the moveable line C D has been first directed to P and then to Q, as above described, let it be fixed to the rim at K, and then be made to move by the motion of the rim about its axis through C till it comes again into the direction C P. A will then have come to $K_{\prime\prime}$ and L into the direction C Q. Let C D be unfastened from the rim, and brought again into the direction C Q, and therefore passing through L; the graduation corresponding to this position of C D will denote *twice* the required angle P C Q; and if s'' be the error arising from the graduation or *reading off* after the second observation, and N denote the angle read off in degrees, minutes, &c.

$$2 . PCQ = N + s''$$

$$PCQ = \frac{N}{2} + \frac{s''}{2}$$

or the error in the observed value of P C Q will be $\frac{s''}{2}$. Or, more generally, let n be the number of observations, N the degrees, &c., read off, and suppose the circular rim to have made besides m complete revolutions. Then the error being s'',

$$n . PCQ = m \; . \; 360^\circ + N + s''$$

$$PCQ = \frac{m}{n} . \; 360^\circ + \frac{N}{n} + \frac{s''}{n}$$

and the error in the observed value of P C Q will be only $\frac{s''}{n}$.

It will be remarked that the reading off is only once necessary, *i.e.*, after the last observation. It is in the application of this principle that the peculiarity of the *repeating circle* consists.

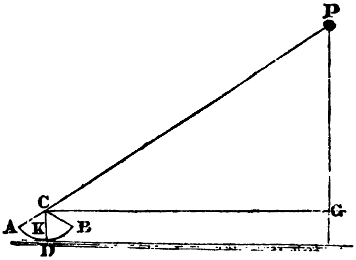
(63.) Another principle of correction for erroneous graduation and reading off, consists in taking the *mean* of several readings off on different parts of the rim as the true reading. In this case the observation must be made as described in (61.) Thus suppose the point A of the rim to revolve till it come to K, A′ coming to K′, the angle P C Q may then be read off both at C′ and K′. In the same manner it may be read off at any other parts of the rim.

Suppose N_1 N_2 .... N_n to be the several readings off, the true value of the angle is taken to be

$$\frac{N_1 + N_2 + \text{— —} + N_2}{n}$$

(64.) The most common instruments for measuring angles in terrestrial observation are the quadrant, repeating circle, and theodolite. A full description of these instruments does not come within our immediate object, which is merely to give a general notion of the manner in which the magnitude of angles may be observed, and to point out the principles of the methods by which observations may be corrected. We shall merely observe at present that the quadrant is simply a quarter of such a circle as that above described, bounded by the two fixed radii C A, C B, and graduated from 0 to 90°. It has the disadvantage of offering no practical facility for the application of the above principles of correction. The repeating circle consists of a circle like the above, mounted in a manner convenient for its use. In the theodolite, the graduated circle is horizontal when properly adjusted, the instrument being intended for the observation of horizontal angles only. With the quadrant, or repeating circle, angles in any plane may be observed.

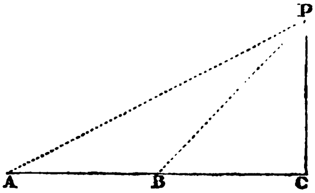
(65.) In order to ascertain the height of an object, it is generally much the most convenient to observe its angular altitude, or the angle which a line from the object to the observer's eye makes with a horizontal line. This horizontal line being seldom exactly known, it is usual to make use of a plumb line, which determines the position of a line perpendicular to the horizon.



Thus, if P be the object, let the side A C of the quadrant be directed to P; then if C D be the plumb line, the graduation of B K will give the angle P C G, C G being horizontal.

Having thus given the student a general notion of the methods by which the magnitude of angles may be observed, we shall lay before him a few examples which may enable him to judge of the best method of proceeding in any particular cases that may present themselves.

Examples.



To find the height and distance of an inaccessible object on a horizontal plane.

Let the angle C A P be observed at the station A $= \alpha$. Measure A B in the direction of the object, and let it $= a$, and then observe the angle C B P $= \beta$.

Let the height C P $= y$ and the distance B C $= a$.

$$\text{Now } \frac{PB}{AB} = \frac{\sin. PAB}{\sin. APB} = \frac{\sin. \alpha}{\sin. (\beta - \alpha)}$$

$$\therefore PB = a \frac{\sin. \alpha}{\sin. (\beta - \alpha)},$$

$$\text{and } y = PB \,.\, \sin. \beta$$

$$= a \,.\, \frac{\sin. \alpha \,.\, \sin. \beta}{\sin. (\beta - \alpha)}$$

$$\log_t y = \log_t a + \log_t \sin. \alpha + \log_t \sin. \beta - \log_t \sin. (\beta - \alpha) - 10;$$

$$\text{also } x = PB \cos. \beta$$

$$= a \frac{\sin. \alpha \,.\, \cos. \beta}{\sin. (\beta - \alpha)}$$

$$\therefore \log_t x = \log_t a + \log_t \sin. \alpha + \log_t \cos. \beta - \log_t \sin. (\beta - \alpha) - 10.$$

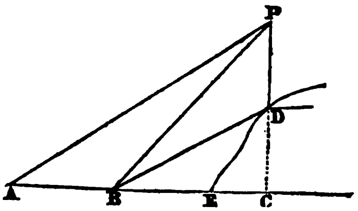
$$\text{If } \alpha = 26° \, 30'$$

$$\beta = 51° \, 30'$$

$$a = 75 \text{ feet}$$

$$x = 49.29 \text{ feet}; \; y = 61.97 \text{ feet}.$$

2. Suppose the object D P, whose height is required, to stand on a hill D E. By the last example—



$$\text{P C} = a\,\frac{\sin.\ \alpha\ \sin.\ \beta}{\sin.\ (\beta-\alpha)}$$

$$\text{B C} = a.\frac{\sin.\alpha\,.\cos\ \beta}{\sin.\ (\beta-\alpha)}$$

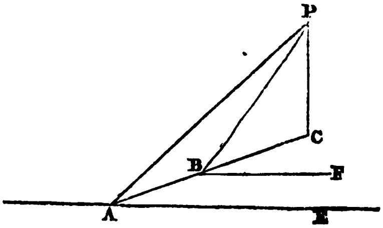
Let the ∠ C B D be observed $= \gamma$

$$\text{D C} = \text{B C}\ .\ \tan.\gamma$$

$$= a\ .\ \frac{\sin.\ \alpha\ .\ \cos.\beta\ .\ \tan.\ \gamma}{\sin.\ (\beta-\gamma)}\ ;$$

C P and C D being thus determined, D P is known.

3. Suppose the plane on which the observer is stationed not to be horizontal. The inclination (δ) of A B to the horizon may be determined by a level. Let the angles E A P, F B P be observed, $= \alpha$ and β as before. $\text{CP} = y$, $\text{C B} = x$.



$$y = \text{P B}\ \frac{\sin.\,\text{C B P}}{\sin.\,\text{P C B}}$$

$$= \text{PB}\ \frac{\sin.(\text{B}-\delta)}{\cos.\ \delta}\ ;$$

$$\text{also PB} = \text{AB}.\frac{\sin.\,\text{P A B}}{\sin.\ \text{A P B}}$$

$$= a\ .\frac{\sin.\ (a-\delta)}{\sin.\ (\beta-a)}\ ;$$

$$\therefore y = a\ \ \frac{\sin.\ (\alpha-\delta)\cdot\sin.\ (\beta-\delta)}{\cos.\ \sin.\ (\beta-\alpha)}$$

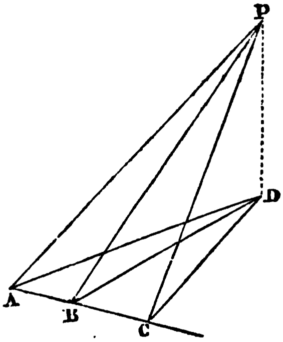
$$\log_t y = \log.\ a + \log_t \sin.\ (\alpha-\delta) + \log_t \sin.\ (\beta-\delta)$$
$$- \log_t \cos.\ c - \log_t \sin.\ (\beta-\alpha)\ ;$$

$$\text{Also } x = \text{B P}\ \frac{\sin.\ \text{C P B}}{\sin.\ \text{P C B}}$$

$$= a\ .\frac{\sin.\ (\alpha-c)}{\sin.(\beta-\alpha)}\ \ \frac{\cos.\ \beta}{\cos.\ \delta}$$

$$\log_t x = \log_t a + \log_t \sin.\ (\alpha-\delta) + \log_t \cos.\ \beta$$
$$- \log_t \sin.\ (\beta - \alpha)\ \log_t \cos.\ \delta.$$

4. To find the height of an object by observations of vertical angles from three stations in a straight line, in a horizontal plane, not in the direction of the object.



Let P be the object, PD a line perpendicular to the horizontal plane ACD; A B C the stations; P A D, P B D, P C D, the three observed angles in vertical planes, equal $\alpha\,\beta\,\gamma$ respectively: and let $AB = a$, $BC = b$, and the required height $PD = y$. Then

$$AD = y \cot.\alpha;\quad BD = y \cot.\beta;\quad DC = y \cot.\gamma.$$

But

$$\cos. ABD = \frac{AB^2 + BD^2 - AD^2}{2\,AB\,.\,BD}$$

$$\cos. DBC = \frac{BC^2 + BD^2 - DC^2}{2\,BC\,.\,BD}$$

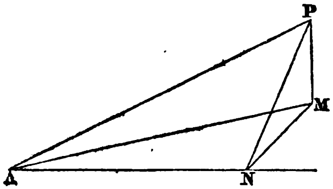
$$\text{and } \cos. ABD = -\cos. DBC$$

$$\frac{AB^2 + BD^2 - AD^2}{AB} = \frac{DC^2 - BC^2 - BD^2}{BC}.$$

Substituting the values of these quantities as determined above, we find

$$y = \sqrt{\frac{ab\,(a+b)}{a\,(\cot.\gamma)^2 - (a+b)\,(\cot.\beta)^2 + b\,(\cot.\alpha)^2}}$$

5. If the side of a hill form an inclined plane whose inclination to the horizon is $= \alpha$, to find the direction in which a rail-road must run along the side of the hill, in order that it may have an ascent of 1 foot in every 100 feet.



Let A P represent the rail-road, A N the foot of the hill, P N a line on the side of the hill perpendicular to A N; P N vertical, and N M horizontal and perpendicular to A N. A M will be the projection of A P on the horizontal plane, and the angle M A N will determine the direction of the rail-road. Let this angle $= \theta$; also P N M will be the inclination of the hill $= \alpha$.

Now if $PAM = \beta$

$$\sin.\beta = \frac{MP}{AP} = \frac{1}{100} = .01$$

$$\text{also } \sin.\theta = \frac{MN}{AM}$$

$$\cot.\alpha = \frac{MN}{MP}$$

$$\tan.\beta = \frac{MP}{AM}$$

$$\therefore \frac{\sin.\theta}{\cot.\alpha} = \tan.\beta$$

$$\sin.\theta = \tan.\beta \,.\, \cot.\alpha$$

$$(\tan.\beta)^2 = \frac{(\sin.\beta)^2}{1-(\sin.\beta)^2} = \frac{(.01)^2}{1-(.01)^2}$$

$$\therefore \tan.\beta = .01\,\{1 - .0001\}^{\frac{1}{2}}$$

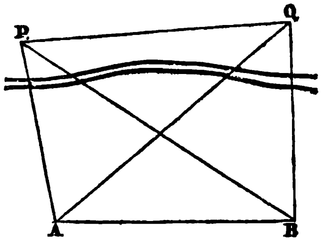
$$= .01\,\{1 + .00005\} \text{ nearly}$$

$$= .0100005$$

$$\therefore \sin.\theta = .0100005 \cot.\alpha$$

$$\log_t \sin.\theta = \log_t .0100005 + \log_t \cot.\alpha.$$

6. To find the distance of two objects which cannot be approached, situated in the same plane with the observer.



Let P Q be the two objects; A B a line $= a$, which the observer can measure, lying in the same plane with P Q. At A let the angle P A Q P A B be observed respectively $= \alpha$ and β; and at β let the angles P A B, A B Q, be observed respectively equal γ and δ.

$$\frac{\mathrm{PA}}{\mathrm{PB}} = \frac{\sin.\,\mathrm{PBA}}{\sin.\,\mathrm{APB}}$$

$$\mathrm{PA} = a\,\frac{\sin.\gamma}{\sin.(\beta+\gamma)} \quad \therefore \log_t \mathrm{PA} = \log_t a + \log_t \sin.\gamma + \mathrm{A.C.}\log_t \sin.\overline{\beta+\gamma} - 10$$

$$\mathrm{AQ} = a.\frac{\sin.\,\mathrm{ABQ}}{\sin.\,\mathrm{AQB}}$$

$$= a.\frac{\sin.\delta}{\sin.(\delta + \mathrm{QAB})}$$

$$= a.\frac{\sin.\delta}{\sin.(\beta - \alpha + \delta)}$$

$$\therefore \log_t \mathrm{AQ} = \log_t a + \log_t \sin.\delta + \mathrm{A.C.}\log_t \sin.(\mathrm{B} - \alpha + \delta) - 10.$$

Also $\mathrm{PQ}^2 = \mathrm{AP}^2 + \mathrm{AQ}^2 - 2\,\mathrm{AP.AQ}\cos.\mathrm{PAQ}$.

From the expression P Q must be determined exactly as in Arts. (56, 57, or 58,) substituting the values of A P and A Q as found above.

The distances A P, B Q, B P, are easily found from the triangles A B P, A B Q, and then the positions of P and Q, as well as their distances, are determined. If there be any other object, R situated in the same plane, its position may be determined in the same manner, either by observing it from A and B (if visible from thence), or from any other stations, whose positions have been previously found. Hence it will easily be seen how a tract of country may be *mapped*, provided it be not too extensive; but if the extent be considerable, we cannot, on account of the spherical form of the earth, consider objects situated on its surface as lying in one plane, with due regard to the accuracy of our results. Consequently, extensive and accurate trigonometrical surveys can only be conducted by means of spherical trigonometry. A complete account of the method of doing this, and of the use and construction of the instruments for this purpose, will be given in a subsequent part of this work.

We shall here conclude the first part of our treatise on Trigonometry. A knowledge of the theorems contained in it, with that of their application to Plane Trigonometry, is essential to enable the student to pass on to the differential calculus and its simpler applications. The remainder of the subject, as we have already observed in the Introduction, may be better studied in more immediate connexion with some of the higher branches of analysis; and on this account we conceive that it ought not, in a well-arranged course of mathematical reading, to precede, but to follow the calculus. This first part may be considered as forming one complete division of the subject; and therefore the reason above stated is sufficient for the postponement of the higher branches of it till after our treatise on the Differential Calculus shall have made its appearance.

LONDON
Printed by William Clowes,
Duke-street, Lambeth.

ELEMENTS

OF

SPHERICAL TRIGONOMETRY.

BY

AUGUSTUS DE MORGAN,

OF TRINITY COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE.

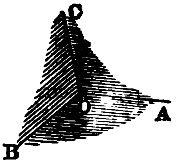
SPHERICAL TRIGONOMETRY.

CHAPTER I.

Preliminary Definitions.

(1.) Spherical Trigonometry means in strictness, the measurement of the various triangles which can be drawn upon a sphere. In the modern form of the science, it must be called the investigation of the relations which exist between the several parts of *a solid angle.*

A solid angle is a name improperly given to the figure made by three straight lines which meet in a point, and no two of which are in the same plane; as O A, O B, and O C.

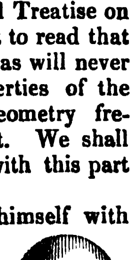


In a solid angle there are six things to consider—namely, the three lines O A, O B, and O C; and the three planes A O B, B O C, C O A. The lines make three rectilinear angles, A O B, B O C, C O A; and the planes make three *dihedral* angles; each of which may be determined, as usual, by drawing from a point, in the line of intersection of two planes, perpendiculars to that line in the two planes. (Geometry, book iv. prop. 17.)

(2.) In future, we shall abbreviate references as follows:—

(G. iv. 17.) refers to Treatise on Geometry, book iv. prop. 17.
(Tr. 20.) „ „ Trigonometry, *Article* 20.
(St. 50.) „ „ Study of Mathematics, *page* 50.

(3.) We have felt it unnecessary to supply a Geometrical Treatise on the Sphere; but we should strongly recommend the student to read that in the ninth book of the Treatise on Geometry. Clear ideas will never be acquired without considerable familiarity with the properties of the sphere; to acquire which, the *minimum* of spherical geometry frequently attached to Treatises on this subject is insufficient. We shall take it for granted that the student has some acquaintance with this part of solid Geometry.



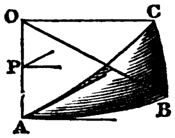
(4.) We should also recommend the beginner to provide himself with such an apparatus* as here drawn; that is, a wooden sphere of three or four inches in diameter, with a hemispherical cup of the same radius, in which the sphere may be placed in any position. Any great circle (or circle which halves the sphere) may then be drawn through two given points, by bringing these points down to the edge of the cup, and drawing a pencil round the edge.

(5.) In this treatise we do not consider any solid angles except those in which the rectilinear angles are severally less than two right angles; in which case the dihedral angles will also be severally less than two right angles. And no side or angle is ever considered as negative.

---

* Messrs. Watkins and Hill, of Charing Cross, are in the habit of constructing this apparatus.

(6.) If a sphere be drawn, whose centre is at the point O of the solid angle, a portion of the surface will be intercepted by the planes A O B, B O C, C O A; which portion is called a *spherical triangle.* The arcs C A, A B, B C, are its *sides;* the angles made by the circles (that is, by tangents drawn to the circles) are its angles: and these six parts may be used to represent the six parts of the solid angle. For the arc AC bears to C B the same proportion as the angle A O C to the angle C O B, the radii being the same. And since tangents drawn at A, to the circles which meet in that point, are perpendicular to O A in the planes of these circles, the angle made by the tangents is that made by the planes C O A, A O B. But it would do equally well to draw the perpendiculars from any other point P in O A.



(7.) A spherical triangle is made only by those circles which pass through the centre of the sphere, or by *great* circles. All triangles made by other circles are not considered.

(8.) When we talk of the side of a spherical triangle, we mean, therefore, the angle which that side subtends, at the centre of the sphere; and, as it is an angle which we are speaking of in reality, we are liable to the apparent confusion of calling a line an angle. Thus, we may say that the side of a spherical triangle is a right angle; meaning thereby that it is a quadrant of a circle, and subtends a right angle at the centre of the sphere.

(9.) But when we speak of the *angles* of a spherical triangle, we always mean the *dihedral* angles of a solid angle. Thus, a right-*angled* spherical triangle is cut off by three planes passing through the centre of a sphere, two of which *planes* are at right angles.

(10.) There is no direct affinity between the terms sides and angles, in a plane and in a spherical triangle. In a plane triangle the sides and angles are different species of magnitudes; in a spherical triangle they are the same. In a plane triangle, a side cannot be expressed in terms of angles only; in a spherical triangle, the sides (8) can be found when the angles are known. A plane triangle cannot have more than one right angle; a spherical triangle may have three; and so on.

(11.) The sides of a spherical triangle are usually denoted by the letters *a*, *b*, *c*; the opposite angles by A, B, C. In the solid angle, the dihedral angle, made by the planes meeting in O C, is called *opposite* to the rectilinear angle B O A; and the dihedral angle, formed at O C, is said to be *contained* by the rectilinear angles A O C, C O B.

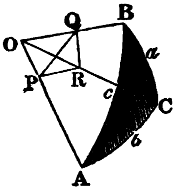
(12.) The angles are usually measured in degrees, minutes, and seconds, so long as they occur only in sines, cosines, &c.; but when used independently, they are measured as in (Tr. 7.) (St. 90.); that is, the number chosen to represent the angle is

$$\frac{\text{The arc subtended}}{\text{radius}}$$

CHAPTER II.

ON RIGHT-ANGLED SPHERICAL TRIANGLES.

(13.) Let A B C be a right-angled spherical triangle; or let the planes B O C, C O A, be at right angles. From any point Q in O B, draw Q R in plane B O C, perpendicular to plane C O A (G. iv. 18); from R draw R P, perpendicular to A O, and join Q P, which (G. iv. 4.) is perpendicular to O A, and Q R (G. iv. Def. 1.) is perpendicular to P R. Hence, Q O P R is a triangular pyramid, having none but right-angled triangles; one angle in each of which right-angled triangles is one of the parts of the spherical triangle—namely:



Q O R, the *side a* (8).
R O P, the side *b*.
P O Q, the hypothenuse *c*.
Q P R, the angle A (9), because Q P and R P are perpendicular to O A.

Hence the general fractional relation

$$\frac{K}{M} = \frac{K}{L} \times \frac{L}{M}$$

where K, L, and M, are any quantities whatever, gives the following;

$$\frac{QR}{QO} = \frac{QP}{QO} \cdot \frac{QR}{QP}, \text{ that is, } \sin. a = \sin. c \sin. A$$

$$\frac{PR}{PO} = \frac{PQ}{PO} \cdot \frac{PR}{PQ}, \quad . \; . \quad \tan. b = \tan. c \cos. A$$

$$\frac{RQ}{RO} = \frac{RQ}{RP} \cdot \frac{RP}{RO}, \quad . \; . \quad \tan. a = \tan. A \sin. b$$

$$\frac{OP}{OQ} = \frac{OP}{OR} \cdot \frac{OR}{OQ}, \quad . \; . \quad \cos. c = \cos. b \cos. a$$

These formulæ will be readily seen from the definitions (Tr. 13.), and from what has just been stated, to be identical relations existing among the ratios of the sides of the pyramid P Q O R. Each of the first three has another like it, similarly deduced from the *other* side: we shall range them as follows; in which a side and its opposite angle are in the same type, whether Roman or Italic, in the same formulæ. We add two other formulæ, in which two *angles* enter, which we shall presently deduce.

(14.)

$\cos. c = \cos. a \cos. b$	cos. hyp. = prod. cos. of sides . . .	R_1
$\cos. c = \cot. A \cot. B$	cos. hyp. = prod. cot. angles	R_2
$\sin. a = \sin. c \sin. A$ $\sin. b = \sin. c \sin. B$	sin. *side* = sin. hyp. sin. *opp. ang.* .	R_3
$\tan. a = \tan. c \cos. B$ $\tan. b = \tan. c \cos. A$	tan. side = tan. hyp. cos. incl^d. ang. .	R_4
$\tan. a = \tan. A \sin. b$ $\tan. b = \tan. B \sin. a$	tan. *side* = tan. *opp. ang.* sin. other side	R_5
$\cos. A = \cos. a \sin. B$ $\cos. B = \cos. b \sin. A$	cos. *ang.* = cos. *opp. side* sin. other ang.	R_6

(15.) The two new formulæ R_2 and R_6 are demonstrated as follows. Multiply together the two in R_5, already demonstrated, which gives

$$\tan. a \tan. b = \tan. A \tan. B \sin. a \sin. b$$

$$\frac{1}{\tan. A \tan. B} = \frac{\sin. a}{\tan. a} \frac{\sin. b}{\tan. b} = \qquad \cos. a \cos. b = \cos. c$$

by R_1; whence follows R_2, or $\qquad \cos. c = \cot. A \cot. B.$

Again, multiply together the first in R_3 and R_4 crosswise, which gives

$$\sin. a \tan. c \cos. B = \tan. a \sin. c \sin. A$$

$$\begin{aligned} \cos. B &= \frac{\tan. a}{\sin. a} . \frac{\sin. c}{\tan. c} . \sin. A \\ &= \frac{1}{\cos. a} . \cos. c \sin. A \\ &= \frac{1}{\cos. a} . \cos. a \cos b \sin. A \\ &= \cos. b \sin. A \end{aligned}$$

(16.) The six formulæ in (14), by repetition *ten*, solve all cases of right-angled triangles. For since, in every one of them, is a distinct combination of three, taken from among

$$a, b, A, B, c;$$

and since, from out of five quantities, only *ten* distinct combinations of three can be taken, it is manifest that each of the five enters, with every other two, in one or other of the formulæ; so that any two being given, any other can be found. For example:

Given.	To find.	Formulæ.	Shape in which it must be used.
a, A	c	R_3	$\sin. c = \dfrac{\sin. a}{\sin. A}$
	b	R_5	$\sin. b = \dfrac{\tan. a}{\tan. A}$
	B	R_6	$\sin. B = \dfrac{\cos. A}{\cos. a}$

(17.) There are certain mnemonical formulæ, called *Napier's rules of circular parts*, which are generally explained. We do not give them, because we are convinced that they only create confusion, instead of assisting the memory *. We recommend the beginner to learn the six formulæ in words, as given, and not to proceed further until he can apply them readily. To assist him, we give the parts of a right-angled triangle, together with the logarithms of the sines, cosines, and tangents of each, from which he can immediately see whether he is able to verify any formulæ.

General Symbol.	Value.	Log. sine.	Log. cosine.	Log. tangent.
a	13°	9·3520880	9·9887239	9·3633641
b	29°	9·6855712	9·9418193	9·7437520
A	25° 27′ 50″	9·6334113	9·9556184	9·6777929
B	67° 54′ 42″	9·9668945	9·5752305	0·3916640
c	31° 32′ 53″	9·7186769	9·9305432	9·7881336

---

* We carry this opinion to the extent of thinking that they have been, to many, a serious impediment to a ready knowledge of applications to plane astronomy.

The last figures cannot be expected to agree. The logarithms are correct to *tenths* of seconds, though seconds only are inserted in the second column.

(18.) A small angle cannot be correctly found from its cosine (Tr. 90.), hence R_6 becomes useless when the angle to be found is small. But—

$$\text{tan.}^2 \frac{B}{2} = \frac{1 - \text{cos. } B}{1 + \text{cos. } B} = \frac{\text{tan. } c - \text{tan. } c \text{ cos. } B}{\text{tan. } c + \text{tan. } c \text{ cos. } B}$$

$$(R_4) \qquad = \frac{\text{tan. } c - \text{tan. } a}{\text{tan. } c + \text{tan. } a} = \frac{\text{sin. } (c - a)}{\text{sin. } (c + a)} \quad \ldots \text{ (Tr. 40.)}$$

$$\therefore \text{tan. } \frac{B}{2} = \sqrt{\frac{\text{sin. } (c - a)}{\text{sin. } (c + a)}} \qquad \text{tan. } \frac{A}{2} = \sqrt{\frac{\text{sin. } (c - b)}{\text{sin. } (c + b)}} \ldots R_7$$

which may be conveniently used in this case.

(19.) In nearly a similar way may be proved (which we leave to the student)—

$$\text{tan. } \frac{c}{2} = \sqrt{-\frac{\text{cos. } (A + B)}{\text{cos. } (A - B)}} \ldots\ldots\ldots R$$

which, though in an impossible form, is not really so, for, as we shall see, A + B must be greater than a right angle; so that cos. (A + B) is negative. This formula may be used when c is nearly a right angle.

When R_3 is to be used to find a, and a is nearly a right angle, proceed as follows:—

$$\text{tan. } (45^\circ - x) = \frac{1 - \text{tan. } x}{1 + \text{tan. } x} \ldots\ldots\ldots \text{ (Tr. 49.)}$$

Assume

$$\text{tan. } x = \text{sin. } c \text{ sin. } A = \text{sin. } a$$

$$\therefore \text{tan. } (45^\circ - x) = \frac{1 - \text{sin. } a}{1 + \text{sin. } a} = \frac{1 - \text{cos. } (90^\circ - a)}{1 + \text{cos. } (90^\circ - a)}$$

$$\text{(Tr. 43.)} \qquad = \frac{2 \text{ sin.}^2 \left(45^\circ - \frac{a}{2}\right)}{2 \text{ cos.}^2 \left(45^\circ - \frac{a}{2}\right)} = \text{tan.}^2 \left(45 - \frac{a}{2}\right)$$

Hence

$$\text{tan. } \left(45^\circ - \frac{a}{2}\right) = \sqrt{\text{tan. } (45^\circ - x)} \ldots\ldots\ldots R_9$$

where x is to be found from the equation

$$\text{tan. } x = \text{sin. } c \text{ sin. } A.$$

(20.) We give the following as exercises for the learner:—

$$\text{sin. } a \text{ cos. } b = \text{sin. } c \text{ cos. } B \ldots\ldots\ldots R_{10}$$

$$\text{tan. } \frac{A + B}{2} \text{ tan. } \frac{A - B}{2} = \frac{\text{sin. } (a - b)}{\text{sin. } (a + b)} \ldots\ldots R_{11}$$

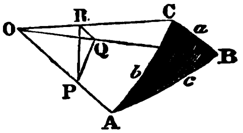
$$\text{cos } (c - b) = \text{cos. } a + \text{sin. } a \text{ sin. } b \text{ tan. } \tfrac{1}{2} A \ldots\ldots R_{12}$$

$$\text{sin. } (c - b) = \text{sin. } a \text{ cos. } b \text{ tan. } \tfrac{1}{2} A \ldots\ldots R_{13}$$

CHAPTER III.

On Oblique-angled Triangles.

(21.) Most of the cases of oblique-angled triangles may be reduced to those of right-angled triangles, as we shall afterwards see. But we shall first supply the necessary formulæ for completing the subject, and afterwards proceed to each particular case.



(22.) Let A B C be any spherical triangle, and let O A, O B, O C, contain the corresponding solid angle at the centre of the sphere. From any point R in O C draw R P and R Q respectively perpendicular to O C in the planes O C A, O C B. We have then a pyramid, having the right-angled triangles O R P, O R Q, and the oblique-angled triangles O P Q, R P Q; and in each triangle of which we find one of the angles of the solid angle, or one of the parts of the spherical triangle; namely,—

Q O R the side a. (8)
R O P . . b.
P O Q . . c.
Q R P the angle C, because R P and R Q are perpendicular to O C.

(Tr. 55.) $PQ^2 = PR^2 + RQ^2 - 2\,PR.RQ \cos. PRQ$

$$= PO^2 + OQ^2 - 2\,PO.OQ \cos. POQ$$

$$\therefore\ 0 = PO^2 - PR^2 + QO^2 - QR^2 - 2\,PO.OQ \cos. c + 2\,PR.RQ \cos. C$$

$$= OR^2 + OR^2 - 2\,PO.OQ \cos. c + 2\,PR.RQ \cos. C.$$

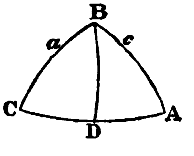
Dividing by 2, and reducing,

$$\cos. c = \frac{OR^2}{PO.OQ} + \frac{PR.RQ}{PO.OQ} \cos. C$$

$$= \frac{OR}{OQ} \cdot \frac{OR}{OP} + \frac{RQ}{OQ} \cdot \frac{PR}{PO} \cos. C$$

$$= \cos. a \cos. b + \sin. a \sin. b \cos. C.$$

(23.) This formula may also be deduced as follows:—



Draw B D perpendicular to A C, and let C D $= x$, B D $= p$. Then D A $= b - x$; whence, from R_1,

$\cos. x \cos. p = \cos. a$ $\qquad$ $\cos. (b - x) \cos. p = \cos c$

$$\therefore\ \cos. x \cos. c = \cos. (b - x) \cos. a$$

$$= \cos. b \cos. a \cos. x + \sin. b \cos. a \sin. x$$

$$\therefore\ \cos. c = \cos. b \cos. a + \sin. b \cos. a \tan. x.$$

But, (R_4), $$\text{an. } a \text{ cos. C} = \text{tan. } x$$

$$\therefore \quad \text{sin. } a \text{ cos. C} = \text{tan. } x \text{ cos } a,$$

$$\text{or cos. } c = \text{cos. } b \text{ cos. } a + \text{sin. } b \text{ sin. } a \text{ cos. C.}$$

(24.) From the preceding, by treating the remaining angles in a similar manner, we get the following formulæ:—

$$\left.\begin{aligned} \text{cos. } a &= \text{cos. } b \text{ cos. } c + \text{sin. } b \text{ sin. } c \text{ cos. A} \\ \text{cos. } b &= \text{cos. } c \text{ cos. } a + \text{sin. } c \text{ sin. } a \text{ cos. B} \\ \text{cos. } c &= \text{cos. } a \text{ cos. } b + \text{sin. } a \text{ sin. } b \text{ cos. C} \end{aligned}\right\} \quad \ldots\ldots \quad O_1$$

or

$$\left.\begin{aligned} \text{cos. A} &= \frac{\text{cos. } a - \text{cos. } b \text{ cos. } c}{\text{sin. } b \text{ sin. } c} \\ \text{cos. B} &= \frac{\text{cos. } b - \text{cos. } c \text{ cos. } a}{\text{sin. } c \text{ sin. } a} \\ \text{cos. C} &= \frac{\text{cos. } c - \text{cos. } a \text{ cos. } b}{\text{sin. } a \text{ sin. } b} \end{aligned}\right\} \quad \ldots\ldots \quad O_2$$

$$\left.\begin{aligned} 1 + \text{cos. A} &= \frac{\text{cos. } a - \text{cos. } (b + c)}{\text{sin. } b \text{ sin. } c} \\ 1 - \text{cos. A} &= \frac{\text{cos. } (b - c) - \text{cos. } a}{\text{sin. } b \text{ sin. } c} \end{aligned}\right\} \quad \ldots\ldots \quad O_3$$

&c. &c.

or, (Tr. 41.),

$$2 \text{ cos.}^2 \tfrac{1}{2} \text{A} = \frac{2 \text{ sin. } \dfrac{a + b + c}{2} \text{ sin. } \dfrac{b + c - a}{2}}{\text{sin. } b \text{ sin. } c}$$

$$2 \text{ sin.}^2 \tfrac{1}{2} \text{A} = \frac{2 \text{ sin. } \dfrac{a + b - c}{2} \text{ sin. } \dfrac{c + a - b}{2}}{\text{sin. } b \text{ sin. } c}$$

Let $$\frac{a + b + c}{2} = s$$

whence

$$\frac{b + c - a}{2} = s - a \qquad \frac{c + a - b}{2} = s - b \qquad \frac{a + b - c}{2} = s - c$$

the preceding formulæ, with the ones corresponding to the other angles, then become

. . . . O . . . .

$$\text{cos.}^2 \tfrac{1}{2} \text{A} = \frac{\text{sin. } s \text{ sin. } (s - a)}{\text{sin. } b \text{ sin. } c} \qquad \text{sin.}^2 \tfrac{1}{2} \text{A} = \frac{\text{sin. } (s - b) \text{ sin. } (s - c)}{\text{sin. } b \text{ sin. } c}$$

$$\text{cos.}^2 \tfrac{1}{2} \text{B} = \frac{\text{sin. } s \text{ sin. } (s - b)}{\text{sin. } c \text{ sin. } a} \qquad \text{sin.}^2 \tfrac{1}{2} \text{B} = \frac{\text{sin. } (s - c) \text{ sin. } (s - a)}{\text{sin. } c \text{ sin. } a}$$

$$\text{cos.}^2 \tfrac{1}{2} \text{C} = \frac{\text{sin. } s \text{ sin. } (s - c)}{\text{sin. } a \text{ sin. } b} \qquad \text{sin.}^2 \tfrac{1}{2} \text{C} = \frac{\text{sin. } (s - a) \text{ sin. } (s - b)}{\text{sin. } a \text{ sin. } b}$$

from which formulæ may be obtained for tan.$^2 \tfrac{1}{2}$A &c.

(25.) From O_4, by simple multiplication and extraction of the square root,

. . . . O_5 . . . .

$$\sin.\tfrac{1}{2}A \sin.\tfrac{1}{2}B = \sin.\tfrac{1}{2}C\,\frac{\sin.(s-c)}{\sin.c} \qquad \cos.\tfrac{1}{2}A \cos.\tfrac{1}{2}B = \sin.\tfrac{1}{2}C\,\frac{\sin.s}{\sin.c}$$

$$\sin.\tfrac{1}{2}B \sin.\tfrac{1}{2}C = \sin.\tfrac{1}{2}A\,\frac{\sin.(s-a)}{\sin.a} \qquad \cos.\tfrac{1}{2}B \cos.\tfrac{1}{2}C = \sin.\tfrac{1}{2}A\,\frac{\sin.s}{\sin.a}$$

$$\sin.\tfrac{1}{2}C \sin.\tfrac{1}{2}A = \sin.\tfrac{1}{2}B\,\frac{\sin.(s-b)}{\sin.b} \qquad \cos.\tfrac{1}{2}C \cos.\tfrac{1}{2}A = \sin.\tfrac{1}{2}B\,\frac{\sin.s}{\sin.b}$$

. . . . O_6 . . . .

$$\sin.\tfrac{1}{2}A \cos.\tfrac{1}{2}B = \cos.\tfrac{1}{2}C\,\frac{\sin.(s-b)}{\sin.c} \qquad \cos.\tfrac{1}{2}A \sin.\tfrac{1}{2}B = \cos.\tfrac{1}{2}C\,\frac{\sin.(s-a)}{\sin.c}$$

$$\sin.\tfrac{1}{2}B \cos.\tfrac{1}{2}C = \cos.\tfrac{1}{2}A\,\frac{\sin.(s-c)}{\sin.a} \qquad \cos.\tfrac{1}{2}B \sin.\tfrac{1}{2}C = \cos.\tfrac{1}{2}A\,\frac{\sin.(s-b)}{\sin.a}$$

$$\sin.\tfrac{1}{2}C \cos.\tfrac{1}{2}A = \cos.\tfrac{1}{2}B\,\frac{\sin.(s-a)}{\sin.b} \qquad \cos.\tfrac{1}{2}C \sin.\tfrac{1}{2}A = \cos.\tfrac{1}{2}B\,\frac{\sin.(s-c)}{\sin.a}$$

(26.) From the two last sets we find

$$\begin{aligned}\sin.\tfrac{1}{2}(A+B) &= \sin.\tfrac{1}{2}A\cos.\tfrac{1}{2}B + \cos.\tfrac{1}{2}A\sin.\tfrac{1}{2}B\\ &= \frac{\cos.\tfrac{1}{2}C}{\sin.c}\Big(\sin.(s-b) + \sin.(s-a)\Big)\\ &= \frac{\cos.\tfrac{1}{2}C}{2\sin.\tfrac{1}{2}c\cos.\tfrac{1}{2}c}\left(2\sin.\frac{s-b+s-a}{2}\cos.\frac{s-b-(s-a)}{2}\right)\\ &= \frac{\cos.\tfrac{1}{2}C}{\cos,\tfrac{1}{2}c}\sin.\tfrac{1}{2}(a-b)\end{aligned}$$

since $2s - a - b = c$. By proceeding thus, we find

. . . . O_7 . . . .

$$\sin.\tfrac{1}{2}(A+B) = \cos.\tfrac{1}{2}C\,\frac{\cos.\tfrac{1}{2}(a-b)}{\cos.\tfrac{1}{2}c} \qquad \cos.\tfrac{1}{2}(A+B) = \sin.\tfrac{1}{2}C\,\frac{\cos.\tfrac{1}{2}(a+b)}{\cos.\tfrac{1}{2}c}$$

$$\sin.\tfrac{1}{2}(A-B) = \cos.\tfrac{1}{2}C\,\frac{\sin.\tfrac{1}{2}(a-b)}{\sin.\tfrac{1}{2}c} \qquad \cos.\tfrac{1}{2}(A-B) = \sin.\tfrac{1}{2}C\,\frac{\sin.\tfrac{1}{2}(a+b)}{\sin.\tfrac{1}{2}c}$$

which may be varied, as in O_5 and O_6.

From O_7 we find the following, by simple division,

. . . . O_8 (*Napier's Analogies*). . . . .

$$\tan.\tfrac{1}{2}(A+B) = \cot.\tfrac{1}{2}C\,\frac{\cos.\tfrac{1}{2}(a-b)}{\cos.\tfrac{1}{2}(a+b)} \qquad \tan.\tfrac{1}{2}(a+b) = \tan.\tfrac{1}{2}c\,\frac{\cos.\tfrac{1}{2}(A-B)}{\cos.\tfrac{1}{2}(A+B)}$$

$$\tan.\tfrac{1}{2}(A-B) = \cot.\tfrac{1}{2}C\,\frac{\sin.\tfrac{1}{2}(a-b)}{\sin.\tfrac{1}{2}(a+b)} \qquad \tan.\tfrac{1}{2}(a-b) = \tan.\tfrac{1}{2}c\,\frac{\sin.\tfrac{1}{2}(A-B)}{\sin.\tfrac{1}{2}(A+B)}$$

from which we find

$$\frac{\tan.\tfrac{1}{2}(A+B)}{\tan.\tfrac{1}{2}(A-B)} = \frac{\tan.\tfrac{1}{2}(a+b)}{\tan.\tfrac{1}{2}(a-b)} \quad . . . . \quad O_9$$

(27.) Let $v = \sqrt{1 + 2\cos. a \cos. b \cos. c - \cos.^2 a - \cos.^2 b - \cos.^2 c}$

From O_2 we have $\sin.^2 A = 1 - \dfrac{(\cos. a - \cos. b \cos. c)^2}{(1-\cos.^2 b)(1-\cos.^2 c)}$, in which $1-\cos.^2 b$ is put for $\sin.^2 b$. From this we shall find, by reduction,

$$\sin.^2 A = \frac{v^2}{\sin.^2 b \sin.^2 c}.$$

Whence the following,

$$\sin. A = \frac{v}{\sin. b \sin. c} \quad \sin. B = \frac{v}{\sin. c \sin. a} \quad \sin. C = \frac{v}{\sin. a \sin. b} \quad \ldots\ldots O_{10}$$

$$\frac{\sin. A}{\sin. a} = \frac{\sin. B}{\sin. b} = \frac{\sin. C}{\sin. c} = \frac{v}{\sin. a \sin. b \sin. c}. \quad \ldots\ldots O_{11}$$

Again, from O_4,

$$\sin.^2 A = 4 \sin.^2 \tfrac{1}{2} A \cos.^2 \tfrac{1}{2} A = \frac{4 \sin. s \sin. (s-a) \sin. (s-b) \sin. (s-c)}{\sin.^2 b \sin.^2 c} \quad . \; O_{12}$$

whence, by O_{10},

$$v = 2\sqrt{\sin. s \sin. (s-a) \sin. (s-b) \sin. (s-c)} \quad \ldots\ldots O_{13}$$

(28.) In the first formula of O_1 substitute the value of $\cos. b$ given by the second, which gives

$$\cos. a = (\cos. a \cos. c + \sin. a \sin. c \cos. B) \cos. c + \sin. b \sin. c \cos. A$$

Remove the term $\cos. a \cos.^2 c$ to the left side, substitute $\sin.^2 c$ for $1 - \cos.^2 c$, and divide by $\sin. c$, which gives

$$\cos. a \sin. c = \sin. a \cos. c \cos. B + \sin. b \cos. A. \quad \ldots\ldots O_{14}$$

From O_{11} $\sin. b = \sin. B \dfrac{\sin. a}{\sin. A}$, which substitute, giving

$$\cos. a \sin. c = \sin. a \cos. c \cos. B + \sin. B \cos. A \frac{\sin. a}{\sin. A}.$$

Divide by $\sin. a$, and by this, and similar processes, we have the following formulæ:—

$$\left.\begin{array}{l} \cot. a \sin. c = \cos. c \cos. B + \sin. B \cot. A \\ \cot. a \sin. b = \cos. b \cos. C + \sin. C \cot. A \end{array}\right\} \quad \ldots\ldots O_{15}$$

&c. &c.

(29.) All the preceding formulæ have been deduced from O_1 and are therefore true, whatever changes may be made in a, A, &c. provided the formula O_1 remain true when changed in the same manner.

Now, form the following product from O_2,

$$\cos. A + \cos. B \cos. C,$$

which gives, reducing to a common denominator, and writing $1 - \cos.^2 a$ instead of $\sin.^2 a$ in the numerator,

$$\frac{(\cos. a - \cos. b \cos. c)(1-\cos.^2 a) + (\cos. b - \cos. c \cos. a)(\cos. c - \cos. a \cos. b)}{\sin.^2 a \sin. b \sin. c}.$$

Which, developed, will be seen to be

$$\frac{\cos. a \,.\, v^2}{\sin.^2 a \sin. b \sin. c}, \text{ or } \cos. a \sin. B \sin. C, \text{ from } O_{10}.$$

We have then

$$\cos. A + \cos. B \cos. C = \cos. a \sin. B \sin C,$$

or

$$-\cos. A = \cos. B \cos. C - \sin. B \sin. C \cos. a.$$

For cos. A write its equal, $-\cos. (\pi - A)$, and for sin. B its equal, $\sin. (\pi - B)$, and so on; which gives

$$\cos. (\pi - A) = \cos. (\pi - B) \cos. (\pi - C) + \sin. (\pi - B) \sin. (\pi - C) \cos. (\pi - a),$$

which is the formula in O_1 altered by writing *supplements of angles* instead of sides, and *supplements of sides* instead of angles. From this change not altering the *truth* of the formulæ in O_1, and from the remark at the beginning of this article, we deduce the following theorem :—

All the formulæ hitherto demonstrated are true, if instead of sides *are written the* supplements *of the* opposite angles, *and instead of* angles, *the* supplements *of the* opposite sides.

Thus, for s we must write

$$\frac{\pi - A + \pi - B + \pi - C}{2} \text{ or } \frac{3\pi}{2} - \frac{A + B + C}{2}$$

Let

$$\frac{A + B + C}{2} = S.$$

The following table contains the various substitutions which result from the alterations in the preceding theorem.

For	Substitute	For	Substitute	For	Substitute
a	$\pi - A$	s	$\frac{3\pi}{2} - S$	$\frac{1}{2}(a + b)$	$\pi - \frac{1}{2}(A+B)$
b	$\pi - B$	$s - a$	$\frac{\pi}{2} - (S - A)$	$\frac{1}{2}(a - b)$	$-\frac{1}{2}(A-B)$
c	$\pi - C$	$s - b$	$\frac{\pi}{2} - (S - B)$	$\frac{1}{2}(A+B)$	$\pi - \frac{1}{2}(a + b)$
A	$\pi - a$	$s - c$	$\frac{\pi}{2} - (S - C)$	$\frac{1}{2}(A-B)$	$-\frac{1}{2}(a - b)$
B	$\pi - b$	$a + b$	$-(A + B)$	&c.	&c.
C	$\pi - c$	$a - b$	$-(A - B)$		

(30.) We give some instances of the results of the change, in which the formula deduced from O_m is denoted by O'_m.

$$\cos. a = \frac{\cos. A + \cos. B \cos. C}{\sin. B \sin. C} \quad \ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots \quad O'_2$$

$$\left.\begin{aligned} \sin.^2 \tfrac{1}{2} a &= -\frac{\cos. S \cos. (S - A)}{\sin. B \sin. C} \\ \cos.^2 \tfrac{1}{2} a &= \frac{\cos. (S-B) \cos. (S-C)}{\sin. B \sin. C} \end{aligned}\right\} \quad \ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots \quad O'_4$$

&c. &c.

$$\cos. \tfrac{1}{2} a \cos. \tfrac{1}{2} b = \cos. \tfrac{1}{2} C \frac{\cos. (S - C)}{\sin. C} \text{ \&c.} \quad \ldots\ldots \quad O'_5$$

O_7, O_8, O_9, and O_{15} either are not altered, or one of them is changed into another of the same set.

Let $V = \sqrt{1 - 2 \cos. A \cos. B \cos. C - \cos.^2 A - \cos.^2 B - \cos.^2 C}$

$$\sin. a = \frac{V}{\sin. B \sin. C} \text{ \&c.} \quad . \; . \; . \; . \; . \; . \; . \; . \; . \; . \; . \; . \; . \; . \quad O'_{10}$$

$$\frac{\sin. a}{\sin. A} = \frac{\sin. b}{\sin. B} = \frac{\sin. c}{\sin. C} = \frac{V}{\sin. A \sin. B \sin. C} \quad . \; . \; . \quad O'_{11}$$

whence $V v = \sin. A \sin. B \sin. C \sin. a \sin. b \sin. c$

$$\sin.^2 a = - \frac{4 \cos. S \cos. (S-A) \cos. (S-B) \cos. (S-C)}{\sin.^2 B \sin.^2 C} \quad . \quad O'_{12}$$

$$V = 2 \sqrt{- \cos. S \cos. (S-A) \cos. (S-B) \cos. (S-C)} \quad . \; . \quad O'_{13}$$

(31.) From the above we may conclude that for every spherical triangle which can be formed, having sides a, b, and c, and angles A, B and C, there is another spherical triangle having sides $\pi - A$, $\pi - B$, and $\pi - C$, and angles $\pi - a$, $\pi - b$, and $\pi - c$. (G. VI. 7.) These two triangles are called *polar* or *supplemental*, and the geometrical discussion of them is contained in the reference just made.

(32.) The formulæ given are amply sufficient for the direct solution of triangles: we now proceed to give an example of all the functions of sides and angles used, with the logarithms of their sines, cosines and tangents. The table, as well as the idea, is taken from Delambre's Astronomy.

Symbol.	Value.			Log. sine.	Log. cosine.	Log. tangent.
	°	′	″			
A	121	36	20	9·93027	9·71939	0·21089
B	42	15	14	9·82764	9·86933	9·95830
C	34	15	3	9·75037	9·91729	9·83308
a	76	35	36	9·98800	9·36523	0·62277
b	50	10	30	9·88536	9·80648	0·07888
c	40	0	10	9·80809	9·88424	9·92386
$\frac{1}{2}$ A	60	48	10	9·94099	9·68826	9·25273
$\frac{1}{2}$ B	21	7	37	9·55683	9·96978	9·58705
$\frac{1}{2}$ C	17	7	31	9·46903	9·98030	9·48873
$\frac{1}{2} a$	38	17	48	9·79220	9·89477	9·89744
$\frac{1}{2} b$	25	5	15	9·62737	9·95697	9·67040
$\frac{1}{2} c$	20	0	5	9·53408	9·97298	9·56110
A + B	163	51	34	9·44404	9·98253	9·46151
B + C	76	30	17	9·98784	9·36804	0·61980
C + A	155	51	23	9·61175	9·96024	9·65151
$a + b$	126	46	6	9·90367	9·77712	0·12654
$b + c$	90	10	40	10·00000	7·49175	2·50824
$c + a$	116	35	46	9·95143	9·65099	0·30044
$\frac{1}{2}$ (A + B)	81	55	47	9·99568	9·14733	0·84834
$\frac{1}{2}$ (B + C)	38	15	8	9·79178	9·89503	9·89675
$\frac{1}{2}$ (C + A)	77	55	41	9·99029	9·32043	0·66985
$\frac{1}{2} (a + b)$	63	23	3	9·95135	9·65128	0·30007
$\frac{1}{2} (b + c)$	45	5	20	9·85016	9·84881	0·00135
$\frac{1}{2} (c + a)$	58	17	53	9·92982	9·72057	0·20925

Symbol.	Value.			Log. sine.	Log. cosine.	Log. tangent.
	°	′	″			
A − B	79	21	6	9·99246	9·26665	0·72580
B − C	8	0	11	9·14372	9·99575	9·14797
C − A	−87	21	17	9·99954	9·66419	1·33534
a − *b*	26	25	6	9.64828	9·95210	9·69618
b − *c*	10	10	20	9·24701	9·99312	9·25389
c − *a*	−36	35	26	9·77531	9·90467	9·87064
½ (A − B)	39	40	33	9·80512	9·88630	9·91882
½ (B − C)	4	0	5	8·84375	9·99894	8·84481
½ (C − A)	−43	40	89	9·83922	9·85928	9·97994
½ (*a* − *b*)	13	12	33	9·35890	9·98835	9·37054
½ (*b* − *c*)	5	5	10	8·94769	9·99829	8·94941
½ (*c* − *a*)	−18	17	43	9·49681	9·97747	9·51934
S	99	3	18	9·99455	9·19696	0·79759
S − A	−22	33	2	9·58376	9·96545	9·61831
S − B	56	48	4	9·92261	9·73842	0·18419
S − C	64	48	15	9·95658	9·62911	0·32746
s	83	23	8	9·99710	9·06142	0·93569
s − *a*	6	47	32	9·07287	9·99694	9·07593
s − *b*	33	12	38	9·73856	9·92255	9·81601
s − *c*	43	22	58	9·83687	9·86140	9·97547

$$\text{Log. } v = 9{\cdot}56600$$

$$\text{Log. V} = 9{\cdot}62374$$

(33.) We shall now proceed to the different cases of oblique-angled triangles.

Case 1. *Given the three sides, to find the three angles.*

The formulæ O_4 apply here, and give a direct solution. For instance, let the sides of the triangle be those given in the table.

$$\sin.\ \tfrac{1}{2}\,A = \sqrt{\frac{\sin.\ (s-b)\ \sin.\ (s-c)}{\sin.\ b\ \sin.\ c}}$$

Log. sin. $(s-b)$	9·73856
Log. sin. $(s-c)$	9·83687
Comp. log. sin. b	0·11464
Comp. log. sin. c	0·19191
Sum 2)	19·88198
Log. sin. ½ A	9·94099

The angle may also be found from O_2 by the following process.

$$\cos.\ A = \frac{\cos.\ a - \cos.\ b \cos.\ c}{\sin.\ b \sin.\ c} \quad \ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots \quad O_2$$

Find x from the equation,

$$\cos.\ x = \cos.\ b \cos.\ c.$$

Then

$$\cos.\ A = \frac{\cos.\ a - \cos.\ x}{\sin.\ b \sin. c} = \frac{2 \sin.\ \frac{1}{2}\,(x+a) \sin.\ \frac{1}{2}\,(x-a)}{\sin.\ b \sin.\ c}$$

Case 2. Given the three angles, to find the three sides.

Delambre, who probably calculated more spherical triangles than any man of his day, says he never met with this case in practice but once, and then he could have done without it. The case may be solved by O'_4 or by the following formula, easily deducible from O'_2, as the one last given from O_2,

$$\cos. a = \frac{\cos. A + \cos. B \cos. C}{\sin. B \sin. C} = \frac{2 \cos. \frac{1}{2}(x + A) \cos. \frac{1}{2}(x - A)}{\sin. B \sin. C}$$

$$\text{where } \cos. x = \cos. B \cos. C.$$

Case 3. Given two sides and the included angle, to find the third side and remaining angles.

To find the angles directly from the data, (a, b, and C) use *Napier's Analogies* (O_8)

$$\tan. \tfrac{1}{2}(A + B) = \cot. \tfrac{1}{2} C \frac{\cos. \frac{1}{2}(a - b)}{\cos. \frac{1}{2}(a + b)}$$

$$\tan. \tfrac{1}{2}(A - B) = \cot. \tfrac{1}{2} C \frac{\sin. \frac{1}{2}(a - b)}{\sin. \frac{1}{2}(a + b)}$$

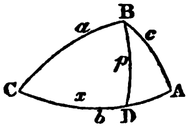
these determine $\frac{1}{2}(A + B)$ and $\frac{1}{2}(A - B)$; whence can be found,

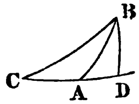
$$A = \tfrac{1}{2}(A + B) + \tfrac{1}{2}(A - B)$$

$$B = \tfrac{1}{2}(A + B) - \tfrac{1}{2}(A - B)$$

To find the side c, draw a perpendicular B D from B to A C: let

$CD = x$ $BD = p$. First determine x by the equation





$$\tan. a \cos. C = \tan. x \; . \; . \; . \; . \; . \; . \; . \; . \; R_4$$

then determine $DA = x'$ from the equation

$$DA = b - x \text{ when } b > x$$

or

$$DA = x - b \text{ when } x > b$$

Lastly, determine c from

$$\cos. c = \cos. p \cos. (b - x) \; . \; . \; . \; . \; . \; . \; . \; . \; . \; R_1$$

$$= \frac{\cos. a \cos. (b - x)}{\cos. x} \text{ since } \cos. p \cos. x = \cos. a$$

If the angles are now to be determined, use the following formulæ

$$\cos. A = \frac{\tan. (b - x)}{\tan. c} \; . \; . \; . \; . \; . \; . \; . \; . \; . \; . \; R_1$$

$$\sin. CBD = \frac{\sin. x}{\sin. a}$$

$$\sin. DBA = \frac{\sin. (b - x)}{\sin. c}$$

$$B = CBD + DBA \text{ when } b > x$$

$$B = CBD - DBA \text{ when } x > b$$

The equation

$$\cos. c = \cos. a \cos. b + \sin. a \sin. b \cos. C \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad O_1$$

may be reduced to a logarithmic form in either of the following ways.

$$\cos. c = \cos. a \cos. b + \sin. a \sin. b \left\{ 1 - 2 \sin.^2 \tfrac{1}{2} C \right\}$$

$$= \cos. (a - b) - 2 \sin. a \sin. b \sin.^2 \tfrac{1}{2} C$$

$$\therefore\ 1 - 2 \sin.^2 \tfrac{1}{2} c = 1 - 2 \sin.^2 \tfrac{1}{2} (a - b) - 2 \sin. a \sin. b \sin.^2 \tfrac{1}{2} C$$

$$\therefore\ \sin.^2 \tfrac{1}{2}\ c = \sin.^2 \tfrac{1}{2}\ (a - b) \left\{ 1 + \frac{\sin. a \sin. b \sin.^2 \frac{1}{2} C}{\sin.^2 \frac{1}{2} (a - b)} \right\}$$

Find θ from the equation

$$\tan. \theta = \frac{\sin. \frac{1}{2} C}{\sin. \frac{1}{2} (a - b)} \sqrt{\sin. a \sin. b}$$

which gives

$$\sin.^2 \tfrac{1}{2}\ c = \sin.^2 \tfrac{1}{2}\ (a - b)\ (1 + \tan.^2 \theta)$$

$$\sin. \tfrac{1}{2}\ c = \frac{\sin. \frac{1}{2}\ (a - b)}{\cos. \theta}$$

which can be readily found by logarithms. By using $2 \cos.^2 \frac{1}{2} c - 1$ instead of $\cos. c$, &c., but retaining the substitution of $1 - 2 \sin.^2 \frac{1}{2} C$ for $\cos. C$, the equation O_1 may be solved as follows.

Let $$\sin. \theta = \frac{\sin. \frac{1}{2} C}{\cos. \frac{1}{2} (a - b)} \sqrt{\sin. a \sin. b}$$

Then $$\cos. \tfrac{1}{2} c = \cos. \tfrac{1}{2}\ (a - b) \cos. \theta$$

which may be proved as before.

Lastly, by the use twice repeated of the formulæ

$$\cos. x \cos. y = \tfrac{1}{2} \cos. (x + y) + \tfrac{1}{2} \cos. (x - y)$$

$$\sin. x \sin. y = \tfrac{1}{2} \cos. (x - y) - \tfrac{1}{2} \cos. (x + y)$$

The equation O_1 becomes

$$4 \cos. c = 2 \cos. S + 2 \cos. D + \cos. (D + C) + \cos. (D - C)$$
$$- \cos. (S + C) - \cos. (S - C)$$

where $$S = a + b \qquad D = a - b$$

which, by substituting $1 -$ vers. sin. θ for $\cos. \theta$ throughout, becomes

$$4 \text{ vers. } c = 2 \text{ vers. } S + 2 \text{ vers. } D + \text{vers. } (D + C) + \text{vers. } (D - C)$$
$$- \text{ vers. } (S + C) - \text{vers. } (S - C)$$

which depends on a table of natural versed sines only, and requires no logarithms.

Case 4. *Given two angles and their interjacent side, required the remaining angles and sides.*

This case occurs but seldom, and to avoid multiplying the same formulæ in different shapes, the following evident consequence of the properties of the supplemental triangle (31) may be employed.

Let A, B, and c be the given angles and side, and let

$$180^\circ - A = a' \qquad 180^\circ - B = b' \qquad 180^\circ - c = C'$$

Let a', b', and C' be two sides, and the included angle of a spherical triangle:

find c', A′ and B′ as in the last case; then C, a, and b, the remaining parts of the original triangle, are found from the equations

$$C = 180^\circ - c' \qquad a = 180^\circ - A' \qquad b = 180^\circ - B'$$

Case 5. *Given two sides and an angle opposite to one of them, required the remaining side and angles.*

Previously to proceeding with this case, we point out how to find θ from the equation

$$m \sin.\theta + n \cos.\theta = p$$

where m, n, and p are given, either positive or negative.

Assume $\quad r \cos.\phi = m \qquad r \sin.\phi = n$

which gives $\quad \tan.\phi = \frac{n}{m} \qquad r = \frac{n}{\sin.\phi}$

The first of which determines ϕ, and the second r.

Substitute $r\cos.\phi$ and $r\sin.\phi$ for m and n in the original equation, which gives

$$r \sin.(\theta + \phi) = p$$

$$\sin.(\theta + \phi) = \frac{p}{r} = \frac{p \sin.\phi}{n} = \frac{p \cos.\phi}{m},$$

from which $\theta + \phi$, and thence θ, may be found. Other forms of solution may be given to determine $\cos.(\theta + \phi)$, &c.

Let the given parts of the triangle be a, b, and A.

From O_{11}, we determine B as follows:

$$\frac{\sin.A}{\sin.a} = \frac{\sin.B}{\sin.b} \qquad \sin.B = \sin.b\,\frac{\sin.A}{\sin.a}.$$

To determine C,

$$\cot.A \sin.C + \cos.b \cos.C = \cot.a \sin.b, \quad \ldots\ldots \quad O_{15}$$

which can be solved as above; thus,

Let $\quad \tan.\phi = \tan.A \cos.b$, then $\sin.(C + \phi) = \frac{\tan.b}{\tan.a}\sin.\phi$.

To determine c,

$$\cos.b \cos.c + \sin.b \sin.c \cos.A = \cos.a, \quad \ldots\ldots \quad O_1$$

or let $\quad \tan.\phi = \frac{\sin.b \cos.A}{\cos.b} = \tan.b \cos.A.$

Then, $\quad \cos.c + \tan.\phi \sin.c = \frac{\cos.a}{\cos.b},$

or

$$\frac{\cos.(c - \phi)}{\cos.\phi} = \frac{\cos.a}{\cos.b}$$

$$\cos.(c - \phi) = \frac{\cos.a}{\cos.b}\cos.\phi.$$

Whence (ϕ being first found from $\tan.\phi = \tan.b \cos.A$) $c - \phi$, and thence c, can be found.

Case 6. Given two angles and a side opposite to one of them, required the remaining angle and sides.

This case might be referred to the last by means of the supplemental triangle: the direct process is so like the last, that we shall only give the results.

Let the given parts be A, B, and a.

The side b is determined from the equation

$$\text{sin. } b = \text{sin. B} \frac{\text{sin. } a}{\text{sin. A}} \text{ . . . . } O_{11}$$

The side c is determined from

$$\text{cot. } a \text{ sin. } c - \text{cos. B cos. } c = \text{cot. A sin. B . . . . } O_{15}$$

reduced as before to

$$\text{tan. } \phi = \text{tan. } a \text{ cos. B} \qquad \text{sin. } (c - \phi) = \frac{\text{tan. B}}{\text{tan. A}} \text{ sin. } \phi:$$

and C is determined from

$$\text{cos. A} = - \text{cos. B cos. C} + \text{sin. B sin. C cos. } a \text{ . . . . . } O_1'$$

$$\text{or} \qquad \text{tan. } \phi = \frac{\text{cot. B}}{\text{cos. } a} \qquad \text{sin. } (\text{C} - \phi) = \frac{\text{cos. A}}{\text{cos. B}} \text{ sin. } \phi.$$

CHAPTER IV.

GEOMETRICAL CONSEQUENCES OF THE FORMULÆ DEDUCED IN THE PRECEDING CHAPTER.

(34.) It will have been observed, that we have not hitherto taken any property of the sphere for granted; we may therefore use the formulæ to deduce the various propositions treated in Book VI. of the Treatise on Geometry. This we do rather for the illustration of the formulæ than for the theorems themselves. See (3). Many of the geometrical propositions are, analytically considered, definitions of the limits within which the formulæ are possible; and there is no spherical triangle between some parts of which such relations exist as would render the expressions of any of the remaining parts impossible.

(*A.*) *Any two sides of a spherical triangle are together greater than the third, and all three sides together are less than a whole circle.*

In this proposition we must remember (5) that no side or angle of a spherical triangle is greater than two right angles, and that no side or angle can be considered as negative. Now, a, b, and c being positive, *not more than one* of the three

$$\frac{a + b - c}{2}, \quad \frac{b + c - a}{2}, \quad \frac{c + a - b}{2}$$

can be negative: for, if two were negative, their sum would be negative; but the sum of any two of the preceding is either a, b, or c. And since a b and c are less than 180°, each of the preceding is less than 180°. The formula

$$4 \text{ sin. } s \text{ sin. } (s - a) \text{ sin. } (s - b) \text{ sin. } (s - c), \text{ or } v^2$$

must be positive, and therefore can only have an even number of negative factors. This gives the two following cases.

I. All the factors are positive, or

$$\text{sin. } s \text{ positive, that is } \frac{a+b+c}{2} \text{ either } < 180^\circ \text{ or } > 360^\circ$$

$$\begin{array}{ll} \text{sin. } (s-a) \text{ positive, that is} & b + c > a \\ \text{sin. } (s-b) \text{ . . . .} & c + a > b \\ \text{sin. } (s-c) \text{ . . . .} & a + b > c \end{array}$$

II. Two negative factors, that is, *one* out of the three sin. $(s-a)$, sin. $(s-b)$ and sin. $(s-c)$ is negative, and sin. s is negative: which gives

$$\text{sin. } s \text{ negative, that is } \frac{a+b+c}{2} > 180^\circ$$

$$\begin{array}{ll} \text{suppose sin. } (s-a) \text{ negative . . . . .} & b + c < a \\ \text{. . . sin. } (s-b) \text{ positive . . . . .} & c + a > b \\ \text{. . . sin. } (s-c) \text{ positive . . . . .} & a + b > c \end{array}$$

The second case must be rejected, for since $a + b < c$, that is (5) *à fortiori* $< 180^\circ$, and since also $c < 180^\circ$, we have

$$\frac{a+b+c}{2} < \frac{360^\circ}{2} < 180^\circ$$

which contradicts another part of the case. Again, in the first case, s cannot be greater than 360°, for in that case $a + b + c > 2 \times 360^\circ$ or one at least of the three a, b, and c, must be greater than 180°, which is against the definition. There remains then only the first case with this limitation, which is the proposition asserted.

(*B.*) *The greater angle of a spherical triangle is opposite to the greater side, and the sum of the angles of a spherical triangle is greater than two and less than six right angles. Also the sum of any two angles is less than the third increased by* 180°.

The first part appears from O_7. Take, for instance,

$$\text{sin. } \tfrac{1}{2}(A-B) = \text{cos. } \tfrac{1}{2} C \, \frac{\text{sin. } \frac{1}{2}(a-b)}{\text{sin. } \frac{1}{2} c}$$

since $\frac{1}{2} c$ and $\frac{1}{2} C$ are each $< 90^\circ$, their sines and cosines are positive. Hence sin. $\frac{1}{2}(A-B)$ and sin. $\frac{1}{2}(a-b)$ have the same sign: that is, $A - B$ and $a - b$ are both positive or both negative.

Hence if $a > b$ $A > B$, if $a < b$ $A < B$.

The remaining part of the theorem we shall obtain from the value of V^2, or

$$-\text{ cos. } S \text{ cos. } (S-A) \text{ cos. } (S-B) \text{ cos. } (S-C)$$

in which it appears that since $2S = A+B+C$

$$S - A + S - B + S - C = S.$$

Of the three, $S-A$, $S-B$, $S-C$, only one at most can be greater than 90°, for if the first two, for example, were each $> 90^\circ$, we should have

$$90^\circ + 90^\circ + S - C < S$$

or $$180^\circ - C < 0 \text{ or negative,}$$

which is against the hypothesis. Therefore only one of the three, cos. $(S-A)$, cos. $(S-B)$, cos. $(S-C)$, can be negative.

Therefore, by a process similar to the preceding, the only way in which

$$-\cos. S \cos. (S - A) \cos. (S - B) \cos. (S - C)$$

can be positive, (that is, can have an odd number of negative factors,) is either when

I. cos. S is negative and the others positive,

II. cos. S positive, and *one* of the others, cos. (S − A) for example, negative.

The second case must be excluded, for it is evidently impossible that we should have at the same time

$$S < 90° \text{ and } S - A > 90°.$$

Neither is it possible that S should be greater than 270°; for in that case A + B + C would be greater than 2 × 270°, or 3 × 180°, in which case one at least of the three A, B, and C would be > 180°; which cannot be. We have then, in order that V^2 may be positive, the conditions

cos. S is negative, or $\frac{A+B+C}{2}$ > a right angle, < 3 right angles,

or $\quad A + B + C > 2$ right angles < 6 right angles;

cos. (S − A), cos. (S − B), cos. (S − C), are positive,

or $\quad \frac{A+B-C}{2} \quad \frac{B+C-A}{2} \quad \frac{C+A-B}{2}$ are severally < 90°

or

$$A + B < 180° + C$$
$$B + C < 180° + A$$
$$C + A < 180° + B$$

Corollary:—The sum of the two remaining angles of a right-angled triangle is always greater than one and less than three right angles.

(*C.*) *The half sum of any two sides, and the same of the opposite angles, are either both greater or both less than* 90°.

For from O_7

$$\cos. \tfrac{1}{2} (A + B) = \frac{\sin. \frac{1}{2} C}{\cos. \frac{1}{2} c} \cos. \tfrac{1}{2} (a + b)$$

in which, since sin. ½ C and cos. ½ *c* are both positive, cos. ½ (A + B) and cos. ½ (*a* + *b*) have the same sign. Hence also, if the sum of two sides be 180°, the sum of the opposite angles is the same. We recommend the student to look for the geometrical demonstration of the whole of this theorem.

(*D.*) *If two sides of a triangle be equal, the opposite angles will be equal, and the converse; and spherical triangles which have the three sides, or the three angles, or two sides and an included angle, or two angles and an interjacent side, respectively equal in both, are equal in all respects.*

For in all these cases the same formulæ are to be used with the same *data* to find the remaining parts of both triangles; therefore the same results will be obtained for both.

(35.) In cases 1, 2, 3 and 4, of the solution of triangles the *data* are taken at pleasure, subject to very simple limitations.

In cases 5 and 6, the limitations required to ensure a possible triangle are somewhat more complicated. They are as follows:—

Let a, b, and A, be the *data* in case 5.

Then in all cases sin. b sin. A must be $<$ or $=$ sin. a. And when

$b < 90^\circ$ A $> 90^\circ$ a . . . must be . . . $> b$
$b > 90^\circ$ A $< 90^\circ$ a . . . . $< b$
$b < 90^\circ$ A $< 90^\circ$ a . . . . $< 180^\circ - b$
$b > 90^\circ$ A $> 90^\circ$ a . . . . $> 180^\circ - b$

The first is evident on inspection of

$$\text{sin. B} = \text{sin. } b\,\frac{\text{sin. A}}{\text{sin. } a}$$

as no sine can be > 1. The four last may be shown to follow, from the formula

$$\text{cos. A} = \frac{\text{cos. } a - \text{cos. } b.\ \text{cos. } c}{\text{sin. } b\ \text{sin. } c}$$

which, since sin. b and sin. c are positive (5) shows that cos. A has the same sign as cos. a − cos. b cos. c,

or $\frac{\text{cos. A}}{\text{cos. } b}$ has the same sign as $\frac{\text{cos. } a}{\text{cos. } b} - \text{cos. } c$.

This is impossible whenever $\frac{\text{cos. A}}{\text{cos. } b}$ and $\frac{\text{cos. } a}{\text{cos. } b}$ have different signs, and $\frac{\text{cos. } a}{\text{cos. } b}$ is *numerically* greater than unity; for in that case no value of cos. c (which is numerically less than unity) can affect the sign of the second side. Let us suppose, for instance, the first of the above-cited cases, namely, $b < 90^\circ$ A $> 90^\circ$, or $\frac{\text{cos. A}}{\text{cos. } b}$ negative. Then cos. b being positive, if cos. a be positive, $\frac{\text{cos. } a}{\text{cos. } b}$, differing in sign from $\frac{\text{cos. A}}{\text{cos. } b}$, must be less than unity, for the above reason, that is, $a > b$. If cos. a be negative, $a > 90^\circ$, *à fortiori* $> b$.

Again, in the fourth case, $b > 90^\circ$ A $> 90^\circ$, or $\frac{\text{cos. A}}{\text{cos. } b}$ is positive. And since cos. b is negative, if cos. a be positive, or $\frac{\text{cos. } a}{\text{cos. } b}$ negative, then this must be numerically less than unity, or $\frac{\text{cos. } a}{\text{cos. } (180^\circ - b)}$ is less than unity, where both angles are less than 90°. Therefore $a > 180^\circ - b$. If cos. a be negative, a is $> 90^\circ$, and therefore $> 180^\circ - b$, since the latter is $> 90^\circ$. In a similar way the other cases may be proved.

(36.) The case (6) may be referred to the preceding, by means of the supplemental triangle, as in (33, *Case* 4).

(37.) The cases (5) and (6) are sometimes ambiguous, that is, there are two different triangles corresponding to the same *data*. This appears from the first step of the process, namely,

$$\text{sin. B} = \text{sin. } b\,\frac{\text{sin. A}}{\text{sin. } a},$$

from which we are left in doubt whether B is an angle less than 90°, or its supplement, the sine being the same for both. To determine this let us proceed to the next step, and find C from

$$\cot. A \sin. C + \cos. b \cos. C = \cot. a \sin. b,$$

not indirectly as before, but by substituting $\sqrt{1 - \sin.^2 C}$ for cos. C, and reducing the whole to the usual form of equations of the second degree, namely,

$$a\,x^2 + b\,x + c = 0.$$

This gives, putting x for sin. C,

$$(\cot.^2 A + \cos.^2 b)\, x^2 - 2 \cot. A \cot. a \sin. b\, x + \cot.^2 a \sin.^2 b - \cos.^2 b = 0.$$

When x has two positive values, (5) there are two triangles; when one positive and one negative, there is one triangle only; and when both are negative, there is no triangle; the same when both are impossible. Leaving the reader to investigate all the preceding limitations from this equation, we proceed to point out the cases in which there is one triangle only. In the general expression

$$a x^2 + b\,x + c = 0,$$

(St. 48) there is one negative root only when a and c differ in sign; that is, in the last equation, when $\cot.^2 a \sin.^2 b - \cos.^2 b$ is *negative*, since $\cot.^2 A + \cos.^2 b$ is necessarily positive. This gives (dividing by the positive quantity $\sin.^2 b$) $\cot.^2 a - \cot.^2 b$ negative, or cot. a numerically less than cot. b; that is tan. a numerically greater than tan. b. Hence the following table, giving the cases in which there is only one triangle, *at most**.

Conditions of the *data*.	Cases of one triangle, at most.
$a < 90^\circ \;\; b < 90^\circ$	$a > b$
$a < 90^\circ \;\; b > 90^\circ$	$a > 180^\circ - b$
$a > 90^\circ \;\; b < 90^\circ$	$a < 180^\circ - b$
$a > 90^\circ \;\; b > 90^\circ$	$a < b$

(38.) The only remaining case in which there is one triangle only, arises when sin. b sin. A = sin. a; in which case the two triangles coincide in one. This happens when the roots of the last equation are equal; though the criterion (St. 49) will be found to appear in the more complicated form

$$\cot.^2 a \sin.^2 b = \cot.^2 A + \cos.^2 b.$$

(39.) The following general properties of right-angled triangles may be useful, and are easily proved from the formulæ prefixed.

(R_1.) The hypothenuse is greater or less than 90°, according as the sides are of the same or different names: if, when both are greater or both less than 90°, they are said to be of the same name; when one greater and the other less, of different names.

(R_2.) The same is true of the hypothenuse and angles.

(R_4.) The hypothenuse and side are of the same name when the included angle is less than 90°, and the contrary.

(R_5, R_6.) A side and its opposite angle are always of the same name.

(40.) The geometrical demonstrations of all the preceding criteria are very simple, and should be attended to by the student. We have omitted them, as our object is rather to illustrate the formulæ than to deduce the properties.

---

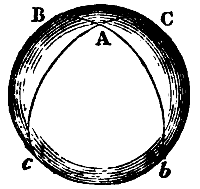
* Recollect that some of the conditions may comprise cases in which, as previously shown, there is no triangle at all.

CHAPTER V.

ON THE AREA OF SPHERICAL TRIANGLES.

(41.) IN this chapter we shall suppose all angles measured by the proportions which the arcs bear to the radius *, though in taking out sines, cosines, &c., the manner in which the tables are formed requires us to suppose them previously retranslated into degrees, minutes, and seconds.

(42.) A spherical *lune* is the portion of the sphere intercepted between two great circles, as C B c A C, or B A b C B. It is shewn (G v. 25), that the surface of a lune is that proportion of the whole sphere which the angle made by its containing circles, is of two right angles. Again, (G. III. 34,) the area of a circle, is πr^2 square units, where $\pi = 3\cdot 141593$, and r is the radius in linear units: and (G. v. 16,) that the surface of the sphere is four times the area of its greatest circle. Hence if θ be the angle of a lune, and r the radius of the sphere, since π is the measure of two right angles,



$$\text{Area of lune} : \text{surface of sphere} :: \theta : 2\pi.$$

$$\text{Area of lune} = \frac{\theta}{2\pi}\ \text{surface of sphere} = \frac{\theta}{2\pi}\, 4\pi r^2 = 2\,\theta r^2.$$

(43.) In the figure the triangles A B C and A b c together make up the lune whose angle is A, for A b c is less than that lune by a triangle a b c, where a is on the invisible side of the sphere, and $a b c$ is in all respects equal to A B C. Hence if E be the area of the triangle, we have

$$\begin{aligned} ABC + Abc &= (\text{Lune to angle A}) &&= 2Ar^2 \\ BAc &= (\text{Lune to angle C}) - E &&= 2Cr^2 - E \\ ACb &= (\text{Lune to angle B}) - E &&= 2Br^2 - E. \end{aligned}$$

By addition the first side gives the hemisphere or $2\pi r^2$, and we have

$$2\pi r^2 = 2Ar^2 + 2Br^2 + 2Cr^2 - 2E$$

$$E = r^2\{A + B + C - \pi\}.$$

The factor $A + B + C - \pi$ is called the *spherical excess*, being the excess of the sum of the three angles above two right angles.

We may (30) write the preceding formula as follows:—

$$E = 2r^2\left\{S - \frac{\pi}{2}\right\} = 2r^2\Sigma, \text{ where } \Sigma = S - \frac{\pi}{2}$$

Then $\sin.\ \Sigma = -\cos.\ S \quad \cos.\ \Sigma = \sin.\ S \quad \tan.\ \Sigma = -\cot.\ S.$

(44.) From the right hand set of formulæ in O_5, converted as in (30) we find for sin. Σ or — cos. S, the three following expressions:—

---

* See *Penny Cyclopædia*, Article ANGLE, for tables of reduction.

(48.) Any point O being taken in the axis for a centre, and the sphere being drawn, A, B, C, will be the vertices of a spherical triangle, and the sides of the rectilinear triangle A B C will be the chords of the arcs containing that spherical triangle. Let the plane triangle A B C be called the *chordal triangle* of the spherical triangle A B C.

(49.) We shall now cease to employ the word *side* to designate the angles B O A, A O C, C O B, and shall confine it to the arcs A B, B C, C A. That which has hitherto been called the side of the spherical triangle is (8) the angle subtended by the side at the centre of the sphere; and if the *arcs* B C, C A, A B, be called α, β, γ, and r be the radius of the sphere, the measures of the subtended angles are (12)

$$\frac{\alpha}{r} \quad \frac{\beta}{r} \quad \frac{\gamma}{r}$$

(50.) The dihedral angles (9) are represented as before, so that, to employ the preceding formulæ with direct reference to the *arcs* of the spherical triangle, we must substitute

$$\frac{\alpha}{r} \text{ for } a, \quad \frac{\beta}{r} \text{ for } b, \quad \frac{\gamma}{r} \text{ for } c;$$

that is O_1, for example, must be written

$$\cos.\ \frac{\gamma}{r} = \cos.\ \frac{\alpha}{r}\ \cos.\ \frac{\beta}{r} + \sin.\ \frac{\alpha}{r}\ \sin.\ \frac{\beta}{r}\ \cos.\ C.$$

(51.) The farther O is taken from the triangle, the more nearly will the arcs A B, &c. coincide with the sides of the chordal triangle, and the smaller will the subtended angles B O A, &c., become. And as this approximation goes on without limit, as O is farther and farther removed, and as the tangents drawn to the circles from A, B, C, also approach without limit to coincidence with the chords (6), we have the following theorem.

If any one of the preceding formulæ be converted, as in (50), *and if the radius of the sphere be then supposed to increase without limit, the formula which remains is true of the chordal triangle, when its sides are substituted for arcs of the spherical triangle, and its angles for angles of the spherical triangle.*

(52.) To obtain what is called the remaining formula in the preceding theorem, it will be necessary to substitute for the sines, cosines, and tangents, their developments derived from the following theorems*, in which θ is an angle measured by the ratio of its arc to the radius.

$$\sin.\ \theta = \theta - \frac{\theta^3}{2.3} + \frac{\theta^5}{2.3.4.5} - \&\text{c. } ad\ infin.$$

$$\cos.\ \theta = 1 - \frac{\theta^2}{2} + \frac{\theta^4}{2.3.4} - \&\text{c. } ad\ infin.$$

$$\tan.\ \theta = \theta + \frac{\theta^3}{6} + \frac{2\theta^5}{15} + \&\text{c. } ad\ infin.$$

---

* These Theorems will be proved in the Treatise on the Differential Calculus.

(53.) Let the preceding substitutions be made in the formula O_1 as converted in (51); that is, for

$$\cos. \frac{\gamma}{r} \text{ write } 1 - \frac{1}{2}\frac{\gamma^2}{r^2} + \frac{1}{2.3.4}\frac{\gamma^4}{r^4} - \&c.$$

which will give

$$1 - \frac{1}{2}\frac{\gamma^2}{r^2} + \frac{1}{24}\frac{\gamma^4}{r^4} + \&c. = 1 - \frac{\alpha^2+\beta^2}{2r^2} + \frac{\alpha^4+6\alpha^2\beta^2+\beta^4}{24r^4} - \&c.$$

$$+ \frac{\alpha\beta}{r^2}\cos. C - \frac{\alpha\beta(\alpha^2+\beta^2)}{6r^4}\cos. C + \&c.$$

Take both sides from 1, and multiply by $2r^2$,

$$\gamma^2 = \alpha^2+\beta^2-2\alpha\beta\cos. C - \frac{\alpha^4+6\alpha^2\beta^2+\beta^4-4\alpha\beta(\alpha^2+\beta^2)\cos. C}{12r^2} + \&c.$$

in which the succeeding terms have r^4, r^6, &c., in their denominators. By increasing r without limit, the terms which have powers of r in their denominators are diminished without limit; rejecting these terms, there remains

$$\gamma^2 = \alpha^2 + \beta^2 - 2\alpha\beta\cos. C,$$

a well-known property of a rectilinear triangle, whose sides α and β contain the angle C.

(54.) The following table contains references to the Articles of the Treatise on Trigonometry, which contain the formulæ, to which the preceding formulæ are reducible, by the process, and under the suppositions, of the last article. It must be remembered, however, that a, b, and c, in the Treatise on Trigonometry, correspond to α, β, and γ, in the results which the student will obtain. In some cases the resulting formulæ are given, being reducible to geometrical facts too well known to be specially mentioned in the Trigonometry.

(R_1) $\alpha^2 + \beta^2 = \gamma^2$; ($R_2$, R_6 R_8) A + B = 90°; (R_3, R_4, R_5) Tr. 54; (O_1, O_2) Tr. 55; (O_3, O_{12}) Tr. 56; (O_4) Tr. 57; (O_{11}) Tr. 53.

(55.)*. Returning to (51), the spherical excess (43) $2S - \pi$ becomes less and less, as O is removed farther from the chordal triangle, and vanishes altogether at the limit, since the three angles of the chordal triangle do not exceed two right angles. But the area of the spherical triangle, or $r^2(2S - \pi)$, in which the first factor increases, and the second decreases without limit, approximates continually to the area of the chordal triangle.

By converting E_1 as in (50), it will appear that the limit of $2r^2 \sin. \Sigma$ is $\frac{1}{2}\alpha\beta \sin. C$. But from E_4 it will appear that the limit of $\cos. \Sigma$ is unity, or that Σ diminishes without limit. Hence since the ratio of the sine to its angle approaches without limit to unity as the angle is decreased†, we have

$$\text{limit of } 2r^2 \sin. \Sigma = \text{limit of } 2r^2\Sigma\frac{\sin. \Sigma}{\Sigma} = \text{limit of } 2r^2\Sigma.$$

---

* The rest of this chapter must be omitted by the elementary student.

† See the first pages of the Treatise on *Elementary Illustrations of the Differential and Integral Calculus.*

But the last is the limit of the area of the spherical triangle and the first is $\frac{1}{2}\,\alpha\,\beta$ sin. C, a well-known expression for the area of the chordal triangle, α and β being the sides containing the angle C.

(56.) By treating the expression

$$\cos.\,C = \frac{\cos.\,\frac{\gamma}{r} - \cos.\,\frac{\alpha}{r}\,\cos.\,\frac{\beta}{r}}{\sin.\frac{\alpha}{r}\,\sin.\,\frac{\beta}{r}}$$

as in (53), which gives

$$\cos.\,C = \frac{\dfrac{\alpha^2+\beta^2-\gamma^2}{2\,r^2} - \dfrac{\alpha^4+6\,\alpha^2\,\beta^2+\beta^4-\gamma^4}{24\,r^4} + \&c.}{\dfrac{\alpha\,\beta}{r^2}\left(1 - \dfrac{\alpha^2+\beta^2}{6\,r^2} + \&c.\right)}$$

and developing by the formula

$$\frac{1}{1 - \frac{p}{r^2} + \&c.} = 1 + \frac{p}{r^2} + \&c.$$

we find

$$\cos.\,C = \frac{\alpha^2+\beta^2-\gamma^2}{2\,\alpha\,\beta} + \frac{\alpha^4+\beta^4+\gamma^4-2\,\alpha^2\,\beta^2-2\,\beta^2\,\gamma^2-2\,\gamma^2\,\alpha^2}{24\,\alpha\,\beta\,r^2} + \&c.$$

Let us now suppose r to be very great, so that the spherical triangle is nearly plane, and its spherical excess small, and let a plane triangle be taken whose sides are α, β, γ. This must not be confounded with the chordal triangle. Let the angles of the latter triangle be A′, B′, C′.

Then (Tr. 55, 56, developing sin.² C in the latter)

$$\cos.\,C' = \frac{\alpha^2+\beta^2-\gamma^2}{2\,\alpha\,\beta}$$

$$4\,\alpha^2\,\beta^2\,\sin.^2\,C' = 2\,\alpha^2\,\beta^2 + 2\,\beta^2\,\gamma^2 + 2\,\gamma^2\,\alpha^2 - \alpha^4 - \beta^4 - \gamma^4$$

whence the preceding expression for cos. C becomes

$$\cos.\,C = \cos.\,C' - \frac{\alpha\,\beta}{6\,r^2}\,\sin.\,C' \text{ nearly,}$$

rejecting, as inconsiderable, those terms which contain r^4 &c. in their denominators. Let $C' + z = C$, then since z is small,

$$\cos.\,C = \cos.\,C' - z\,\sin.\,C' \quad \text{nearly}$$

whence

$$z = \frac{\alpha\,\beta}{6\,r^2}\,\sin.\,C' \quad \text{nearly}$$

But $\frac{1}{2}\,\alpha\,\beta$ sin. C′ is the area of the rectilinear triangle, the sides of which are α, β and γ: which being very nearly equal to the area of the spherical triangle, we may write $2\,r^2\,\Sigma$ for it without sensible error. This gives

$$z = \frac{2\,\Sigma}{3} = \frac{\text{spherical excess}}{3} \quad \text{nearly}$$

$$C' = C - \frac{\text{spherical excess}}{3} \quad \text{nearly}$$

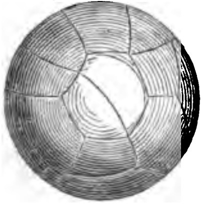
By proceeding in this way for the other angles, we find the following very remarkable theorem.

If a spherical triangle of very small curvature be flattened without altering the length of its sides, its angles are diminished by quantities which are very nearly equal to one another, and to the third of the spherical excess in the spherical triangle.

CHAPTER VII.

On Spherical Polygons*.

(57.) If the whole surface of a sphere be covered by spherical polygons, whose sides are arcs of great circles, and if the chords of all these arcs be drawn, it is plain that the chords of each polygon will enclose one face of a solid inscribed in the sphere; which solid will have as many faces as there are polygons, as many edges as there are arcs in them all, and as many solid angles as there are distinct angular points.



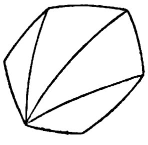
(58.) And if with any point in the interior of a solid as a centre, a sphere be described, and if planes be drawn through the several edges of the solid, and the centre of the sphere, these planes intersect the sphere in as many arcs, the whole of which will divide the surface of the sphere into a number of polygons, the whole number of sides being that of the edges of the solid, and so on. If a solid be inscribed inside the sphere as in (57), we shall have a second solid inscribed in a sphere, having the same number of faces, edges, and solid angles as the first.

(58.) Hence any relation which is found to exist between the number of faces, edges, and solid angles of a solid which can be inserted in a sphere, is equally true of solids which have no circumscribing sphere.

(59.) Let E, F, and S be the number of edges, faces, and solid angles in the solid. Then the sum of all the angles of all the spherical polygons must be 4 S right angles, for every solid angle corresponds to angles of the polygons, which are together equal to four right angles. And the total number of sides in *all* the polygons is 2 E, since every edge has its arc common to two different polygons. This is also the total number of angles in all the polygons.

---

* This chapter may be omitted at the first reading.



(60.) The area of a spherical polygon of n sides is thus found. From any angular point draw diagonal arcs as in the figure. These divide the polygon into $n - 2$ triangles, the sum of the angles of all of which is the sum of the angles of the polygon. If the sums of the angles of the several triangles be A_1, A_2, &c., the area of the polygons is therefore (43)

$$r^2 (A_1 - \pi + A_2 - \pi + \&c.) = r^2 (B - (n - 2)\pi)$$

where B is the sum of the angles of the polygon.

(61.) If the polygon be equiangular, and θ be one of its angles, the area is

$$r^2 (n\theta - (n - 2)\pi)$$

(62.) Let B_1, B_2, &c., be the sum of the angles of the several polygons in (57), and n_1, n_2, &c., the number of sides in each. Then (60) the sum of the areas of all the polygons will be

$$r^2 [B_1 - (n_1 - 2)\pi + B_2 - (n_2 - 2)\pi + \&c.]$$

In which are F terms (59) similar to $B_1 - (n_1 - 2)\pi$. But

$$(59) \qquad B_1 + B_2 + \&c. = 2S\pi, \quad n_1 + n_2 + \&c. = 2E$$

and the sum of all the areas is the whole sphere, or $4\pi r^2$.* Therefore

$$4\pi r^2 = r^2 \{2S\pi - 2E\pi + 2F\pi\} \text{ or}$$

$$S + F = E + 2$$

Therefore;—*In every solid, the number of solid angles and faces together exceeds the number of edges by 2.*

(63.) Let the solid have F_3 triangular faces, F_4 quadrilateral faces, and so on. Then

$$F = F_3 + F_4 + \&c. \qquad 2E = 3F_3 + 4F_4 + \&c.$$

and the preceding theorem gives

$$2S = 4 + F_3 + 2F_4 + 3F_5 + \&c.$$

which gives

$$F_3 + F_5 + \&c. = 2(S - 2 - F_4 - F_5 - \&c.)$$

or;—*the number of faces which have an odd number of sides is always even.*

(64.) The number of all the angles of all the polygons is 2 E; this cannot be less than 3 S, because there must be at least three plane angles to one solid angle.

Hence generally $2E > 3S$ except only when all the solid angles are made by three planes, in which case $2E = 3S$. And the signs $<$ and $>$ must be understood with this limitation throughout the present article. Applying the theorem in (62) we have $S < 2F - 4$, and $E < 3F - 6$.

Since $2E > 3S$ we have

$$3F_3+4F_4+5F_5+6F_6+7F_7+\&c. > 6+\tfrac{3}{2}F_3+3F_4+\tfrac{9}{2}F_5+6F_6+\tfrac{15}{2}F_7\ \&c.$$

$$3F_3+2F_4+F_5 > 12+F_7+\&c.$$

Therefore F_3, F_4, F_5 cannot all be nothing at once; or there is no solid entirely composed of faces of a higher order than pentagonal: and if there be neither quadrilateral nor pentagonal faces, there must be more than four triangles, except only when all are triangles: if there be neither triangles nor pentagons, there must be more than six quadrilaterals, except where all are quadrilaterals: if there be neither triangles nor quadrilaterals, there must be more than twelve pentagons, except where all are pentagons.

(65.) In a similar way it may be shown that in solids which have four or more plane angles at every solid angle or $2E > 4S$, there cannot be less than eight triangles; and that in this case $S < F-2$ and $E < 2F-4$. Also that in solids which have five or more plane angles at every solid angle, or in which $2E > 5S$, there cannot be less than twenty triangles; and $3S < 2F-4$, $3E < 5F-10$. Also, that a solid all whose solid angles have either five or six plane angles, the number of solid angles having five plane angles is neither more nor less than 12; and that it is impossible to form a solid all whose solid angles shall contain six or more plane angles.

(66.) We now proceed to inquire how many *regular* solids may be formed, that is, solids, the faces of which are all repetitions of the same equilateral and equiangular polygon. The sphere will then be covered in as many ways by equilateral and equiangular spherical polygons.

Let F be the number of such polygons and n the number of sides in each; which last must not be > 5 (65). Let T be the number of plane angles which meet at each of the solid angles; then since the T angles of the spherical polygons which lie round any point of the sphere and meet at the vertex of a solid angle, make up four right angles, every such angle is 2π divided by T, and the sum of all the angles of one n-sided equiangular polygon is $2n\pi$ divided by T. Therefore (60) the area of such a spherical polygon is

$$r^2\left[\frac{2n\pi}{T}-(n-2)\pi\right] \text{ or } \pi r^2\left[\frac{2n}{T}-(n-2)\right]$$

But F such polygons cover the whole sphere, or make up $4\pi r^2$: which equated to F times the preceding, gives by reduction

$$F=\frac{4T}{2n-(n-2)T}$$

We must therefore look for every value of T and n, not greater than 5, or less than 3, which will make the preceding value of F a whole number. This will give the values of F; we have then (59) $E=\tfrac{1}{2}Fn$, and $S=E+2-F$.

(67.) First, we inquire for the regular solids all whose sides are pentagons. Let $n=5$; then

$$F=\frac{4T}{10-3T}$$

the only solution of which in whole numbers is $T = 3$; $F = 12$; which gives $E = 30$, and $S = 20$.

This solid is the regular dodecahedron. (Geom. p. 161, &c.)

(68.) Similarly the regular solids all whose faces are squares are determined from the equation

$$F = \frac{4\,T}{8 - 2\,T}$$

the only solution of which is $T = 3$, $F = 6$; which gives $E = 12$, $S = 8$. This is the cube. (Geom. p. 161.)

(69.) For regular solids composed entirely of triangles, we have

$$F = \frac{4\,T}{6 - T}$$

This gives the following results. (Geom. p. 161.)

T	F	E	S	Name of the solid.
5	20	30	12	Icosahedron
4	8	12	6	Octohedron
3	4	6	4	Tetrahedron

(70.) The materials of this treatise have been for the most part collected from Puissant, *Traité de Géodésie*, Delambre, *Traité d'Astronomie* (3 vols. 4to), and Legendre, *Traité de Géométrie* (Brewster's translation) to all of which works we refer the reader.

The following transformations, which, though not always possible, may often be used with advantage, have been suggested by a Member of the Committee. They may be very easily demonstrated. The formulæ are referred to, as in the work.

(O_1). Assume $\tan. x = \sqrt{\tan. a \tan. b \cos. C}$. Then

$$\cos. c = \frac{\cos. a \cos. b}{\cos.^2 x}.$$ Or assume $\tan. x = \tan. a \cos. C$;

then $\cos. c = \dfrac{\cos. a}{\cos. x} \cos. (b - x)$.

(O_2). Assume $\cos. x = \sqrt{\dfrac{\cos. b \cos. c}{\cos. a}}$. Then

$$\cos. A = \frac{\tan.^2 x}{\tan. b \tan. c}.$$

(O'_2). Assume $\tan. x = \sqrt{\dfrac{\cos. A}{\cos. B \cos. C}}$. Then

$$\cos. a = \frac{1}{\cos.^2 x \tan. B \tan. C}.$$

LIBRARY OF USEFUL KNOWLEDGE. Mathematics. v 2

A TREATISE

ON

ALGEBRAICAL GEOMETRY.

BY THE

amuel ilkes
REV. S. W. WAUD, M.A. F. AST. S.

FELLOW AND TUTOR OF MAGDALENE COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE.

PUBLISHED UNDER THE SUPERINTENDENCE OF THE SOCIETY FOR THE DIFFUSION OF USEFUL KNOWLEDGE.

LONDON:
BALDWIN AND CRADOCK, PATERNOSTER-ROW.

MDCCCXXXV.

LONDON:
Printed by WILLIAM CLOWES,
Duke-street, Lambeth.

CONTENTS.

PART I.

APPLICATION OF ALGEBRA TO PLANE GEOMETRY.

CHAPTER I.

INTRODUCTION.

Art. Page

1. Object of the Treatise 1

2. The method of expressing the length of a straight line by Algebra . . 1

3. The method of expressing the size of an area 2

4. The method of expressing the volume of a solid 3

5. General signification of an equation when referring to Geometry . . . 4

6. Particular cases where the equation refers to areas and surfaces . . . 4

7. Equations of the second and third order refer to some Geometrical Theorem . 4

8. The solution of an equation leads either to numerical calculations, or to Geometrical Constructions 4

9, 10, 11. The Geometrical Construction of the quantities

$a \pm b$, $\frac{ab}{c}$, $\sqrt{ab}$, $\sqrt{ab + cd}$, $\sqrt{a^2 \pm b^2}$, $\sqrt{a^2 + b^2 + c^2}$, $\sqrt{12}$, $\sqrt{\frac{3}{4}}$. 5

12. Method of uniting the several parts of a construction in one figure . . 7

13. If any expression is not homogeneous with the linear unit, or is of the form $\frac{a}{b}$, $\sqrt{a}$, $\sqrt{a^2 + b}$, &c., the numerical unit is understood, and must be expressed prior to construction 7

CHAPTER II.

DETERMINATE PROBLEMS.

14. Geometrical Problems may be divided into two classes, Determinate and Indeterminate: an example of each 8

15. Rules which are generally useful in working Problems 8

16. To describe a square in a given triangle 8

17. In a right-angled triangle the lines drawn from the acute angles to the points of bisection of the opposite sides are given, to find the triangle . . 9

18. To divide a straight line, so that the rectangle contained by the two parts may be equal to a given square. Remarks on the double roots . . . 9

Art. Page

19. Through a given point M equidistant from two perpendicular straight lines, to draw a straight line of given length : various solutions . . .

20. Through the same point to draw a line so that the sum of the squares upon the two portions of it shall be equal to a given square . . .

21. To find a triangle such that its three sides and perpendicular on the base are in a continued progression 13

CHAPTER III.

THE POINT AND STRAIGHT LINE.

22. Example of an Indeterminate Problem leading to an equation between two quantities x and y. Definition of a locus 14

23. Division of equations into Algebraical and Transcendental . . . 14

24. Some equations do not admit of loci 15

25. The position of a point in a plane determined. Equations to a point, $x = a$, $y = b$; or $(y-b)^2 + (x-a)^2 = 0$ . . . 15

26. Consideration of the negative sign as applied to the position of points in Geometry 16

27, 28. The position of points on a plane, and examples 17

29. To find the distance between two points $D^2 = (a - a')^2 + (b - b')^2$ 18

30. The distance between two points referred to oblique axes $D^2 = (a - a')^2 + (b - b')^2 + 2(a - a')(b - b') \cos. \omega$ . . . 19

31, 33. The locus of the equation $y = \alpha x + b$ proved to be a straight line . . 19

34. Various positions of the locus corresponding to the Algebraic signs of α and b 20

35. The loci of the equations $y = \pm b$, and $y = 0$ 21

36. Examples of loci corresponding to equations of the first order . . . 22

37, 39. Exceptions and general remarks 22

40. The equation to a straight line passing through a given point is $y - y_1 = \alpha(x - x_1)$ 23

41. The equation to a straight line through two given points is $y - y_1 = \frac{y_1 - y_2}{x_1 - x_2}(x - x_1)$ 24

42. To find the equation to a straight line through a given point, and bisecting a finite portion of a given line 25

43. If $y = \alpha x + b$ be a given straight line, the straight line parallel to it is $y = \alpha x + b'$ 25

44. The co-ordinates of the intersection of two given lines $y = \alpha x + b$, and $y = \alpha' x + b'$, are $X = \frac{b' - b}{\alpha - \alpha'}$, $Y = \frac{\alpha b' - \alpha' b}{\alpha - \alpha'}$ 26

If a third line, whose equation is $y = \alpha'' x + b''$, passes through the point of intersection, then $(\alpha b' - \alpha' b) - (\alpha b'' - \alpha'' b) + (\alpha' b'' - \alpha'' b') = 0.$

45. If θ and θ' are the angles which two lines make with the axis of x, $\tan. (\theta - \theta') = \frac{\alpha - \alpha'}{1 + \alpha\alpha'}$, $\cos. (\theta - \theta') = \frac{1 + \alpha\alpha'}{\sqrt{(1 + \alpha^2)(1 + \alpha'^2)}}$ . . 26

Art. Page

46. The equation to a line, making a given angle with a given line, is

$$y - y_1 = \frac{\alpha - \beta}{1 + \alpha\beta}(x - x_1) \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad 27$$

47. If two lines $y = \alpha x + b$ and $y = \alpha' x + b'$ are perpendicular to each other, we have $1 + \alpha\alpha' = 0$, or the lines are

$$y = \alpha x + b \text{ and } y = -\frac{1}{\alpha} x + b' \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad 27$$

48. If p be the perpendicular from a given point $(x_1\ y_1)$ on the line $y = \alpha x + b$, then

$$p = \pm\frac{y_1 - \alpha x_1 - b}{\sqrt{1 + \alpha^2}} \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad 28$$

49. The length of the straight line drawn from a given point, and making a given angle with a given straight line, is

$$p = \pm\frac{y_1 - \alpha x_1 - b}{\sqrt{1 + \alpha^2}}\,\frac{\sqrt{1 + \beta^2}}{\beta} \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad 29$$

50. The perpendiculars from the angles of a triangle on the opposite sides meet in one point 29

51. If the straight line be referred to oblique axes, its equation is

$$y = \frac{\sin.\theta}{\sin.(\omega - \theta)}x + b. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad 30$$

The tangent of the angle between two given straight lines is

$$\tan.(\theta - \theta') = \frac{(\alpha - \alpha')\sin.\omega}{1 + \alpha\alpha' + (\alpha + \alpha')\cos.\omega}.$$

The equation to a straight line making a given angle with a given line is

$$y - y_1 = \frac{\alpha\sin.\omega - \beta(1 + \alpha\cos.\omega)}{\sin.\omega + \beta(\alpha + \cos.\omega)}(x - x_1).$$

The length of the perpendicular from a given point on a given line is

$$p = \pm\frac{(y_1 - \alpha x_1 - b)\sin.\omega}{\sqrt{\{1 + 2\alpha\cos.\omega + \alpha^2\}}}. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad 31$$

52. If upon the sides of a triangle, as diagonals, parallelograms be described, having their sides parallel to two given lines, the other diagonals of the parallelograms will intersect each other in the same point . . . 31

CHAPTER IV.

THE TRANSFORMATION OF CO-ORDINATES.

53. The object of the transformation of co-ordinates 32

54. If the origin be changed, and the direction of co-ordinates remain the same,

$$y = b + \mathrm{Y},\ x = a + \mathrm{X}$$

where x and y are the original co-ordinates, X and Y the new ones . . 33

55. If the axes be changed from oblique to others also oblique,

$$y = \frac{\mathrm{X}\sin.\theta + \mathrm{Y}\sin.\theta'}{\sin.\omega} = \{\mathrm{X}\sin.\mathrm{XA}x + \mathrm{Y}\sin.\mathrm{YA}x\}\frac{1}{\sin.x\mathrm{A}y}$$

$$x = \frac{\mathrm{X}\sin.(\omega - \theta) + \mathrm{Y}\sin.(\omega - \theta')}{\sin.\omega} = \{\mathrm{X}\sin.\mathrm{XA}y + \mathrm{Y}\sin.\mathrm{YA}y\}\frac{1}{\sin.x\mathrm{A}y}$$

Art. Page

57. If the original axes be rectangular, and the new oblique,

$$y = \text{X sin. }\theta + \text{Y sin. }\theta',$$
$$x = \text{X cos. }\theta + \text{Y cos. }\theta'. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad 34$$

58. Let both systems be rectangular,

$$y = \text{X sin. }\theta + \text{Y cos. }\theta = \text{X cos. X A }y + \text{Y cos. Y A }y,$$
$$x = \text{X cos. }\theta - \text{Y sin. }\theta = \text{X cos. X A }x + \text{Y cos. Y A }x. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad 34$$

60. To transform an equation between co-ordinates x and y, into another between polar co-ordinates r and θ.

$$y = b + \frac{r \text{ sin. } (\theta + \varphi)}{\text{sin. } \omega},$$
$$x = a + \frac{r \text{ sin. } \{\omega - (\theta + \varphi)\}}{\text{sin. } \omega}. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad 35$$

61. If the original axes be rectangular,

$$y = b + r \text{ sin. } \theta,$$
$$x = a + r \text{ cos. } \theta. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad 35$$

62. To express r and θ in terms of x and y,

$$\theta + \varphi = \text{tan.}^{-1} \left\{ \frac{(y - b) \text{ sin. } \omega}{x - a + (y - b) \text{ cos. } \omega} \right\}$$
$$r^2 = (x - a)^2 + (y - b)^2 + 2 (x - a) (y - b) \text{ cos. } \omega. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad 35$$

63. If the original axes be rectangular, and the pole at the origin,

$$\theta = \text{tan.}^{-1} \frac{y}{x} = \text{sin}^{-1} \frac{y}{\sqrt{y^2 + x^2}} = \text{cos.}^{-1} \frac{x}{\sqrt{y^2 + x^2}}$$
$$r^2 = x^2 + y^2. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad 36$$

CHAPTER V.

ON THE CIRCLE.

64, 65. Let a and b be the co-ordinates of the centre, and r the radius, then the equation to the circle referred to rectangular axes is generally

$$(y - b)^2 + (x - a)^2 = r^2. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad 37$$

If the origin is at the centre,

$$y^2 + x^2 = r^2.$$

If the origin is at the extremity of that diameter which is the axis of x,

$$y^2 = 2 r x - x^2.$$

66, 67. Examples of Equations referring to Circles 38

68. Exceptions, when the Locus is a point or imaginary 39

69. The equation to the straight line touching the circle at a point $x' y'$ is

$$y y' + x x' = r^2 \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad 39$$

or, generally, $(y - b) (y' - b) + (x - a) (x' - a) = r^2$ 39

70. The tangent parallel to a given line, $y = \alpha x + b$, is

$$y = \alpha x \pm r \sqrt{1 + \alpha^2} \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad 40$$

71. To find the intersection of a straight line and a circle. A straight line cannot cut a line of the second order in more than two points 40

Art. Page

72. If the axes are oblique, the equation to the circle is
$$(y-b)^2+(x-a)^2+2(y-b)(x-a)\cos.\omega=r^2.$$
Examples.—The equation to the tangent 40

73, 74. The Polar equation between u and θ is
$$u^2-2cu\cos.(\theta-\alpha)+c^2-r^2=0,$$
or $u^2-2\left\{b\sin.\theta+a\cos.\theta\right\}u+a^2+b^2-r^2=0.$ 41

CHAPTER VI.

DISCUSSION OF THE GENERAL EQUATION OF THE SECOND ORDER.

75. The Locus of the equation $ay^2+bxy+cx^2+dy+ex+f=0$, depends on the value of b^2-4ac. 42

76. b^2-4ac negative; the Locus is an Ellipse, a point, or is imaginary, according as the roots x_1 and x_2 of the equation $(b^2-4ac)x^2+2(bd-2ae)x+d^2-4af=0$ are real and unequal, real and equal, or imaginary.—Examples 43

77. b^2-4ac positive; the Locus is an Hyperbola if x_1 and x_2 are real and unequal, or are imaginary; but consists of two straight lines if x_1 and x_2 are real and equal. Examples 46

78. $b^2-4ac=0$; the Locus is a Parabola when $bd-2ae$ is real; but if $bd-2ae=0$, the locus consists of two parallel straight lines, or of one straight line, or is imaginary, according as d^2-4af is positive, nothing, or negative 48

79. Recapitulation of results 49

CHAPTER VII.

REDUCTION OF THE GENERAL EQUATION OF THE SECOND ORDER.

80. Reduction of the equation to the form $ay'^2+bx'y'+cx'^2+f'=o$. 50

81. General notion of a centre of a curve. The ellipse and hyperbola have a centre, whose co-ordinates are
$$m=\frac{2ae-bd}{b^2-4ac},\quad n=\frac{2cd-be}{b^2-4ac}.$$
. 51

82. Disappearance of the term xy by a transformation of the axes through an angle θ, determined by
$$\tan.2\theta=\frac{-b}{a-c}.$$
. . . . 52

84. The reduced equation is $a'y''^2+c'x''^2+f'=0$, where
$$a'=\frac{1}{2}\left\{a+c\pm\sqrt{(a-c)^2+b^2}\right\}$$
$$c'=\frac{1}{2}\left\{a+c\mp\sqrt{(a-c)^2+b^2}\right\}$$
$$f'=\frac{ae^2+cd^2-bde}{b^2-4ac}+f$$
. 53

85. Corresponding changes in the situation of the figure . 5

Art. Page

86. Definition of the axes 54

87, 88. The preceding articles when referred to oblique axes 55

89, 90. Examples of Reduction 57

91. Reduction of the general equation when belonging to a Parabola 60

92. Transferring the axes through an angle θ, where tan. $2\theta = \frac{-b}{a-c}$. . . 61

93. The coefficient of x^2 or y^2 disappears 61

94. Transferring the origin reduces the equation to one of the forms,
$a'y''^2 + e'x'' = 0$, or $c'x''^2 + d'y'' = 0$. 62

95. Corresponding changes in the situation of the figure 63

96, 97. The preceding articles when referred to oblique axes 63

98. Examples of Reduction when the locus is a parabola 63

CHAPTER VIII.

THE ELLIPSE.

100. The equation to the Ellipse referred to the centre and axes is
$a^2y^2 + b^2x^2 = a^2b^2$ 66

101, 102. Symmetry of the curve with regard to its axes 67

103. The sq. on M P : the rectangle A M, M A' : : sq. on B C : sq. on A C . . 68

104. The ordinate of the Ellipse has to the ordinate of the circumscribing circle the constant ratio of the axis minor to the axis major 68

105. A third proportional to the axis major and minor is called the Latus Rectum 69

106–108. The Focus; Eccentricity; Ellipticity:
The rectangle A S, S A' = sq. on B C 69

109. S P $= a + ex$, H P $= a - ex$; S P + H P = A A' 70

110. To find the locus of a point P, the sum of whose distances from two fixed points is constant 70

111. The equation to the tangent is $a^2yy' + b^2xx' = a^2b^2$ 71

113. The equation to the tangent when the curve is referred to another origin . 72

114. The rectangle C T, C M = the square on A C; consequently C T is the same for the ellipse and circumscribing circle 73

115. The rectangle C M, M T = the rectangle A M, M A' 73

116. The tangents at the two extremities of a diameter are parallel 73

117. The equation to the tangent at the extremity of the Latus Rectum is
$y = a + ex$ 74

118. The directrix.—The distances of any point from the focus and from the directrix are in the constant ratio of $e : 1$ 74

119. The length of the perpendicular from the focus on the tangent,
$$p^2 = b^2\frac{a + ex'}{a - ex'} = \frac{b^2r}{2a - r}.$$
The rectangle S y, H z = the square on B C 75

120. The locus of y or z is the circle on the axis major 75

121. The tangent makes equal angles with the focal distances,
tan. S P T $= \frac{b^2}{cy'} =$ tan. H P Z. Definition of Foci . . 76

Art. Page

122. The length of the perpendicular from the centre on the tangent,

$$p = \frac{a\,b}{\sqrt{r\,r'}}$$

125. If C E is drawn parallel to the tangent, meeting H P in E, then P E = A C 78

126. The equation to the normal

$$y - y' = \frac{a^2 y'}{b^2 x'}(x - x') \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad 78$$

127. $\mathrm{C\,G} = e^2 x'$; $\mathrm{C\,G'} = -\frac{a^2 e^2}{b^2} y'$; $\mathrm{M\,G} = -\frac{b^2}{a^2} x'$; $\mathrm{P\,G} = \frac{b}{a}\sqrt{r\,r'}$;

$$\mathrm{P\,G'} = \frac{a}{b}\sqrt{r\,r'}$$

The rectangle P G, P G′ = the rectangle S P, H P 79

130. All the diameters of the ellipse pass through the centre;

$y = \alpha x + c$, $a^2 \alpha y + b^2 x = 0$, are the chord and corresponding diameter 79

131. There is an infinite number of pairs of conjugate diameters;

$$\tan.\theta \; \tan.\theta' = -\frac{b^2}{a^2} \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad 80$$

133. Equation to the curve referred to any conjugate diameters,

$$a_1^2 y^2 + b_1^2 x^2 = a_1^2 b_1^2 \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad 81$$

134. $a_1^2 + b_1^2 = a^2 + b^2$ 82

135. $a_1 b_1 \sin.(\theta' - \theta) = a\,b$ 82

136. The sq. on Q V : the rectangle P V, V P′ :: sq. on C D : sq. on C P . 83

137. The ellipse being referred to conjugate axes, the equation to the tangent is

$$a_1^2 y y' + b_1^2 x x' = a_1^2 b_1^2 \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad 84$$

138. The ellipse being referred to its axes, the tangent is parallel to the conjugate diameter: the two equations are,

$a^2 y y' + b^2 x x' = a^2 b^2$, the tangent,

$a^2 y y' + b^2 x x' = 0$, the parallel conjugate 84

139. The square upon C D = the rectangle S P, H P 85

140. The perpendicular from the centre on the tangent,

$$\mathrm{P\,F} = \frac{a\,b}{\sqrt{r r'}}; \text{ or } p^2 = \frac{a^2 b^2}{a^2 + b^2 - u^2} \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad 85$$

141, 142. The product of the tangents of the angles which a pair of supplemental chords makes with the axis major is constant,

$$\alpha\,\alpha' = -\frac{b^2}{a^2} \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad 85$$

143. The tangent of the angle between two supplemental chords,

$$\tan.\mathrm{P\,Q\,P'} = -\frac{2\,b^2}{a^2 - b^2}\,\frac{x'y - y'x}{y^2 - y'^2},\ \tan.\mathrm{A\,R\,A'} = -\frac{2\,b^2}{a^2 - b^2}\,\frac{a}{y} \quad . \quad 86$$

144. Supplemental chords are parallel to conjugate diameters 87

145. The equation to the ellipse, referred to its equal conjugate diameters, is

$$y^2 + x^2 = a_1^2 \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad 87$$

146. The general polar equation,

$$a^2 (y' + u \sin.\theta)^2 + b^2 (x' + u \cos.\theta)^2 = a^2 b^2 \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad 87$$

147. The centre, the pole, $u^2 = \frac{a^2 (1 - e^2)}{1 - e^2 (\cos.\theta)^2}$ 88

Art. Page

148. The focus, the pole, $r = \frac{a(1-e^2)}{1 - e \cos. \theta}$ 88

149. The pole at the vertex, $u = \frac{2a(1-e^2)\cos. \theta}{1 - e^2 (\cos. \theta)^2}$ 88

151, 152. $r r' = \frac{p}{4}(r + r')$, and $r + r' = \frac{2 b_1^2}{a}$ 89

CHAPTER IX.

THE HYPERBOLA.

153, 154. The general equation to the Hyperbola is,

$$P y^2 - Q x^2 = -1; \text{ or } a^2 y^2 - b^2 x^2 = -a^2 b^2$$ 90

155–7. Discussion of the equation:

The sq. on MP : rectangle AM, MA′ :: sq. on BC : sq. on AC . 91

158. The equation to the equilateral hyperbola is

$$y^2 - x^2 = -a^2$$ 92

159. The results obtained for the ellipse are applicable to the hyperbola, by changing b^2 into $-b^2$ 92

160. The Latus Rectum is defined to be a third proportional to the transverse and conjugate axes 92

161–3. The focus; the eccentricity:

The rectangle AS, SA′ = the square on BC 93

164. $SP = ex - a$, $HP = ex + a$, $HP - SP = AA'$ 93

165. To find the locus of a point the difference of whose distances from two fixed points is constant 93

166. The equation to the tangent is

$$a^2 y y' - b^2 x x' = -a^2 b^2$$ 93

167. The rectangle CT, CM = sq. on CA 94

168. The equation to the tangent, at the extremity of the Latus Rectum, is

$$y = e x - a.$$

The distances of any point from the focus and from the directrix are in a constant ratio 94

169. The length of the perpendicular from the focus on the tangent,

$$p^2 = \frac{b^2 r}{2a + r}.$$

The rectangle S y, H z = sq. on BC 95

170. The locus of y is the circle on the transverse axis 96

171. The tangent makes equal angles with the focal distances,

$$\tan. SPT = \frac{b^2}{c y'}$$ 96

172. The perpendicular from the centre on the tangent,

$$p = \frac{a b}{\sqrt{r r'}}$$ 97

Art. Page

174. If C E be drawn parallel to the tangent and meeting H P in E, then P E = A C 98

175–7. The equation to the normal is

$$y - y' = -\frac{a^2 y'}{b^2 x'}(x - x')$$

$$CG = e^2 x'; \; CG' = \frac{a^2 e^2}{b^2} y'; \; MG = \frac{b^2 x'}{a^2}; \; PG = \frac{b}{a}\sqrt{r r'}, \; PG' = \frac{a}{b}\sqrt{r r'}$$

The rectangle P G, PG′ = the rectangle S P, H P 98

178, 9. The diameters of the hyperbola pass through the centre, but do not all meet the curve; a line, whose tangent is $\frac{b}{a}$, being the limit . . . 98

180, 1. There is an infinite number of pairs of conjugate diameters,

$$\tan.\theta \tan.\theta' = \frac{b^2}{a^2}$$ 99

182. The equation to the curve referred to conjugate axes is

$$a_1^2 y^2 - b_1^2 x^2 = -a_1^2 b_1^2$$ 100

183. $a_1^2 - b_1^2 = a^2 - b^2$ 100

184. $a_1 b_1 \sin.(\theta' - \theta) = a b$ 101

185. The sq. on Q V : the rectangle P V, V P′ :: sq. on C D : sq. on C P . 102

187. The conjugate diameter is parallel to the tangent. The equations are

$a^2 y^2 y' - b^2 x^2 x' = -a^2 b^2$ the tangent.

$a^2 y y' - b^2 x x' = 0$ the conjugate . . 102

188. The sq. on C D = the rectangle S P, H P 102

189. If P F be drawn perpendicular on C D, then

$$PF = \frac{a b}{\sqrt{r r'}}, \text{ or } p^2 = \frac{a^2 b^2}{u^2 - a^2 + b^2}$$ . . . 102

190—2. If α and α' be the tangents of the angles which a pair of supplemental chords makes with the transverse axis, $\alpha \alpha' = \frac{b^2}{a^2}$: the angle between supplemental chords. Conjugate diameters are parallel to sup. chords . 103

193. There are no equal conjugate diameters in general. In the equilateral hyperbola they are always equal to each other 103

194—6. The Asymptotes. The equation to the asymptote is the equation to the curve, with the exception of the terms involving inverse powers of x. Curvilinear asymptotes 104

197. The hyperbola is the only one of the lines of the second order that has a rectilineal asymptote 105

198. Method of reducing an equation into a series containing inverse powers of a variable. The asymptotes parallel to the axes 105

199. Discussion of the equation $b x y + f = 0$ 106

200. Referring the curve to its centre and axes, the equations are

$a^2 y^2 - b^2 x^2 = -a^2 b^2$, the curve,

$a^2 y^2 - b^2 x^2 = 0$ the asymptote . . . 107

201. In the equilateral or rectangular hyperbola $(y^2 - x^2 = -a^2)$ the angle between the asymptotes is 90° 107

202, 3. Asymptotes referred to the vertex of the curve; a line parallel to the asymptote cuts the curve in one point only 107

Art. Page

204. Examples of tracing hyperbolas, and drawing the asymptotes . . . 108

206. Reduction of the general equation of the second order to the form $xy = k^2$ $a\,(\tan.\theta)^2 + b\tan.\theta + c = 0$ 109

207. To find the value of b' 110

209. Examples. If $c = a$, the curve is rectangular 110

211. Given the equation $xy = k^2$, to find the equation referred to rectangular axes, and to obtain the lengths of the axes 112

212. From the equation $a^2y^2 - b^2x^2 = -a^2b^2$ referred to the centre and axes to obtain the equation referred to the asymptotes,

$$x'y' = \frac{a^2 + b^2}{4} \quad . \; . \; . \; . \; . \quad 113$$

213. The parallelogram on the co-ordinates is equal to half the rectangle on the semi-axes 114

214. The parts of the tangent between the point of contact and the asymptotes are equal to each other and to the semi-conjugate diameter . . . 114

215. Given the conjugate diameters to find the asymptotes. If the asymptotes are given, the conjugate to a diameter is given 114

216. The equation to the tangent referred to the asymptotes

$$x'y + y'x = 2k^2.$$

$$\mathrm{CT'} = 2x',\ \mathrm{CT} = 2y';\ \text{the triangle } \mathrm{CTT'} = ab \quad . \; . \quad 115$$

217, 8. The two parts of any secant comprised between the curve and asymptote are equal. The rectangle S Q, Q S′ = sq. on C D 115

219. The general polar equation is

$$a^2\,(y' + u\sin.\theta)^2 - b^2\,(x' + u\cos.\theta) = -a^2b^2 \quad . \; . \quad 116$$

220. The pole at the centre, $u^2 = \dfrac{a^2\,(e^2 - 1)}{e^2\,(\cos.\theta)^2 - 1}$ 116

221. The focus, the pole, $r = \dfrac{a\,(e^2 - 1)}{1 - e\cos.\theta}$ 116

222. $rr' = \dfrac{p}{4}(r + r')$; $(r + r') = \dfrac{2b_1^2}{a}$ 116

223, 4. The conjugate hyperbola. The locus of the extremity of the conjugate diameter is the conjugate hyperbola. The equation is

$$a^2y^2 - b^2x^2 = a^2b^2.$$

Both curves are comprehended in the forms

$$(a^2y^2 - b^2x)^2 = a^4b^4, \text{ or } x^2y^2 = k^4 \quad . \; . \; . \quad 117$$

CHAPTER X.

THE PARABOLA.

225, 6. The equation to the parabola referred to its axis and vertex is $y^2 = px$ 118

227. Difference between a parabolic and hyperbolic branch 118

228. The equation to the parabola deduced from that to the ellipse referred to its vertex, by putting A S = m 118

229. The principal parameter, or Latus Rectum, is a third proportional to any abscissa and its ordinate. In the following articles $4m$ is assumed to be the value of the Latus Rectum 119

Art. Page

230. To find the position of the focus 119

231. The distance of any point on the curve from the focus, $SP = x + m$ . . 120

232. The equation to the tangent is
$$yy' = 2m(x + x') \quad . \ . \ . \ . \ . \quad 120$$

233, 4. The subtangent $MT = 2AM$, $Ay = \frac{1}{2}MP$. The tangent at the vertex coincides with the axis of y 120

235. The equation to the tangent at the extremity of the Latus Rectum is
$$y = x + m \quad . \ . \ . \ . \ . \ . \quad 121$$

236. The Directrix. The distances of any point from the focus and directrix are equal 121

237. The length (Sy) of the perpendicular from the focus on the tangent $= \sqrt{mr}$
$$SP : Sy :: Sy : SA \quad . \ . \ . \ . \ . \quad 121$$

238, 9. The locus of y is the axis AY. The perpendicular Sy cuts the directrix on the point where the perpendicular from P on the directrix meets that line 122

240. The tangent makes equal angles with the focal distance and with a parallel to the axis, $\tan. SPT = \frac{y'}{2x'}$. Definition of the Focus . . . 122

241. The equation to the normal is
$$y - y' = -\frac{y'}{2m}(x - x') \quad . \ . \ . \ . \ . \quad 123$$

242. The subnormal is equal to half the Latus Rectum:
$$SG = SP, \text{ and } PG = \sqrt{4mr} \quad . \ . \ . \ . \ . \quad 123$$

243. The parabola has an infinite number of diameters, all parallel to the axis . 123

244, 5. Transformation of the equation to another of the same form referred to a new origin and to new axes 124

246. The new equation is $y^2 = p'x$; the new parameter $p' = 4SP$ . . 125

247. Transformation of the equation when the position of the new origin and axes is given 125

248. The ordinate through the focus $= 4SP =$ the parameter at the origin . 126

249. The equation to the tangent 126

250. Tangents drawn from the extremities of a parameter meet at right angles in the directrix 126

251. The general polar equation is
$$(y' + u \sin. \theta)^2 = p(x' + u \cos. \theta) \quad . \ . \ . \ . \quad 127$$

252. The pole, any point on the curve,
$$u = \frac{p \cos. \theta - 2y' \sin. \theta}{(\sin. \theta)^2}, \ u = \frac{p \cos. \theta}{(\sin. \theta)^2} \text{ at the vertex} \quad . \ . \quad 127$$

253. The focus, the pole,
$$r = \frac{p}{2}\frac{1}{1 - \cos. \theta}, \text{ or } = \frac{p}{\left(\cos. \frac{\theta}{2}\right)^2}, \text{ if } ASP = \theta \quad . \ . \quad 127$$

254. $rr' = \frac{p}{4}(r + r)$ 128

CHAPTER XI.

THE SECTIONS OF A CONE.

Art. Page
255. Definition of a right cone . . . 128
256. The section of a cone by a plane,

$$y^2 = \frac{\sin. \alpha}{\left(\cos. \frac{\beta}{2}\right)^2} \{a \sin. \beta\, x - \sin. (\alpha + \beta)\, x^2\} \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad 129$$

257—264. Discussion of the cases arising from various positions of the cutting plane . . . 130
265. On mechanical description, and that "by points" . . . 132
266. Tracing the Ellipse by means of a string . . . 132
267—8. The elliptic compasses. Another method . . . 133
269. Tracing the hyperbola by means of a string . . . 134
270. Tracing the parabola by means of a string . . . 134
271—3. Description of the ellipse by points . . . 134
274—6. Description of the hyperbola by points. The rectangular hyperbola . 135
277—8. To describe the parabola by points . . . 136
279. From the position of the directrix and focus, and focal ratio, to find the equation to the curves of the second order

$$y^2 + (1 - e^2)\, x^2 - 2\, m x\, (1 + e) = 0 \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad 137$$

280. From the equations to the ellipse, to deduce those of the hyperbola and parabola . . . 137
281. The general polar equation is

$$r = \frac{p}{2} \frac{1}{1 + e \cos. \theta} \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad 138$$

282—4. Practical method of drawing tangents to the ellipse . . . 138
285—6. Tangents to the hyperbola . . . 139
287—8. Tangents to the parabola . . . 139
289—292. An arc of a conic section being traced on a plane, to determine the section and the axes . . . 139
293. If through any point within or without a conic section two straight lines making a given angle be drawn to meet the curve, the rectangle contained by the segments of the one will be in a constant ratio to the rectangle contained by the segments of the other . . . 140
294. If a polygon circumscribe an ellipse, the algebraic product of its alternate segments are equal . . . 141

CHAPTER XII.

ON CURVES OF THE HIGHER ORDERS.

295. A systematic examination of all curves is impossible . . . 142
96. To find a point P without a given straight line, such that the distances of the point from the extremities of the given line are in a given ratio . . . 143

Art. Page

297. Perpendiculars are drawn from a point P to two given lines, and the distance between the feet of the perpendiculars is constant, to find the locus of P . 143

298. A given line moves between two given lines, to find the locus of a given point in the moving line 143

299. To find a point P without a given line, such that the lines drawn from P to the extremities of the given line shall make one angle double of the other . 144

300. Four problems producing loci of the second order, not worked 145

301. From the extremities of the axis major of an ellipse, lines are drawn to the ends of an ordinate, to find the locus of their intersection 145

302. To find the locus of the centres of all the circles drawn tangential to a given line, and passing through a given point 146

303. Descartes' Problem 147

304. The Cissoid of Diocles, $y^2 = \frac{x^3}{2a - x}$ 149

305. To trace the locus of the equation $y = \pm(b - x)\sqrt{\frac{x}{a - x}}$ 151

306. The Witch of Agnesi, $y = \pm 2a\sqrt{\frac{2a - x}{x}}$ 152

307. To trace the locus of the equation $y^3 = x^2(2a - x)$ 152

308. To trace the locus of the equation $ay^2 = x^3 + mx^2 + nx + p$. The semi-cubical parabola, $ay^2 = x^3$ 153

309. The cubical parabola, $a^2y = x^3$ 154

310. The trident, $y = \frac{x^3 - a^3}{ax}$ 154

311. To trace the locus of the equation $xy^2 + a^2y = nx + p$ 155

312, 3. The conchoid of Nicomedes,

$x^2 = (b^2 - y^2)\left(\frac{a + y}{y}\right)^2$; $r = a \sec.\theta + b$ 156

314. The Lemniscata, $(x^2 + y^2)^2 = a^2(x^2 - y^2)$; $r^2 = a^2 \cos. 2\theta$ 159

315. Another Lemniscata 160

316. To trace the locus of the equation $y^2 = bx \pm x\sqrt{b^2 - x^2}$ 161

317. To find a point P, such that the rectangle of the distances from P to two given points shall be constant 162

318. To trace the locus of the equation $y^4 + x^2y^2 + 2y^3 + x^3 = 0$ by the introduction of a third variable u 163

319. To trace the locus of the equation $y^5 - 5ax^2y^2 + x^5 = 0$ 164

320. To find the locus of the middle point of a line whose two extremities move along given circumferences. Application to the steam-engine 165

322, 3. The number of independent constants in a complete equation of the nth order is $n.\frac{n + 3}{2}$; hence a curve may be made to pass through $n.\frac{n + 3}{2}$ points 167

324. Example of a conic section passing through four given points 168

326. If the sum of the indices of x and y be the same in every term, the loci are either straight lines or points 169

327—330. Theorems on the diameter and centre of a curve . . . .

CHAPTER XIII.

ON THE INTERSECTION OF ALGEBRAIC CURVES.

Art. Page
331. There may be n intersections between a straight line and a line of the nth order . . . 171
332. There may be $m\,n$ intersections between two lines of the mth and nth orders; exceptions . . . 172
333. Method of drawing a curve to pass through the points of intersection, and thereby to avoid elimination . . . 172
334. Example. From a given point without an ellipse, to draw a tangent to it. Generally to any conic section . . . 173
336—7. To draw a normal to a parabola from any point . . . 174
338. The construction of equations by means of curves . . . 175
339. To construct the equation $y^4 + p\,y^3 + q\,y^2 + r\,y + s = 0$ by means of a circle and parabola . . . 176
340. To construct the roots of the equation $x^4 + 8\,x^3 + 2\,3\,x^2 + 3\,2\,x + 16 = 0$ 177
341. The construction of equations of the third order. Examples . . . 177
342. To find two mean proportionals between two given lines . . . 178
343. To find a cube double of a given cube . . . 179
344. To find any number of mean proportionals between two given lines . . 179
345. Newton's construction of equations by means of the conchoid . . . 179
346, 7. General use of these constructions . . . 180

CHAPTER XIV.

TRANSCENDENTAL CURVES.

348, 9. Definition of Transcendental curves; Mechanical curves . . . 181
350. The Logarithmic curve, $y = a^x$ . . . 181
351. The Catenary, $y = \frac{1}{2}(e^x + e^{-x})$ . . . 182
352. Trace the locus of the equation $y = a^{\frac{1}{x}}$. The figure is in page 184, Art. 355 182
353. Trace the locus of the equation $y = x^x$. The figure in the last article applies to this curve; the letter B should be placed on the axis A Y, where the curve cuts that axis . . . 182
354. The curve of sines, $y = \sin. x$ . . . 183
355. The locus of the equation $y = x \tan. x$. The figure belongs to Art. 352. The correct figure is given in the Errata . . . 184
356. The Quadratrix, $y = (r - x) \tan. \frac{\pi x}{2\,r}$ . . . 184
357, 8. The Cycloid, $y = a \text{ vers.}^{-1} \frac{x}{a} + \sqrt{2\,a\,x - x^2}$ . . . 185
359. The Prolate and Curtate Cycloid, $\left.\begin{array}{l} y = a\,\theta + m\,a \sin. \theta \\ x = a \text{ vers.} \theta \end{array}\right\}$ . . . 187

Art. Page

360. **The Epitrochoid, which becomes the Epicycloid when $m = 1$**

$$x = (a + b) \cos. \theta - m b \cos. \frac{a+b}{b} \theta$$

$$y = (a + b) \sin. \theta - m b \sin. \frac{a+b}{b} \theta$$

The Hypotrochoid, which becomes the Hypocycloid when $m = 1$,

$$x = (a - b) \cos. \theta + m b \cos. \frac{a-b}{b} \theta$$

$$y = (a - b) \sin. \theta - m b \sin. \frac{a-b}{b} \theta$$ 189

361. The Cardioide $(y^2 + x^2 - 3a^2)^2 = 4a^4\left(3 - \frac{2x}{a}\right)$, or $r = 2a(1 - \cos. \phi)$ 190

362. Varieties of the Hypotrochoid 191

363. The involute of the circle; the figure is not correct. *See* Errata.

$$\theta = \frac{\sqrt{r^2 - a^2}}{a} - \cos.^{-1} \frac{a}{r}$$

364. On Spirals. The Spiral of Archimedes, $r = a\theta$ 193

366. The Reciprocal Spiral, $r = a\theta^{-1}$ 194

367. The Lituus, $r^2\theta = a^2$ 194

368, 9. Spirals approaching to Asymptotic circles, $(r - b)\theta = a$; $\theta\sqrt{ar - r^2} = b$. 194

370. Spirals formed by twisting a curve round a circle 194

371. The Logarithmic Spiral, $r = a^\theta$ 195

372. Tracing a curve from its polar equation $r = a \sin. 2\theta$ 195

373. Investigating a question by means of polar co-ordinates 196

PART II.

APPLICATION OF ALGEBRA TO SOLID GEOMETRY.

CHAPTER I.

INTRODUCTION.

Art. Page

374. The system of co-ordinates in one plane not sufficient for surfaces . . 197

375. The position of a point referred to three co-ordinate planes . . . 197

376, 7, 8. The projection of a straight line on a plane is a straight line. If A B be the line, its projection on a plane or line is A B cos. θ 198

379. The projection of the diagonal of a parallelogram on a straight line is equal to the sum of the projections of the two sides upon the same straight line . 198

380. The projection of any plane area, A, on a plane, is A cos. θ . . . 200

CHAPTER II.

THE POINT AND STRAIGHT LINE.

381. The equations to a point,
$x = a,\ y = b,\ z = c$; or $(x - a)^2 + (y - b)^2 + (z - c)^2 = 0$ . . 200

382, 3. The algebraical signs of the co-ordinates determined. Equations corresponding to various positions of points 201

384. Two of the projections of a point being given, the third is known . . 201

385. To find the distance of a point from the origin,
$d^2 = x^2 + y^2 + z^2$. 201

386, 7. If α, β, γ, be the three angles which a straight line through the origin makes with the co-ordinate axis,
$(\cos.\ \alpha)^2 + (\cos.\ \beta)^2 + (\cos.\ \gamma)^2 = 1$,
$d = x \cos.\ \alpha + y \cos.\ \beta + z \cos.\ \gamma$. 202

388. The distance between two points,
$d^2 = (x - x_1)^2 + (y - y_1)^2 + (z - z_1)^2$. . . . 202

389. The equations to the straight line,
$x = \alpha z + a,\ y = \beta z + b,\ y - b = \frac{\beta}{\alpha}(x - a)$. 203

392—5. Equations to the line corresponding to various values of α, β, a, b. . 204

396. To find the point where a straight line meets the co-ordinate planes . . 205

Art. Page

398. The equations to a line through a given point $(x_1 y_1 z_1)$,
$x - x_1 = \alpha(z - z_1)$, $y - y_1 = \beta(z - z_1)$. 205

399. The equations to a line through two given points $(x_1 y_1 z_1)$ $(x_2 y_2 z_2)$,
$x - x_1 = \frac{x_1 - x_2}{z_1 - z_2}(z - z_1)$, $y - y_1 = \frac{y_1 - y_2}{z_1 - z_2}(z - z_1)$. . . . 206

400. The equations to a line parallel to $x = \alpha z + a$, $y = \beta z + b$, are
$x = \alpha z + a'$, $y = \beta z + b'$. 207

401. If two straight lines intersect, the relation among the coefficients is
$(\alpha' - \alpha)(\beta' - \beta) = (b' - b)(a' - a)$,
and then the co-ordinates of intersection are
$z = \frac{a' - a}{\alpha - \alpha'}$, $y = \frac{\beta b' - \beta' b}{\beta - \beta'}$, $x = \frac{\alpha a' - \alpha' a}{\alpha - \alpha'}$. 207

402. The angles which a straight line makes with the co-ordinate axes,
$\cos. lx = \frac{\alpha}{\sqrt{1 + \alpha^2 + \beta^2}}$, $\cos. ly = \frac{\beta}{\sqrt{1 + \alpha^2 + \beta^2}}$, $\cos. lz = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + \alpha^2 + \beta^2}}$.
$(\cos. lx)^2 + (\cos. ly)^2 + (\cos. lz)^2 = 1$. 207

403. The cosine of the angle between two straight lines,
$\cos \theta = \frac{\alpha\alpha' + \beta\beta' + 1}{\sqrt{(1 + \alpha^2 + \beta^2)}\sqrt{(1 + \alpha'^2 + \beta'^2)}}$
$= \cos. lx \cos. l'x + \cos. ly \cos. l'y + \cos. lz \cos. l'z$. . . 208

405. If the lines are perpendicular to each other,
$\alpha\alpha' + \beta\beta' + 1 = 0$ 209

407. To find the equation to a straight line passing through a given point $(x_1 y_1 z_1)$, and meeting a given line at right angles 209

CHAPTER III.

THE PLANE.

408. The equation to a plane,
$xx_1 + yy_1 + zz_1 = d^2$, or $mx + ny + pz = 1$,
or $x \cos. dx + y \cos. dy + z \cos. dz = d$,
or $x \sin. \mathrm{P}x + y \sin. \mathrm{P}y + z \sin. \mathrm{P}z = d$,
or $x \cos. \mathrm{P}, yz + y \cos. \mathrm{P}, xz + z \cos. \mathrm{P}, xy = d$. . . . 210

413. The angles which a plane makes with the co-ordinate planes,
$\cos. \mathrm{P}, xy = \frac{p}{\sqrt{m^2 + n^2 + p^2}}$, $\cos. \mathrm{P}, xz = \frac{n}{\sqrt{m^2 + n^2 + p^2}}$, $\cos. \mathrm{P}, yz = \frac{m}{\sqrt{m^2 + n^2 + p^2}}$. 212

414. The equation to a plane through the origin,
$xx_1 + yy_1 + zz_1 = 0$. 212

415. Equations to planes parallel to the co-ordinate planes 212

416. The traces of a plane are found by putting x, y, or $z = 0$. . . . 213

417. The equation to a plane parallel to a given plane, $mx + ny + pz = 1$, is
$mx + ny + pz = \frac{p}{p'}$, or $m(x - x_1) + n(y - y_1) + p(z - z_1) = 0$. . . . 213

Art. Page

419. The intersection of a straight line and plane,

$$z=\frac{1-ma-nb}{m\alpha+n\beta+p},\ x=\alpha z+a,\ y=\beta z+b.$$ 214

420. If a plane and straight line coincide, the conditions are,

$$ma+nb=1,\ m\alpha+n\beta+p=0.$$ 214

421. To find the equation to a plane coinciding with two given lines . . . 215

422. To find the equation to a plane coinciding with one line, and parallel to another 215

423—5 To find the intersection of two planes,—three planes,—four planes . 215

426. The relation among the coefficients of a straight line and perpendicular plane

$$\alpha=\frac{m}{p},\beta=\frac{n}{p}.$$ 216

428. The equation to a plane passing through a given point, and perpendicular to a given line,

$$\alpha(x-x_1)+\beta(y-y_1)+z-z_1=0$$ 217

429. The equations to a line through a given point, and perpendicular to a given plane

$$x-x_1=\frac{m}{p}(z-z_1),\ y-y_1=\frac{n}{p}(z-z_1).$$ 217

430. The length of the perpendicular from a given point on a given plane,

$$d=\frac{mx_1+ny_1+pz_1-1}{\sqrt{m^2+n^2+p^2}}.$$ 217

431. To find the distance of a point from a straight line. If the point be the origin,

$$P^2=a^2+b^2-\frac{(\alpha a+\beta b)^2}{1+\alpha^2+\beta^2}.$$ 218

433. The angle between two planes,

$$\cos.\theta=\frac{mm_1+nn_1+pp_1}{\sqrt{m^2+n^2+p^2}\ \sqrt{m_1^2+n_1^2+p_1^2}}$$

$$=\cos.P,yz\ \cos.P',yz+\cos.P,xz\ \cos.P',xz+\cos.P,xy\ \cos.P',xy.$$. 218

435. If the planes are perpendicular, the relation among the coefficients is,

$$mm_1+nn_1+pp_1=0.$$ 219

437. The angle between a straight line and plane,

$$\sin.\theta=\frac{m\alpha+n\beta+p}{\sqrt{1+\alpha^2+\beta^2}\ \sqrt{m^2+n^2+p^2}}.$$ 219

CHAPTER IV.

THE POINT, STRAIGHT LINE, AND PLANE, REFERRED TO OBLIQUE AXES.

438. The equations to the point remain the same 220

439. The distance of a point from the origin,

$$d^2=x^2+y^2+z^2+2xy\ \cos.XY+2xz\ \cos.XZ+2yz\ \cos.YZ.$$. 220

440. The distance between two points $(x\,y\,z)$ $(x_1\,y_1\,z_1)$,

$$d^2=(x-x_1)^2+(y-y_1)^2+(z-z_1)^2+2(x-x_1)(y-y_1)\cos.XY.$$

$$+2(x-x_1)(z-z_1)\cos.XZ+2(y-y_1)(z-z_1)\cos.YZ.$$ . . 220

Art. Page

441. The equations to the straight line remain the same 220

442. The angle between two lines 221

443. The equation to a plane 221

444. The relation among the coefficients of a straight line and perpendicular plane 222

445. The angle between a plane and straight line,—between two planes . . 222

CHAPTER V.

THE TRANSFORMATION OF CO-ORDINATES.

447. To transform an equation referred to one origin to another, the axes remaining parallel 223

448. To transform the equation referred to rectangular axes to another also referred to rectangular axes

$$\left.\begin{array}{l} x=m\,X+m_1\,Y+m_2\,Z \\ y=n\,X+n_1\,Y+n_2\,Z \\ z=p\,X+p_1\,Y+p_2\,Z \end{array}\right\},\quad \left.\begin{array}{l} m^2+n^2+p^2=1 \\ m_1^2+n_1^2+p_1^2=1 \\ m_2^2+n_2^2+p_2^2=1 \end{array}\right\},\quad \left.\begin{array}{l} m\,m_1+n\,n_1+p\,p_1=0 \\ m\,m_2+n\,n_2+p\,p_2=0 \\ m_1m_2+n_1n_2+p_1p_2=0 \end{array}\right\}$$
. . 223

450. Hence three other systems for X Y Z in terms of $x\ y\ z$ 224

451. The transformation from oblique to other oblique axes. . . . 225

452. Another method of transformation from rectangular to rectangular axes,

$$x = m\,\alpha\,X + m_1\,\alpha_1\,Y + m_2\,\alpha_2\,Z,$$
$$y = m\,\beta\,X + m_1\,\beta_1\,Y + m_2\,\beta_2\,Z,$$
$$z = m\quad X + m_1\quad Y + m_2\quad Z.$$
. 225

453. The transformation from rectangular to other rectangular axes effected in terms of three angles:

$$x = X\,(\cos.\,\theta\,\sin.\,\psi\,\sin.\,\phi + \cos.\,\psi\,\cos.\,\phi)$$
$$+\,Y\,(\cos.\,\theta\,\cos.\,\psi\,\sin.\,\phi - \sin.\,\psi\,\cos.\,\phi) - Z\,\sin.\,\theta\,\sin.\,\phi,$$
$$y = X\,(\cos.\,\theta\,\sin.\,\psi\,\cos.\,\phi - \cos.\,\psi\,\sin.\,\phi)$$
$$+\,Y\,(\cos.\,\theta\,\cos.\,\psi\,\cos.\,\phi + \sin.\,\psi\,\sin.\,\phi) - Z\,\sin.\,\theta\,\cos.\,\phi,$$
$$z = X\,\sin.\,\theta\,\sin.\,\psi + Y\,\sin.\,\theta\,\cos.\,\psi + Z\,\cos.\,\theta$$
. 225

454. Formulas of transformation to obtain the section of a surface made by a plane passing through the origin:

$$x = \quad X\cos.\,\phi + Y\sin.\,\phi\,\cos.\,\theta$$
$$y = -X\sin.\,\phi + Y\cos.\,\phi\,\cos.\,\theta$$
$$z = \quad Y\sin.\,\theta$$
. . . . 227

455. Formulas of transformation when the cutting plane is perpendicular to the plane of $x\,z$,

$$x = Y\cos.\,\theta,\ y = -X,\ z = Y\sin.\,\theta$$
. . . 227

456. To transfer the origin, as well as to change the direction of the axes, add u, b, c to x, y, z respectively 227

CHAPTER VI.

THE SPHERE AND SURFACES OF REVOLUTION.

Art. Page

457, 8. The equation to a surface is of the form $f(x, y, z) = 0$ 228

459. Surfaces are divided into orders 228

460—4. The equation to the surface of a sphere

$$(x-a)^2 + (y-b)^2 + (z-c)^2 = r^2,$$

$$\text{or } x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = r^2$$ 229

465. The sections on the co-ordinate planes, or the traces, are circles . . 229

466. The tangent plane to a sphere,

$$(x_1 - a)(x - a) + (y_1 - b)(y - b) + (z_1 - c)(z - c) = r^2,$$

$$\text{or } xx_1 + yy_1 + zz_1 = r^2$$ 230

467. The equation to the sphere referred to oblique axes 230

468. The equation to a right cone, $x^2 + y^2 = e^2 z^2$ 230

469. The equation to the common paraboloid of revolution

$$x^2 + y^2 = pz$$ 231

470. The equation to the spheroid by revolution round the axis major,

$$x^2 + y^2 + \frac{b^2}{a^2} z^2 = b^2$$ 231

471. The equation to the hyperboloid by revolution round the transverse axis,

$$x^2 + y^2 - \frac{b^2}{a^2} z^2 = -b^2$$ 232

472. General equation to the above surfaces of revolution round axis of z.

$$x^2 + y^2 = f(z)$$ 232

473—6. Section of these surfaces by a plane 232

CHAPTER VII.

SURFACES OF THE SECOND ORDER.

477, 8. Reduction of the general equation of the second order to the central form. There is no centre when

$$abc + 2def - af^2 - be^2 - cd^2 = 0$$ 233

479. Disappearance of the terms xy, xz, and yz. This transformation always possible 233

481. There is only one system of rectangular axes to which, if the equation be referred, it is of the form $\mathrm{L}x^2 + \mathrm{M}y^2 + \mathrm{N}z^2 = 1$ 234

483. The central class gives three cases 235

484. The Ellipsoid: $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} + \frac{z^2}{c^2} = 1$ 236

486. The Hyperboloid of one sheet: $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} - \frac{z^2}{c^2} = 1$ 237

488. This surface has a conical asymptotic surface 238

489. The Hyperboloid of two sheets: $\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} - \frac{z^2}{c^2} = 1$ 239

Art. Page
491. This surface has also a conical asymptotic surface 240
492. The general non-central equation of the second order can be deprived of the terms $x y$, $x z$, $y z$; and then of three other terms; so that its form becomes
$$\frac{y^2}{l} \pm \frac{z^2}{l'} = x \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad 240$$
494. The Elliptic Paraboloid $\frac{y^2}{l} + \frac{z^2}{l'} = x$ 241
496. The Hyperbolic Paraboloid $\frac{y^2}{l} - \frac{z^2}{l'} = x$ 241
498. The equations to the Elliptic and Hyperbolic Paraboloids may be obtained from those to the Ellipsoid and Hyperboloid 242
499. Consideration of the equation $z^2 = l x + l y$. Cylinder with Parabolic base . 243

CHAPTER VIII.

CYLINDRICAL AND CONICAL SURFACES.

501. Generation of surfaces by the motion of lines 243
502. To find the surface generated by the motion of a straight line parallel to itself, and passing through a given straight line; a Plane 244
503. The general equation to cylindrical surfaces
$$y - \beta x = \phi (x - \alpha z) \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad 245$$
505. The equation to a cylinder, with a circular base on $x y$
$$(x - \alpha z - x_1)^2 + (y - \beta z - y_1)^2 = r^2 \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad 246$$
507. The equation to a right cylinder
$$(x - x_1)^2 + (y - y_1)^2 = r^2, z = 0 \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad 246$$
508. The equation to a cylinder, whose base is a parabola on $x y$
$$(y - \beta z)^2 = p (x - \alpha z) \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad 247$$
510. The general equation to conical surfaces
$$\frac{y - b}{z - c} = \phi \frac{x - a}{z - c} \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad 247$$
512. The equation to a cone, with circular base on $x y$
$$\left(\frac{a z - c x}{z - c} - x_1\right)^2 + \left(\frac{b z - c y}{z - c} - y_1\right)^2 = r^2 \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad 248$$
514. A cone with Elliptic base and axis coincident with axis of z
$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = \frac{z^2}{c^2} \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad 248$$
516. A cone with parabolic base, $d y^2 = p x z$ 249
517. A cone with circular base
$$(\alpha x + \beta y + \gamma z)^2 = (x^2 + y^2 + z^2) (\cos. \theta)^2 \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad 249$$
519. The general equation to Conoidal surfaces
$$z = \phi \left(\frac{y}{x}\right) \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad 250$$
521. The cono-cuneus of Wallis
$$z^2 + \frac{a^2 y^2}{x^2} = r^2 \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad 25$$
522. The axis of z one directrix, any straight line another, and the generatri parallel to $x y$ . . . .

Art. Page

523. The axis of z one directrix, and the thread of a screw the other

$$z = e a \sin.^{-1} \frac{y}{\sqrt{y^2 + x^2}} + c \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad 251$$

524. A straight line passes through two straight lines and a given curve, to find the surface 252

525. A straight line, parallel to a given plane, passes through two given curves, to find the surface 253

526. A straight line passes through three given straight lines, to find the surface . 253

CHAPTER IX.

ON CURVES OF DOUBLE CURVATURE.

527—9. The meaning of the term curve of double curvature 253

530. The curve arising from the intersection of a sphere and cylinder . . . 254

531. The curve arising from the intersection of a cone and Paraboloid . . 255

532. Surfaces found on which a curve of double curvature may be traced. Example 256

533—5. To find out when the intersections of surfaces are plane curves . . 256

536. To find the curve represented by the equations

$$\frac{a}{x} + \frac{c}{z} = 1, \frac{b}{y} + \frac{c}{z} = 1 \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad 257$$

538. To describe a Curve of double curvature by points. Examples . . 258

ALGEBRAICAL GEOMETRY.

PART I.

APPLICATION OF ALGEBRA TO PLANE GEOMETRY.

CHAPTER I.

INTRODUCTION.

1. The object of the present Treatise is the Investigation of Geometrical Theorems and Problems by means of Algebra.

Soon after the introduction of algebra into Europe, many problems in plane geometry were solved by putting letters for straight lines, and then working the questions algebraically; this process, although of use, did not much extend the boundaries of geometry, for each problem, as heretofore, required its own peculiar method of solution, and therefore could give but little aid towards the investigation of other questions.

It is to Descartes that we owe the first general application of algebra to geometry, and, in consequence, the first real progress in modern mathematical knowledge; in the discussion of a problem of considerable antiquity, and which admitted of an infinite number of solutions, he employed two variable quantities x and y for certain unknown lines, and then showed that the resulting equation, involving both these quantities, belonged to a series of points of which these variable quantities were the co-ordinates, that is, belonged to a curve, the assemblage of all the solutions, and hence called "the Locus of the Equation."

It is not necessary to enter into further details here, much less to point out the immense advantages of the system thus founded. However, in the course of this work we shall have many opportunities of explaining the method of Descartes; and we hope that the following pages will, in some degree, exhibit the advantages of his system.

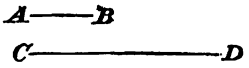
2. In applying algebra to geometry, it is obvious that we must understand the sense in which algebraical symbols are used.

In speaking of a yard or a foot, we have only an idea of these lengths by comparing them with some known length; this known or standard length is called a unit. The unit may be any length whatever: thus, if it is an inch, a foot is considered as the sum of twelve of these units, and may therefore be represented by the number 12; if the unit is a yard, a mile may be represented by the number 1760.

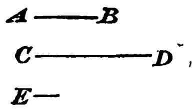
But any straight line A B fig. (1) may be taken to represent the uni of length, and if another straight line C D contains the line A B an exa number (a) of times, C D is equal to (a) linear units, and c words "linear units," C D is equal to (a).

In fig. (1) C D $=$ 3 times A B, or C D $= 3$.

1



2



If C D does not contain A B an exact number of times, they may have a common measure E, fig. (2); let, then, C D $= m$ times E $= m$ E, and A B $= n$ E, then C D has to A B the same ratio that m E has to n E, or that m has to n, or that $\frac{m}{n}$ has to unity; hence C D $= \frac{m}{n}$ times A B $= \frac{m}{n} = b$.

In fig. (2) C D $= \frac{5}{3}$ of A B $= \frac{5}{3}$

If the lines A B and C D have no common measure, we must recur to considerations analogous to those upon which the theory of incommensurable quantities in arithmetic is founded.

We cannot express a number like $\sqrt{2}$ by integers or fractions consisting of commensurable quantities, but we have a distinct idea of the magnitude expressed by $\sqrt{2}$, since we can at once tell whether it be greater or less than any proposed magnitude expressed by common quantities; and we can use the symbol $\sqrt{2}$ in calculation, by means of reasoning founded on its being *a limit* to which we can approach, as nearly as we please, by common quantities.

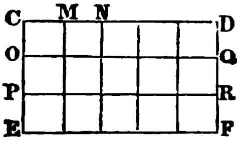
Now suppose E to be a line contained an exact number of times in A B, fig. (2), but not an exact number of times in C D, and take m a whole number, such that m E is less than C D, and $(m + 1)$ E greater than C D. Then the smaller E is, the nearer m E and $(m + 1)$ E will be to C D; because the former falls short of, and the latter exceeds, C D, by a quantity less than E. Also E may be made as small as we please; for if any line measure A B, its half, its quarter, and so on, *ad infinitum*, will measure A B. Hence we may consider C D as a quantity which, though not expressible precisely by means of any unit which is a measure of A B, may be approached as nearly as we please by such expressions. Hence C D is *a limit* between quantities commensurable with E, exactly as $\sqrt{2}$ is *a limit* between quantities commensurable with unity.

We conclude, then, that any line C D may be represented by some one of the letters a, b, c, &c., these letters themselves being the representatives of numbers either integral, fractional, or incommensurable.

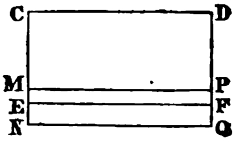
3. If upon the linear unit we describe a square, that figure is called the square unit.

Let C D F E, fig. (1), be a rectangle, having the side C D containing (a) linear units C M, M N, &c., and the side C E containing (b) linear units C O, O P, &c., divide the rectangle into square units by drawing lines parallel to C E through the points M, N, &c., and to C D through the points O, P, &c. Then in the upper row C O Q D there are (a) square units, in the second row O P R Q the same, and there are as many rows as there are units in C E, therefore altogether there are $(b \times a)$ square units in the figure, that is, C F contains $(a\,b)$ square units, or is equal in magnitude to $(a\,b)$ square units; suppressing the words "square units," the rectangle C F is equal to $a\,b$.

If C D $=$ 5 feet and C E $=$ 3 feet, the area C F contains 15 square feet.



(1.)



(2)

The above proof applies only to cases where the two lines containing the rectangle can be exactly measured by a common linear unit.

Suppose C D to be measurable by any linear unit, but C E (fig. 2) not to be commensurable with C D; then, as has been shown, we may find lines C M, C N commensurable with C D approaching in magnitude as nearly as we please to C E.

Completing the rectangles C P and C Q, we see, that as C M and C N approach to C E, the rectangles C P and C Q approach to the rectangle C F, that is, the rectangle C E, C D is *the limit* of the rectangle C M, C D, just as C E is *the limit* of C M. Let therefore a and b be respectively the commensurable numbers representing C D and C M, and let c be the incommensurable number expressing C E, then the rectangle C E, C D $=$ the limit of the rectangle C M, M P $=$ the limit of the number $a\,b$, by the first part of this article, $=$ the product of the respective limits of a and $b = a\,c$.[*]

Hence, generally, the algebraical representative of the area of a rectangle is equal to the product of those of two of its adjacent sides.

If $b = a$, the figure C F becomes the square upon C D, hence the square upon C D is equal to $(a \times a)$ times the square unit $= a^2$.

We are now able to represent all plane rectilineal figures, for such figures can be resolved into triangles, and the area of a triangle is equal to half the rectangle on the same base, and between the same parallel lines.

4. To represent a solid figure, it will be sufficient to show how a solid rectangular parallelopiped may be represented.

Let a, b, c, be, respectively, the number of linear units in the three adjacent edges of the parallelopiped; then, dividing the solid by planes parallel to its sides, we may prove, as in the last article, that the number of solid units in the figure is $a \times b \times c$, and, consequently, the parallelopiped equal to $a \times b \times c$.

The proof might be extended to the case where the edges of the parallelopiped are fractional, or incommensurable with the linear unit.

If $b = c = a$, the solid becomes a cube, and is equal to $a \times a \times a$, or a^3.

5. We proceed, conversely, to explain the sense in which algebraic expressions may be interpreted consistently with the preceding observations.

---

[*] That "the product of the limits of two incommensurable numbers is the limit of their product," may be thus shown. Let v and w be incommensurable numbers, and let $v = m + m'$ and $w = n + n'$, m and n being commensurable numbers, and m' and n' diminishable without limit; that is, v and w are the respective limits of m and n, then $vw = mn + mn' + nm' + m'n'$, the right-hand side of this equation ultimately becomes mn, and the left-hand side of the equation is the product of the limits.

Algebraic expressions may be classed most simply under the form of homogeneous equations, as follows :—

$$x = a$$
$$x^2 + ax = bc$$
$$x^3 + ax^2 + bcx = def$$
$$x^4 + ax^3 + bcx^2 + defx = ghkl$$
$$. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad .$$
$$x^m + ax^{m-1} + bcx^{m-2} + \&c \; . \; . \; . \; . \; . = pqrs \ldots \text{ to } m \text{ terms.}$$

In the first place, each equation may be understood as referring to linear units; thus, if L be put instead of the words 'the linear units,' the equations may be written

x times L $=$ a times L,

x^2 times L $+$ ax times L, or $(x^2 + ax)$ times L $=$ bc times L,

$(x^4 + ax^3 + bcx^2 + defx)$ times L $=$ $ghkl$ times L, and so on. The solution of each equation gives x times L in terms of $(a, b, c, \ldots)$ times L; and thus the letters $a, b, c, \ldots x$ are merely numbers, having reference to lines, but not to figures.

This will be equally true if L is not expressed, but understood; and it is in this sense that we shall interpret all equations beyond those of the third order.

The same reasoning would equally apply if we assumed L to represent the square or cubic unit, only it would lead to confusion in the algebraic representation of a line.

6. Again, these equations may, to a certain extent, have an additional interpretation.

For if we consider the letters in each term to be the representatives of lines drawn *perpendicular* to each other, the second equation refers to areas, and then signifies that the sum of two particular rectangles is equal to a third rectangle; the third equation refers to solid figures, and signifies, that the sum of three parallelopipeds is equal to a fourth solid.

Moreover we can pass from an equation referring to areas to another referring to lines, without any violation of principle; for, considering the second equation as referring to areas, the rectangles can be exhibited in the form of squares; and if the squares upon two lines be equal, the lines themselves are equal, or the equation is true for linear units.

7. It follows as a consequence of the additional interpretation, that every equation of the second and third order will refer to some geometrical theorem, respecting plane or solid figures; for example, the second equation, when in the form $x^2 = a\,(a - x)$ is the representation of the well-known problem of the division of a line into extreme and mean ratio.

By omitting the second and third terms of the third equation, and giving the values of $2a$, a, and a to d, e and f, respectively, we obtain the algebraic representation of the ancient problem of the duplication of the cube.

8. The solution of equations leads to various values of the unknown quantity, and there are then two methods of exhibiting these values; first, by giving to a, b, c, &c., their numerical values, and then performing any operation indicated by the algebraic symbols.

Thus, if $a = 4$, $b = 5$, and $c = 9$,

we may have $x = a + c - b = 8$ times the linear unit.

$$x = \frac{ab}{c} = \frac{20}{9} = 2\frac{2}{9} \text{ of the linear unit.}$$

$$x = \sqrt{ac} = \sqrt{36} = 6 \text{ times the linear unit.}$$

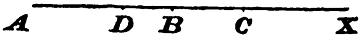
We can then draw the line corresponding to the particular value of x. This is the most practical method.

Again, we may obtain the required line from the algebraical result, by means of geometrical theorems; this method is called 'the Construction of Quantities'; it is often elegant, and is, moreover, useful to those who wish to obtain a complete knowledge of Algebraical Geometry.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF QUANTITIES.

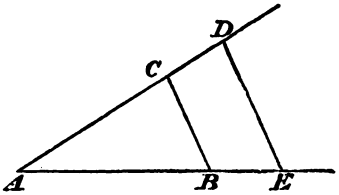
9. Let $x = a + b$.

In the straight line A X, let A be the point from whence the value of x is to be measured; take A B $= a$, and B C $= b$, then A C $=$ A B $+$ B C $= a + b$ is the value of x.



Let $x = a - b$, in B A take B D $= b$, then A D $=$ A B $-$ B D $= a - b$.

Let $x = \frac{ab}{c}$, then $x : a :: b : c$, and x is a fourth proportional to the three given quantities c, b, and a; hence the line whose length is expressed by x, is a fourth proportional to three lines, whose respective lengths are c, b, and a. From A draw two lines A C D, A B E, forming any angle at A; take A B $= c$, B E $= a$, and A C $= b$, join B C, and draw D E parallel to B C; then, A B : A C :: B E : C D, or $c : b :: a :$ C D $\therefore$ C D is the required value of x.



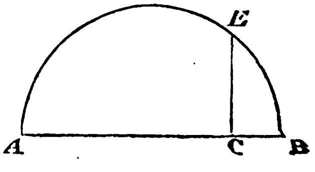
$$\text{Let } x = \frac{abc}{de}; \text{ construct } y = \frac{bc}{e}, \text{ and then } x = \frac{ay}{d};$$

$$\text{similarly for } x = \frac{abc}{d^2}, \text{ or } \frac{ab^2}{d^2}, \text{ or } \frac{a^3}{d^2}, \text{ or } \frac{abcd}{efg}.$$

Let $x = \frac{abc + def}{gh} = \frac{abc}{gh} + \frac{def}{gh}$, construct each term separately, and then the sum of the terms.

10. Let $x = \sqrt{ab}$.

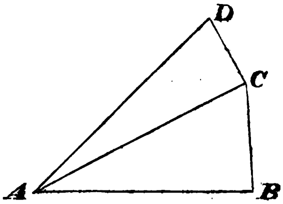
Since $x^2 = ab$, x is a mean proportional between a and b. In the straight line A B take A C $= a$, and C B $= b$; upon A B describe a semicircle, from C draw C E perpendicular to A B, and meeting the circle in E; then C E is a mean proportional to A C and C B, (Euclid, vi. 13, or *Geometry*, ii. 51,) and *therefore C E is the* required value of x.



The same property of right-angled triangles may be advantageously employed in the construction of the equation $x = \frac{a^2}{b}$; for, take AC $= b$, and draw C E perpendicular to A C and equal to a, join A E and draw E B perpendicular to A E; then C B $= \frac{a^2}{b}$.

Let $x = \sqrt{ab + cd}$, $x^2 = ab + cd = a\left(b + \frac{cd}{a}\right) = ay$ by substitution; construct y, and then $x = \sqrt{ay}$.

Again, x is a line, the square upon which is equal to the sum of the rectangles ab, cd. This sum may be reduced to a single rectangle, and the rectangle converted into a square, the base of which is the required value of x.—Euclid, i. 45, and ii. 14; or Geometry, i. 57, 58.



Let $x = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$; take a straight line A B $= a$, from B draw B C ($= b$) perpendicular to A B; A C is the value of x.

Let $x = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2 + c^2}$, from C draw C D ($= c$) perpendicular to A C, A D is the required value of x.

Let $x = \sqrt{a^2 - b^2} = \sqrt{(a+b)(a-b)}$; x is a mean proportional between $a + b$ and $a - b$; or by taking (in the last figure but one) A B $= a$, and A E $= b$, we have B E $= \sqrt{a^2 - b^2}$.

Let $x = \sqrt{\{a^2 + b^2 - c^2 - d^2\}}$, find $y^2 = a^2 + b^2$ and $z^2 = c^2 + d^2$ and then x.

Let $x = \sqrt{\frac{a^4 + bc^3}{b^2 - c^2}}$, find $y^2 = a^2 + \frac{bc^3}{a^2}$, and $z^2 = b^2 - c^2$, and then $x = \frac{ay}{z}$.

11. Of course the preceding methods will equally apply, when instead of the letters we have the original numbers, the linear unit being understood as usual.

Thus $x = \sqrt{12} = \sqrt{3.4}$ is a mean proportional between 3 and 4; hence (see last figure but one) take A C equal four times the unit, and C B equal three times the unit, C E is the value of x; or since $\sqrt{12} = \sqrt{16 - 4} = \sqrt{4^2 - 2^2}$, by constructing a right-angled triangle of which the hypothenuse is four times the linear unit, and one side twice that unit: the remaining side $= \sqrt{12}$.

Similarly $x = \sqrt{7} = \sqrt{4 + 4 - 1} = \sqrt{2^2 + 2^2 - 1^2}$, which is of the form $\sqrt{a^2 + b^2 - c^2}$.

Let $x = \sqrt{5} = \sqrt{2^2 + 1}$. In the last figure let A B, B C, and C D each be equal to the linear unit, then A D $= \sqrt{5}$

Let $x = \sqrt{23} = \sqrt{5^2 - 1^2 - 1^2}$.

Let $x = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}} = \sqrt{\dfrac{1}{2}} = \sqrt{\dfrac{1}{4} + \dfrac{1}{4}} = \sqrt{\left(\dfrac{1}{2}\right)^2 + \left(\dfrac{1}{2}\right)^2}$.

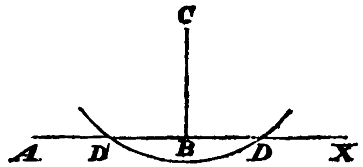
then x is the hypothenuse of a right-angled triangle, each of whose sides is half the unit.

Let $x = \sqrt{\dfrac{3}{4}}$; this may be constructed as the last.

Let $x = \sqrt{\dfrac{1}{3}} = \sqrt{\dfrac{3}{9}}$; and so on for all numbers, since any finite number can be decomposed into a series of numbers representing the squares upon lines.

If the letter a be prefixed to any of the above quantities, it must be introduced under the root.

12. In constructing compound quantities, it is best to unite the several parts of the construction in one figure.



Thus if $x = a \pm \sqrt{a^2 - b^2}$, in the line A X take A B $= a$, from B draw B C ($= b$) perpendicular to A B; with centre C and radius a describe a circle cutting A X in D and D′; A D and A D′ are the values required:

$$\text{for } AD = AB + BD = a + \sqrt{a^2 - b^2}.$$

$$AD' = AB - BD' = a - \sqrt{a^2 - b^2}.$$

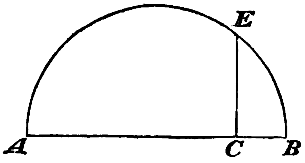
This construction fails when b is greater than a, for then the circle never cuts the line A X; this is inferred also from the impossibility of the roots.

13. Since theorems in geometry relate either to lines, areas, or solids, the corresponding equations must in each case be homogeneous, and will remain so through all the algebraic operations. If, however, one of the lines in a figure be taken as the linear unit and be therefore represented by unity, we shall find resulting expressions, such as $x = \dfrac{a}{b}$, $x = \sqrt{a}$, $x = \sqrt{a^2 + b}$,&c., in which, prior to construction, the numerical unit must be expressed; thus these quantities must be written $\dfrac{a}{b} \times 1$, $\sqrt{a \times 1}$, $\sqrt{a^2 + b \times 1}$, and then constructed as above.

CHAPTER II.

DETERMINATE PROBLEMS.

14. Geometrical Problems may be divided into two classes, Determinate and Indeterminate, according as they admit of a finite or an infinite number of solutions.



If A B be the diameter of the semicircle A E B, and it be required to find a point C in A B such, that drawing C E perpendicular to A B to meet the circumference in E, C E shall be equal to half the radius of the circle, this is a determinate problem, because there are only *two* such points in A B, each at an equal distance from the centre. Again, if it be required to find a point E out of the line A B such, that joining E A, E B, the included angle A E B shall be a right angle, this is an indeterminate problem, for there are an infinite number of such points, all lying in the circumference A E B.

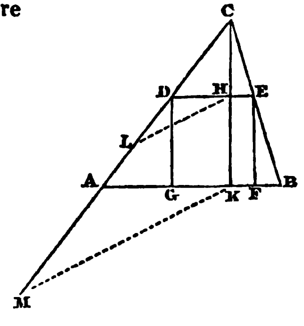
The determinate class is by no means so important as the indeterminate, but the investigation of a few of the former will lead us to the easier comprehension of the latter; and therefore we proceed to the discussion of determinate problems.

15. In the consideration of a problem, the following rules are useful.

1. Draw a figure representing the conditions of the question.
2. Draw other lines, if necessary, generally parallel or perpendicular to those of the figure.
3. Call the known lines by the letters a, b, c, &c., and some of the unknown lines by the letters x, y, z, &c.
4. Consider all the lines in the figure as equally known, and from the geometrical properties of figures deduce one, two, or more equations, each containing unknown and given quantities.
5. From these equations find the value of the unknown quantities.
6. Construct these values, and endeavour to unite the construction to the original figure.

16. To describe a square in a given triangle A B C.

Let D E F G be the required square
C H K the altitude of the triangle.



The question is resolved into finding the point H, because then the position of D E, and therefore of the square, is determined.

Let $CK = a$, $AB = b$, $CH = x$;
then by the question, $DE = HK$,
and $DE : AB :: CH : CK$,
or $DE : b :: x : a$,

$\therefore DE = \frac{bx}{a}$, and $HK = a - x$

$$\therefore \frac{bx}{a} = a - x$$

$$\therefore x = \frac{a^2}{a + b}.$$

Thus x is a third proportional to the quantities $(a + b)$ and a.

In C A take C L $= a$, produce C A to M so that L M $= b$, join M K, and draw L H parallel to M K; C H is the required value of x.

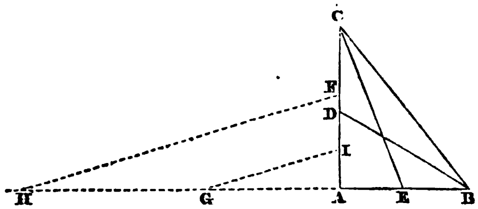
17. In a right-angled triangle the lines drawn from the acute angles to the points of bisection of the opposite sides are given, to find the triangle.

Let C E $= a$, B D $= b$, A D $=$ C D $= x$, A E $=$ E B $= y$.

Then the square upon C E $=$ square upon C A $+$ square upon A E,

$$\text{or } a^2 = 4x^2 + y^2$$

$$\text{similarly } b^2 = x^2 + 4y^2$$



whence $y = \pm \sqrt{\dfrac{4b^2 - a^2}{15}}$. Make any right angle A, and on one of the sides take A F $= \dfrac{a}{2}$, with centre F and radii b and 2 a, describe circles cutting the other side produced in G and H, respectively; draw G I parallel to F H; then 2 A I is the required value of y. Hence A D, and therefore A C and A B are found, and the triangle is determined.

18. To divide a straight line, so that the rectangle contained by the two parts may be equal to the square upon a given line b.

$$\text{Let } AB = a$$

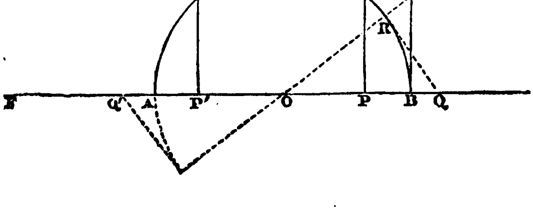
$$AP = x$$

$$\text{Then the rectangle } AP, PB = b^2$$

$$\text{or } x(a - x) = b^2$$

$$\therefore x^2 - ax = -b$$

$$\therefore x = \frac{a}{2} \pm \sqrt{\frac{a^2}{4} - b^2}$$



Upon A B describe a semicircle, draw B C ($= b$) perpendicular to A B, through C draw C D E parallel to A B, from D and E draw D P, E P′, perpendicular to A B; P and P′ are the required points.

If b is greater than $\frac{a}{2}$, the value of x is irrational, and therefore the problem is impossible; but then a point Q may be found in A B produced, such that, the rectangle A Q, Q B $= b^2$.

Let A Q $= x$,

$$\therefore x(x-a) = b^2$$

$$\therefore x = \frac{a}{2} \pm \sqrt{\frac{a^2}{4} + b^2}.$$

From the centre O draw the line O C cutting the circle in R, from R draw R Q perpendicular to O R, then Q is the required point; for

O Q = O C $= \sqrt{\left(\frac{a^2}{4} + b^2\right)}$, and therefore A Q $= \frac{a}{2} + \sqrt{\frac{a^2}{4} + b^2}$.

Let us examine the other root $\frac{a}{2} - \sqrt{\frac{a^2}{4} + b^2}$, which is negative, and may be written in the form $-\left\{\sqrt{\frac{a^2}{4} + b^2} - \frac{a}{2}\right\}$; the magnitude of this quantity, independent of the negative sign, or its *absolute* magnitude, is evidently B Q or A Q′.

Now if the problem had been "to find a point Q in either A B produced, or B A produced, such, that the rectangle A Q, Q B $= b^2$", we might have commenced the solution by assuming the point Q to be in B A produced as at Q′; thus letting A Q′ $= x$, we should have $x(a + x) = b^2$, and $x = -\frac{a}{2} \pm \sqrt{\frac{a^2}{4} + b^2}$, of which two roots the first or $-\frac{a}{2} + \sqrt{\frac{a^2}{4} + b^2} = -\left\{\frac{a}{2} - \sqrt{\frac{a^2}{4} + b^2}\right\}$ is the absolute value of the negative root in the last question; hence the negative root of the last question is a real solution of the problem expressed in a more general form, the negative sign merely pointing out the *position* of the second point Q′. Both roots may be exhibited in a positive form by measuring x not from A, but from a point F, A F being greater than b; for letting FA $= c$, and F Q or F Q′ $= x$, we find

$$x = c + \frac{a}{2} \pm \sqrt{b^2 + \frac{a^2}{4}}.$$

The celebrated problem of dividing a given straight line in extreme and mean ratio, is solved in the same manner; letting A P $= x$ we have the rectangle A B, B P = the square upon A P, or $a(a - x) = x^2$, whence $x = -\frac{a}{2} \pm \sqrt{a^2 + \frac{a^2}{4}}$; here the negative root, which gives a point to the left of A, is a solution of the problem enunciated more generally[*].

19. Through a point M equidistant from two straight lines A A′ and B B′ at right angles to each other, to draw a straight line P M Q, so that the part P Q intersected by A A′ and B B′ may be of a given length b.

From M draw the perpendicular lines M C, M D.

Let $MD = a$, $DQ = x$, $CP = y$,

then $PQ = PM + MQ$,

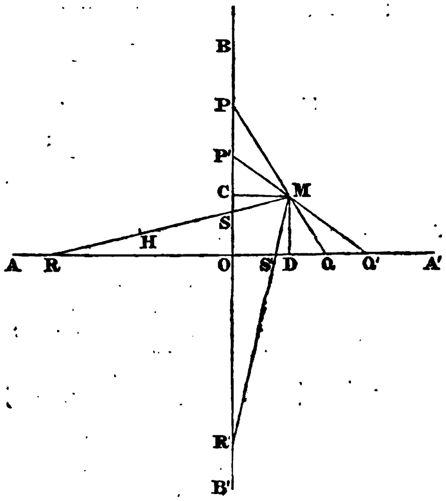
or $b = \sqrt{a^2 + y^2} + \sqrt{a^2 + x^2}$,

and $\frac{x}{a} = \frac{a}{y}$ from the similar triangles P C M, M D Q.

$$\therefore b = \sqrt{a^2 + \frac{a^4}{x^2}} + \sqrt{a^2 + x^2}$$

$$= \sqrt{a^2 + x^2}\left(1 + \frac{a}{x}\right);$$

whence $x^4 + 2ax^3 + (2a^2 - b^2)x^2 + 2a^3x + a^4 = 0$.



We might solve this recurring equation, and then construct the four roots, as in the last problems; but since the roots of an equation of four dimensions are not easily obtained, we must, in general, endeavour to avoid such an equation, and rather retrace our steps than attempt its solution. Let us consider the problem again, and examine what kind of a result we may expect.

---

[*] Lucas de Borgo, who wrote a book on the application of this problem to architecture and polygonal figures, was so delighted with this division of a line, that he called it the Divine Proportion.

Since, in general, four lines P M Q, P′ M Q′, R S M, R′ S′ M, may be drawn fulfilling the conditions of the question, the two former, in all cases, though not always the two latter, we may conclude that there will be four solutions; but since the point M is similarly situated with respect to the two lines A A′, B B′, we may also expect that the resulting lines will be similarly situated with regard to A A′ and B B′. Thus, if there be one line P M Q, there will be another P′ M Q′ such that O Q′ = OP, and O P′ = O Q.

Again O S will be equal to O S′, and O R to O R′. Hence, if we take the perpendicular from O upon the line S R for the unknown quantity (y), we can have only two different values of this line, one referring to the lines S R and S′ R′, the other to P Q and P′ Q′; hence the resulting equation will be of *two* dimensions only. In this case the equation is

$$by^2 + 2a^2y - ba^2 = 0.$$

Again, since M R = M R′ we may take M H, H being the point of bisection of the line S R, for the unknown quantity, and then also we may expect an equation, either itself of two dimensions, or else reducible to one of that order.

Let M H $= x$; $\therefore$ M R $= x + \frac{b}{2}$, M S $= x - \frac{b}{2}$,

$$\text{and MR : MD :: RSS : O} = \frac{ab}{x + \frac{b}{2}}$$

$$\text{MS : OD :: RS : RO} = \frac{ab}{x - \frac{b}{2}};$$

but the square upon R S = square upon R O + square upon S O,

$$\therefore b^2 = \left(\frac{ab}{x - \frac{b}{2}}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{ab}{x + \frac{b}{2}}\right)^2$$

$$\therefore x^4 - \left(2a^2 + \frac{b^2}{2}\right)x^2 + \frac{b^4}{16} - \frac{a^2b^2}{2} = 0$$

$$\therefore x = \pm\sqrt{\left\{a^2 + \frac{b^2}{4} \pm a\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}\right\}}.$$

an expression of easy construction; the negative value of x is useless: of the remaining two values that with the positive sign is always real, and refers to the lines M S R, M S′ R′; the other, when real, gives the lines P M Q, P′ M Q′; it is imaginary if b^2 is less than $8a^2$, that is, joining O M and drawing P M Q perpendicular to O M, if b is less than P M Q.

This question is taken from Newton's Universal Arithmetic, and is given by him to show how much the judicious selection of the unknown quantity facilitates the solution of problems. The principal point to be attended to in such questions is, to choose that line for the unknown quantity which must be liable to the least number of variations.

20. Through the point M in the last figure to draw P M Q so that the sum of the squares upon P M and M Q shall be equal to the square upon a given line b.

Making the same substitutions as in the former part of the last article, we shall obtain the equations

$$x^2 + a^2 + y^2 + a^2 = b^2,\ xy = a^2,$$

$$\therefore\ x^2 + y^2 + 2xy = b^2, \text{ and } x + y = \pm b,$$

$$\text{or } x + \frac{a^2}{x} = \pm b, \text{ whence } x = \pm \frac{b}{2} \pm \sqrt{\frac{b^2}{4} - a^2}.$$

To construct these four values describe a circle with centre M and radius $\frac{b}{2}$, cutting A A′ in two points L, L′; with centres L, L′ and radius $\frac{b}{2}$ describe two other circles cutting A A′ again in four points: these are the required points.

21. To find a triangle A B C such that its sides A C, C B, B A, and perpendicular B D, are in continued geometrical progression.

Take any line A B $= a$ for one side, let B C $= x$,

A C : C B :: C B : B A :: B A : B D;

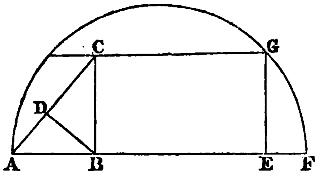
hence the triangles A C B, A D B, are equiangular, (Eucl. vi. 7, or Geometry, ii. 33,) and the angle A B C is a right angle; also A C $= \frac{x^2}{a}$, then

the square upon A C = the square upon B C + the square upon A B;

$$\therefore\ \frac{x^4}{a^2} = x^2 + a^2, \text{ or } x^4 - a^2x^2 - a^4 = 0,$$

$$\text{whence } x = \pm\sqrt{\frac{a^2 \pm \sqrt{5a^4}}{2}};$$

of these roots two are impossible, since $a^2\sqrt{5}$ is greater than a^2; and of the remaining two the negative one is useless.



In A B produced take B E $= a\sqrt{5}$ (11), and E F $= \frac{a}{2}$; upon AF describe a semicircle, and draw the perpendicular E G; then E G $=$

$$\sqrt{\left\{\frac{a}{2}(a + a\sqrt{5})\right\}} = \sqrt{\frac{a^2 + a^2\sqrt{5}}{2}} \text{ is the required value of } x.$$

CHAPTER III.

THE POINT AND STRAIGHT LINE.

22. Determinate problems, although sometimes curious, yet, as they lead to nothing important, are unworthy of much attention. It was, however, to this branch of geometry that algebra was solely applied for some time after its introduction into Europe. Descartes, a celebrated French

philosopher, who lived in the early part of the seventeenth century, was the first to extend the connexion. He applied algebra to the consideration of curved lines, and thus, as it were, invented a new science.

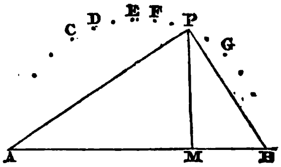
Perhaps the best way of explaining his method will be by taking a simple example. Suppose that it is required to find a point P without a given line A B, so that the sum of the squares on A P and P B shall be equal to the square upon A B.

Let P be the required point, and let fall the perpendicular P M on A B. Let A M $= x$, M P $= y$, and A B $= a$; then by the question, we have

The square on A B = the square on A P + the square on P B.

= the squares on A M, M P + the squares on P M, M B,

$$\text{or } a^2 = (x^2 + y^2) + y^2 + (a - x)^2$$
$$= 2y^2 + 2x^2 - 2ax + a^2$$
$$\therefore y^2 = ax - x^2.$$



Now this equation admits of an infinite number of solutions, for giving to x or A M any value, such as $\frac{a}{2}$, $\frac{a}{3}$, $\frac{a}{4}$, &c., we may, from the equation, find corresponding values of y or M P, each of them determining a separate point P which satisfies the condition of the problem.

Let C, D, E, F, &c., be the points thus determined. The number of the values of y may be increased by taking values of x between those above-mentioned and this to an infinite extent, thus we shall have an infinite number of points C, D, E, F, &c., indefinitely near to each other, so that these points ultimately form a line which geometrically represents the assemblage of all the solutions of the equation. This line A C D E F, whether curved or straight, is called the locus of the equation.

In this manner all indeterminate problems resolve themselves into investigations of loci; and it is this branch of the subject which is by far the most important, and which leads to a boundless field for research*.

23. For the better investigation of loci, equations have been divided into two classes, algebraical and transcendental.

An algebraical equation between two variables x and y is one which can be reduced to a finite number of terms involving only integral powers of x, y, and constant quantities: and it is called complete when it contains all the possible combinations of the variables together with a constant term, the sum of the indices of these variables in no term exceeding the degree of the equation; thus of the equations

$$ay + bx + c = o$$
$$ay^2 + bxy + cx^2 + dy + ex + f = o$$

the first is a complete equation of the first order, and the next is a complete equation of the second order, and so on.

Those equations which cannot be put into a finite and rational algebraical form with respect to the variables are called transcendental, for

---

[*] For the definition and examples of Loci, see Geometry, iii. § 6; and the Index, article Locus.

they can only be expanded into an infinite series of terms in which the power of the variable increases without limit, and thus the order of the equation is infinitely great, or transcends all finite orders.

$y = \sin. x$, and $y = a^x$, are transcendental equations.

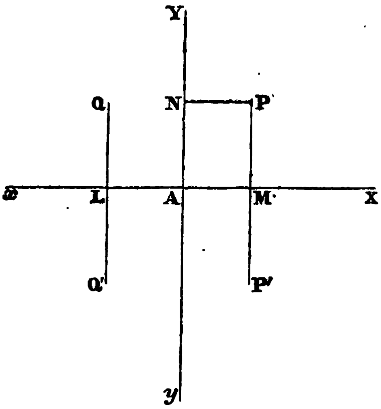
24. The loci of equations are named after their equations, thus the locus of an equation of the first order is a line of the first order; the locus of an equation of the second order is a line of the second order; the locus of a transcendental equation is a transcendental line or curve.

Algebraical equations have not corresponding loci in all cases, for the equation may be such as not to admit of any real values of both x and y; the equation $y^2 + x^2 + a^2 = 0$ is an example of this kind, where, whatever real value we give to x, we cannot have a real value of y: there is therefore no locus whatever corresponding to such an equation.

THE POSITION OF A POINT IN A PLANE.

25. The position of a point in a plane is determined by finding its situation relatively to some fixed objects in that plane; for this purpose suppose the plane of the paper to be the given plane, and let us consider as known the intersection A of two lines x X and y Y of unlimited length, and also the angle between them; from any point P, in this plane, draw P M parallel to A Y, and P N parallel to A X, then the position of the point P is evidently known if A M and A N are known. For it may be easily shown, *ex absurdo*, that there is but one point within the angle Y A X such that its distance from the lines A Y and A X is P N and P M respectively.

A M is called the abscissa of the point P; A N, or its equal M P, is called the ordinate; A M and M P are together the co-ordinates of P; X x is called the axis of abscissas, Y y the axis of ordinates. The point A where the axes meet is termed the origin.



The axes are called oblique or rectangular, according as Y A X is an oblique or a right angle. In this treatise rectangular axes as the most simple will generally be employed.

Let the abscissa A M $= x$, and the ordinate M P $= y$, then if on measuring these lengths A M and M P we find the first equal to a and the second equal to b, we have, to determine the position of this point P, the two equations

$$x = a, y = b$$

and as they are sufficient for this object, we call them, when taken together, the equations to this point.

The same point may also be defined by the equation

$$(y - b)^2 + (x - a)^2 = 0$$

for this equation can only be satisfied by the values $x = a$ and $y = b$

And in general any equation which can only be satisfied by a single real value of each variable quantity x and y, refers to a point whose situation is determined by the co-ordinates corresponding to these values.

26. In this manner the position of any point in the angle Y A X can be determined, but in order to express the positions of points in the angle Y A x, some further considerations are necessary.

In the solution of the problem, article (18), we observed that negative quantities may be geometrically represented by lines drawn in a certain direction. An extension of this idea leads to the following reasoning.

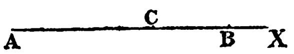
When we affix a negative sign to any quantity, we do not signify any change in its magnitude, but merely the way in which the quantity is to be used, or the operation to be performed on it. Thus the absolute magnitude of -5 is just as great as that of $+5$; but -5 means that 5 is to be subtracted, and $+5$ that it is to be added. As the sign $+$ is applied to quantities variously estimated, the sign $-$ will have in each of these various cases a corresponding meaning, necessarily following from that of the sign $+$. Whatever $+$ means, we must always have $-a+a=0$. Hence we may define $-a$ to be a quantity estimated in such a manner that the altering it by the operation indicated by $+a$ reduces the result to nothing. This is properly the meaning of the sign $-$; it depends entirely on that of the sign $+$ in every case.

The symbol of positive quantity is used in a variety of ways; but in every instance the above principle shows in what way the negative quantity must, as a necessary consequence of the meaning of the positive quantity, be used.

Thus, if we placed a mark on a pole stuck vertically into the ground, at some point in the pole which was bare at low water and covered at high water, and scored upwards the inches from that mark, we might express the height of the surface by the number of inches above the mark, positively, when the surface was above the mark; but at low water when the surface is below the mark, 11 inches for instance, we should call the height -11; because when 11 inches were added to the height, (that is, when the surface of the water was advanced 11 inches upwards, which is the direction in which the positive quantities are supposed to be reckoned,) the surface would be just at the mark, and would be *no inches* in height reckoning from the mark.

Suppose a man to advance directly from a given point p miles in the first 6 hours of a day, and to go back in the next 6 hours q miles; at the end of the 12 hours his advance from the given point would be $(p-q)$ miles. Thus, suppose $p=10$, and $q=6$, he will advance $(10-6)$ or 4 miles. But suppose he recedes 10 miles, then his advance will in the 12 hours be $(10-10)$ or 0: he will be just where he was at first. Suppose he recedes 15 miles, at the end of the 12 hours he will be 5 miles *behind* the original point. Here we say *behind*, because the movement in the direction of the original advance was considered to be *forward*. And it is clear that in this case, from an advance of 10 miles, and a recess of 15, the advance is -5; that is, it requires a further advance of 5 miles to make the man exactly as forward as he was at starting.

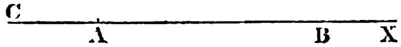
Now let us consider a fixed point A, and a line measured from it by positive quantities in the direction A X. Suppose the line to be described by the motion of a point from A along A X; and after the point has been arried *forward* (that is, towards X) n linear units, as to B, let it be carried



back n linear units, as to C; then altogether the advance of the point or the length of A C will be $(m - n)$ linear units.

Again, suppose n to become $= m$; that is, let the point be carried back exactly to A; then the advance of the point along A X will still be measured by $(m - n) = m - m = 0$.

Once more, let n exceed m; that is, let B C exceed A B; the advance of the point will be expressed by $(m - n)$ still; but this will now be a negative number, showing by how many linear units the point must be advanced in order to bring it forward to the original starting point A. Now any line A C may be considered to be determined by the motion of a point either simply along A C, or along first A B and then B C. We see, therefore, if we begin by reckoning distances from A in the direction A X as positive quantities, we are compelled to consider distances from A in the opposite direction as negative quantities.



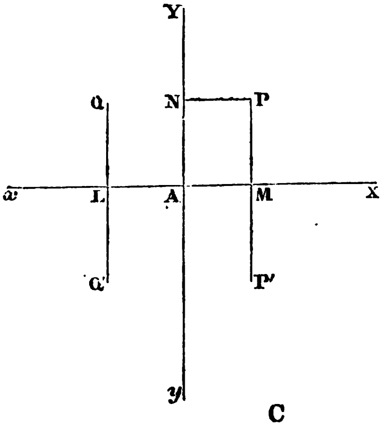
Conversely again, having designated positive quantities by lines in one direction from a given point, suppose the calculation produces a negative result, what meaning are we to assign to it? The negative result shows how much positive quantity is required to bring the whole result to nothing. Now positive quantity, by the hypothesis, is distance measured in the original direction; therefore the negative quantity shows how much distance measured in the original direction is required to bring the result to nothing. But if there be a distance from A, such that a linear units in the original direction must be subjoined to bring the result to nothing, (that is, to reduce to nothing the distance from A,) it is clear that this distance must be that of a linear units measured in a direction from A opposite to the original direction. That is, the negative quantity must be represented by lines drawn in the direction opposite to that in which the lines representing the positive quantities are drawn.

It is immaterial in which direction the line is drawn which we consider positive: but when chosen, negative quantities of the same kind must be taken in the opposite direction.

27. We are now able to express the position of points in the remaining angles formed by the axes, by considering all lines in the direction A X to be positive and those in A x to be negative: and similarly all those drawn in the direction A Y will be considered positive, and therefore those in A y will be negative.

We have then the following table of co-ordinates.

P in the angle X A Y,	$+ x$,	$+ y$,
Q in the angle Y A x,	$- x$,	$+ y$,
Q′ in the angle x A y,	$- x$,	$- y$,
P′ in the angle X A y,	$+ x$,	$- y$.



Hence the equations to a given point P are $x = a,\ y = b$
. . . . Q . . $x = -a,\ y = b$
. . . . Q′ . . $x = -a,\ y = -b$
. . . . P′ . . $x = a,\ y = -b$

28. If, the abscissa AM remaining the same, the ordinate MP diminishes, the point P approaches to the axis AX; and when MP is nothing, P is situated on that axis; in this case the equations to the point P are

$$x = a,\ y = 0: \text{ or } y^2 + (x - a)^2 = 0.$$

Similarly when the point P is situated on the axis AY, its equations are

$$x = 0,\ y = b: \text{ or } (y - b)^2 + x^2 = 0.$$

If both AM and MP vanish, we have the equations to the origin A,

$$x = 0,\ y = 0: \text{ or } y^2 + x^2 = 0.$$

Ex. 1. The point whose equations are $x = 4$, $y = -2$, is situated in the angle X A y, at a distance AM = 4 times the linear unit from the axis of y, and MP′ = twice that unit from the axis of x.

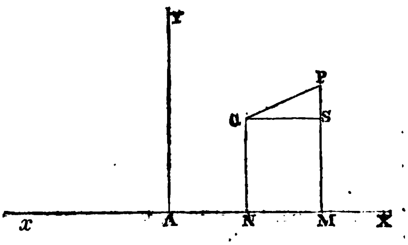
Ex. 2. The point whose equation is $(y + 3)^2 + (x + 2)^2 = 0$ is situated in the angle x A y, at distances AL = 2, LQ′ = 3, from the axes.

Ex. 3. The point whose equations are $x = 0$, $y = -3$ is in the line A y, at a distance = 3 times the linear unit.

Ex. 4. The point whose equation is $y^2 + (x + a)^2 = 0$, is in A x, at a distance a from the origin.

The preceding articles are true if the co-ordinate axes be oblique.

29. To find an expression for the distance D between two points P and Q.



Let the axes be rectangular and let the equations to
P be $x = a,\ y = b$
Q $x = a',\ y = b'$;
or in other words, let the co-ordinates of P be AM = a, MP = b, and those of Q be AN = a', NQ = b', draw QS parallel to AX.

Then the square upon QP = the square upon QS + the square upon PS;

$$\text{and QS} = \text{NM} = \text{AM} - \text{AN} = a - a'$$
$$\text{also PS} = \text{PM} - \text{QN} = b - b'$$
$$\therefore D^2 = (a - a')^2 + (b - b')^2$$

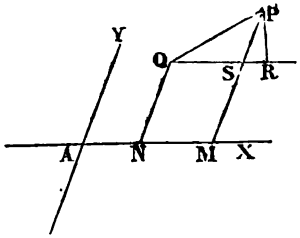
If Q be in the angle Y A x we have AN = $-a'$,

$$\therefore D^2 = (a + a')^2 + (b - b')^2.$$

If Q be at the origin we have $a' = 0$ and $b' = 0$

$$\therefore D^2 = a^2 + b^2, \text{ or } D = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$$

30. If the angle between the axes be oblique and $= \omega$, draw PM and QN parallel to AY, and QS parallel to AX; also let PR be drawn perpendicular to QS; then the square upon QP = the square on QS + the square on PS + twice the rectangle QS, SR;



$$\text{and, } QS = a - a',$$
$$PS = b - b',$$
$$SR = PS \cos . PSR$$
$$= PS \cos . YAX$$
$$= (b - b') \cos . \omega;$$

$$\therefore D^2 = (a - a')^2 + (b - b')^2 + 2(a - a')(b - b') \cos . \omega;$$

and when the point Q is at the origin, and therefore $a' = 0$, and $b' = 0$,

$$D^2 = a^2 + b^2 + 2ab \cos . \omega.$$

THE LOCUS OF AN EQUATION OF THE FIRST DEGREE.

31. To find the locus of an equation of the first degree between two unknown quantities.

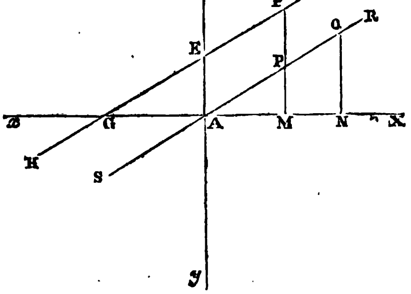
The most general form of such an equation is,

$Ay + Bx + C = 0$, or $y = -\frac{B}{A}x - \frac{C}{A}$, or $y = ax + b$ if $-\frac{B}{A} = a$ and $-\frac{C}{A} = b$; we will in the first place consider the equation in its most simple form $y = ax$.

Let AX, AY be the rectangular axes, then a point in the locus will be determined by giving to x a particular value as 1, 2, 3, &c.; let AM, MP and AN, NQ be the respective co-ordinates of two points P and Q thus determined;

$$\text{since } y = ax, \text{ we have}$$
$$MP = a . AM$$
$$\text{and } NQ = a . AN$$
$$\therefore MP : AM :: NQ : AN;$$

therefore the triangles AMP, ANQ are similar, and the angles MAP, NAQ, equal to one another: hence the two lines AP, AQ coincide. If a third point R be taken in the locus, then, as before, AR will coincide with AP and AQ. Consequently all the lines drawn from A to the several points of the locus coincide; that is, all the points P, Q, R, &c., are in the same straight line AR, and by giving negative values to x we can determine the point S, &c., to be in the same straight line RA produced. Hence the straight line RAS produced both ways indefinitely, being the assemblage of all the points determined by the equation $y = ax$, is the *locus* of that equation.



In considering the equation $y = \alpha x + b$, we observe that the new ordinate y always exceeds the former by the quantity b; hence taking A E in the axis A Y equal to b, and drawing the line H E F parallel to S R, the line H E F is the locus required.

Hence the equation of the first order belongs to the straight line.

32. To explain the nature of the equation more clearly, we will take the converse problem. To find the equation to a straight line H F, that is, to find the relation which exists between the co-ordinates, x and y, of each of its points.

Let A be the origin of co-ordinates, A X, A Y the axes; from A draw A R parallel to H F, and from any point P′ in the given line draw P′ P M perpendicular to A X and cutting A R in P.

$$\text{Let } AM = x,\ MP' = y, \text{ and } AE = b;$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{then } MP' &= PM + PP' \\ &= AM \tan. PAM + AE \\ &= x \tan. FGX + b; \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{or } y = \alpha x + b, \quad \text{if } \tan. FGX = \alpha.$$

If $AG = a$, we have $AE = AG. \tan. EGA$, or $b = a\,\alpha$, and therefore the equation to the straight line may be written under the form $y = \alpha x + \alpha a$.

33. In general, therefore, the equation to the straight line contains two constant quantities b and α; the former is the distance A E or is the ordinate of the point in which the line cuts the axis of y, the latter is the tangent of the angle which the line makes with the axis of x, for the angle $FGA =$ the angle PAM: hence

$$\tan. FGA = \tan. PAM = \frac{y-b}{x} = \alpha.$$

It is to be particularly observed that, in calling α the tangent of the angle which the line makes with the axis of x, we understand the angle F G X and not F G x.

34. In the equation $y = \alpha x + b$, the quantities α and b may be either both positive, or both negative, or one positive and the other negative; let us then examine the course of the line to which the equation belongs in each case. Now it is clear that the knowledge of two points in a straight line is sufficient to determine the position of that line; hence we shall only find the points where it cuts the axes since they are the most easily obtained.

1. α and b positive; $\therefore y = \alpha x + b$;

Let $x = 0$; $\therefore y = b$; in A Y take $AD = b$;

$y = 0$; $\therefore x = -\dfrac{b}{\alpha}$; in A x take $AB = \dfrac{b}{\alpha}$;

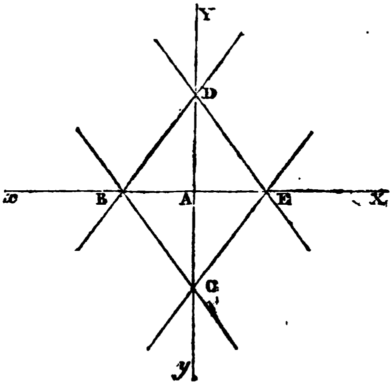
join B D; B D produced is the required locus.

2. α positive and b negative; $\therefore y = \alpha x - b$;

Let $x = 0$; $\therefore y = -b$, in A y take $AC = b$;

$y = 0$; $\therefore x = \dfrac{b}{\alpha}$; in A X take $AE = \dfrac{b}{\alpha}$;

join C E; C E produced is the required locus.



3. α negative and b positive; $\therefore y = -\alpha x + b$;
Let $x = 0$; $\therefore y = b$; in A Y take $AD = b$;
$y = 0$; $\therefore x = \frac{b}{\alpha}$; in A X take $AE = \frac{b}{\alpha}$;
join D E; D E produced is the required locus.

4. α negative and b negative; $\therefore y = -\alpha x - b$;
Let $x = 0$; $\therefore y = -b$; in A y take $AC = b$;
$y = 0$; $\therefore x = -\frac{b}{\alpha}$; in A x take $AB = \frac{b}{\alpha}$;
join B C; B C produced is the required locus.

35. The quantities α and b may also change in absolute value.

Let $b = 0$; $\therefore y = \pm \alpha x$; and the loci are two straight lines passing through the origin and drawn at angles with the axis of x whose respective tangents are $\pm \alpha$.

Let $\alpha = 0$; $\therefore y = 0x \pm b$; $\therefore y = \pm b$ and $x = \frac{0}{0}$; the former of these results shows that every point in the locus is equidistant from the axis of x, and the latter (or $0\,x = 0$) that every value of x satisfies the original equation; hence the loci are two straight lines drawn through D and C both parallel to the axis of x.

It has been stated (28), that the system of equations $y = b, x = 0$ refers to a point; we here see that the system $y = b, x = \frac{0}{0}$ refers to a straight line; hence, although the equation $x = \frac{0}{0}$ is generally omitted, yet it must be considered as essential to the locus.

Let $\alpha = \frac{1}{0}$; referring to article 32, the equation to the straight line may be written $y = \alpha x \pm \alpha a$ or $\frac{y}{\alpha} = x \pm a$, which when $\alpha = \frac{1}{0}$ becomes $0\,y = x \pm a$; hence, as before, the system $x = \pm a, y = \frac{0}{0}$, or more simply the equation $x = \pm a$ denotes two straight lines parallel to the axis of y and at a distance $\pm a$ from that axis.

Again let both $\alpha = 0$, and $b = 0$; and $\therefore$ the equation $y = \alpha x + b$ becomes $y = 0\,x + 0$; and hence, $y = 0$, $x = \frac{0}{0}$, and the locus is the axis of x.

If $\alpha = \frac{1}{0}$, and $b = 0$, the equation becomes $0\,y = x + 0$; $\therefore x = 0$ and $y = \frac{0}{0}$. Hence the equation $x = 0$ denotes the axis of y.

36. By the above methods the line to which any equation of the first order belongs may be drawn.

In the following examples reference is made to parts of the last figure.

Ex. 1. $3\,y - 5\,x - 1 = 0$; let $x = 0$, $\therefore y = \frac{1}{3}$; on the axis A Y take A D one-third of the linear unit, then the line passes through D: again let $y = 0$, $\therefore x = -\frac{1}{5}$; on the axis A x take A B $= \frac{1}{5}$ of the unit, then the line passes through B; hence the line joining the points B and D is the locus required.

Ex. 2. $10\,y - 21\,x + 6 = 0$; a line situated like C E.

Ex. 3. $y - x = 0$; let $x = 0$ $\therefore y = 0$, and the line passes through the origin; also α or the tangent of the angle which the line makes with the axis of $x = 1$, therefore that angle $= 45°$; hence the straight line drawn through the origin and bisecting the angle Y A X is the required locus.

Ex. 4. $5\,y - 2\,x = 0$. The line passes through the origin as in the last example, but to find another point through which the line passes, let $x = 5$; $\therefore y = 2$: hence take A E $= 5$, and from E draw E P ($= 2$) perpendicular to A X; then the line joining the points A, P is the locus required.

Ex. 5. $ay + bx = 0$; a line drawn through A, and parallel to B C.

Ex. 6. $y^2 - 3\,x^2 = 0$; two straight lines making angles of 60° with the axis of x.

Ex. 7. $3\,y - 4 = 0$; take A D $= \frac{4}{3}$ of the unit, a line through D drawn parallel to A X is the locus.

Ex. 8. $x^2 + x - 2 = 0$; take A E $= 1$, and A B $= 2$, the lines drawn through E and B parallel to A Y are the required loci.

Ex. 9. $y + 2\,x = 4$. The equation to a straight line may be put under the convenient form $\frac{y}{b} + \frac{x}{a} = 1$, and since when $y = 0$, $x = a$, and when $x = 0$, $y = b$, the quantities b and a are respectively the distances of the origin from the intersection of the line with the axes of y and x. Thus Ex. 9. in this form is $\frac{y}{4} + \frac{x}{2} = 1$, take A D $= 4$, and A E $= 2$, join D E, this line produced is the required locus.

37. If the equation involve the second root of a negative quantity its locus will not be a straight line, but either a point or altogether imaginary :

thus the locus of the equation $y + 2x\sqrt{-1} - a = 0$ is a point whose co-ordinates are $x = 0$ and $y = a$, for no other real value of x can give a real value to y; but the locus of the equation $y + x + a\sqrt{-1} = 0$ is imaginary, for there are no corresponding real values of x and y. (24)

38. We have thus seen that the equation to a straight line is of the form $y = \alpha x + b$, and that its position depends entirely upon α and b.

By a given line we understand one whose position is given, that is, that α and b are given quantities; when we seek a line we require its position, so that assuming $y = \alpha x + b$ to be its equation, α and b are the two indeterminate quantities to be found by the conditions of the question; if only one can be found the conditions are insufficient to fix the position of the line.

By a given point we understand one whose co-ordinates are given; we shall generally use the letters x_1 and y_1 for the co-ordinates of a given point, and to avoid useless repetition, the point whose co-ordinates are x_1 and y_1 will be called "the point x_1, y_1." Similarly the line whose equation is $y = \alpha x + b$ will be called "the line $y = \alpha x + b$."

If in the same problem we use the equations to two straight lines as $y = \alpha x + b$ and $y = \alpha' x + b'$, it must be carefully remembered that x and y are not the same quantities in both equations; we might have used the equations $y = \alpha x + b$, and $Y = \alpha' X + b'$, X and Y being the variable coordinates of the second line, but the former notation is found to be the more convenient.

39. We regret much that in the following problems on straight lines we cannot employ an homogeneous equation as $\frac{y}{b} + \frac{x}{a} = 1$. In algebraical geometry the formulas most in use are very simple, much more so indeed than they would be if homogeneous: moreover the advantage of a uniform system of symbols and formulas is so great to mathematicians that it should not be violated without very strong reasons. To remedy in some degree this want of regularity, the student should repeatedly consider the meaning of the constants at his first introduction to the subject of straight lines.

PROBLEMS ON STRAIGHT LINES.

40. To find the equation to a straight line passing through a given point.

The point being given its co-ordinates are known; let them be $x_1\, y_1$, and let the equation to the straight line be $y = \alpha x + b$; we signify that this line passes through the point $x_1 y_1$, by saying that when the variable abscissa x becomes x_1, then y will become y_1: hence the equation to the line becomes

$$y_1 = \alpha x_1 + b$$

$$\therefore\ b = y_1 - \alpha x_1$$

substituting this value for b in the first equation, we have

$$y = \alpha x + y_1 - \alpha x_1$$

$$\text{or } y - y_1 = \alpha(x - x_1)$$

The shortest method of eliminating b is by subtracting the second equation from the first, and this is the method generally adopted.

Since α, which fixes the direction of the line, is not determined, there may be an infinite number of straight lines drawn through a given point; this is also geometrically apparent.

If the given point be on the axis of x, $y_1 = 0$, and $\therefore y = \alpha (x - x_1)$; and if it be on the axis of y, $x_1 = 0$ $\therefore y - y_1 = \alpha x$.

If either or both of the co-ordinates of the given point be negative, the proper substitutions must be made: thus if the point be on the axis of x and in the negative direction from A, its co-ordinates will be $- x_1$ and 0; therefore the equation to the line passing through that point will be

$$y = \alpha (x + x_1).$$

41. To find the equation to a straight line passing through two given points x_1, y_1 and x_2, y_2.

Let the required equation be $y = \alpha x + b$ (1)
then since the line passes through the given points, we have the equations

$$y_1 = \alpha x_1 + b \quad (2)$$

$$y_2 = \alpha x_2 + b \quad (3)$$

Subtracting (2) from (1)

$$y - y_1 = \alpha (x - x_1) \quad (4)$$

Subtracting (3) from (2)

$$y_1 - y_2 = \alpha (x_1 - x_2)$$

$$\therefore \alpha = \frac{y_1 - y_2}{x_1 - x_2}$$

Substituting this value of α in (4), we have finally

$$y - y_1 = \frac{y_1 - y_2}{x_1 - x_2} (x - x_1)$$

The two conditions have sufficed to determine α and b, and by their elimination the position of the line is fixed, as it ought to be, since only one straight line can be drawn through the same two points.

This equation will assume different forms according to the particular situation of the given points.

Thus if the point x_2, y_2 be on the axis of x, we have $y_2 = 0$;

$$\therefore y - y_1 = \frac{y_1}{x_1 - x_2} (x - x_1);$$

if it be on the axis of y, $x_2 = 0$; $\therefore y - y_1 = \dfrac{y_1 - y_2}{x_1} (x - x_1)$;

and if it be at the origin both y_2 and $x_2 = 0$;

$$\therefore y - y_1 = \frac{y_1}{x_1}(x - x_1) = \frac{y_1}{x_1} x - y_1$$

$$\therefore y = \frac{y_1}{x_1} x.$$

This last equation is also thus obtained; the line passing through the origin, its equation must be of the form $y = \alpha x$ (31) where α is the tangent of the angle which the line makes with the axis of x, and this line passing through the point x_1, y_1, α must be equal to $\frac{y_1}{x_1}$ $\therefore y = \frac{y_1}{x_1} x$.

If a straight line pass through three given points, the following relation must exist between the co-ordinates of those points:

$$(y_1 x_2 - x_1 y_2) - (y_1 x_3 - x_1 y_3) + (y_2 x_3 - x_2 y_3) = 0.$$

42. To find the equation to a straight line passing through a given point x_3, y_3, and bisecting a finite portion of a given straight line.

Let the portion of the straight line be limited by the points $x_1\, y_1$ and $x_2\, y_2$, and therefore the co-ordinates of the bisecting point are $\frac{x_1 + x_2}{2}$, $\frac{y_1 + y_2}{2}$; hence the required equation is

$$y - y_3 = \alpha\,(x - x_3) = \frac{y_1 + y_2 - 2\,y_3}{x_1 + x_2 - 2\,x_3}(x - x_3)$$

43. To find the equation to a straight line parallel to a given straight line.

Let $y = \alpha x + b$ (1) be the given line

$y = \alpha' x + b'$ (2) . . . . required line.

then since the lines are parallel they must make equal angles with the axis of x or $\alpha' = \alpha$ $\therefore$ the required equation is

$$y = \alpha x + b' \quad (3).$$

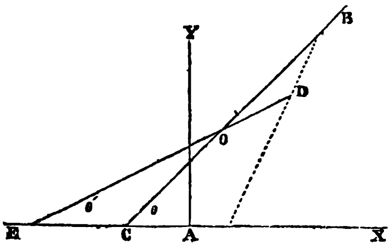
Of course b' could not be determined by the single condition of the parallelism of the lines, since an infinite number of lines may be drawn parallel to the given line; but if another condition is added, b' will be then determined: thus if the required line passes also through a given point $x_1\, y_1$, equation (2) is

$$y - y_1 = \alpha'(x - x_1)$$

$$\therefore \text{(3) becomes } y - y_1 = \alpha\,(x - x_1)$$

44. To find the intersection of two given straight lines C B, E D.

This consists in finding the co-ordinates of the point O of intersection. Now it is evident that at this point they have the same abscissa and ordinate; hence if in the equations to two lines we regard x as representing the same abscissa and y the same ordinate, it is in fact saying that they are the co-ordinates X, Y of the point of intersection O.



Let $y = \alpha x + b$ be the equation to C B

and $y = \alpha' x + b'$ . . . . E D

then at O we have $Y = \alpha X + b = \alpha' X + b'$

$$\therefore X = \frac{b' - b}{\alpha - \alpha'}$$

$$\text{and } Y = \alpha X + b = \frac{\alpha b' - \alpha b}{\alpha - \alpha'} + b = \frac{\alpha b' - \alpha' b}{\alpha - \alpha'}.$$

Ex. 1. To find the intersection of the lines whose equations are

$y = 3x + 1$ and $y - 2x - 4 = 0$. $X = 3$ and $Y = 10$.

Ex. 2. To find the intersection of the lines whose equations are

$y - x = 0$ and $3y - 2x = 1$. $X = 1$ and $Y = 1$.

If a third line, whose equation is $y = \alpha'' x + b''$, passes through the point of intersection, the relation between the coefficients is

$$(\alpha b' - \alpha' b) - (\alpha b'' - \alpha'' b) + (\alpha' b'' - \alpha'' b') = 0.$$

45. To find the tangent, sine and cosine of the angle betwen two given straight lines.

Let $y = \alpha x + b$ be the equation to C B

$y = \alpha' x + b'$ . . . . E D

θ and θ' the angles which they make respectively with the axis of x; then

$$\text{tan. } DOB = \text{tan. } EOC = \text{tan. } (\theta - \theta') = \frac{\text{tan. } \theta - \text{tan. } \theta'}{1 + \text{tan. } \theta \, \text{tan.} \theta'} = \frac{\alpha - \alpha'}{1 + \alpha \alpha'}$$

$$\text{also cos. } DOB = \frac{1}{\text{sec. } DOB} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + (\text{tan. } DOB)^2}} = \frac{1 + \alpha \alpha'}{\sqrt{(1 + \alpha^2)(1 + \alpha'^2)}}$$

$$\text{and sine } DOB = \text{tan. } DOB \times \text{cos. } DOB = \frac{\alpha - \alpha'}{\sqrt{1 + \alpha^2} \, . \, \sqrt{1 + \alpha'^2}}.$$

46. To find the equation to a straight line making a given angle with another straight line.

Let $y = \alpha x + b$ be the given line C B,

$y = \alpha' x + b'$ required line E D,

β = tangent of the given angle D O B.

Then α' = tan. D E C = tan. (B C X — B OD)

$$= \frac{\text{tan. } BCX - \text{tan. } BOD}{1 + \text{tan. } BCX \, . \, \text{tan. } BOD} = \frac{\alpha - \beta}{1 + \alpha \beta}.$$

Substituting this value for α' in the second equation,

$$y = \frac{\alpha - \beta}{1 + \alpha \beta} x + b'.$$

If the required line passes also through a given point x_1, y_1, the equation is

$$y - y_1 = \frac{\alpha - \beta}{1 + \alpha \beta} (x - x_1).$$

If D be considered the given point x_1, y_1, then not only the line D O E but another (the dotted line in the figure) might be drawn, making a given angle with B C, and its equation is found, as above, to be

$$y - y_1 = \frac{\alpha + \beta}{1 - \alpha\beta}(x - x_1);$$

so that both lines are included in the equation

$$y - y_1 = \frac{\alpha \mp \beta}{1 \pm \alpha\beta}(x - x_1).$$

For example, the two straight lines which pass through the point D and cut B C at an angle of 45° are given by the equations

$$y - y_1 = \frac{\alpha - 1}{\alpha + 1}(x - x_1),$$

$$y - y_1 = \frac{1 + \alpha}{1 - \alpha}(x - x_1).$$

Also the equation to the straight line passing through D and cutting the axis of x at an angle of 135° is

$$y - y_1 = \beta(x - x_1) = \tan. 135^\circ (x - x_1) = -(x - x_1),$$

or $y + x = y_1 + x_1$.

47. If the required line is to be perpendicular to the given line, β is infinitely great; therefore the fraction $\frac{\alpha - \beta}{1 + \alpha\beta} = \frac{\frac{\alpha}{\beta} - 1}{\frac{1}{\beta} + \alpha} = -\frac{1}{\alpha}$, or $\alpha' = -\frac{1}{\alpha}$; hence the equation to a straight line perpendicular to a given line $y = \alpha x + b$, is $y = -\frac{1}{\alpha}x + b'$.

This may be also directly proved, for drawing O E perpendicular to B C, as in the next figure, we have $\alpha' = \tan.$ O E X $= -\tan.$ O E C $= -\cot.$ O C X $= -\frac{1}{\alpha}$: hence in the equations to two straight lines which are perpendicular to one another we have $\alpha\alpha' + 1 = 0$; and, conversely, if in the equations to two straight lines, we find $\alpha\alpha' + 1 = 0$, these lines are perpendicular to one another.

If the perpendicular line pass also through a given point $x_1 y_1$, its equation is

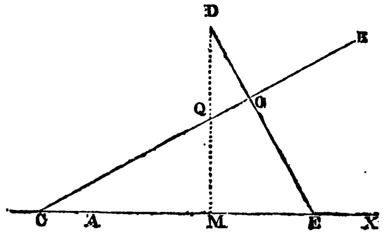
$$y - y_1 = -\frac{1}{\alpha}(x - x_1);$$

and, of course, this equation will assume various forms, agreeing with the position of the point $x_1 y_1$; thus, for example, the line drawn through the origin perpendicular to the line $y = \alpha x + b$, is one whose equation is $y = -\frac{1}{\alpha}x$, for here both x_1 and $y_1 = 0$.

48. To find the length of a perpendicular from a given point D $(x_1 y_1)$ on a given straight line C B,

Let $y = \alpha x + b$ (1) be the equation to C B,

then $y - y_1 = -\dfrac{1}{\alpha}(x - x_1)$ (2) is the equation to the perpendicular line D O E,



Let $p =$ D O; then if X and Y be the co-ordinates of O determined from (1) and (2) we have $p^2 = (X - x_1)^2 + (Y - y_1)^2$; (29)

$$\text{from (2) } Y = y_1 - \frac{1}{\alpha}(X - x_1) = \alpha X + b \text{ from (1)}$$

$$= \alpha (X - x_1) + \alpha x_1 + b,$$

$$\therefore \left(\alpha + \frac{1}{\alpha}\right)(X - x_1) = y_1 - \alpha x_1 - b,$$

$$\therefore X - x_1 = \frac{\alpha}{1+\alpha^2}(y_1 - \alpha x_1 - b), \text{ also } Y - y_1 = -\frac{1}{\alpha}(X - x_1)$$

$$\therefore p^2 = (X - x_1)^2 + (Y - y_1)^2$$

$$= (X - x_1)^2 + \frac{1}{\alpha^2}(X - x_1)^2$$

$$= \frac{1+\alpha^2}{\alpha^2}(X - x_1)^2$$

$$= \frac{1+\alpha^2}{\alpha^2}\,\frac{\alpha^2}{(1+\alpha^2)^2}\cdot(y_1 - \alpha x_1 - b)^2 = \frac{1}{1+\alpha^2}(y_1 - \alpha x_1 - b)^2$$

$$\therefore p = \pm\frac{y_1 - \alpha x_1 - b}{\sqrt{1+\alpha^2}}.$$

The superior sign is to be taken when the given point is above the given straight line, and the inferior in the contrary case.

If the given line pass through the origin $b = 0$; $\therefore p = \pm\dfrac{y_1 - \alpha x_1}{\sqrt{1+\alpha^2}}$.

If the origin be the given point, $x_1 = 0$ and $y_1 = 0$; $\therefore p = \dfrac{\pm b}{\sqrt{1+\alpha^2}}$.

There is another way of obtaining the expression for p.

Since the equation $y = \alpha x + b$ applies to all points in C O B, it must to Q, where M D or y_1 cuts C O B; $\therefore$ M Q $= \alpha x_1 + b$.

Now D O = D Q sin. D Q O,

but DQ = D M − M Q $= y_1 - \alpha x_1 - b$,

and sin. D Q O = sin. C Q M = cos. Q C M $= \dfrac{1}{\text{sec. Q C M}} =$

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{1+(\tan.\ \mathrm{Q\,C\,M})^2}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1+\alpha^2}};$$

∴ D O or $p = \frac{y_1 - \alpha x_1 - b}{\sqrt{1+\alpha^2}}$, or $\frac{\alpha x_1 + b - y_1}{\sqrt{1+\alpha^2}}$, if D was below the line.

49. If the line D E had been drawn making a given angle whose tangent was β with the given line C O, the distance D O might be found; for instead of equation (2) we shall have

$$y - y_1 = \frac{\alpha - \beta}{1 + \alpha\beta}(x - x_1) \quad (46);$$

hence, following the same steps as above, we shall find

$$p = \pm \frac{y_1 - \alpha x_1 - b}{\sqrt{1+\alpha^2}} \ \frac{\sqrt{1+\beta^2}}{\beta}.$$

This expression is also very easily obtained trigonometrically.

Let γ = sine of the given angle, then

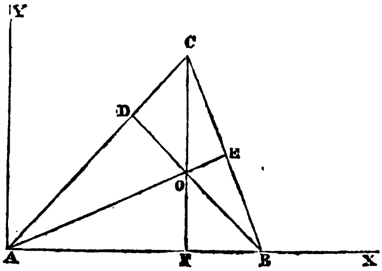
$$\mathrm{D\,O} = \mathrm{D\,Q}\,.\,\frac{\sin.\ \mathrm{D\,Q\,O}}{\sin.\ \mathrm{D\,O\,Q}}$$

$$= \frac{y_1 - \alpha x_1 - b}{\sqrt{1+\alpha^2}} \cdot \frac{1}{\gamma}.$$

50. The equation to the straight line may be used with advantage in the demonstration of the following theorem :—

If from the angles of a plane triangle perpendiculars be let fall on the opposite sides, these perpendiculars will meet in one point.

In the triangle A B C, let A E, B D, C F be perpendiculars from A, B and C on the opposite sides; let O be the point where A E and B D meet, then the theorem will be established by showing that the abscissa to the point O is A F.



Let A be the origin of co-ordinates,
A B the axis of x,
and A Y, perpendicular to A B, the axis of y.

Let the co-ordinates of C be x_1, y_1
.... B x_2, 0 :

we have then the following equations,

$$\text{to A C} \quad y = \frac{y_1}{x_1}x \quad (41)$$

$$\therefore \text{ to B D, } y = \alpha(x - x_2) = -\frac{x_1}{y_1}(x - x_2) \quad (47)$$

$$\text{to B C, } y - y_2 = \frac{y_1 - y_2}{x_1 - x_2}(x - x_2) \quad (41)$$

$$\text{or } y = \frac{y_1}{x_1 - x_2}(x - x_2) \text{ since } y_2 = 0.$$

$$\therefore \text{ to A E, } y = \alpha x = -\frac{x_1 - x_2}{y_1} x;$$

for the intersection O of B D and A E we have, by equating the values of y,

$$-\frac{x_1}{y_1}(x - x_2) = -\frac{x_1 - x_2}{y_1} x,$$

$$\therefore x_1 x - x_1 x_2 = x_1 x - x_2 x; \ \therefore x_2 x = x_1 x_2 \text{ and } x = x_1;$$

that is, the abscissa of the point O is found to be that of C.

In the same manner it may be proved that if perpendiculars be drawn from the bisections of the sides, they will meet in one point.

Similarly we may prove that the three straight lines F C, K B, and A L, in the 47th proposition of Euclid, meet in one point within the triangle A B C.

51. We have hitherto considered the axes as rectangular, but if they be oblique, the coefficient of x, in the equation to a straight line, is not the tangent of the angle which the line makes with the axis of x.

Let ω = the angle between the axes,
θ = the angle which the line makes with the axis of x;

$$\text{then } \alpha = \frac{y-b}{x} = \frac{\sin. \theta}{\sin. (\omega - \theta)} \ (33);$$

b remains, as before, the distance of the origin from the intersection of the line with the axis of y: hence the equation to a straight line referred to oblique axes is

$$y = \frac{\sin. \theta}{\sin. (\omega - \theta)} x + b.$$

Since this equation is of the form $y = \alpha x + b$ all the results in the preceding articles which do not affect the ratio of $\frac{\sin. \theta}{\sin. (\omega - \theta)}$ will be equally true when the axes are oblique.

Thus, articles 40, 41, 42, 43, and 44, require no modification.

To find the tangent (β) of the angle between two given straight lines.

$$\text{Let } \left.\begin{matrix} y = \alpha x + b \\ y = \alpha' x + b' \end{matrix}\right\} \text{be the equations;}$$

from $\alpha = \frac{\sin. \theta}{\sin. (\omega - \theta)}$ we have $\tan. \theta = \frac{\alpha \sin. \omega}{1 + \alpha \cos. \omega}$; and, similarly,

$$\tan. \theta' = \frac{\alpha' \sin. \omega}{1 + \alpha' \cos. \omega}; \text{ hence } \beta = \tan. (\theta - \theta') = \frac{(\alpha - \alpha') \sin. \omega}{1 + \alpha \alpha' + (\alpha + \alpha') \cos. \omega}$$

To find the equation to a straight line passing through a given point $x_1 y_1$, and making a given angle with a given straight line.

Let β be the tangent of the given angle,

$$y = \alpha x + b, \text{ the given line,}$$

$$y - y_1 = \alpha' (x - x_1), \text{ the required line.}$$

From the last formula we have

$$\alpha' = \frac{\alpha \sin. \omega - \beta (1 + \alpha \cos. \omega)}{\sin. \omega + \beta (\alpha + \cos. \omega)}$$

and the required equation is

$$\therefore y - y_1 = \frac{\alpha \sin. \omega - \beta (1 + \alpha \cos. \omega)}{\sin. \omega + \beta (\alpha + \cos. \omega)} (x - x_1).$$

If the lines be perpendicular to each other $\beta = \frac{1}{0}$;

$$\therefore \alpha' = -\frac{1+\alpha \cos.\,\omega}{\alpha+\cos.\,\omega}.$$

and the required equation is

$$y-y_1 = -\frac{1+\alpha \cos.\,\omega}{\alpha+\cos.\,\omega}(x-x_1).$$

To find the length of the perpendicular from a given point upon a given straight line.

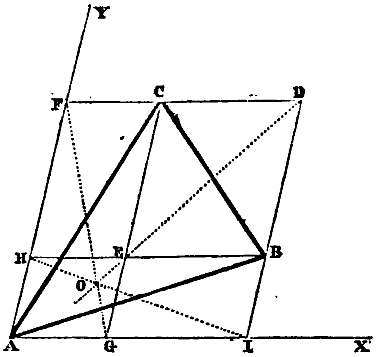
Instead of equation (2), in article 48, we must use the equation just found, and then proceeding as usual we shall find

$$p = \pm \frac{(y_1-\alpha x_1-b)\sin.\,\omega}{\sqrt{\{1+2\alpha\cos.\,\omega+\alpha^2\}}}.$$

It will be concluded from an observation of these formulas, that oblique axes are to be avoided as much as possible; they may be used with advantage where points and lines, but not angles, are the subjects of discussion. As an instance, we shall take the following theorem.

52. If, upon the sides of a triangle as diagonals, parallelograms be described, having their sides parallel to two given lines, the other diagonals of the parallelograms will intersect each other in the same point.

Let A B C be the triangle, A X, A Y the given lines, E B D C, C F A G, H A I B the parallelograms, the opposite diagonals D E, F G, and H I will meet in one point O.



Let A be the origin, A X, A Y the oblique axes

$x_1\,y_1$ the co-ordinates of B

$x_2\,y_2$ . . . . C.

To find the equation to D E;

let it be $y = \alpha x + b$

$y_2 = \alpha x_1 + b$ at D

$$\therefore y - y_2 = \alpha(x - x_1)$$

$y_1 - y_2 = \alpha(x_2 - x_1)$ at E

$$\therefore y - y_2 = \frac{y_1 - y_2}{x_2 - x_1}(x - x_1) \quad (1).$$

To find the equation to F G;

$$y = a x + b$$

$$y_2 = 0 + b \text{ at F}$$

$$\therefore y - y_2 = a x$$

$$0 - y_2 = a x_2 \text{ at G}$$

$$\therefore y - y_2 = -\frac{y_2}{x_2} x \quad (2).$$

To find the equation to H I;

$$y = a x + b$$

$$y_1 = 0 \quad + b \text{ at H}$$

$$\therefore y - y_1 = a x$$

$$0 - y_1 = a x_1 \text{ at I}$$

$$\therefore y - y_1 = -\frac{y_1}{x_1} x \quad (3).$$

Equating the values of y in (1) and (2) we find $X = \frac{x_1 x_2 (y_1 - y_2)}{y_1 x_2 - x_1 y_2}$; also equating the values of y in (2) and (3) we find the same value for X; hence the abscissa for intersection being the same for any two of the lines, they must all three intersect in the same point.

Similarly we may prove that if from the angles of a plane triangle straight lines be drawn to the bisections of the opposite sides, they will meet in one point.

CHAPTER IV.

THE TRANSFORMATION OF CO-ORDINATES.

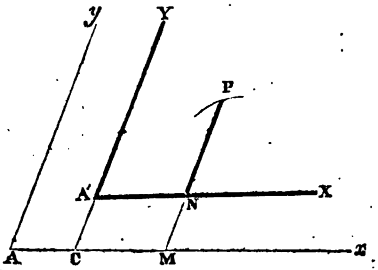
53. Before we proceed to the discussion of equations of higher orders, it is necessary to investigate a method for changing the position of the co-ordinate axes.

The object is to place the axes in such a manner that the equation to a given curve may appear in its most simple form, and conversely by the introduction of indeterminate constants into an equation to reduce the number of terms, so that the form and properties of the corresponding locus may be most easily detected.

An alteration of this nature cannot in the least change the form of the curve, but only the algebraical manner of representing it; thus the general equation to the straight line $y = a x + b$ becomes $y = a x$ when the origin is on the line itself. Also on examining articles 46 and 51 we see that the simplicity of an equation depends very much on the angle between the axes.

Hence in many cases not only the position of the origin but also the direction of the axes may be altered with advantage. The method of performing these operations is called the transformation of co-ordinates.

54. To transform an equation referred to an origin A, to an equation referred to another origin A′, the axes in the latter case being parallel to those in the former.



Let A x, A y be the original axes

A′ X, A′ Y the new axes

$\left.\begin{array}{l} AM = x \\ MP = y \end{array}\right\}$ original co-ordinates of P

$\left.\begin{array}{l} A'N = X \\ NP = Y \end{array}\right\}$ new co-ordinates of P

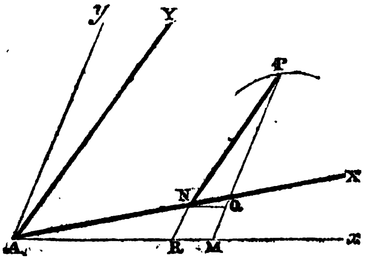
$\left.\begin{array}{l} AC = a \\ CA' = b \end{array}\right\}$ the co-ordinates of the new origin A′,

then $MP = MN + NP$, that is, $y = b + Y$,

$AM = AC + CM, \; \ldots\ldots \; x = a + X$;

substituting these values for y and x in the equation to the curve, we have the transformed equation between Y and X referred to the origin A′.

55. To transform the equation referred to oblique axes, to an equation referred to other oblique axes having the same origin.



Let A x, A y be the original axes,

AX, AY be the new axes,

$\left.\begin{array}{l} AM = x \\ MP = y \end{array}\right\}$ original co-ordinates of P.

$\left.\begin{array}{l} AN = X \\ NP = Y \end{array}\right\}$ new co-ordinates of P.

Let the angle $x\text{A}y = \omega$, $x\text{AX} = \theta$, $x\text{AY} = \theta'$;

Draw NR parallel to PM, and NQ parallel to AM,

then

$$y = \text{MP} = \text{MQ} + \text{QP} = \text{NR} + \text{QP}$$

$$= \text{AN}\,\frac{\text{sin. NAR}}{\text{sin. NRA}} + \text{PN}\,\frac{\text{sin. PNQ}}{\text{sin. PQN}}$$

$$= \text{X}\,\frac{\sin.\,\theta}{\sin.\,\omega} + \text{Y}\,\frac{\sin.\,\theta'}{\sin.\,\omega};$$

and

$$x = \text{AM} = \text{AR} + \text{RM} = \text{AR} + \text{NQ}$$

$$= \text{AN}\,\frac{\text{sin. ANR}}{\text{sin. ARN}} + \text{PN}\,\frac{\text{sin. NPQ}}{\text{sin. NQP}}$$

$$= \text{X}\,\frac{\sin.\,(\omega - \theta)}{\sin.\,\omega} + \text{Y}\,\frac{\sin.\,(\omega - \theta')}{\sin.\,\omega}$$

$$\therefore\ y = \frac{\text{X}\sin.\,\theta + \text{Y}\sin.\,\theta'}{\sin.\,\omega}$$

$$x = \frac{\text{X}\sin.\,(\omega - \theta) + \text{Y}\sin.\,(\omega - \theta')}{\sin.\,\omega}.$$

56. Let the original axes be oblique, and the new rectangular, or $\theta' - \theta = 90°$.

$$\therefore\ y = \frac{\text{X}\sin.\,\theta + \text{Y}\cos.\,\theta}{\sin.\,\omega}$$

$$x = \frac{\text{X}\sin.\,(\omega - \theta) - \text{Y}\cos.\,(\omega - \theta)}{\sin.\,\omega}.$$

57. Let the original axes be rectangular, or $\omega = 90°$.

$$\therefore\ y = \text{X}\sin.\,\theta + \text{Y}\sin.\,\theta',$$

$$x = \text{X}\cos.\,\theta + \text{Y}\cos.\,\theta'$$

58. Let both systems be rectangular, or $\omega = 90°$ and $\theta' - \theta = 90°$

$$\therefore\ y = \text{X}\sin.\,\theta + \text{Y}\cos.\,\theta,$$

$$x = \text{X}\cos.\,\theta - \text{Y}\sin.\,\theta$$

59. These forms have been deduced from the first, but each of them may be found by a separate process. The first and last pairs are the most useful. Perhaps they may be best remembered if expressed in the following manner.

Both systems oblique, the formulas (55) become

$$y = \{\text{X}\sin.\,\text{XA}x + \text{Y}\sin.\,\text{YA}x\}\,\frac{1}{\sin.\,x\text{A}y}$$

$$x = \{\text{X}\sin.\,\text{XA}y + \text{Y}\sin.\,\text{YA}y\}\,\frac{1}{\sin.\,x\text{A}y}.$$

Both systems rectangular, the formulas (58) become

$$y = \text{X}\cos.\,\text{XA}y + \text{Y}\cos.\,\text{YA}y$$

$$x = \text{X}\cos.\,\text{XA}x + \text{Y}\cos.\,\text{YA}x.$$

If the situation of the origin be changed as well as the direction of the axes, we have only to add the quantities a and b to the values of x and y respectively; however, in such a case, it is most convenient to perform each transformation separately.

If the new axis of X falls below the original axis of x, the angle θ must be considered as negative, therefore its sine will be negative and its cosine positive. Hence the formulas of transformation will require a slight alteration before applied to this particular case.

Since the values of x and y are in all cases expressed by equations of the first order, the degree of an equation is never changed by the transformation of co-ordinates.

60. Hitherto we have determined the situation of a point in a plane by its distance from two axes, but there is also another method of much use. Let S be a fixed point, and S B a fixed straight line; then the point P is also evidently determined if we know the length S P and the angle P S B.

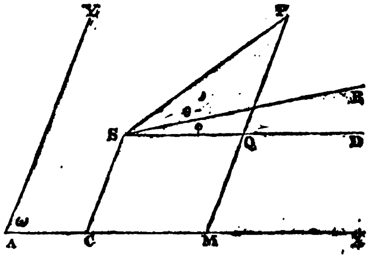
If S P $= r$ and P S B $= \theta$, r and θ are called the polar co-ordinates of P. S is called the pole, and S P the radius vector, because a curve may be supposed to be described by the extremity of the line S P revolving round S, the length of S P being variable. The fixed straight line S B is also called the axis.

To transform an equation between co-ordinates x and y into another between polar co-ordinates r and θ,

Draw S D parallel to A X, and let the angle B S D $= \phi$, and the angle Y A X $= \omega$.

Let A M $= x$, M P $= y$, A C $= a$, C S $= b$,

$$\left.\begin{aligned} \text{then } y &= \text{MP} = \text{MQ} + \text{QP} = b + r\,\frac{\sin.\,(\theta+\phi)}{\sin.\,\omega} \\ x &= \text{AM} = \text{AC} + \text{SQ} = a + r\,\frac{\sin.\{\omega-(\theta+\phi)\}}{\sin.\,\omega.} \end{aligned}\right\} \quad (1)$$



Let S B coincide with S D, or $\phi = 0$;

$$\left.\begin{aligned} \therefore\ y &= b + r\,\frac{\sin.\,\theta}{\sin.\,\omega} \\ x &= a + r\,\frac{\sin.\,(\omega-\theta)}{\sin.\,\omega} \end{aligned}\right\} \quad (2)$$

61. Let the original axes be also rectangular, or $\omega = \frac{\pi}{2}$;

$$\left.\begin{aligned} \therefore\ y &= b + r\sin.\,\theta \\ x &= a + r\cos.\,\theta \end{aligned}\right\} \quad (3)$$

and if the origin A be the pole, we have $a = 0$ and $b = 0$.

$$\left.\begin{aligned} \therefore\ y &= r\sin.\,\theta \\ x &= r\cos.\,\theta \end{aligned}\right\} (4).$$

Of these formulas (3) and (4) are the most useful.

62. Conversely, to find r and θ in terms of x and y: from (1) we have

$$\frac{x-a}{y-b} = \frac{\sin.\{\omega-(\theta+\phi)\}}{\sin.\,(\theta+\phi)} = \sin.\,\omega\cot.\,(\theta+\phi) - \cos.\,\omega;$$

$$\therefore\ \tan.\,(\theta+\phi) = \frac{(y-b)\sin.\,\omega}{x-a+(y-b)\cos.\,\omega}$$

$$\therefore\ \theta+\phi = \tan.^{-1}\left\{\frac{(y-b)\sin.\,\omega}{x-a+(y-b)\cos.\,\omega}\right\},$$

where the symbol $\tan.^{-1}a$ is equivalent to the words "a circular arc whose radius is unity, and tangent a."

$$\text{also } r^2 = (x-a)^2 + (y-b)^2 + 2\,(x-a)\,(y-b)\cos.\,\omega \ldots (30)$$

63. If the axes are rectangular, or $\omega = \frac{\pi}{2}$, the pole at the origin, and therefore $a = 0$ and $b = 0$, and also $\phi = 0$, we have $\frac{y}{x} = \tan.\theta$, and therefore

$$\theta = \tan.^{-1}\frac{y}{x}$$

$$\text{and } r^2 = x^2 + y^2 \ldots\ldots (29)$$

and these are the formulas generally used.

From $\tan.\theta = \frac{y}{x}$ we have $\cos.\theta = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1+(\tan.\theta)^2}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1+\frac{y^2}{x^2}}} = \frac{x}{\sqrt{y^2+x^2}}$ and $\sin.\theta = \cos.\theta \times \tan.\theta = \frac{y}{\sqrt{y^2+x^2}}$; hence the value of θ may also be expressed by the equations

$$\theta = \sin.^{-1}\frac{y}{\sqrt{y^2+x^2}} \text{ or } \theta = \cos.^{-1}\frac{x}{\sqrt{y^2+x^2}}.$$

CHAPTER V.

ON THE CIRCLE.

64. Following the order of this treatise, our next subject of discussion would be the loci of the general equation of the second degree; but there is one curve among these loci, remarkable for the facility of its description and the simplicity of its equation: this curve, we need scarcely say, is the circle; and as the discussion of the circle is admirably fitted to prepare the reader for other investigations, we proceed to examine its analytical character.

The common definition of the circle states, that the distance of any point on the circumference of the figure from the centre is equal to a given line called the radius.

If a and b be the co-ordinates of the centre, x and y those of any point on the circumference, and r the radius, the distance between those points is $\sqrt{\{(y-b)^2 + (x-a)^2\}}$ (29): hence the equation to the circle is

$$(y-b)^2 + (x-a)^2 = r^2$$

65. To obtain this equation directly from the figure,

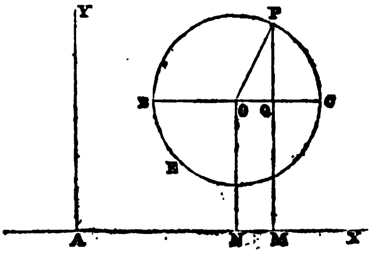
let A be the origin,

A X, A Y the rectangular axes,

$\left.\begin{array}{l}\mathrm{AN} = a\\ \mathrm{NO} = b\end{array}\right\}$ the co-ordinates of the centre,

$\left.\begin{array}{l} AM = x \\ MP = y \end{array}\right\}$ those of any point P on the circumference;

B O Q C a line parallel to the axis of x.



Then the square upon O P = the square upon P Q + the square upon O Q,

and $PQ = PM - QM = y - b$

also $OQ = AM - AN = x - a$;

$\therefore r^2 = (y-b)^2 + (x-a)^2$

or $(y-b)^2 + (x-a)^2 = r^2$ (1)

If the axis of x or that of y passes through the centre, the equation (1) becomes respectively

$$\left.\begin{array}{r} (y-b)^2 + x^2 = r^2 \\ \text{or } y^2 + (x-a)^2 = r^2 \end{array}\right\} (2)$$

If the origin be at any point of the circumference as E, we have then the equation of condition $a^2 + b^2 = r^2$; expanding (1) and reducing it by means of this condition, we have

$$y^2 - 2by + x^2 - 2ax = 0 \text{ (3).}$$

If the origin is at B, B O being the axis of x, we have $b = 0$ and $a = r$;

$$\therefore y^2 + x^2 - 2rx = 0$$

$$\text{or } y^2 = 2rx - x^2 \text{ (4).}$$

Again, placing the origin at the centre O, we have $b = 0$ and $a = 0$;

$$\therefore y^2 + x^2 = r^2 \text{ (5).}$$

The above equations are all useful, but those most required are (1), (4), and (5).

66. Equation (1), if expanded, is

$$y^2 + x^2 - 2by - 2ax + a^2 + b^2 - r^2 = 0.$$

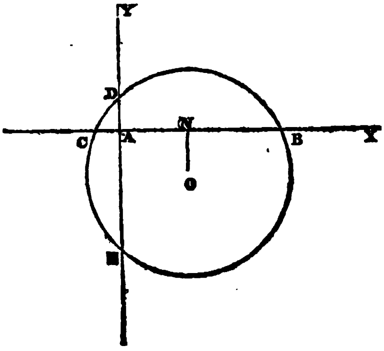
This differs from the complete equation of the second order (23) in having the coefficients of x^2 and y^2 unity, and by having no term containing the product xy.

Any equation of this form being given, we can, by comparing it with the above equation, determine the situation of its locus, that is, find the position of the centre, and the magnitude of the corresponding circle.

Ex. 1. $y^2 + x^2 + 4y - 8x - 5 = 0.$

here $b = -2$, $a = 4$, and $a^2 + b^2 - r^2 = -5$;

$\therefore r^2 = a^2 + b^2 + 5 = 25.$



Let A be the origin of co-ordinates, A X, A Y the axes.

In AX take AN = 4 times the linear unit, from N draw NO perpendicular to A X, but downwards, and equal to 2; then O is the centre of the circle. With centre O and radius 5 describe a circle; this is the locus required. The points where it cuts the axis of x are determined by putting $y = 0$;

$$\therefore x^2 - 8x - 5 = 0;$$

$$\therefore x = 4 \pm \sqrt{21};$$

$$\text{hence } AB = 4 + \sqrt{21} \text{ and } AC = 4 - \sqrt{21}.$$

Similarly putting $x = 0$, we find A D = 1 and A E = 5.

67. The shortest way of describing the locus is to put the equation into the form $(y - b)^2 + (x - a)^2 = r^2$.

For example, the equation

$$y^2 + x^2 + cy + dx + e = 0,$$

becomes, by the addition and subtraction of $\frac{c^2}{4}$ and $\frac{d^2}{4}$,

$$y^2 + cy + \frac{c^2}{4} + x^2 + dx + \frac{d^2}{4} + e - \frac{c^2}{4} - \frac{d^2}{4} = 0,$$

$$\text{or } (y + \frac{c}{2})^2 + (x + \frac{d}{2})^2 = \frac{c^2 + d^2}{4} - e,$$

where we observe directly that $-\frac{d}{2}$ and $-\frac{c}{2}$ are the co-ordinates of the centre, and that $\sqrt{\{\frac{c^2 + d^2}{4} - e\}}$ is the radius of the required locus.

Ex. 2. $y^2 + x^2 + 4y - 4x - 8 = 0$

add and subtract 8, and the equation becomes

$$y^2 + 4y + 4 + x^2 - 4x + 4 - 16 = 0$$

$$\text{or } (y + 2)^2 + (x - 2)^2 = 16$$

hence the co-ordinates of the centre are $a = 2$ and $b = -2$, and the radius is 4.

Ex. 3. $2y^2 + 2x^2 - 4y - 4x + 1 = 0;\ a = 1,\ b = 1,\ r = \sqrt{\frac{3}{2}}.$

4. $y^2 + x^2 - 6y + 4x - 3 = 0;\ a = -2,\ b = 3,\ r = 4.$

5. $6y^2 + 6x^2 - 21y - 8x + 14 = 0;\ a = -\frac{2}{3},\ b = \frac{7}{4},\ r = \frac{13}{12}.$

6. $y^2 + x^2 + 4y - 3x = 0;\ a = \frac{3}{2},\ b = -2,\ r = \frac{5}{2}.$

7. $y^2 + x^2 - 4y + 2x = 0;\ a = -1,\ b = 2,\ r = \sqrt{5}.$

In these last two examples there is no occasion to calculate the length of the radius, for the circumference of the circle passes through the origin of co-ordinates, as do the loci of all equations which want the last or constant term.

8. $y^2 + x^2 - 4y = 0;\ a = 0,\ b = 2,\ r = 2.$

9. $y^2 + x^2 + 6x = 0;\ a = -3,\ b = 0,\ r = 3.$

10. $y^2 + x^2 - 6x + 8 = 0;\ a = 3,\ b = 0,\ r = 1.$

In the last three examples the centre of the circle is on the axes.

68. We have seen that the equation to the circle referred to rectangular axes does not contain the product xy, and also that the coefficients of y^2 and x^2 are each unity; we have, moreover, seen that generally an equation of the second degree of this form has a circle for its locus, but there are some exceptions to this last rule.

For example, the equation $y^2 + x^2 - 8y - 12x + 52 = 0$ is apparently of the circular form; its locus, however, is not a circle, but a point whose co-ordinates are $x = 6$ and $y = 4$, for it may be put under the form $(y - 4)^2 + (x - 6)^2 = 0$, the only real solution of which is $x = 6$ and $y = 4$; and this will always be the case when $r^2 = 0$, hence a point may be considered as a circle whose radius is indefinitely small.

Again, the equation $y^2 + x^2 - 4y + 2x + 9 = 0$, may be put under the form $(y-2)^2 + (x+1)^2 = -4$; but there are no possible values of x and y that can satisfy this equation, therefore the locus is imaginary. (24).

69. To find the equation to the tangent to a circle.

Let the origin of co-ordinates be at the centre, and x', y' any point on the circumference.

Then the equation to the straight line through x', y' is

$$y - y' = \alpha (x - x');$$

the equation to the radius through x', y' is $y = \dfrac{y'}{x'} x$;

but the tangent being perpendicular to the radius, we have $\alpha = -\dfrac{x'}{y'}$ (47.)

$$\therefore y - y' = -\frac{x'}{y'} (x - x'),$$

$$\text{or } y y' - y'^2 = - x x' + x'^2;$$

$$\therefore y y' + x x' = y'^2 + x'^2$$

$$= r^2.$$

The equation $y y' + x x' = r^2$, thus found, may be easily remembered, from the similarity of its form to that of the equation to the circle, it being obtained at once from $y^2 + x^2 = r^2$ by changing y^2 or $y y$ into $y y'$, and x^2 or $x x$ into $x x'$.

If we take the general equation to the circle, $(y - b)^2 + (x - a)^2 = r^2$, the equation to the radius is

$$y - b = \frac{y' - b}{x' - a} (x - a) \ldots . (41)$$

$$\therefore \alpha = -\frac{x' - a}{y' - b}, \text{ and the equation to the tangent is}$$

$$y - y' = \alpha (x - x') = -\frac{x' - a}{y' - b} (x - x')$$

The equation $(y' - b)^2 + (x' - a)^2 = r^2$ enables us finally to reduce the equation to the tangent to the form

$$(y - b) (y' - b) + (x - a) (x' - a) = r^2$$

70. To find the equation to the tangent of a circle parallel to a given straight line.

Let $y = \alpha x + b$ be the given line,

and $y y' + x x' = r^2$ the required tangent, in which x', y' are unknown.

Since these lines are parallel, $-\frac{x'}{y'} = \alpha$, (43) or $-\frac{\sqrt{r^2 - y'^2}}{y'} = \alpha$,

$\therefore y' = \pm \frac{}{\sqrt{1 + \alpha^2}}$.

Hence by substitution in the equation $y = -\frac{x'}{y'}x + \frac{r^2}{y}$, we have

$$y = \alpha x \pm r\sqrt{1 + \alpha^2};$$

consequently two tangents can be drawn parallel to the given line.

71. To find the intersection of a straight line and circle:

Let the centre of the circle be the common origin, and let the equations be $y = \alpha x + b$, and $y^2 + x^2 = r^2$; at the point of intersection, y and x must be the same for both. $\therefore r^2 - x^2 = (\alpha x + b)^2$,

$$\text{whence } x = \frac{-\alpha b \pm \sqrt{\{r^2(1+\alpha^2) - b^2\}}}{1 + \alpha^2};$$

there being two values of x, we have two intersections; these values may be constructed, and the points of intersection found.

If $r^2(1 + \alpha^2) = b^2$ the two values of x are equal, and the line will touch the circle. If $r^2(1 + \alpha^2)$ is less than b^2 the line will not meet the circle.

Ex. 1. $y^2 + x^2 = 25$, $y + x = 1$; $x = 4$ and -3, $y = -3$ and 4

Ex. 2. $y^2 + x^2 = 25$, $y + x = 5$; $x = 5$ and 0, $y = 0$ and 5

Ex. 3. $y^2 + x^2 = 25$, $4y + 3x = 24$; The line touches the circle.

We may observe that the combination of an equation of the first order with any equation of two dimensions will, as above, give an equation of the second order for solution; and hence there can be only two intersections of their loci.

72. If the axes be oblique and inclined to each other at an angle ω, the equation to the circle is

$$(y - b)^2 + (x - a)^2 + 2(y - b)(x - a)\cos.\,\omega = r^2, \qquad (30)$$

and $y^2 + x^2 + 2xy\cos.\,\omega = r^2$, if the origin be at the centre; hence the equation $y^2 + cxy + x^2 + dy + ex + f = 0$, belongs to the circle in the particular case where the co-ordinate angle is one whose cosine $= \frac{c}{2}$.

Comparing it with the general equation to the circle, we find

$$2\cos.\,\omega = c, \qquad -2b - 2a\cos.\,\omega = d,$$

$$-2a - 2b\cos.\,\omega = e, \qquad a^2 + b^2 + 2ab\cos.\,\omega - r^2 = f;$$

whence, by elimination, we obtain $a = \frac{2e - cd}{c^2 - 4}$, $b = \frac{2d - ce}{c^2 - 4}$,

$$\text{and } r^2 = \frac{ced - e^2 - d^2}{c^2 - 4} - f;$$

hence the co-ordinates of the centre and the radius being known, the locus can be drawn.

Ex. 1. $y^2 + xy + x^2 + y + x - 1 = 0$;

here $2\cos.\,\omega = 1$; $\therefore \omega = 60°$; hence this equation will give a circle if the axes be inclined at an angle of 60°; the co-ordinates of the centre are $a = -\frac{1}{3}$, $b = -\frac{1}{3}$; and the radius $= \frac{2}{\sqrt{3}}$.

The equation to this circle, when referred to the centre as origin, and to rectangular axes, is obviously $y^2 + x^2 = r^2 = \frac{4}{3}$.

Ex. 2. $y^2 + \sqrt{2}\,.\,xy + x^2 - 9 = 0$.

This will give a circle if the axes be inclined at an angle of 45°, the centre is at the origin of co-ordinates, and the radius $= 3$.

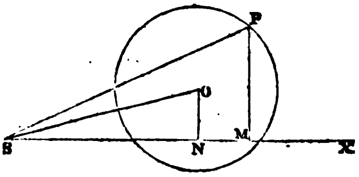
Of course c must never be equal to, or greater than, ± 2, for cos. ω must be less than unity.

If the circle be referred to oblique co-ordinates, the equation to the radius is $y - b = \frac{y' - b}{x' - a}(x - a)$ .... (41)
and the equation to the tangent is

$$y - y' = -\frac{(x'-a) + (y'-b)\cos.\omega}{(y'-b) + (x'-a)\cos.\omega}(x - x') \;\ldots\ldots (51)$$

and reducing as in article 69 we have the equation to the tangent

$$(y - b)(y' - b) + (x - a)(x' - a) + (x - a)(y' - b)\cos.\omega + (x' - a)(y - b)\cos.\omega = r^2.$$



73. To find the polar equation to the circle.

Let the pole be at the origin S, and the angle P S M ($= \theta$) be measured from the axis of x.

$$\left.\begin{aligned}\text{Let } SM &= x\\ MP &= y\end{aligned}\right\}\text{ be rectangular co-ordinates of P}$$

$$\left.\begin{aligned}\text{and } SN &= a\\ NO &= b\end{aligned}\right\}\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\text{O}$$

Let $SP = u$, $SO = c$, and angle $OSX = \alpha$; then by the formulas (61) or by the figure $y = u\sin.\theta$, $x = u\cos.\theta$, $a = c\cos.\alpha$, and $b = c\sin.\alpha$.

Substituting these values of x and y in the equation to the circle,

$$y^2 + x^2 - 2by - 2ax + a^2 + b^2 - r^2 = 0,$$

we have

$$u^2(\sin.\theta)^2 + u^2(\cos.\theta)^2 - 2cu\sin.\alpha\sin.\theta - 2cu\cos.\alpha\cos.\theta + c^2(\cos.\alpha)^2 + c^2(\sin.\alpha)^2 - r^2 = 0,$$

$$\text{or}\quad u^2 - 2cu\{\sin.\theta\sin.\alpha + \cos\theta\cos.\alpha\} + c^2 - r^2 = 0,$$

$$\text{or}\quad u^2 - 2cu\cos.(\theta - \alpha) + c^2 - r^2 = 0.$$

74. If a and b are not expressed in terms of the polar co-ordinates c and α, the polar equation is then of the form

$$u^2 - 2\{b\sin.\theta + a\cos.\theta\}u + a^2 + b^2 - r^2 = 0.$$

If the origin be on the circumference we have $a^2 + b^2 = r^2$, and therefore the equation to the circle becomes

$$u = 2\,(b \sin.\theta + a \cos.\theta)$$

If the axis of x passes through the centre, $b = 0$, and the equation is

$$u^2 - 2\,a\,u \cos.\theta + a^2 - r^2 = 0.$$

$$\text{Whence } u = a \cos.\theta \pm \sqrt{r^2 - a^2\,(\sin.\theta)^2};$$

which equation may also be directly obtained from the triangle S P O.

CHAPTER VI.

DISCUSSION OF THE GENERAL EQUATION OF THE SECOND ORDER.

75. The most general form in which this equation appears is

$$a y^2 + b x y + c x^2 + d y + e x + f = 0;$$

where a, b, c, &c., are constant coefficients.

Let the equation be solved with respect to y and x separately, then

$$y = -\frac{bx+d}{2a} \pm \frac{1}{2a}\sqrt{\{(b^2-4\,ac)\,x^2+2\,(b\,d-2\,ae)\,x+d^2-4\,af\}}; \quad (1)$$

$$x = -\frac{by+e}{2c} \pm \frac{1}{2c}\sqrt{\{(b^2-4ac)\,y^2+2\,(b\,e-2\,c\,d)\,y+e^2-4\,cf\}} \quad (2).$$

On account of the double sign of the root in (1), there are, in general, two values of y; hence there are two ordinates corresponding to the same abscissa: these ordinates may be constructed whenever the values of x render the radical quantity real; but if these values render it nothing, there is only one ordinate, and if they make it imaginary, no corresponding ordinate can be drawn, and therefore there is no point of the curve corresponding to such a value of x. Hence, to know the extent and limits of the curve, we must examine when the quantity under the root is real, nothing, or imaginary.

This will depend on the algebraical sign of the quantity

$$(b^2 - 4ac)\,x^2 + 2\,(b\,d - 2\,a\,e)\,x + d^2 - 4\,af.$$

In an expression of this form, a value may be given to x, so large that the sign of the whole quantity depends only upon that of its first term, or upon that of its coefficient $b^2 - 4\,a\,c$, since x^2 is always positive for any real value of x.

For, writing the expression in the form $m\,(x^2 + \frac{n}{m}\,x + \frac{p}{m})$ let q be the absolute value of the greater of the two quantities $\frac{n}{m}$ and $\frac{p}{m}$; then substituting $r = \pm\,(q + 1)$ for x, the expression becomes

$$m\left\{q^2+2q+1\pm\frac{n}{m}q\pm\frac{n}{m}+\frac{p}{m}\right\},$$

which, whatever be the values of $\frac{n}{m}$ and $\frac{p}{m}$, is positive, and the same is true for any magnitude greater than $\pm r$; hence the sign of the expression depends upon that of m.

When b^2-4ac is negative, real values may be given to x, either positive or negative, greater than $\pm r$, which will render y imaginary. The curve will then be limited in both the positive and negative directions of x.

When b^2-4ac is positive, all values of x not less than $\pm r$ will render y real, and therefore the curve is of infinite extent in both directions of x.

Lastly, when b^2-4ac is nothing, the quantity under the root becomes

$$2(bd-2ae)x+d^2-4af.$$

If $bd-2ae$ be positive, real positive values may be given to x, which shall render y real; but if a negative value be given to x greater than $\frac{d^2-4af}{2(bd-2ae)}$, y is imaginary; therefore the curve will be of indefinite extent in the direction of x positive and limited in the opposite direction.

But if $bd-2ae$ be negative, exactly opposite results will follow, that is, the curve will be of indefinite extent in the direction of x negative and limited in the opposite direction.

Taking equation (2) we should find similar results.

The curves corresponding to the equation of the second degree, may therefore be divided into three distinct classes.

1. b^2-4ac negative, curves limited in every direction.
2. b^2-4ac positive, curves unlimited in every direction.
3. b^2-4ac nothing, curves limited in one direction, but unlimited in the opposite direction.

76. *First class* b^2-4ac *negative.*

Let $-\frac{b}{2a}=\alpha$, $-\frac{d}{2a}=l$, $\frac{b^2-4ac}{4a^2}=-\mu$,

and let x_1 and x_2 be the roots of the equation

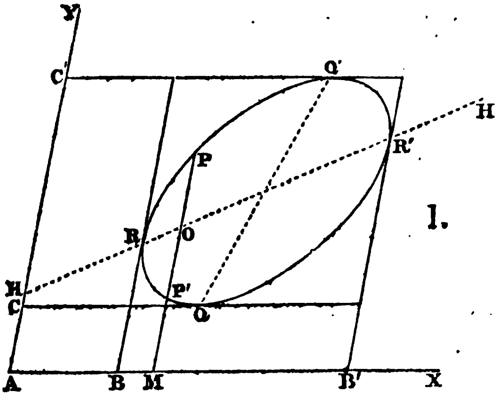
$$(b^2-4ac)x^2+2(bd-2ae)x+d^2-4af=0.$$

Then equation (1) or

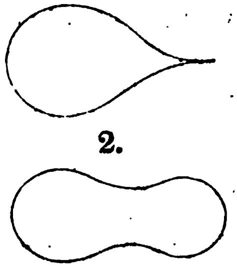
$$y=-\frac{bx+d}{2a}\pm\sqrt{\left\{\frac{b^2-4ac}{4a^2}\left(x^2+2\frac{bd-2ae}{b^2-4ac}x+\frac{d^2-4af}{b^2-4ac}\right)\right\}}$$

becomes by substitution

$$y=\alpha x+l\pm\sqrt{\{-\mu(x-x_1)(x-x_2)\}}$$



1.



2.

Let A be the origin of co-ordinates, A X, A Y the oblique axes.

Let H H′ be the line represented by the equation $y = \alpha x + l$, M O one of its ordinates corresponding to any value of x between x_1 and x_2.

Along the line M O take O P and O P′ each equal to $\surd\{-\mu (x-x_1) (x-x_2)\}$, then P and P′ are two points in the curve, for

$$M P = M O + O P = \alpha x + l + \surd\{-\mu (x-x_1)(x-x_2)\}$$
$$M P' = M O - O P' = \alpha x + l - \surd\{-\mu (x-x_1)(x-x_2)\}$$

If we repeat this construction for all the real values of x which render the root real we obtain the different points of the curve.

The line H H′ is called a diameter of the curve, for it bisects all the chords P P′ which are parallel to the axis of y.

The reality of y depends on the reality of the radical quantity, which last depends on the form of the factors $(x - x_1)$ and $(x - x_2)$, that is, on the roots x_1 and x_2. Now these may enter the equation in three forms—real and unequal—real and equal—or both imaginary.

Case 1. Let x_1 and x_2 be real and unequal, take A B $= x_1$, A B′ $= x_2$, then if $x = x_1$ or x_2 the quantity $-\mu (x-x_1) (x-x_2)$ vanishes, and the ordinate to the curve coincides with the ordinate to the diameter, therefore drawing through B and B′ two lines B R and B′ R′ parallel to A Y the curve cuts the diameter in R and R′.

For all values of x between x_1 and x_2 there are two real values of y, for $x - x_1$ is positive and $x - x_2$ is negative, and therefore $-\mu (x-x_1) (x-x_2)$ is positive.

For all values of $x > x_2$ or $< x_1$, $-\mu (x-x_1) (x-x_2)$ is negative, the root being impossible cannot be constructed, hence there is no real value of y corresponding to such values of x, and therefore the curve is entirely confined between the two lines B R and B′ R′.

Similarly by taking equation (2) in (75), we shall find that a straight line Q Q′ is a diameter; that the curve cuts it in two points Q, Q′: that drawing lines parallel to A X through Q and Q′ the curve is confined between those parallels.

We have thus determined that the curve exists and only exists between tain parallel lines: its form is not yet ascertained. We might by giving a variety of values to x between x_1 and x_2 determine a variety of points P, Q, &c., and thus arrive at a tolerably exact idea of its course, but independently of this method, its form cannot much differ from that in the figure, for supposing it to be such as in fig. (2) a straight line could be drawn cutting it in more points than two which is impossible (71).

This oval curve is called the Ellipse.

If we require the points where the curve cuts A X, put $y = 0$, then the roots of the equation $cx^2 + ex + f = 0$ are the abscissas of the points of intersection, and the curve will cut the axis in two points, touch it in one, or never meet it, according as these roots are real and unequal, real and equal, or imaginary. Similarly putting $x = 0$ we find the points, if any, where the curve meets the axis of y.

Case 2. Let the roots x_1 and x_2 be real and equal,

$$\therefore y = \alpha x + l \pm (x - x_1)\sqrt{-\mu}$$

which is imaginary except when $x = x_1$, therefore the locus is the point whose co-ordinates are x_1 and $\alpha x_1 + l$, or $\dfrac{2ae - bd}{b^2 - 4ac}$ and $\dfrac{2cd - be}{b^2 - 4ac}$.

Case 3. Let x_1 and x_2 be impossible, then no real value can be given to x to make $(x - x_1)(x - x_2)$ negative, for the roots are of the form $\pm p + q\sqrt{-1}$ and $\pm p - q\sqrt{-1}$ $\therefore (x - x_1)(x - x_2) = x^2 \pm 2px + p^2 + q^2 = (x \pm p)^2 + q^2$ which quantity is always positive for a real value of x. Hence in this case the radical quantity being impossible there is no locus.

We have not examined the equation of x in terms of y at length, for the results of the latter are dependent on those of the former. By comparing equations (1) and (2) in (75), we see that c stands in one equation where a stands in the other, and therefore that the radical quantities are contemporaneously possible, equal, or impossible, provided that a and c have the same sign, which is the case when $b^2 - 4ac$ is negative.

In discussing a particular example reduce it to the forms

$$y = \alpha x + l \pm \sqrt{\{-\mu(x - x_1)(x - x_2)\}}$$
$$x = \alpha' y + l' \pm \sqrt{\{-\mu'(y - y_1)(y - y_2)\}}$$

there are then three cases.

Case 1. x_1 and x_2 real and unequal. The locus is called an ellipse, its boundaries are determined from x_1, x_2, y_1 and y_2, its diameters are drawn from $y = \alpha x + l$ and $x = \alpha' y + l'$, and its intersections with the axes found by putting x and y successively $= 0$ in the original equation.

Case 2. x_1 and x_2 real and equal: the locus is a point.

Case 3. x_1 and x_2 impossible: the locus is imaginary.

Ex. 1. $y^2 - 2xy + 2x^2 - 2y - 4x + 9 = 0$. Case 1. Fig. 1.

A B $= 2$, A B′ $= 4$, A C $= 4 - \sqrt{2}$, A C′ $= 4 + \sqrt{2}$, A H $= 1$

Ex. 2. $y^2 + xy + x^2 + y + x - 5 = 0$. Case 1.

The curve cuts the diameters when A B $= 2\frac{1}{3}$, A B′ $= -3$, A C $= 2\frac{1}{3}$, A C′ $= -3$, and it cuts the axes at distances 1·7 and −2·7 nearly;

These six points are sufficient to determine its course.

Ex. 3. $y^2 + 2xy + 3x^2 - 4x = 0$. Case 1.

Ex. 4. $y^2 - 2xy + 2x^2 - 2y + 2x = 0$. Case 1.

Ex. 5. $y^2 + 2x^2 - 10x + 12 = 0$. Case 1.

Ex. 6. $y^2 - 2xy + 3x^2 - 2y - 10x + 19 = 0$. Case 2. The intersection of the diameters in Ex. 1,

Ex. 7. $y^2 - 4xy + 5x^2 + 2y - 4x + 2 = 0$. Case 3.

It is to be observed that no accurate form of the curve is here found, that will be hereafter ascertained, all that we can at present do, is to obtain an idea of the situation of the locus.

77. *Second class, $b^2 - 4ac$ positive.*

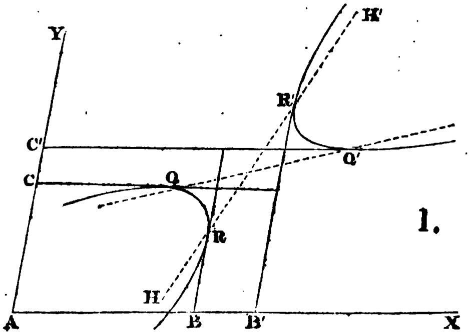
Arranging and substituting as in (76) the equation becomes

$$y = \alpha x + l \pm \sqrt{\{\mu (x - x_1)(x - x_2)\}}.$$

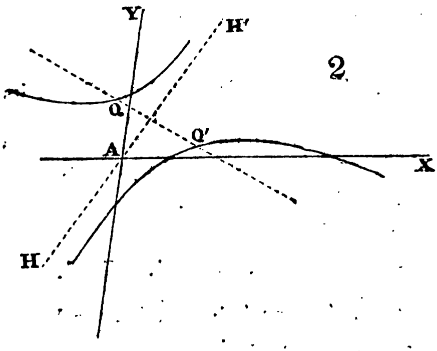
Let H H′ be the diameter whose equation is $y = \alpha x + l$.

Then as before there are three forms of the roots x_1 and x_2.

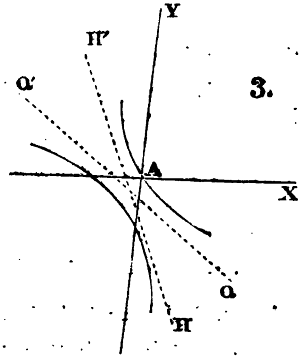
Case 1. Let x_1 and x_2 be real and unequal, let A B $= x_1$ and A B′ $= x_2$, draw B R, B′ R′ parallel to A Y, the curve meets the diameter in R and R′. The radical quantity is imaginary for all values of x between x_1 and x_2 but real beyond these limits, hence no part of the curve is between the parallels B R, B′ R′, but it extends to infinity beyond them.



1.



2



3.

Taking the equation for x in terms of y, we may draw the diameter QQ′ and determine the lines CQ, C′Q′ parallel to AX between which no part of the curve is found, and beyond which x is always possible.

From this examination it results that the form of the locus must be something like that in fig. 1, consisting of two opposite arcs with branches proceeding to infinity.

This curve is called the Hyperbola.

We must observe that the second diameter does not necessarily meet the curve, for the contemporaneous possibility or impossibility of the radical quantities depends on the signs of a and c, and these may be different in the hyperbola; so that one radical quantity may have possible and the other impossible roots.

Case 2. x_1 and x_2 real and equal.

$$y = \alpha x + l \pm (x - x_1) \sqrt{\mu}$$

this is the equation to two straight lines.

Case 3. x_1 and x_2 imaginary; whatever real values be given to x the radical quantity is real, and therefore there must be four infinite branches. Also since $\mu (x - x_1)(x - x_2)$ can never vanish, (76, Case 3.) the diameter HH′ never meets the curve, but we may draw the other diameter as in the first case.

If neither diameter meets the curve, yet they will at least determine where the curve does not pass, we must then find the intersections with the axes. If these will not give a number of points sufficient to determine the locality of the curve we must have recourse to other methods to be explained hereafter.

In discussing a particular example reduce it to the forms

$$y = \alpha x + l \pm \sqrt{\{\mu (x - x_1)(x - x_2)\}}$$
$$x = \alpha' y + l' \pm \sqrt{\{\mu (y - y_1)(y - y_2)\}}$$

there are then three cases.

Case 1. x_1 and x_2 real and unequal. The locus is an hyperbola, its boundaries determined from x_1, x_2, y_1 and y_2, the diameters are drawn from $y = \alpha x + l$ and $x = \alpha' y + l'$, and its intersections with the axes found by putting x and y separately equal nothing.

Case 2. x_1 and x_2, real and equal. The locus consists of two straight lines which intersect each other.

Case 3. x_1 and x_2 impossible. The locus is an hyperbola, draw the diameters, and find the intersection, if any, of the curve with either diameter and with the axes.

Ex. 1. $y^2 - 3xy + x^2 + 1 = 0$. Case 1. Fig. 1. The origin being at the intersection of the dotted lines.

The equations to the diameters are $y = \frac{3x}{2}$ and $y = \frac{2x}{3}$, $AB' = \frac{2}{\sqrt{5}}$.

$AB = -\frac{2}{\sqrt{5}}$, $AC' = \frac{2}{\sqrt{5}}$, $AC = -\frac{2}{\sqrt{5}}$.

Ex. 2. $y^2 - 2xy - x^2 + 2 = 0$. Case 1. The two diameters pass through the origin and make an angle of 45° with the axes, the second QQ′ never meets the curve, $AB' = 1$ and $AB = -1$; the curve intersects the axis of x at distances $\pm \sqrt{2}$.

Ex. 3. $4y^2 - 4xy - 3x^2 + 8y + 4x + 16 = 0.$ Case 1.

Ex. 4. $y^2 - 4xy - 5x^2 - 2y + 40x - 26 = 0.$ Case 1.

Ex. 5. $y^2 - 6xy + 8x^2 + 2x - 1 = 0.$ Case 2. The equations to the two straight lines are $y - 4x + 1 = 0$, and $y - 2x - 1 = 0$.

Ex. 6. $y^2 + 3xy + 2x^2 + 2y + 3x + 1 = 0.$ Case 2.

Ex. 7. $y^2 - 4xy - x^2 + 10x - 10 = 0.$ Case 3. Fig. 2.

Ex. 8. $y^2 + 3xy + x^2 + y + x = 0.$ Case 3. Fig. 3.

Here neither diameter meets the curve; but the curve passes through the origin and cuts the axis of x at a distance -1, and that of y also at a distance -1.

Ex. 9. $y^2 - x^2 - 2y + 5x - 3 = 0.$ Case 3.

The diameters are parallel to the axes, but the curve never meets that diameter whose equation is $x = \frac{5}{2}$.

Ex. 10. $y^2 - x^2 - y = 0.$ Case 3.

78. *Third Class.* $b^2 - 4ac = 0.$

In this case the general equation becomes

$$y = -\frac{bx+d}{2a} \pm \frac{1}{2a} \sqrt{\{2(bd - 2ae)x + d^2 - 4af\}} \quad (1)$$

$$\text{Let } -\frac{b}{2a} = \alpha, \ -\frac{d}{2a} = l, \ \frac{bd - 2ae}{2a^2} = \nu$$

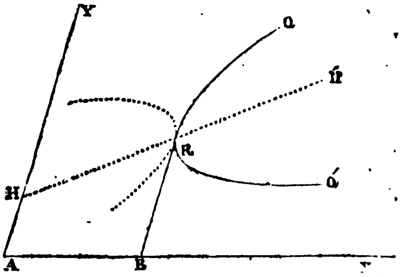
And let x_1 be the root of the equation

$$2(bd - 2ae)x + d^2 - 4af = 0.$$

Substituting equation (1) becomes

$$y = \alpha x + l \pm \sqrt{\{\nu(x - x_1)\}}$$

The locus of $y = \alpha x + l$ is a diameter H H′ as before.



Let ν be positive, then if $x = x_1$ the root vanishes; or if $AB = x_1$ and BR be drawn parallel to AY, the curve cuts the diameter in R. As x increases from x_1 to ∞, y increases to ∞, hence there are two arcs RQ, RQ′ extending to infinity. If x be less than x_1, y is impossible, or no part of the curve extends to the negative side of B.

Let ν be negative, then the results are contrary, and the curve only extends on the negative side of B; this case is represented by the dotted curve.

This curve is called the Parabola.

If $bd - 2ae = 0$, $\quad y = \alpha x + l \pm \sqrt{\left\{\frac{d^2 - 4af}{4a^2}\right\}}$,

and the locus consists of two parallel straight lines; and, according as $d^2 - 4af$ is positive, nothing, or negative, these lines are both real, or unite into one, or are both imaginary.

In discussing a particular example, reduce it to the form

$$y = \alpha x + l \pm \sqrt{\{\nu(x - x_1)\}}$$

Case 1. ν positive or negative. The locus is called a parabola; draw the diameter and find the points where the curve cuts the axes and diameter.

Case 2. $\nu = 0$. The locus consists of two parallel straight lines, or one straight line, or is imaginary.

Ex. 1. $y^2 - 2xy + x^2 - 2y - 1 = 0$. Case 1.

Ex. 2. $y^2 - 2xy + x^2 - 2y - 2x = 0$. Case 1.

Ex. 3. $y^2 + 2xy + x^2 + 2y + x + 3 = 0$. Case 1.

Ex. 4. $y^2 - 2xy + x^2 - 1 = 0$. Case 2. Two parallel straight lines.

Ex. 5. $y^2 - 2xy + x^2 + 2y - 2x + 1 = 0$. Case 2. One straight line.

Ex. 6. $y^2 + 2xy + x^2 + 1 = 0$. Case 2. Imaginary locus.

79. Before we leave this subject, it may be useful to recapitulate the results obtained from the investigation of the general equation

$$ay^2 + bxy + cx^2 + dy + ex + f = 0.$$

If $b^2 - 4ac$ be negative, the locus is an ellipse admitting of the following varieties:—

1. $c = a$, and $\frac{b}{2a}$ = cosine of the angle between the axes, locus a circle. (72.)

2. $(bd - 2ae)^2 = (b^2 - 4ac)(d^2 - 4af)$. Locus a point.

3. $(bd - 2ae)^2$ less than $(b^2 - 4ac)(d^2 - 4af)$. Locus imaginary.

If $b^2 - 4ac$ be positive, the locus is an hyperbola admitting of one variety.

1. $(bd - 2ae)^2 = (b^2 - 4ac)(d^2 - 4af)$. Locus two straight lines.

Lastly, if $b^2 - 4ac = 0$, the locus is a parabola admitting of the following varieties,—

1. $bd - 2ae = 0$. Locus two parallel straight lines.

2. $bd - 2ae = 0$, and $d^2 - 4af = 0$. Locus one straight line.

3. $bd - 2ae = 0$, and d^2 less than $4af$. Locus imaginary.

Apparently another relation between the coefficients would be obtained in each variety, by taking the equation of x in terms of y; but on examination, it will be found that in each case the last relation is involved in the former.

CHAPTER VII.

REDUCTION OF THE GENERAL EQUATION OF THE SECOND ORDER.

80. In order to investigate the properties of lines of the second order more conveniently, we proceed to reduce the general equation to a more simple form, which will be effected by the transformation of co-ordinates. Taking the formulas in (54.)

$$y = y' + n, \text{ and } x = x' + m$$

and substituting in the general equation, we have

$a(y' + n)^2 + b(x' + m)(y' + n) + c(x' + m)^2 + d(y' + n) + e(x' + m) + f = 0$;

or arranging

$a y'^2 + b x' y' + c x'^2 + (2an + bm + d) y' + (2cm + bn + e) x' + an^2 + bmn + cm^2 + dn + emf = 0.$

As we have introduced two indeterminate quantities, m and n, we are at liberty to make two hypotheses respecting the new co-efficients in the last equation; let, therefore, the co-efficients of x' and y' each $= 0$.

$$\therefore 2an + bm + d = 0, \text{ and } 2cm + bn + e = 0;$$

whence we find by elimination, $m = \dfrac{2ae - bd}{b^2 - 4ac}$, and $n = \dfrac{2cd - be}{b^2 - 4ac}$.

The value of the constant term, or f', may be obtained from the equation,

$$f' = an^2 + bmn + cm^2 + dn + em + f = 0;$$

or, since $2an + bm + d = 0$, and $2cm + bn + e = 0$,

Multiply the first of these two equations by n, and the second by m; and, adding the results, we have

$$2an^2 + 2bmn + 2cm^2 + dn + em = 0;$$

$$\therefore an^2 + bmn + cm^2 = -\frac{dn + em}{2};$$

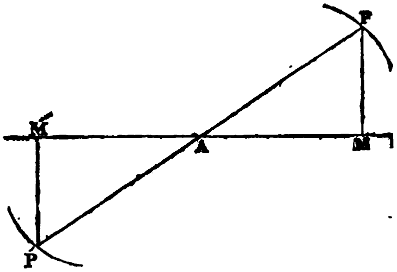
hence $f' = -\dfrac{dn + em}{2} + dn + em + f = \dfrac{dn + em}{2} + f$, which, by the substitution of the values of m and n, becomes

$$f' = \frac{ae^2 + cd^2 - bde}{b^2 - 4ac} + f.$$

The reduced equation is now of the form

$$a y'^2 + b x' y' + c x'^2 + f' = 0.$$

81. The point A, which is the new origin of co-ordinates, is called the centre of the curve, because every chord passing through it is bisected in that point. For the last equation remains the same when $-x$ and $-y$ are substituted for $+x$ and $+y$: hence, for every point P in the curve, whose co-ordinates are x and y, there is another point P′, whose co-ordinates are $-x$ and $-y$, or A M′ and M′ P′; hence, by comparing the right angled triangles, A M P, A M′ P′, we see that the vertical angles at A are equal, and therefore, the line P A P′ is a straight line bisected in A.



Whenever, therefore, the equation remains the same on the substitution of $-x$ and $-y$ for $+x$ and $+y$ respectively, it belongs to a locus referred to its centre.

If the equation be of an even order, this condition will be satisfied if the sum of the exponents of the variables in every term be even; thus, in the general equation of the second order, $a y^2 + b x y + c x^2 + d y + e x + f = 0$, the sum of the exponents in each of the three first terms is 2, and in the two next terms is 1; changing the signs of x and y, the equation does not remain the same; or for one point P, there is not another point P′ opposite and similarly situated with respect to the origin; hence that origin is not the centre of the curve. But the equation $a y^2 + b x y + c x^2 + f' = 0$, refers just as much to the point P′ as to P, and thus the origin is here the centre of the curve.

If the equation be of an odd order, the sum of the exponents in each term must be odd, and the constant term also must vanish; for if both these conditions are not fulfilled, the equation would be totally altered by putting $-x$ and $-y$ for $+x$ and $+y$ respectively. Therefore a locus may be referred to a centre if it be expressed by an equation which, by transformation, can be brought under either of the two following conditions:—

(1) Where the sum of the indices of every term is even, whether there be a constant or not, as $a y^2 + b x y + c x^2 + f = 0$.

(2) Where the sum of the indices in every term is odd, and there is no constant term, as $a y^3 + b x y^2 + c x^2 y + d x^3 + e y + f x = 0$.

Now it has been stated (59) that no equation can be so transformed that the new equation shall be of a lower or higher degree than the original one. Hence, if the original equation be of an even degree, the transformed equation will be so too, and the locus can be transferred to a centre only where the equation can be brought under the first condition; but if the original equation be of an odd degree, the transformed equation also will be of an odd degree, and the locus can only be transferred to a centre when the equation can be brought under the second condition. Hence we have a test, whether a locus with a given equation can be referred to a centre or not. If the axes can be transferred so that (1) The original equation being of an even degree, the co-efficients of all the terms, the sum of whose exponents is odd, vanish. (2) The original equation being of an odd degree, the co-efficients of all the terms, the sum of whose exponents is even, and also the constant term, vanish, then the locus may be referred to a centre, and not otherwise.

Now in the transformation which we effect by making $y = y' + n$, and $x = x' + m$, we can destroy only two terms; we cannot therefore bring, by any substitution, an equation of higher dimensions than the second under the necessary conditions, unless from some accidental relation of the original co-efficients of that equation. But in the case of equations of the second degree, we can always bring them under the first condition, unless the values of the indeterminate quantities, m and n, are found to be impossible or infinite.

In curves of the second order, we see that the values of m and n are real and finite, unless $b^2 - 4ac = 0$; consequently the ellipse and hyperbola have a centre and the parabola has not; hence arises the division of these curves into two classes, central and non-central.

In the case where $b^2 - 4ac = 0$, and at the same time $2ae - bd$ or $2cd - be$ vanish, the equation becomes that to a straight line, as appears on inspecting the equations (1) and (2) in (75).

If by the transformation the term f' should vanish, the equation becomes of the form $ay^2 + bxy + cx^2 = 0$; whence

$y = \{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}\}\dfrac{x}{2a}$; and the curve is reduced to two straight lines which pass through the centre; or if $b^2 - 4ac$ is negative, the locus is the centre itself (25).

82. The central class may have their general equation still further reduced by causing the term containing the product of the variables to vanish, which is done by another transformation of co-ordinates. Taking the formulas in (58) let

$$\text{Let } y' = x'' \sin.\theta + y'' \cos.\theta,$$

$$x' = x'' \cos.\theta - y'' \sin.\theta,$$

substituting in the equation $ay'^2 + bx'y' + cx'^2 + f' = 0$, we have

$$a(x''\sin.\theta + y''\cos\theta)^2 + b(x''\sin.\theta + y''\cos.\theta)(x''\cos.\theta - y''\sin.\theta) + c(x''\cos.\theta - y''\sin.\theta)^2 + f' = 0,$$

$$\therefore y''^2\{a(\cos.\theta)^2 - b\sin.\theta\cos.\theta + c(\sin.\theta)^2\} + x''^2\{a(\sin.\theta)^2 + b\sin.\theta\cos.\theta + c(\cos.\theta)^2\}$$

$$+ x''y''\{2a\sin.\theta\cos.\theta + b(\cos.\theta)^2 - b(\sin.\theta)^2 - 2c\sin.\theta\cos.\theta\} + f' = 0.$$

Let the co-efficient of $x''y'' = 0$,

$$\therefore 2a\sin.\theta\cos.\theta + b(\cos.\theta)^2 - b(\sin.\theta)^2 - 2c\sin.\theta\cos.\theta = 0,$$

$$\text{or } (a - c)\,2\sin.\theta\cos.\theta + b\{(\cos.\theta)^2 - (\sin.\theta)^2\} = 0,$$

$$\therefore (a - c)\sin.2\theta + b\cos.2\theta = 0;$$

and dividing by cos. 2θ, we have

$$\tan.2\theta = \frac{-b}{a-c}.$$

Here θ is the angle which the new axis of x makes with the original one (58); hence, if the original rectangular axes be transferred through an angle θ, such that $\tan.2\theta = \dfrac{-b}{a-c}$, the transformed equation will have no term containing the product $x'' y''$, that is, the equation, when referred to its new rectangular axes, will be reduced to the simple form

$$a' y''^2 + c' x''^2 + f' = 0.$$

83. As a tangent is capable of expressing all values from 0 to ∞, positive or negative, it follows that the angle θ has always a real value, whatever be the values of a, b, and c, and thus it is always possible to destroy the term containing $x y$.

The values of sin. 2θ and cos. 2θ are thus obtained from that of tan. 2θ;

$$\cos. 2\theta = \frac{1}{\pm\sqrt{1 + (\tan. 2\theta)^2}} = \frac{1}{\pm\sqrt{1 + \left(\frac{b}{a-c}\right)^2}} = \frac{a-c}{\pm\sqrt{(a-c)^2 + b^2}},$$

$$\text{And } \sin. 2\theta = \cos. 2\theta . \tan. 2\theta = \frac{-b}{\pm\sqrt{(a-c)^2 + b^2}}.$$

Since θ must be less than 90°, and therefore sin. 2θ positive, the sign of the radical quantity must be taken positive or negative, according as b is itself negative or positive.

84. To express the co-efficients a' and c' of the transformed equation in terms of the co-efficients in the original equation.

Taking the expressions for the co-efficients in article (82) we have

$$a' = a (\cos. \theta)^2 - b \sin. \theta \cos. \theta + c (\sin. \theta)^2$$

$$c' = a (\sin. \theta)^2 + b \sin. \theta \cos. \theta + c (\cos. \theta)^2,$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore a' - c' &= a\{(\cos.\theta)^2 - (\sin.\theta)^2\} - 2b \sin.\theta\cos.\theta + c\{(\sin.\theta)^2 - (\cos.\theta)^2\} \\ &= a \cos. 2\theta - b \sin. 2\theta - c \cos. 2\theta \\ &= (a-c) \cos. 2\theta - b \sin. 2\theta;\end{aligned}$$

but $\cos. 2\theta = \dfrac{a-c}{\pm\sqrt{(a-c)^2 + b^2}}$, and $\sin. 2\theta = \dfrac{-b}{\pm\sqrt{(a-c)^2 + b^2}}$;

hence substituting, we have

$$\begin{aligned}a' - c' &= \frac{(a-c)^2}{\pm\sqrt{(a-c)^2 + b^2}} + \frac{b^2}{\pm\sqrt{(a-c)^2 + b^2}} \\ &= \frac{(a-c)^2 + b^2}{\pm\sqrt{(a-c)^2 + b^2}},\end{aligned}$$

$$\text{or } a' - c' = \pm\sqrt{(a-c)^2 + b^2}$$

$$\text{Also } a' + c' = a + c,$$

$$\therefore a' = \tfrac{1}{2}\{a + c \pm \sqrt{(a-c)^2 + b^2}.\}$$

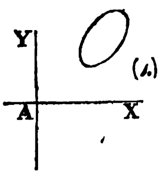
$$c' = \tfrac{1}{2}\{a + c \mp \sqrt{(a-c)^2 + b^2}.\}$$

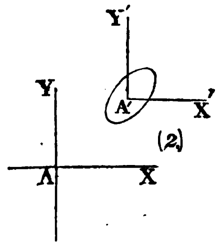
Hence the final equation is

$$\tfrac{1}{2}\{a + c \pm \sqrt{(a-c)^2 + b^2}\} y'^2 + \tfrac{1}{2}\{a + c \mp \sqrt{(a-c)^2 + b^2}\} x'^2 + \frac{ae^2 + cd^2 - bde}{b^2 - 4ao} + f = 0.$$

The upper or lower sign to be taken all through this article, according as the sign of b in the original equation is negative or positive.

85. Hitherto in this chapter we have been making a number of alterations in the *form* of the original equation: the following figures will show the corresponding alterations which have been made in the *position* of the curve. The ellipse is used in the figure, in preference to the hyperbola solely on account of its easier description.





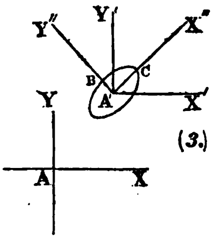


Fig. 1. We have here the original position of the curve referred to rectangular axes A X and A Y, and the corresponding equation is

$$a y^2 + b x y + c x^2 + d y + e x + f = 0.$$

Fig. 2. The origin is here transferred from A to the centre of the curve A′, the co-ordinates of which are $m = \frac{2 a e - b d}{b^2 - 4 a c}$, and $n = \frac{2 c d - b e}{b^2 - 4 a c}$.

The new axes A′ X′ and A′ Y′ are parallel to the former axes, and the equation to the curve is

$$a y'^2 + b x' y' + c x'^2 + f' = 0.$$

Fig. 3. The origin remains at A′, but the curve is referred to the new rectangular axes A′ X″ and A′ Y″, instead of the former ones A′ X′ and A′ Y′. The axis A′ X′ has been transferred through an angle X′ A′ X″ into the position A′ X″, the angle X′ A′ X″, or θ, being determined by the equation $\tan. 2\theta = \frac{-b}{a - c}$, and the equation to the curve is now

$$a' y''^2 + c' x''^2 + f' = 0.$$

86. In the ellipse and hyperbola the word "axis" is used in a limited sense to signify that portion of the central rectangular axis which is bounded by the curve.

To find the lengths of the axes, put x'' and y'' successively $= 0$, we then obtain the points where the curve cuts the axes, or, in other words, we have the lengths of the semi-axes.

In the equation

$$a' y''^2 + c' x''^2 + f' = 0,$$

$$\text{Let } y'' = 0, \therefore c' x''^2 + f' = 0, \text{ and } x'' = \sqrt{\frac{-f'}{c'}}.$$

$$\text{Let } x'' = 0, \therefore a' y''^2 + f' = 0, \text{ and } y'' = \sqrt{\frac{-f'}{a'}}.$$

In fig. 3, the semi-axes are A′ C and A′ B, so that A′ C $= \sqrt{\frac{-f'}{c'}}$, and A′ B $= \sqrt{\frac{-f'}{a'}}$; putting for a', c', and f', their values in terms of the original co-efficients (80, 84) we have the squares upon the semi-axes both comprehended in the formula,

$$-\frac{2}{a+c\pm\sqrt{(a-c)^2+b^2}}\left(\frac{a e^2+c d^2-b d e}{b^2-4 a c}+f\right).$$

Let the equation $a' y''^2 + c' x''^2 + f' = 0$, be written in the form $\left(-\frac{a'}{f'}\right) y''^2 + \left(-\frac{c'}{f'}\right) x''^2 = 1.$

Then, if the curve is an ellipse, we must have $b^2 - 4ac$ negative, or, since $b = 0$ in the present case, we must have $-4\left(-\frac{a'}{f'}\right)\left(-\frac{c'}{f'}\right)$ negative, and therefore $-\frac{a'}{f'}$ and $-\frac{c'}{f'}$ both positive; thus both axes meet the curve, (the case where both $-\frac{a'}{f'}$ and $-\frac{c'}{f'}$ are negative, would give an imaginary locus). If the curve is an hyperbola, $b^2 - 4ac$ is positive, and therefore $-4\left(-\frac{a'}{f'}\right)\left(-\frac{c'}{f'}\right)$ must be positive, or one of the values, $\left(-\frac{a'}{f'}\right)$ positive, and the other $\left(-\frac{c'}{f'}\right)$ negative; hence, one of the axes in the hyperbola has an impossible value, and therefore does not meet the curve.

The relative lengths of the axes will depend entirely on the magnitude of $\frac{a'}{f'}$ and $\frac{c'}{f'}$.

87. Hitherto the original co-ordinates have been rectangular, but if they were oblique, considerable alterations must be made in some of the formulas.

Articles 80 and 81 are applicable in all cases, but 82, 83, and 84, must be entirely changed; the method pursued will be nearly the same as in the more simple case; but on account of the great length of some of the operations, we cannot do more than indicate a few steps, and give the results*.

To destroy the co-efficient of the term containing the product of the variables, take the formulas in (55)

$$y' = \frac{x'' \sin.\theta + y'' \sin.\theta'}{\sin.\omega}$$

$$x' = \frac{x'' \sin.(\omega-\theta) + y'' \sin.(\omega-\theta')}{\sin.\omega}.$$

Substituting in the equation $a y'^2 + b x' y' + c x'^2 + f' = 0$, we have

$$y''^2\left\{a(\sin.\theta')^2 + b \sin.\theta' \sin.\overline{\omega-\theta'} + c(\sin.\overline{\omega-\theta'})^2\right\}\frac{1}{(\sin.\omega)^2}$$

$$+\, x''^2\left\{a(\sin.\theta)^2 + b \sin.\theta \sin.\overline{\omega-\theta} + c(\sin.\overline{\omega-\theta})^2\right\}\frac{1}{(\sin.\omega)^2}$$

---

* This article, and the following ones marked with an asterisk, had better be omitted at the first reading of the subject.

$$+ x'' y'' \left\{ 2\,a \sin.\theta.\sin.\theta' + b\sin.\theta' \sin.\overline{\omega-\theta} + b\sin.\theta\sin.\overline{\omega-\theta'} + 2\,c\sin.\overline{\omega-\theta}.\sin.\overline{\omega-\theta'} \right\} \frac{1}{(\sin.\omega)^2} + f' = 0.$$

Let the co-efficient of $x'' y'' = 0$; expanding $\sin.\overline{\omega-\theta}$, $\sin.\overline{\omega-\theta'}$ and dividing by $\cos.\theta.\cos\theta'$ we shall obtain the equation

$$\{a - b\cos.\omega + c(\cos.\omega)^2\}\,2\tan.\theta.\tan.\theta' + \{b - 2\,c\cos.\omega\}\sin.\omega.\{\tan.\theta + \tan.\theta'\} + 2\,c(\sin.\omega)^2 = 0.$$

Whence for any given value of θ a value of θ' and consequently of $(\theta' - \theta)$ may be found, so that there are an infinite number of pairs of axes to which if the curve be referred, its equation may assume the form

$$a' y^2 + c' x^2 + f' = 0.$$

Let us now examine these pairs of axes, to find what systems can be rectangular:

For this purpose we must have $\theta' - \theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$ and therefore $\tan.\theta' = -\frac{1}{\tan.\theta}$.

By substituting this value of $\tan.\theta'$ in the equation containing $\tan.\theta$ and $\tan.\theta'$, we have $-2\{a - b\cos.\omega + c(\cos.\omega)^2\} + \{2\,c\cos.\omega - b\}\sin.\omega.\frac{2}{\tan.2\,\theta} + 2\,c(\sin.\omega)^2 = 0.$

$$\therefore \tan.2\,\theta = \frac{c\sin.2\,\omega - b\sin.\omega}{a - b\cos.\omega + c\cos.2\,\omega}.$$

There are two angles which have got the same tan. $2\,\theta$ separated from each other by 180°, therefore there are two angles θ, which would satisfy the above equation; however, as they are separated by an angle of 90°, the second value only applies to the new axis of y''.

Hence there is only one *system* of rectangular axes, and their position is fully determined by the last formula.

*88. To find the co-efficients a' and c' in terms of the co-efficients of the original equation, the new axes being supposed rectangular. Taking the co-efficients in the general transformed equation given above, putting $\theta' = \frac{\pi}{2} + \theta$, and multiplying by $(\sin.\omega)^2$, we have,

$$a'(\sin.\omega)^2 = a(\cos.\theta)^2 - b\cos.\theta\cos.\overline{\omega-\theta} + c(\cos.\overline{\omega-\theta})^2$$
$$c'(\sin.\omega)^2 = a(\sin.\theta)^2 + b\sin.\theta\sin.\overline{\omega-\theta} + c(\sin.\overline{\omega-\theta})^2$$

$$\therefore (a' - c')(\sin.\omega)^2 = a\{(\cos.\theta)^2 - (\sin.\theta)^2\} - b\{\cos.\theta\cos.\overline{\omega-\theta} + \sin.\theta\sin.\overline{\omega-\theta'}\} + c\{(\cos.\overline{\omega-\theta})^2 - (\sin.\overline{\omega-\theta})^2\}$$

$$= a\cos.2\theta - b\cos.(\omega - 2\,\theta) + c\cos.(2\,\omega - 2\,\theta)$$

$$= \{a - b\cos.\omega + c\cos.2\,\omega\}\cos.2\,\theta + (c\sin.2\,\omega - b\sin.\omega)\sin.2\,\theta.$$

Also, following the method in (83) we find from tan. $2\,\theta$ that

$$\cos.2\,\theta = \frac{a - b\cos.\omega + c\cos.2\,\omega}{\pm\mathrm{M}}, \text{ and } \sin.2\,\theta = \frac{c\sin.2\,\omega - b\sin.\omega}{\pm\mathrm{M}}$$

Where $\mathrm{M} = \pm \sqrt{\{a^2 + b^2 + c^2 - 2b(a+c)\cos.\omega + 2ac\cos.2\omega\}}$

or $= \pm \sqrt{\{(a+c-b\cos.\omega)^2 + (b^2-4ac)(\sin.\omega)^2\}}$.

Hence $(a'-c')(\sin.\omega)^2 = \pm \mathrm{M}$

and $(a'+c')(\sin.\omega)^2 = a - b\cos.\omega + c$

$$\therefore a' = \{a - b\cos.\omega + c \pm \mathrm{M}\}\frac{1}{2(\sin.\omega)^2}$$

$$\text{and } c' = \{a - b\cos.\omega + c \mp \mathrm{M}\}\frac{1}{2(\sin.\omega)^2}$$

Hence the final equation is

$$\{a - b\cos.\omega + c \pm \mathrm{M}\}\frac{y''^2}{2(\sin.\omega)^2} + \{a - b\cos.\omega + c \mp \mathrm{M}\}\frac{x''^2}{2(\sin.\omega)^2} + \frac{ae^2 + cd^2 - bde}{b^2 - 4ac} + f = 0 \;.$$

And the ± sign is to be used according as $c\sin.2\omega - b\sin.\omega$ is positive or negative, since 2θ is assumed to be positive.

These analytical transformations may be geometrically represented as in (85). In figures (1), (2), and (3) we must suppose the axes A X, A Y, and also the axes A′X′ and A′ Y′, to contain the angle ω.

The article (86) will equally apply when the original axes are oblique; the value of the square on the semi-axis is,

$$\frac{-2(\sin.\omega)^2}{a - b\cos.\omega + c \pm \mathrm{M}} \cdot \left(\frac{ae^2 + cd^2 - bde}{b^2 - 4ac} + f\right)$$

89. We shall conclude the discussion of the central class by the application of the results already obtained to a few examples.

The original axes rectangular.

$$ay^2 + bxy + cx^2 + dy + ex + f = 0 \quad (1)$$

$$\left.\begin{aligned} y &= y' + n \\ x &= x' + m \end{aligned}\right\} \text{formulas to be used.}$$

$$m = \frac{2ae - bd}{b^2 - 4ac}\ (2),\quad n = \frac{2cd - be}{b^2 - 4ac}\ (3)$$

$$f' = \frac{dn + em}{2} + f = \frac{ae^2 + cd^2 - bde}{b^2 - 4ac} + f \quad (4)$$

$$ay'^2 + bx'y' + cx' + f' = 0 \quad (5)$$

$$\left.\begin{aligned} y' &= x''\sin.\theta + y''\cos.\theta \\ x &= x''\cos.\theta - y''\sin.\theta \end{aligned}\right\} \text{formulas to be used.}$$

$$\tan.2\theta = \frac{-b}{a-c} \quad (6)$$

$$a' = \frac{1}{2}\left\{a + c \pm \mathrm{M}\right\} \quad (7) \qquad c' = \frac{1}{2}\left\{a + c \mp \mathrm{M}\right\} \quad (8).$$

$$\mathrm{M} = \pm \sqrt{(a-c)^2 + b^2}, \ \pm \text{ according as } b \text{ is } \mp$$

$$\left(-\frac{a'}{f'}\right)y''^2 + \left(-\frac{c'}{f'}\right)x''^2 = 1 \quad (9);$$

(2) and (3) determine the situation of the centre, and together with (4) reduce the equation to the form (5); (6) determines the position of the rectangular axes passing through the centre, (7) and (8) enable us to reduce the equation to its most simple form (9): and the co-efficients of y''^2 and x''^2 inverted are respectively the squares upon the semi-axes measured along the axes of y'' and x''.

Ex. 1. $y^2 - xy + x^2 + y + x - 1 = 0$; locus an ellipse.

$m = -1;\ n = -1;\ f' = -2;$

$$y'^2 - x'y' + x'^2 - 2 = 0$$

tan. $2\theta = \frac{1}{0}$ $\therefore 2\theta = 90^\circ$ and $\theta = 45^\circ$; b is negative, and $\therefore \mathrm{M} = +1$

$$a' = \frac{3}{2} \text{ and } c' = \frac{1}{2}$$

$$\therefore \frac{3}{2}y''^2 + \frac{1}{2}x''^2 - 2 = 0$$

$$\text{or } \frac{3}{4}y''^2 + \frac{1}{4}x''^2 = 1$$

The squares on the semi-axes are $\frac{4}{3}$ and 4; hence the semi-axes themselves are $\frac{2}{\sqrt{3}}$ and 2, and therefore the lengths of the axes are 4 and $\frac{4}{\sqrt{3}}$.

Ex. 2. $3y^2 - 4xy + 3x^2 + y - x - \frac{9}{10} = 0$; locus an ellipse.

The reduced equation is $5y''^2 + x''^2 = 1$. The axes are 2 and $\frac{2}{\sqrt{5}}$

Ex. 3. $2y^2 + xy + x^2 - 2y - 4x + 3 = 0$; locus an ellipse.

The reduced equation is $\frac{3 - \sqrt{2}}{2}y''^2 + \frac{3 + \sqrt{2}}{2}x''^2 = 1.$

Ex. 4. $5y^2 + 6xy + 5x^2 - 22y - 26x + 29 = 0$; locus an ellipse.

$$m = 2,\ n = 1,\ f' = \frac{dn + em}{2} + f = -8$$

$$\therefore 5y'^2 + 6x'y' + 5x'^2 - 8 = 0$$

tan. $2\theta = \infty$ $\therefore \theta = 45^\circ$; hence the formulas of transformation are

$$y' = \frac{x'' + y''}{\sqrt{2}} \text{ and } x' = \frac{x'' - y''}{\sqrt{2}};$$

$$\therefore \frac{5}{2}(x''+y'')^2 + 6\,\frac{x''^2-y''^2}{2} + \frac{5}{2}(x''-y'')^2 - 8 = 0$$

$$\text{or } 4\,y''^2 + x''^2 = 4$$

Ex. 5. $5\,y^2 + 2\,x\,y + 5\,x^2 - 12\,y - 12\,x = 0$; locus an ellipse.

$$2\,y''^2 + 3\,x''^2 = 6$$

Ex. 6. $2\,y^2+x^2+4\,y-2\,x-6=0$; locus an ellipse.

Let $y = y'+n$ and $x = x'+m$, hence the transformed equation is

$$2\,(y'+n)^2 + (x'+m)^2 + 4\,(y'+n) - 2\,(x'+m) - 6 = 0$$

or $2\,y'^2 + x'^2 + 4\,(n+1)\,y' + 2\,(m-1)\,x' + 2\,n^2 + m^2 + 4\,n - 2\,m - 6 = 0.$

Let $n+1=0$ and $m-1=0$ $\therefore$ $m=1$ and $n=-1$ and $f'=-9$; hence the transformed equation is

$$2\,y'^2 + x'^2 = 9$$

and no further transformation is requisite. The axes are 6 and $3\sqrt{2}$.

Ex. 7. $y^2-10\,x\,y+x^2+y+x+1=0$; locus an hyperbola.

$$6\,y''^2 - 4\,x''^2 + \frac{9}{8} = 0.$$

Ex. 8. $4\,y^2-8\,x\,y-4\,x^2-4\,y+28\,x-15=0$; locus an hyperbola.

$$y''^2 - x''^2 = \frac{-1}{2\sqrt{2}}$$

Here the axes are each $= \sqrt[4]{2}$, that which is measured along the new axis of x'' alone meeting the curve.

Ex. 9. $y^2 - 2\,x\,y - x^2 - 2 = 0$; locus an hyperbola.

The origin is already at the centre, and thus only one transformation is necessary.

$\tan.\, 2\,\theta = 1 \therefore 2\,\theta = 45°$; $M = \sqrt{8}$, $a' = \sqrt{2}$, $c' = -\sqrt{2}$, $y'^2 - x'^2 = \sqrt{2}$.

*90. The axes oblique.

The values of m, n, and f' remain as for rectangular axes.

$$\tan.\, 2\,\theta = \frac{c \sin.\, 2\,\omega - b \sin.\, \omega}{a - b \cos.\, \omega + c \cos.\, 2\,\omega}.$$

$$a' = \{\,a - b \cos.\, \omega + c \pm \mathrm{M}\,\}\,\frac{1}{2\,(\sin \omega)^2}.$$

$$c' = \{\,a - b \cos.\, \omega + c \mp \mathrm{M}\,\}\,\frac{1}{2\,(\sin.\, \omega)^2}.$$

$$\mathrm{M} = \pm \sqrt{\{a^2 + b^2 + c^2 - 2\,b\,(a+c) \cos.\, \omega + 2\,a\,c \cos.\, 2\,\omega\}}.$$

$$\pm \text{ as } c \sin.\, 2\,\omega - b \sin \omega \text{ is } \pm.$$

Ex. 1. $y^2 + x\,y + x^2 + y + x - \frac{1}{6} = 0$; the angle between the axes being 45°.

$m = -\frac{1}{3}$, $n = -\frac{\;}{3}$; $\tan.\, 2\,\theta = 1$ $\therefore$ $2\,\theta = 45°$; $\mathrm{M} = +(1-\sqrt{2})$.

$a' = 3 - \frac{3}{\sqrt{2}}$, $c' = 1 + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$ and $f' = -\frac{1}{2}$.

The reduced equation is

$$3(2-\sqrt{2})\,y''^2+(2+\sqrt{2})\,x''^2=1.$$

The curve is an ellipse, and the squares upon the semi-axes are

$$\frac{1}{3(2-\sqrt{2})} \text{ and } \frac{1}{2+\sqrt{2}}.$$

Ex. 2. $7y^2+16xy+16x^2+32y+64x+28=0.$ The angle $\omega=60°$.

$$m=-2,\ n=0,\ f'=\frac{dn+em}{2}+f=-36.$$

The form of the equation is now

$$7y'^2+16x'y'+16x'^2-36=0;$$

since tan. $2\theta'=0$, the reduction to rectangular axes is effected by merely transferring the axis of y' through 30°; hence, putting $\theta=0$, and $\omega=60$, the formulas (56) of transformation become

$$y'=\frac{2y''}{\sqrt{3}},\ \text{and}\ x'=x''-\frac{y''}{\sqrt{3}}.$$

Substituting these values in the last equation, it becomes

$$4y''^2+16x''^2-36=0;$$

Hence the axes of the ellipse are 3 and 6.

Ex. 3. $y^2-3xy+x^2+1=0$; the angle $\omega=60°$.

$$m=0,\ n=0,\ \text{tan. } 2\theta=\sqrt{3},\ \therefore\ \theta=30°;\ M=+4,$$

$$a'=5,\ c'=\frac{-1}{3},\ f'=1, \text{ and the reduced equation is}$$

$$5y''^2-\frac{1}{3}x''^2=-1.$$

The curve is an hyperbola, of which the axes are $2\sqrt{3}$ and $\frac{2}{\sqrt{5}}$; the first of these, which is the greatest, is measured along the new axis of x''. The second axis never meets the curve.

91. It was observed, at the end of art. 81, that the curves corresponding to the general equation of the second order were divided into two classes, one class having a centre or point such that every chord passing through it is bisected in that point, and another class having no such peculiar point. This fact was ascertained from the inspection of the values of the two indeterminate quantities m and n introduced into the equation by means of the transformation of co-ordinates, and for the purpose of destroying certain terms in the general equation. The values of m and n were found to be infinite, that is, there was no centre when the relation among the three first terms of the co-efficients of the general equation was such that $b^2-4ac=0$.

This relation $b^2-4ac=0$ being characteristic of the parabola, it follows that the general equation of the second order belonging to a parabola is not capable of the reduction performed in art. (80); that is, we cannot destroy the co-efficients of both x and y, or reduce the equation to the form $a\,y^2 + b\,x\,y + c\,x^2 + f = 0$, or, finally, to the form $a\,y^2 + c\,x^2 + f = 0$.

Although, however, we cannot thus reduce the parabolic equation, we are yet able to reduce it to a very simple form, in fact to a much more simple form than that of either of the above equations. This will be effected by a process similar to that already used for the general equation, only in a different order. We shall commence by transferring the axes through an angle θ, and thus destroy two terms in the equation, so that it will be reduced to the form $a\,y^2 + d\,y + e\,x + f = 0$; we shall then transfer the axes parallel to themselves, and by that means destroy two other terms, so that the final equation will be of the form

$$a\,y^2 + e\,x = 0.$$

92. Taking the formulas in (58), let

$$y = x' \sin.\theta + y' \cos.\theta$$
$$x = x' \cos.\theta - y' \sin.\theta$$

substituting these values in the general equation

$$a\,y^2 + b\,x\,y + c\,x^2 + d\,y + e\,x + f = 0,$$

and arranging, we obtain the equation

$$\left.\begin{array}{r} a(\cos.\theta)^2 \\ -b\sin.\theta\cos.\theta \\ +c(\sin.\theta)^2 \\ \end{array}\right| y'^2 + \left.\begin{array}{r} 2a\sin.\theta\cos.\theta \\ +b(\cos.\theta)^2 \\ -b(\sin.\theta)^2 \\ -2c\sin.\theta\cos.\theta \end{array}\right| x'y' + \left.\begin{array}{r} a(\sin.\theta)^2 \\ +b\sin.\theta\cos.\theta \\ +c(\cos.\theta)^2 \\ \end{array}\right| x'^2 + \left.\begin{array}{r} d\cos.\theta \\ -e\sin.\theta \\ \\ \end{array}\right| y' + \left.\begin{array}{r} d\sin.\theta \\ +e\cos.\theta \\ \\ \end{array}\right| x' + f = 0$$

Let the co-efficient of $x'\,y' = 0$

$$\therefore 2\,(a - c)\sin\theta\cos.\theta + b\,\{(\cos.\theta)^2 - (\sin.\theta)^2\} = 0,$$
$$\text{or } (a - c)\sin.2\,\theta + b\cos.2\,\theta = 0,$$

$$\text{and } \tan.2\,\theta = \frac{-\,b}{a - c}, \text{ as in (82.)}$$

Hence, if the axes be transfered through an angle θ such that $\tan.2\,\theta = \frac{-\,b}{a - c}$ the transformed equation will have no term containing the product of the variables; that is, it will be of the form

$$a'\,y'^2 + c'\,x'^2 + d'\,y' + e'\,x' + f = 0.$$

But, since this last equation belongs to a parabola, the relation among the co-efficients of the three first terms must be such that the general condition $b^2 - 4\,a\,c = 0$ holds good. In this case, since $b' = 0$, we must have $-\,4\,a'\,c' = 0$; hence either a' or c' must $= 0$; that is, the transformation which has enabled us to destroy the co-efficient of the term containing $x'\,y'$ will of necessity destroy the co-efficient of either x'^2 or y'^2. And this will soon be observed upon examining the values of the co-efficients of x'^2 and y'^2.

93. Let the co-efficient b in the original equation be negative, that is, let $b = -2\sqrt{a\,c}$.

From $\tan.2\,\theta$ we have $\cos.2\,\theta = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + (\tan.2\,\theta)^2}} = \frac{1}{}$

$$= \frac{a-c}{\pm\sqrt{b^2+(a-c)^2}} = \frac{a-c}{\pm(a+c)} \text{ and } \sin 2\,\theta = \frac{-b}{\pm(a+c)} = \frac{-b}{(a+c)},$$

since sin. 2 θ must be positive, and b is itself negative;

$$\text{hence } \cos.\ \theta = \sqrt{\frac{1+\cos.\ 2\,\theta}{2}} = \sqrt{\tfrac{1}{2}\left(1+\frac{a-c}{a+c}\right)} = \sqrt{\frac{a}{a+c}},$$

$$\text{and } \sin.\ \theta = \sqrt{\frac{1-\cos.\ 2\,\theta}{2}} = \sqrt{\frac{c}{a+c}}.$$

Substituting these values of sin. θ and cos. θ in the general transformed equation, we have

$$a' = \frac{a\,a}{a+c} - \frac{b\sqrt{a\,c}}{a+c} + \frac{c\,c}{a+c} = \frac{a^2+2\,a\,c+c^2}{a+c} = a+c.$$

$$c' = \frac{a\,c}{a+c} + \frac{b\sqrt{a\,c}}{a+c} + \frac{c\,a}{a+c} = \frac{a\,c-2\,a\,c+a\,c}{a+c} = 0.$$

$$d' = \frac{d\sqrt{a}-e\sqrt{c}}{\sqrt{a+c}}$$

$$e' = \frac{d\sqrt{c}+e\sqrt{a}}{\sqrt{a+c}}$$

And the transformed equation is now

$$(a+c)\,y'^2 + \frac{d\sqrt{a}-e\sqrt{c}}{\sqrt{a+c}}\,y' + \frac{d\sqrt{c}+e\sqrt{a}}{\sqrt{a+c}}\,x' + f = 0.$$

And it is manifest that if b had been positive all the way through this article, the reduced equation would have been

$$(a+c)\,x'^2 + \frac{d\sqrt{c}-e\sqrt{a}}{\sqrt{a+c}}\,y' + \frac{d\sqrt{a}+e\sqrt{c}}{\sqrt{a+c}}\,x' + f = 0.$$

94. In order to reduce the equation still lower, let us transfer the axes parallel to themselves by means of the formulas $y' = y''+n$ and $x' = x''+m$ (54.)

then the equation $a'\,y'^2 + d'\,y' + e'\,x' + f = 0$ becomes

$$a'\,(y''+n)^2 + d'\,(y''+n) + e'\,(x''+m) + f = 0,$$

$$\text{or } a'\,y''^2 + (2\,a'\,n + d')\,y'' + e'\,x'' + a'\,n^2 + d'\,n + e'\,m + f = 0.$$

And since we have two independent quantities, m and n, we can make two hypotheses respecting them; let, therefore, their values be such that the co-efficient of y' and the constant term in the equation each $= 0$; that is, let

$$2\,a'\,n + d' = 0, \text{ and } a'\,n^2 + d'\,n + e'\,m + f = 0;$$

$$\text{whence } n = \frac{-d'}{2\,a'} \text{ and } m = \frac{d'^2 - 4\,a'\,f}{4\,a'\,e'},$$

and the reduced equation is now of the form

$$a'\,y''^2 + e'\,x'' = 0;$$

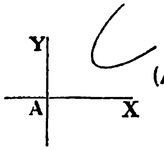
and it is manifest that if b had been positive, the equation $c' x'^2 + d' y' + e' x' + f = 0$ would have been reduced to the form

$$c' x''^2 + d' y'' = 0,$$

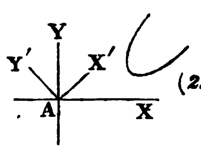
where the values of m and n would be found from the equations

$$m = -\frac{e'}{2\,c'}, \text{ and } n = \frac{e'^2 - 4\,c' f}{4\,c'\,d'}.$$

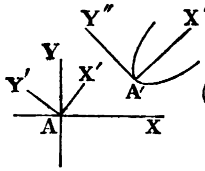
95. The following figures will exhibit the changes which have taken place in regard to the *position* of the locus corresponding to each analytical change in the *form* of the equation :—



(1.)



(2.)



(3.

In fig. 1, the curve is referred to rectangular axes A X and A Y, and the equation is

$$a\,y^2 + b\,x\,y + c\,x^2 + d\,y + e\,x + f = 0.$$

In fig. 2, the axes are transferred into the position A X', A Y', the angle X A X' or θ being determined by the equation $\tan. 2\,\theta = \frac{-b}{a - c}$, the corresponding equation is, for b negative,

$$a' y'^2 + d' y' + e' x' + f = 0.$$

If b is positive, the curve would originally have been situated at right angles to its present position, and the reduced equation would be

$$c' x'^2 + d' y' + e' x' + f = 0.$$

In fig. 3, the position of the origin is changed from A to A', the coordinates of A' being measured along A X' and A Y', and their values determined by the equations

for b negative, $n = \frac{-\,d'}{2\,a'}$ and $m = \frac{d'^2 - 4\,a' f}{4\,a'\,e'}$

for b positive, $m = \frac{-\,e'}{2\,c'}$ and $n = \frac{e'^2 - 4\,c' f}{4\,c'\,d'}$.

The reduced equation is

for b negative, $a' y''^2 + e' x'' = 0$.
for b positive, $c' x''^2 + d' y'' = 0$.

96*. If the original axes are oblique, the transformation of the general equation must be effected by means of the formulas in (55). The values of a', b', and c' will be exactly the same as in (87).

We may then let $b' = 0$, and also find $\tan. 2\,\theta$ when the axes are rectangular, whence, as in (87), we shall find that there is but one such system of axes.

---

* See Note, Art. 87.

The same value of θ which destroys the term in $x' y'$ will, as in (93), also destroy the term in x'^2 or y'^2; hence the reduced equation will be

for $c \sin. 2\,\omega - b \sin. \omega$ positive, $a' y'^2 + d' y' + e' x' + f = 0$.
for $c \sin. 2\,\omega - b \sin. \omega$ negative, $c' x'^2 + d' y' + e' x' + f = 0$.

97. To find the values of a', c', d', and e'.

The values of a' and c' are best deduced from those in art. (88), Since $b^2 - 4\,a\,c = 0$, we have for $c \sin. 2\,\omega - b \sin. \omega$ positive

$$\mathrm{M} = a - b \cos. \omega + c$$

$$a' = \{a - b \cos. \omega + c\} \frac{1}{(\sin. \omega)^2}$$

$$c' = 0$$

$$\cos. 2\,\theta = \frac{a - b \cos. \omega + c \cos. 2\,\omega}{a - b \cos. \omega + c};$$

$$\sin. \theta = \frac{\sin. \omega \sqrt{c}}{\sqrt{a - b \cos. \omega + c}}, \text{ and } \cos. \theta = \sqrt{\frac{a - b \cos. \omega + c (\cos. \omega)^2}{a - b \cos. \omega + c}}:$$

Also $d' = \dfrac{d \cos. \theta - e \cos. (\omega - \theta)}{\sin \omega}$ from the transformed equation

$$= \frac{(d - e \cos. \omega) \sqrt{\{a - b \cos. \omega + c (\cos. \omega)^2\}} - e \sqrt{c}\,(\sin. \omega)^2}{\sin. \omega \sqrt{\{a - b \cos. \omega + c\}}}$$

and $e' = \dfrac{d \sin. \theta + e \sin. (\omega - \theta)}{\sin. \omega}$

$$= \frac{(d - e \cos. \omega) \sqrt{c} + e \sqrt{\{a - b \cos. \omega + c (\cos. \omega)^2\}}}{\sqrt{\{a - b \cos. \omega + c\}}}$$

and the reduced equation is now of the form

$$a' y'^2 + d' y' + e' x' + f = 0;$$

For $c \sin. 2\,\omega - b \sin. \omega$ negative, the corresponding values of a', c', M, d', and e' are

$$\mathrm{M} = -(a - b \cos. \omega + c)$$

$$a' = 0$$

$$c' = (a - b \cos. \omega + c) \frac{1}{(\sin. \omega)^2}$$

sin. θ and cos. θ merely change values,

hence $d' = \dfrac{(d - e \cos. \omega) \sqrt{c} - e \sqrt{\{a - b \cos. \omega + c (\cos. \omega)^2\}}}{\sqrt{\{a - b \cos. \omega + c\}}}$

and $e' = \dfrac{(d - e \cos. \omega) \sqrt{\{a - b \cos. \omega + c (\cos. \omega)^2\}} + e \sqrt{c}\,(\sin. \omega)^2}{\sin. \omega \sqrt{\{a - b \cos. \omega + c\}}}$

and the reduced equation is now of the form

$$c' x'^2 + d' y' + e' x' + f = 0.$$

The transformation required to reduce the equations still lower is performed exactly as in (94); and, by making the angle between the original axes oblique, the figures in (95) will exhibit the changes in the *position* of the curve.

98. We shall conclude the discussion of this class of curves by the application of the results already obtained to a few examples.

Ex. 1. $y^2 - 6xy + 9x^2 + 10y + 1 = 0$; locus a parabola.

$$\tan. 2\theta = \frac{-b}{a-c} = -\frac{3}{4};$$ hence θ may be found by the tables.

b is negative;

$\therefore$ by (93) $a' = a + c = 10, c' = 0, d' = \sqrt{10}$ and $e' = 3\sqrt{10}$,

$$\therefore\ 10\,y'^2 + \sqrt{10}\,y' + 3\sqrt{10}\,x' + 1 = 0.$$

Also by (94) $n = \dfrac{-d'}{2a'} = \dfrac{-1}{2\sqrt{10}}$, and $m = \dfrac{-1}{4\sqrt{10}}$;

and the final equation is

$$y''^2 + \frac{3}{\sqrt{10}}\,x = 0.$$

Ex. 2. $y^2 + 2xy + x^2 + y - 3x + 1 = 0$; locus a parabola.

$$x''^2 + \sqrt{2}\,y = 0.$$

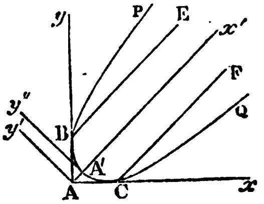
Ex. 3. $\sqrt{y} + \sqrt{x} = \sqrt{d}$. This equation may be put under the form $y + x - d = 2\sqrt{xy}$; or

$$y^2 - 2xy + x^2 - 2dy - 2dx + d^2 = 0;$$

and the locus is a parabola because it satisfies the condition

$$b^2 - 4ac = 0.$$

By tracing the curve as in (78) we shall find its position to be that of



PBCQ in the figure; and $y = x \pm d$ are the equations to the diameters BE and CF.

Ax', Ay', are the new axes, θ or xAx', being 45°.

$$a' = 2,\ d' = 0,\ e' = -2d\sqrt{2},\ n = o,\ m = \frac{d}{2\sqrt{2}};$$

the last two quantities are to be measured along the new axes, therefore take $AA' = \dfrac{d}{2\sqrt{2}}$, and A′ is the new origin.

The final equation is

$$y^2 = dx\sqrt{2}.$$

Ex. 4. $y = d + ex + fx^2$. The locus is a parabola, since $b^2 - 4ac$ or $0 - 4.0.f = 0$.

Let $y = y' + n$, and $x = x' + m$;

$$\therefore y' + n = d + e\,(x' + m) + f\,(x' + m)^2;$$

$$\therefore f\,x'^2 + (2\,m\,f + e)\,x' - y' + f\,m^2 + e\,m + d - n = 0.$$

Let $2\,m\,f + e = 0$, and $f\,m^2 + e\,m + d - n = 0$

$$\therefore m = \frac{-e}{2\,f} \text{ and } n = \frac{4\,d\,f - e^2}{4\,f},$$

and the equation is reduced at once to the form

$$f\,x'^2 - y' = 0.$$

99. The axes oblique.

$y^2 - 2\,x\,y + x^2 - 6\,x = 0$; the angle between the axes being 60°.

Here, $c \sin. 2\,\omega - b \sin. \omega$ is positive.

$$\sin. \theta = \frac{\sin. 60}{\sqrt{3}} = \frac{1}{2} \quad \therefore \theta = 30^\circ$$

$$\mathrm{M} = 3,\ a' = 4,\ c' = 0,\ d' = 6,\ e' = -2\sqrt{3},\ m = -\frac{3\sqrt{3}}{8},$$

$$n = -\frac{3}{4};$$

$$\therefore 4\,y^2 - 2\sqrt{3}\ x = 0.$$

CHAPTER VIII.

THE ELLIPSE.

100. In the discussion of the general equation of the second order, we have seen that, supposing the origin of co-ordinates in the centre, there is but one system of rectangular axes to which, if the corresponding ellipse be referred, its equation is of the simple form

$$\left(\frac{-a'}{f'}\right) y^2 + \left(\frac{-c'}{f'}\right) x^2 = 1$$

$$\text{or, } \mathrm{P}\,y^2 + \mathrm{Q}\,x^2 = 1$$

where the coefficients P and Q are both positive. (86, 87.)

hence d e now proceed to deduce from this equation the various properties of pse.

W d $e' =$ (d ibit the coefficients in a better form; let C be the centre of the

the elli Y y, the rectangular axes meeting in C; $\mathrm{C\,M} = x$, $\mathrm{M\,P} = y$.

To exthe reduced e e points where the curve cuts the axes, we have

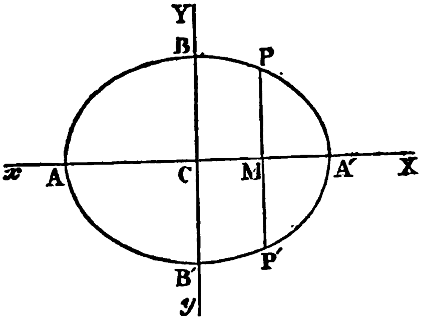
curve; X x,

Then at th ansformation

$$= 0, \quad \mathrm{Q}\,x^2 = 1, \quad \therefore x = \pm \frac{1}{\sqrt{\mathrm{Q}}}.$$

ctly as in (9

$$0, \quad \mathrm{P}\,y^2 = 1, \quad \therefore y = \pm \frac{1}{\sqrt{\mathrm{P}}}.$$



In the axis of x take $CA' = \frac{1}{\sqrt{Q}}$ and $CA = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{Q}}$,

also in the axis of y take $CB = \frac{1}{\sqrt{P}}$ and $CB' = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{P}}$,

then the curve cuts the axes at the points A, A′, B, and B′.

Also if $CA = a$ and $CB = b$, and a be greater than b, we have $Q = \frac{1}{a^2}$ and $P = \frac{1}{b^2}$, therefore the equation to the curve becomes

$$\frac{y^2}{b^2} + \frac{x^2}{a^2} = 1$$

$$\text{or} \quad a^2 y^2 + b^2 x^2 = a^2 b^2$$

$$\text{or} \quad y^2 = \frac{b^2}{a^2}(a^2 - x^2).$$

101. We have already seen (76) that the curve is limited in every direction.

The points A, A′, B, and B′ determine those limits. From the last equation we have

$$y = \pm \frac{b}{a}\sqrt{a^2 - x^2} \quad (1), \quad \text{and } x = \pm \frac{a}{b}\sqrt{b^2 - y^2} \quad (2),$$

from (1) if x is greater than $\pm a$, y is impossible, and from (2) if y is greater than $\pm b$, x is also impossible; hence straight lines drawn through the points A, A′, B and B′ parallel to the axes, completely enclose the curve.

Again from (1) for every value of x less than a we have two real and equal values of y, that is, for any abscissa CM less than CA′ we have two equal ordinates MP, MP′, the ± sign determining their opposite directions.

Also as x increases from 0 to $+a$ these values of y decrease from $\pm b$ to 0, hence we have two equal arcs BPA′, B′P′A′ exactly similar and opposite to one another.

If x be negative, and decrease from 0 to $-a$, x^2 is positive, and the same values of y must recur, hence there are two equal ar arcs B A, B′A. Therefore the whole curve is divided into two equal parts by the axis of x.

From (2) the curve appears in the same way to be divided into two equal parts by the axis of y: hence it is said to be symmetrical with respect to those axes.

Its concavity must also be turned towards the centre, otherwise it might be cut by a straight line in more points than two, which is impossible (71).

102. From the equation $y^2 = \frac{b^2}{a^2}(a^2 - x^2)$ we have

$$CP = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2} = \sqrt{x^2 + \frac{b^2}{a^2}(a^2 - x^2)} = \sqrt{b^2 + \frac{a^2 - b^2}{a^2}x^2}$$

hence C P is greatest when x is greatest, that is, when $x = a$, in which case C P becomes also equal to a, hence C A or C A′ is the greatest line that can be drawn from the centre to the curve. Again C P is least when $x = 0$, in which case C P becomes equal to b, hence C B is the least line that can be drawn from C to the curve. The axes A A′ and B B′ are thus shown to be the greatest and least lines that can be drawn through the centre. The greater A A′ is called the axis major, or greater axis, or transverse axis, and B B′ the axis minor or lesser axis.

103. The points A, B, A′ and B′ are called the vertices or summits of the curve. Any of these points may be taken for the origin, thus let A be the origin, A C the axis of x, and let the axis of y be parallel to C B, and A M $= x'$.

Then $x = CM = AM - AC = x' - a$

$$\therefore y^2 = \frac{b^2}{a^2}(a^2 - x^2) = \frac{b^2}{a^2}\{a^2 - (x' - a)^2\} = \frac{b^2}{a^2}(2ax' - x'^2)$$

or suppressing the accents, $y^2 = \frac{b^2}{a^2}(2ax - x^2) = \frac{b^2}{a^2}x(2a - x)$.

This last equation is geometrically expressed by the following proportion. The square upon M P : the rectangle A M, M A′ :: the square upon B C : the square upon A C.

Hence the square upon the ordinate varies as the rectangle contained by the segments of the axis major.

If the origin be at C, C A′ the axis of y and C B the axis of x, we have, putting x for y and y for x, the equation $y^2 = \frac{a^2}{b^2}(b^2 - x^2)$, and if the origin be at B, $y^2 = \frac{a^2}{b^2}(2bx - x^2)$.

104. If the axes major and minor were equal to one another, the equation to the ellipse would become $y^2 = a^2 - x^2$, which is that to a circle whose diameter is $2a$, hence we see as in (79) that the circle is a species of ellipse. As we advance we shall have frequent occasion to remark the analogy existing between these two curves.

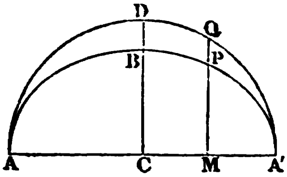
Let A D Q A′ be the circle described upon A A′ as diameter, and M Q or Y be an ordinate corresponding to the abscissa C M or x, let M P $(= y)$ be the corresponding ordinate to the ellipse, then we have

$$Y^2 = a^2 - x^2$$

$$y^2 = \frac{b^2}{a^2}(a^2 - x^2)$$

$$\therefore\ y^2 = \frac{b^2}{a^2}Y^2 \text{ and } y = \frac{b}{a}Y$$

$$\therefore\ y : Y :: b : a$$



thus the ordinate to the ellipse has to the corresponding ordinate of the circle the constant ratio of the axis minor to the axis major.

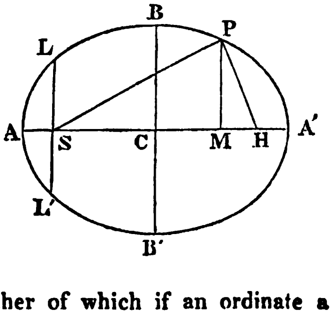
Since b is less than a the circle is wholly without the ellipse, except at A and A′ where they meet. Similarly if a circle be described on the axis minor, it is wholly within the ellipse except at B and B′. Thus the elliptic curve lies between the two circumferences.

THE FOCUS.

105. The equation $y^2 = \frac{b^2}{a^2}(2ax - x^2)$ may be put under the form $y^2 = lx - \frac{l}{2a}x^2$, in which case the quantity $l = \frac{2b^2}{a}$ is called the principal Parameter or Latus Rectum.

Since $l = \frac{2b^2}{a} = \frac{4b^2}{2a}$ the Latus Rectum is a third proportional to the axis major and minor.

106. To find from what point in the axis major a double ordinate can be drawn equal to the Latus Rectum.



Here $4y^2 = l^2$ or $\frac{4b^2}{a^2}(a^2 - x^2) = \frac{4b^4}{a^2}$

$$\therefore\ a^2 - x^2 = b^2$$

$$\text{or } x^2 = a^2 - b^2$$

$$\text{and } x = \pm\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}.$$

With centre B and radius a describe a circle cutting the axis major in the points S and H, then we have $CH = +\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}$ and $CS = -\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}$, thus S and H are the points through either of which if an ordinate a L S L′ be drawn, it is equal to the Latus Rectum; henceforward then we shall consider this line as the Latus Rectum or principal parameter of the ellipse.

The two points S and H thus determined are called the Foci, for a reason to be hereafter explained.

107. The fraction $\frac{\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}}{a}$ which represents the ratio of C S to C A

is called the excentricity, because the deviation of this curve from the circular form, that is, its ex-centric course, depends upon the magnitude of this ratio.

If the excentricity, which is evidently less than unity, be represented by the letter e, we have $\frac{\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}}{a} = e$ whence $e^2 = \frac{a^2 - b^2}{a^2} = 1 - \frac{b^2}{a^2}$ $\therefore \frac{b^2}{a^2} = 1 - e^2$ and the equation to the ellipse may be put under the form

$$y^2 = (1 - e^2)(a^2 - x^2).$$

108. The line S C is sometimes called the ellipticity; its value, as above, is $a e$; but it is also expressed by the letter c. Also since $a^2 - b^2 = a^2 e^2$ we have $b^2 = a^2 - a^2 e^2 = (a - a e)(a + a e)$; hence

The rectangle A S, S A′ = The square upon B C.

109. To find the distance from the focus to any point P in the curve.

Let $SP = r$, $HP = r'$,

$$\therefore r^2 = (y - y')^2 + (x - x')^2 \ldots (29)$$

also y', x' being the co-ordinates of S, we have $y' = 0$ and $x' = -a e$,

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore r^2 &= y^2 + (x + a e)^2 \\ &= (1 - e^2)(a^2 - x^2) + (x + a e)^2 \\ &= a^2 - x^2 - e^2 a^2 + e^2 x^2 + x^2 + 2 a e x + a^2 e^2 \\ &= a^2 + 2 a e x + e^2 x^2 \\ &= (a + e x)^2 \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore SP = a + e x$; similarly $HP = a - e x$.

In all questions referring to the absolute magnitude of S P or H P we must give to x its proper sign; thus if P is between B and A, the absolute magnitude of S P is $a - e x$, because x is itself negative.

By the addition of S P and H P, we have $SP + HP = 2a = AA'$; that is, the sum of the distances of any point on the curve from the foci is equal to the axis major.

This property is analogous to that of the circle, where the distance of any point from the centre is constant.

110. This property of the ellipse is so useful, that we shall prove the converse. To find the locus of a point P, the sum of whose distances from two fixed points S and H is constant or equal $2a$.

Let $SH = 2c$, bisect S H in C, which point assume to be the origin of rectangular axes C A′, C B; let $CM = x$, and $MP = y$,

$$\text{then } SP = \sqrt{(c + x)^2 + y^2}$$

$$HP = \sqrt{(c - x)^2 + y^2}$$

$$\text{but } SP + HP = 2a, \text{ or } SP = 2a - HP$$

$$\therefore \sqrt{(c + x)^2 + y^2} = 2a - \sqrt{(c - x)^2 + y^2}$$

$$\therefore (c + x)^2 + y^2 = 4a^2 - 4a\sqrt{(c - x)^2 + y^2} + (c - x)^2 + y^2;$$

hence, transposing and dividing by 4, we have

$$a\sqrt{(c - x)^2 + y^2} = a^2 - cx$$

$$\therefore a^2y^2 = a^4 - a^2c^2 + c^2x^2 \quad a^2x^2$$
$$= (a^2 - c^2)(a^2 - x^2)$$
$$\text{and } y^2 = \frac{a^2 - c^2}{a^2}(a^2 - x^2)$$

Hence the locus is an ellipse whose axes are $2a$ and $2\sqrt{a^2 - c^2}$, and whose foci are S and H.

THE TANGENT.

111. To find the equation to the tangent to the ellipse at any point.

Let $x' \; y'$ be the point P
. . . $x'' \; y''$ be any other point Q;
the equation to the line PQ through these two points is

$$y - y' = \frac{y' - y''}{x' - x''}(x - x'), \quad (41).$$

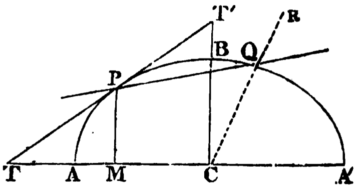
Now this cutting line or secant PQ will come to the position TPT' or just touch the curve when Q comes to P, and the equation PQ will become the equation to the tangent PT when $x'' = x'$ and $y'' = y'$.

In this case the term $\frac{y' - y''}{x' - x''}$ becomes $\frac{0}{0}$, but its value may yet be found, for since the points $x' \; y'$, $x'' \; y''$ are on the curve, we have

$$a^2y'^2 + b^2x'^2 = a^2b^2$$
$$a^2y''^2 + b^2x''^2 = a^2b^2$$
$$\therefore a^2(y'^2 - y''^2) + b^2(x'^2 - x''^2) = 0;$$
$$\text{or } a^2(y' - y'')(y' + y'') + b^2(x' - x'')(x' + x'') = 0,$$
$$\therefore \frac{y' - y''}{x' - x''} = -\frac{b^2}{a^2}\frac{x' + x''}{y' + x''}$$
$$= -\frac{b^2x'}{a^2y'} \text{ when } x'' = x' \text{ and } y'' = y.'$$

$\therefore$ The equation to the tangent is

$$y - y' = -\frac{b^2}{a^2}\frac{x'}{y'}(x - x')$$



By multiplication $a^2yy' - a^2y'^2 = -b^2xx' + b^2x'^2$

$$\therefore a^2yy' + b^2xx' = a^2y'^2 + b^2x'^2$$
$$= a^2b^2.$$

In the figure C M is x' and M P is y', and x and y are the co-ordinates of any point in T P T′.

The equation to the tangent is easily recollected, since it may be obtained from that to the curve $a^2y^2 + b^2x^2 = a^2b^2$ by putting yy' for y^2 and xx' for x^2.

112. That PT is a tangent is evident, since a straight line cannot cut the curve in more points than two, and here those two have gradually coalesced; it may, however, be satisfactory to show that every point in P T except P is without the curve.

Let x_1 and y_1 be the co-ordinates of any point R; then if $a^2y_1^2 + b^2x_1^2$ is greater than a^2b^2, the point R is without the curve. For, join the point R with the centre of the ellipse by a line cutting the curve in Q, and let x and y be the co-ordinates of Q, then if $a^2y_1^2 + b^2x_1^2$ is greater than a^2b^2, or than $a^2y^2 + b^2x^2$, we have $b^2(x_1^2 - x^2)$ greater than $a^2(y^2 - y_1^2)$; but b is less than a, therefore $x_1^2 - x^2$ must be greater than $y^2 - y_1^2$, or $x_1^2 + y_1^2$ greater than $x^2 + y^2$, and therefore C R greater than C Q (29), or R is without the curve.

In the present case we have the two equations.

$$a^2yy' + b^2xx' = a^2b^2$$

$$a^2y'^2 + b^2x'^2 = a^2b^2$$

$$\therefore a^2y'^2 - 2a^2yy' + b^2x'^2 - 2b^2xx' = -a^2b^2$$

$$\text{or } a^2(y' - y)^2 + b^2(x' - x)^2 = a^2y^2 + b^2x^2 - a^2b^2$$

$$\therefore a^2y^2 + b^2x^2 = a^2b^2 + a^2(y' - y)^2 + b^2(x' - x)^2$$

which is greater than a^2b^2.

But y and x are the co-ordinates of any point in the tangent; therefore generally any point on the tangent is without the curve; in the particular case where $y = y'$, and $x = x'$, that is at P, we have the equation $a^2y^2 + b^2x^2 = a^2b^2$, therefore at that point the tangent coincides with the curve.

113. If the vertex A be the origin, the equation to the curve is

$$y^2 = \frac{b^2}{a^2}(2ax - x^2) \text{ or } a^2y^2 + b^2x^2 - 2ab^2x = 0,$$

and the equation to the tangent, found exactly as above, is

$$a^2yy' + b^2xx' - ab^2(x + x') = 0;$$

If the equation to the ellipse be $y^2 = mx - nx^2$, the equation to the tangent is $yy' = \frac{m}{2}(x + x') - nxx'$.

Generally, if the equation to the curve be

$$ay^2 + bxy + cx^2 + dy + ex + f = 0,$$

the equation to the tangent is

$$y - y' = -\frac{2cx' + by' + e}{2ay' + bx' + d}(x - x'),$$

$$\text{or } (2ay' + bx' + d)y + (2cx' + by' + e)x + dy + ex + 2f = 0.$$

Again let $y = \alpha x + d$ be the equation to a tangent to the ellipse; then, comparing this with the equation $a^2 y y' + b^2 x x' = a^2 b^2$, and eliminating x' and y' by means of the equation $a^2 y'^2 + b^2 x'^2 = a^2 b^2$, we have

$$a^2 \alpha^2 + b^2 = d^2,$$

and this is the necessary relation among the co-efficients of the equation $y = \alpha x + d$ when it is a tangent to the curve.

114. To find the point where the tangent cuts the axes.

In the equation $a^2 y y' + b^2 x x' = a^2 b^2$ put $y = 0$ $\therefore b^2 x x' = a^2 b^2$, and $x = \frac{a^2}{x'} = \mathrm{CT}$; similarly $y = \mathrm{CT}' = \frac{b^2}{y'}$; hence we have

The rectangle C T, C M = The square upon A C,

and The rectangle C T′, M P = The square upon B C.

Since $\mathrm{CT}\left(= \frac{a^2}{x'}\right)$ does not involve y', it is the same for all ellipses which have the same axis major, and same abscissa for the point of contact; and, as the circle on the axis major may be considered as one of these ellipses, the distance C T is the same for an ellipse and its circumscribing circle.

Again, since $\mathrm{CT} = \frac{a^2}{x'}$ is independent of the sign of y', the tangents, at the two extremities of an ordinate, meet in the same point on the axis. The equation to the lower tangent is found by putting $-y'$ for y' in the general equation to the tangent (111).

115. The distance M T from the foot of the ordinate to the point where the tangent meets the axis of x, is called the subtangent.

In the ellipse, $\mathrm{MT} = \mathrm{C\,T} - \mathrm{C\,M} = \frac{a^2}{x'} - x' = \frac{a^2 - x'^2}{x'}$;

Hence, The rectangle C M, M T = The rectangle A M, M A′.

116. The equation to the tangent being $a^2 y y' + b^2 x x' = a^2 b^2$, let $x' = a$; and $\therefore y' = 0$, $\therefore b^2 a x = a^2 b^2$ and $x = a$; hence the tangent, at the extremity of the axis major, is perpendicular to that axis. At B, the equation to the tangent is $y = b$; hence the tangent at B is perpendicular to the axis minor.

The equation to the tangent being $a^2 y y' + b^2 x x' = a^2 b^2$, or

$$y = -\frac{b^2 x'}{a^2 y'} x + \frac{b^2}{y'}.$$

If P C be produced to meet the curve again in P′, the signs of the co-ordinates of P′ are both contrary to those of P; hence the co-efficient $-\frac{b^2 x'}{a^2 y'}$ remains the same for the tangent at P′, or the tangents at P and P′ are parallel (43).

117. To find the equation to the tangent at the extremity of the Latus Rectum.

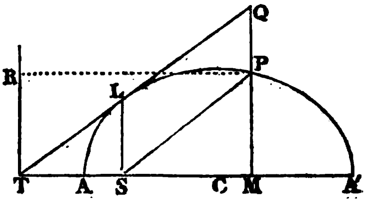
The equation to the tangent is generally

$$a^2 y y' + b^2 x x' = a^2 b^2$$

At L, $x' = -ae$ and $y' = \frac{b^2}{a}$,

$$\therefore a^2 y \frac{b^2}{a} - b^2 x \cdot ae = a^2 b^2$$

$$y = a + ex.$$



If the ordinate y, or M Q, cut the ellipse in P, we have S P $= a + ex$ (109)

$$\therefore \text{M Q} = \text{S P}.$$

118. To find the point where this particular tangent cuts the axis, let $y = 0$; $\therefore x = \text{CT} = -\frac{a}{e}$.

From T draw T R perpendicular to A C, and from P draw P R parallel to A C; then, taking the absolute values of C M and C T, we have

$$\text{PR} = \text{MT} = \text{CT} + \text{CM} = \frac{a}{e} + x = \frac{a + ex}{e} = \frac{1}{e}.\text{S P};$$

Consequently, the distances of any point P from S, and from the line T R, are in the constant ratio of $e : 1$.

This line T R is called the directrix; for, knowing the position of this line and of the focus, an ellipse of any excentricity may be described, as will hereafter be shown.

If $x = 0$, we have $y = a$. Thus the tangent, at the extremity of the Latus Rectum, cuts the axis of y where that axis meets the circumscribing circle.

By producing Q M to meet the ellipse again in P', it may be proved that

The rectangle Q P, Q P' = The square on S M.

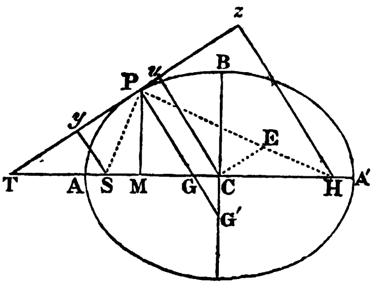
119. To find the length of the perpendicular from the focus on the tangent.

Let S y, H z, be the perpendiculars on the tangent P T.

Taking the expression in (48.) we have

$$p = -\frac{y_1 - \alpha x_1 - d}{\sqrt{1 + \alpha^2}}.$$

Where $y_1 = 0$ and $x_1 = -ae$ are co-ordinates of the point S, and $y = \alpha x + d$ is the equation to the line P T. But the equation to P T is also



$$y = -\frac{b^2 x'}{a^2 y'} x + \frac{b^2}{y'};$$

$$\therefore \alpha = -\frac{b^2 x'}{a^2 y'} \text{ and } d = \frac{b^2}{y'};$$

$$\therefore p = -\frac{-\frac{b^2 x'}{a^2 y'} a e - \frac{b^2}{y'}}{\sqrt{\left\{1 + \frac{b^4 x'^2}{a^4 y'^2}\right\}}}$$

$$= \frac{a b^2 . (a + e x')}{\sqrt{a^4 y'^2 + b^4 x'^2}}$$

And $a^4 y'^2 + b^4 x'^2 = a^2 (a^2 b^2 - b^2 x'^2) + b^4 x'^2 = a^2 b^2 \left\{a^2 - \frac{a^2 - b^2}{a^2} x'^2\right\}$

$$= a^2 b^2 (a^2 - e^2 x'^2);$$

$$\therefore p = \frac{a b^2 (a + e x')}{a b \sqrt{(a^2 - e^2 x'^2)}} = b \sqrt{\frac{a + e x'}{a - e x'}}.$$

Let S P or $a + e x' = r$, and H P or $a - e x' = 2a - r = r'$,

$$\therefore p^2 = \frac{b^2 r}{2a - r} = \frac{b^2 r}{r'}.$$

Similarly, if H $z = p'$, we have $p'^2 = b^2 \frac{r'}{r}$.

By multiplication we have $p p' = b^2$; Hence,

The rectangle S y, H z = The square upon B C.

120. To find the locus of y or z in the last article.

The equation to the curve at P is $a^2 y'^2 + b^2 x'^2 = a^2 b^2$ (1)

The equation to the tangent at P is $a^2 y y' + b^2 x x' = a^2 b^2$ (2).

The equation to the perpendicular S y (the co-ordinates of S being $-c, 0$) is $y = \alpha (x + c)$ and this line being perpendicular to the tangent (2), we have $\alpha = \frac{a^2 y'}{b^2 x'}$; and therefore the equation to S y is

$$y = \frac{a^2 y'}{b^2 x'} (x + c) \quad (3).$$

If we eliminate y' and x' from (1) (2) and (3), we shall have an equation involving x and y; but this elimination supposes x and y to be the same for both (2) and (3), and therefore can only refer to their intersection. Hence, the resulting equation is the locus of their intersection.

From (3) $\frac{y'}{x'} = \frac{b^2}{a^2} \frac{y}{x + c} = \frac{b^2}{x' y} - \frac{b^2 x}{a^2 y}$ from (2);

$$\therefore \frac{1}{x'} = \frac{y^2 + x (x + c)}{a^2 (x + c)}, \therefore x' = \frac{a^2 (x + c)}{y^2 + x (x + c)},$$

$$\text{and } y' = \frac{b^2 y x'}{a^2 (x + c)} = \frac{b^2 y}{y^2 + x (x + c)}.$$

Substituting these values of x' and y', in (1), we have

$$a^2 b^4 y^2 + b^2 a^4 (x + c)^2 = a^2 b^2 \{y^2 + x(x + c)\}^2$$

$$\therefore\ b^2 y^2 + a^2 (x + c)^2 = \{y^2 + x(x + c)\}^2;$$

Or, $a^2 y^2 - c^2 y^2 + a^2 (x^2 + c)^2 = y^4 + 2x(x + c) y^2 + x^2 (x + c)^2$;

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore\ a^2 \{y^2 + (x + c)^2\} &= y^4 + y^2 \{2x(x + c) + c^2\} + x^2 (x + c)^2 \\ &= y^4 + y^2 x^2 + y^2 (x + c)^2 + x^2 (x + c)^2 \\ &= y^2 (y^2 + x^2) + (y^2 + x^2)(x + c)^2 \\ &= (y^2 + x^2)\{y^2 + (x + c)^2\};\end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore\ a^2 = y^2 + x^2.$$

This is the equation to a circle whose radius is a. Hence, the locus of y is the circle described on the axis major as diameter.

From the equation to S y, combined with that to C P $\left(y = \frac{y'}{x'} x\right)$, we may prove that C P and S y meet in the directrix.

121. To find the angle which the focal distance S P makes with the tangent P T.

The equation to the tangent is $y = -\frac{b^2 x'}{a^2 y'} x + \frac{b^2}{y'}$.

The equation to S P passing through S $(-c, 0)$ and P (x', y') is

$$y - y' = \frac{y' - y''}{x' - x''}(x - x') = \frac{y'}{x' + c}(x - x');$$

And tan. S P T = tan. (P S C − P T C) $= \dfrac{\dfrac{y'}{x' + c} + \dfrac{b^2 x}{a^2 y'}}{1 - \dfrac{y'}{x' + c}\,\dfrac{b^2 x'}{a^2 y'}}$

$$= \frac{a^2 y'^2 + b^2 x'^2 + b^2 c x'}{y'\{(x' + c) a^2 - b^2 x'\}} = \frac{a^2 b^2 + b^2 c x'}{y'\{(a^2 - b^2) x' + a^2 c\}}$$

$$= \frac{b^2 (a^2 + c x')}{c y' (a^2 + c x')} = \frac{b^2}{c y'}.$$

To pass from tan. S P T to tan. H P T we must put $-c$ for c in the preceding investigation; this would evidently lead us to the equation tan. H P T $= -\frac{b^2}{c y'}$; hence, tan. H P z = tan. (180 − H P T) = − tan. H P T $= \frac{b^2}{c y'}$, or the two angles S P T, H P z are equal; thus the tangent makes equal angles with the focal distances.

It is a property of light that, if a ray proceeding from H in the direction H P be reflected by the line z P y, the angle S P y of the reflected ray will equal the angle H P z. Now, in the ellipse, these angles are equal;

hence, if a light be placed at H, all rays which are reflected by the ellipse will proceed to S. Hence, these points, S and H, are called foci.

This very important property is also thus proved from article 119.

$$Sy = p = b\sqrt{\frac{r}{r'}}; \text{ and } Hz = p' = b\sqrt{\frac{r'}{r}};$$

$$\therefore\ Sy : Hz :: r : r' :: SP : HP;$$

hence the triangles S P y and H P z are similar, and the angle S P y equal to the angle H P z.*

122. To find the length of the perpendicular C u, from the centre, on the tangent:

$$p = -\frac{y_1 - \alpha x_1 - d}{\sqrt{1+\alpha^2}};$$

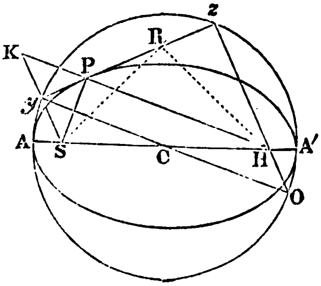
here $y_1 = 0$, $x_1 = 0$, $\alpha = -\frac{b^2 x'}{a^2 y'}$, and $d = \frac{b^2}{y'}$;

$$\therefore C u = \frac{\frac{b^2}{y'}}{\sqrt{\left\{1 + \frac{b^4 x'^2}{a^4 y'^2}\right\}}} = \frac{a^2 b^2}{\sqrt{\{a^4 y'^2 + b^4 x'^2\}}} = \frac{a^2 b^2}{a b \sqrt{a^2 - e^2 x'^2}} \quad (119)$$

$$= \frac{a b}{\sqrt{(a + e x')(a - e x')}} = \frac{a b}{\sqrt{r r'}}.$$

---

* The following geometrical method of drawing a tangent to the ellipse, and proving that the locus of the perpendicular from the focus on the tangent is the circumscribing circle, will be found useful.



Let A P A′ be the ellipse, P any point on it. Join S P and H P, and produce H P to K, making P K = P S; bisect the angle K P S by the line y P z, and join S K, cutting P y in y.

1. P y is a tangent to the ellipse; for if R be any other point in the line P y, we have S R + R H = K R + R H, greater than K H, greater than 2 a; hence, R and every other point in z P y except P is without the ellipse.

2. The locus of y is the circumscribing circle. Draw H z parallel to S y, and join C y; then, because the triangles S P y, K P y are equal, we have the angle S y P a right angle, or S y and H z are perpendicular to the tangent. Also, since S y = K y, and S C = C H, we have C y parallel to K H, and Cy = ½ K H = ½ (S P + P H) = C A.

3. The rectangle S y, H z = the square on B C. Let Z H meet the circle again in O and join C O; then, because the angle y z O is a right angle, and that the points y and O are in the circumference of the circle, the line y C O must be a straight line, and a diameter. Hence, the triangles C S y, C H O are equal; and the rectangle S y, H z = the rectangle Z H, H O = the rectangle A H, H A′ = the square on B C (108).

4. Let S P = r, H P = 2a − S P = 2a − r, S y = p, and H z = p', then $p^2 = \frac{b^2 r}{2a - r}$;

For by similar triangles, S y : S P :: H z : H P $\therefore p = \frac{r}{2a - r} p'$; and, as above,

$$pp' = b^2 \therefore p^2 = \frac{b^2 r}{2a - r}.$$

123. To find the locus of u:

$$a^2 y'^2 + b^2 x'^2 = a^2 b^2 \quad (1).$$

$$a^2 y y' + b^2 x x' = a^2 b^2 \quad (2).$$

$$y = \frac{a^2 y'}{b^2 x'} x \ . \ . \ . \ (3), \text{ the equation to C } u.$$

Proceeding, as in (120.), to eliminate x' and y', we arrive at the final equation $b^2 y^2 + a^2 x^2 = (y^2 + x^2)^2$; the locus is an oval meeting the ellipse at the extremities of the axes, and bulging out beyond the curve, something like the lowest of figures 2 in page 44. We shall have occasion to trace this curve hereafter.

124. To find the angle which the distance C P makes with the tangent, we have the equation

$$\text{to C P, } y = \frac{y'}{x'} x; \text{ and to P T, } y = -\frac{b^2 x'}{a^2 y'} x + \frac{b^2}{y'};$$

hence tan. C P T is found $= \dfrac{a^2 b^2}{c^2 x' y'}$.

125. From C u = C y sin. C y u, we have

$$\frac{a b}{\sqrt{r r'}} = a \text{ sin. C } y u \therefore \text{ sin. C } y u = \frac{b}{\sqrt{r r'}};$$

Also from H z = H P sin. H P z, we have

$$b \sqrt{\frac{r'}{r}} = r' \text{ sin. H P } z \therefore \text{ sin. H P } z, = \frac{b}{\sqrt{r r'}};$$

$\therefore$ angle C y u = angle H P z, and C y is parallel to H P.

Hence, if C E be drawn parallel to the tangent P T, and meeting H P in E, we have P E = C y = A C.

THE NORMAL,

126. The normal to any point of a curve is a straight line drawn through that point, and perpendicular to the tangent at that point.

To find the equation to the normal P G.

The equation to a straight line through the point P (x' y') is

$$y - y' = \alpha (x - x')$$

This line must be perpendicular to the tangent whose equation is

$$y = -\frac{b^2 x'}{a^2 y'} x + \frac{b^2}{y'} \quad \therefore \alpha = \frac{a^2 y'}{b^2 x'};$$

and the equation to the normal is

$$y - y' = \frac{a^2 y'}{b^2 x'} (x - x').$$

127. To find the points where the normal cuts the axes:

Let $y = 0 \therefore - y' = \dfrac{a^2\, y'}{b^2\, x'}(x - x') \;\therefore x = x' - \dfrac{b^2\, x'}{a^2} = \dfrac{a^2 - b^2}{a^2}\; x'$ $= e^2 x' = \text{C G}$.

Let $x = 0 \;\therefore y = y' - \dfrac{a^2\, y'}{b^2} = - \dfrac{a^2 - b^2}{b^2} y' = - \dfrac{a^2\, e^2}{b^2}\; y' = \text{C G}'$.

Hence $\text{S G} = \text{S C} - \text{C G} = a e - e^2 x' = e\,(a - e\, x') = e.\;\; \text{S P}$.

The distance M G, from the foot of the ordinate to the foot of the normal, is called the subnormal:

Its value is $x - x' = - \dfrac{b^2}{a^2} x'$.

128. From the above values of M G, C G and C G′ we have $\text{P G} = \sqrt{\left\{y'^2 + \dfrac{b^4}{a^4} x'^2\right\}} = \sqrt{\left\{\dfrac{b^2}{a^2}(a^2 - x'^2) + \dfrac{b^4\, x'^2}{a^4}\right\}}$

$$= \frac{b}{a}\sqrt{\left\{a^2 - x'^2 + \frac{b^2\, x'^2}{a^2}\right\}} = \frac{b}{a}\sqrt{\left\{a^2 - \frac{a^2 - b^2}{a^2} x'^2\right\}}$$

$$= \frac{b}{a}\sqrt{\left\{a^2 - e^2\, x'^2\right\}} = \frac{b}{a}\;\sqrt{r\, r'}\;;$$

and similarly $\text{P G}' = \dfrac{a}{b}\,\sqrt{r\, r'},$ consequently,

The rectangle, P G, P G′ $= r\, r'$ = the rectangle S P, H P.

The greatest value of the normal is when $x' = 0$; hence, at the extremity of the axis minor, we have the greatest value of the normal $= b$. Similarly, the least value of the normal is at the extremity of the axis major, the value being then $= \dfrac{b^2}{a}$, or half the Latus Rectum (105.).

Also, $\text{S G}' = \dfrac{a\, e}{b}\;\sqrt{r\, r'}$, and $\text{G G}' = \dfrac{a\, e^2}{b}\;\sqrt{r\, r'}\;\therefore\; \text{G G}' = e.\,\text{S G}'$.

If a perpendicular G L be drawn from G upon S P or H P, the triangles P G L, S P y, and H P z, are similar; hence

$$\text{P L} = \text{P G}\,.\frac{p}{r},\ \text{or} = \text{P G}\,\frac{p'}{r'} = \frac{b^2}{a} = \tfrac{1}{2}\ \text{the Latus Rectum.}$$

129. Since the tangent makes equal angles with the focal distances, the normal, which is perpendicular to the tangent, also makes equal angles with the focal distances. This theorem may be directly proved from the above value of C G; for S G : H G :: S C − C G : H C + C G :: $a e - e^2 x' : a e + e^2 x' :: a - e x' : a + e x'$ :: S P : H P; hence, the angle S P H is bisected by the line P G.—Euclid, VI. 3, or Geometry, ii. 50 *.

THE DIAMETERS.

130. A diameter was defined in (76.) to be a line bisecting a system of parallel chords. We shall now prove that all the diameters of the ellipse

---

* The absolute values of S P and H P are here taken.—See 109.

are straight lines, and that they pass through the centre, which last circumstance is evident, since no line could bisect every one of a system of parallel chords without itself passing through the centre.

Let $y = \alpha x + c$ be the equation to any chord;

$a^2 y^2 + b^2 x^2 = a^2 b^2$, the equation to the curve.

Transfer the origin to the bisecting point $x'\ y'$ of the chord, by putting $y + y'$ for y and $x + x'$ for x, then the equation to the chord becomes $y + y' = \alpha (x + x') + c$ or $y = \alpha x$, since $y' = \alpha x' + c$; also the equation to the curve becomes $a^2 (y + y')^2 + b^2 (x + x')^2 = a^2 b^2$.

To find where the chord intersects the curve, put αx for y in the second equation:

$$\therefore\ a^2 (\alpha x + y')^2 + b^2 (x + x')^2 = a^2 b^2;$$

$$\text{or, } (a^2 \alpha^2 + b^2) x^2 + 2 (a^2 \alpha y' + b^2 x') x + a^2 y'^2 + b^2 x'^2 = a^2 b^2.$$

But since the origin is at the bisection of the chord, the two values of x must be equal to one another, and have opposite signs, or the second term of the last equation must $= 0$.

$$\therefore\ a^2 \alpha y' + b^2 x' = 0.$$

This equation gives the relation between x' and y'; and, since it is independent of c, it will be the same for any chord parallel to $y = \alpha x + c$; hence, considering x' and y' as variable, it is the equation to the assemblage of all the middle points, or to their locus.

This equation is evidently that to a straight line passing through the centre. Conversely, any straight line passing through the centre is a diameter.

131. A pair of diameters are called conjugate when each bisects all the chords parallel to the other.

Hence, the axes major and minor are conjugate diameters, and the equation $a^2 y^2 + b^2 x^2 = a^2 b^2$, which we have generally employed, is that to the ellipse referred to its centre and rectangular conjugate diameters.

If the curve be referred to oblique co-ordinates, and its equation remains of the same form, that is, containing only x^2, y^2, and constant quantities, the new axes will also be conjugate diameters; for each value of one coordinate will give two equal and opposite values to the other. We shall, therefore, pass from the above equation to another referred to oblique conjugate diameters, by determining, through the transformation of co-ordinates, all the systems of axes, for which the equation to the ellipse preserves this same form.

Let the equation be $a^2 y^2 + b^2 x^2 = a^2 b^2$; the formulas for transformation are (57),

$$y = x' \sin.\theta + y' \sin.\theta',$$

$$x = x' \cos.\theta + y' \cos.\theta',$$

$$\therefore\ a^2 (x' \sin.\theta + y' \sin.\theta')^2 + b^2 (x' \cos.\theta + y' \cos.\theta')^2 = a^2 b^2,$$

$$\text{or } \{a^2 (\sin.\theta')^2 + b^2 (\cos.\theta')^2\} y'^2 + \{a^2 (\sin.\theta)^2 + b^2 (\cos.\theta)^2\} x'^2$$
$$+ 2 \{a^2 \sin.\theta \sin.\theta' + b^2 \cos.\theta \cos.\theta'\} x' y' = a^2 b^2.$$

In order that this equation may be of the conjugate form, it must not contain the term $x' y'$; but since we have introduced two indeterminate quantities, θ and θ', we are enabled to put the co-efficient of $x' y' = 0$; hence we have the condition

$$a^2 \sin.\theta \sin.\theta' + b^2 \cos.\theta \cos.\theta' = 0;$$

or dividing by $a^2 \cos.\ \theta \cos.\ \theta'$,

$$\tan.\ \theta.\ \tan.\ \theta' = -\frac{b^2}{a^2}.$$

Now this condition will not determine both the angles θ and θ', but for any value of the one angle it gives a real value for the other; and hence there is an infinite number of pairs of axes to which, if the curve be referred, its equation is of the required conjugate form.

If, in the next figure, we draw C P making any angle θ with C A′, and C D making an angle θ' (whose tangent is $-\frac{b^2}{a^2} \cot.\ \theta$) with C A′, then C P and C D are conjugate diameters. Also since the product of the tangents is negative, if C P be drawn in the angle A′ C B, C D must be drawn in the angle B C A.

132. There is no occasion to examine the above equation of condition in the case where θ or $\theta' = 0$, for then we have the original axes; but let us examine whether there are any other systems of rectangular axes.

Let $\theta' = 90^\circ + \theta$, $\therefore \sin.\ \theta' = \cos.\ \theta$, and $\cos.\ \theta' = -\sin.\ \theta$,

hence the equation of condition becomes

$$(a^2 - b^2) \sin.\ \theta \cos.\ \theta = 0,$$

and since, by the nature of the ellipse, a^2 cannot $= b^2$, we must have $\theta = 0$, or $\theta = 90^\circ$, both which values give the original axes again; hence the only system of rectangular diameters is that of the axes. This remark agrees with article 87.

We may observe in the above transformation that, although we have introduced *two* indeterminate quantities θ and θ', it does not follow that we can destroy *two* terms in the transformed equation, unless the values of these quantities are real: for example, if we attempt to destroy any other term as the second, we find $\tan.\ \theta = \frac{b}{a} \sqrt{-1}$, a value to which there is no corresponding angle θ; hence, in putting the co-efficient of $x'y' = 0$, we adopted the only possible hypothesis.

133. The equation to the curve is now

$$\{a^2 (\sin.\ \theta')^2 + b^2 (\cos.\ \theta')^2\} y'^2 + \{a^2 (\sin.\ \theta)^2 + b^2 (\cos.\ \theta)^2\} x'^2 = a^2 b^2.$$

If we successively make $y' = 0$, and $x' = 0$, we have the distances from the origin to the points in which the curve cuts the new axes; let these distances be represented by a_1 and b_1, the former being measured along the axis of x', and the latter along the axis of y'; then we have

$$y' = 0, \therefore \{a^2 (\sin.\ \theta)^2 + b^2 (\cos.\ \theta)^2\} a_1^2 = a^2 b^2,$$

$$x' = 0, \therefore \{a^2 (\sin.\ \theta')^2 + b^2 (\cos.\ \theta')^2\} b_1^2 = a^2 b^2,$$

And the transformed equation becomes

$$\frac{a^2 b^2}{b_1^2} y'^2 + \frac{a^2 b^2}{a_1^2} x'^2 = a^2 b^2,$$

$$\text{or, } \frac{y'^2}{b_1^2} + \frac{x'^2}{a_1^2} = 1,$$

$$\text{or, } a_1^2 y'^2 + b_1^2 x'^2 = a_1^2 b_1^2,$$

Where the lengths of the new conjugate diameters are $2\,a_1$ and $2\,b_1$.

134. From the transformation we obtain the three following equations:

$$a_1^2\{a^2(\sin.\theta)^2+b^2(\cos.\theta)^2\}=a^2b^2 \quad (1),$$

$$b_1^2\{a^2(\sin.\theta')^2+b^2(\cos.\theta')^2\}=a^2b^2 \quad (2),$$

$$\left.\begin{array}{r} a^2\sin.\theta\sin.\theta'+b^2\cos.\theta\cos.\theta'=0, \\ \text{or,}\quad \tan.\theta\tan.\theta'=-\dfrac{b^2}{a^2} \end{array}\right\} \quad (3).$$

Putting $1-(\sin.\theta)^2$ for $(\cos.\theta)^2$ in (1), we have

$$a_1^2(a^2-b^2)(\sin.\theta)^2=a^2b^2-a_1^2b^2,$$

$$\text{and } a_1^2(a^2-b^2)(\cos.\theta)^2=a_1^2a^2-a^2b^2,$$

$$\therefore (\tan.\theta)^2=\frac{b^2}{a^2}\,\frac{a^2-a_1^2}{a_1^2-b^2}.$$

Putting b_1 for a_1 in this expression, we have the value of $(\tan.\theta')^2$, as found from (2)

$$(\tan.\theta')^2=\frac{b^2}{a^2}\,\frac{a^2-b_1^2}{b_1^2-b^2};$$

hence by multiplication,

$$(\tan.\theta)^2(\tan.\theta')^2=\frac{b^4}{a^4}\,\frac{a^2-a_1^2}{a_1^2-b^2}\,\frac{a^2-b_1^2}{b_1^2-b^2}=\frac{b^4}{a^4}\text{ from (3)},$$

$$\therefore (a^2-a_1^2)(a^2-b_1^2)=(a_1^2-b^2)(b_1^2-b^2),$$

$$\text{or, } a^4-a^2b_1^2-a_1^2a^2+a_1^2b_1^2=a_1^2b_1^2-a_1^2b^2-b^2b_1^2+b^4;$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore\ a^4-b^4&=a^2b_1^2+a_1^2a^2-a_1^2b^2-b^2b_1^2,\\ &=a^2(a_1^2+b_1^2)-b^2(a_1^2+b_1^2),\\ &=(a^2-b^2)(a_1^2+b_1^2),\end{aligned}$$

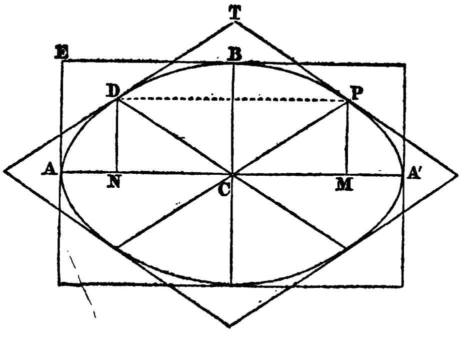
$$\therefore\ a^2+b^2=a_1^2+b_1^2,$$

that is, the sum of the squares upon the conjugate diameters is equal to the sum of the squares upon the axes.

135. Again, multiplying (1) and (2) together, and (3) by itself, and then subtracting the results, we have

$$a_1^2b_1^2\{a^4(\sin.\theta)^2(\sin.\theta')^2+b^4(\cos.\theta)^2(\cos.\theta')^2+a^2b^2(\sin.\theta')^2(\cos.\theta)^2 + a^2b^2(\sin.\theta)^2(\cos.\theta')^2\}=a^4b^4,$$

$$a^4(\sin.\theta)^2(\sin.\theta')^2+b^4(\cos.\theta)^2(\cos.\theta')^2+2\,a^2b^2\sin.\theta\sin.\theta'\cos.\theta\cos.\theta'=0;$$



$$\therefore\ a_1^2 b_1^2 a^2 b^2 \{ (\sin.\ \theta')^2 (\cos.\ \theta)^2 - 2 \sin.\ \theta \sin.\ \theta' \cos.\ \theta \cos.\ \theta' + (\sin.\ \theta)^2 (\cos.\ \theta')^2 \} = a^4 b^4,$$

$$\text{or, } a_1^2 b_1^2 \{ \sin.\ \theta' \cos.\ \theta - \sin.\ \theta \cos.\ \theta' \}^2 = a^2 b^2,$$

$$\text{or, } a_1^2 b_1^2 \{ \sin.\ (\theta' - \theta) \}^2 = a^2 b^2;$$

$$\therefore\ a_1 b_1 \sin.\ (\theta' - \theta) = a\, b.$$

Now $\theta' - \theta$ is the angle P C D, between the conjugate diameters C P and C D; hence drawing straight lines at the extremities of the conjugate diameters, parallel to those diameters, we have, from the above equation, the parallelogram P C D T = the rectangle A C B E, and therefore the whole parallelogram thus circumscribing the ellipse is equal to the rectangle contained by the axes *.

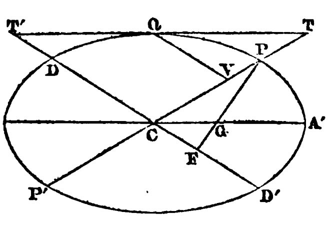
If the extremities of the conjugate diameters be joined, it is readily seen that the inscribed figure is a parallelogram, and that its area is equal to half that of the above circumscribed parallelogram.

We may remark, in passing, that the circumscribed parallelogram, having its sides parallel to a pair of conjugate diameters, is the least of all parallelograms circumscribing the ellipse; and that the inscribed parallelogram, having conjugate lines for its diameters, is the greatest of all inscribed parallelograms.

136. Returning to article (133.), the equation to the curve, suppressing the accents on x' and y', as no longer necessary, is

$$a_1^2 y^2 + b_1^2 x^2 = a_1^2 b_1^2.$$

In the figure, $C P = a_1$, $C D = b_1$ $C V = x$, and $V Q = y$.



---

* The theorems in articles 134 and 135 may be proved also in the following manner: Referring the curve to its rectangular axes, as in article (138.), let the co-ordinates of P be x' and y'; then the equation to C D is $a^2 y y' + b^2 x x' = 0$, and eliminating x and y between this equation and that to the curve ($a^2 y^2 + b^2 x^2 = a^2 b^2$), we have the co-ordinates C N and D N, fig. 135, of the intersection of C D with the curve, C N $= x = \frac{a y'}{b}$ and D N $= y = \frac{b x'}{a}$; hence we have

$$a_1^2 + b_1^2 = x'^2 + y'^2 + x^2 + y^2 = x'^2 + y'^2 + \frac{a^2 y'^2}{b^2} + \frac{b^2 x'^2}{a^2} = \frac{b^2 x'^2 + a^2 y'^2}{b^2}$$

$$+ \frac{a^2 y'^2 + b^2 x'^2}{a^2} = \frac{a^2 b^2}{b^2} + \frac{a^2 b^2}{a^2} = a^2 + b^2.$$

Also the triangle P C D = the trapezium P M N D − the triangles P C M and D C N

$$= (x + x')\frac{y + y'}{2} - \frac{x y + x' y'}{2} = \frac{x' y + y' x}{2} = \tfrac{1}{2}\left\{ x' \frac{b x'}{a} + y' \frac{a y'}{b} \right\} = \frac{b^2 x'^2 + a^2 y'^2}{2 a b}$$

$$= \frac{a^2 b^2}{2 a b} = \frac{a b}{2},$$ therefore the parallelogram P C D T = $a\, b$.

No notice has been taken of the positional value of the abscissa C N, since this is entirely a question of absolute values.

Putting the equation into the form

$$y^2 = \frac{b_1^2}{a_1^2}(a_1^2 - x^2) = \frac{b_1^2}{a_1^2}(a_1 - x)(a_1 + x),$$

we have the square upon the ordinate Q V : the rectangle P V, V P′ :: the square upon C D : the square upon C P.

137. The equation to the tangent at any point Q $(x' y')$ found exactly as in (111.) is $a_1^2 y y' + b_1^2 x x' = a_1^2 b_1^2$.

The points T and T′, where it cuts the new axes, are determined as in (114.); whence $\text{C T} = \frac{a_1^2}{x'}$, $\text{C T}' = \frac{b_1^2}{y'}$; and the tangents drawn at the two extremities of a chord meet in the diameter to that chord (114.).

138. Let the ellipse be now referred to its rectangular axes, and let the co-ordinates of P be $x' y'$, then the equation to C P is $y = \frac{y'}{x'} x$, and the equation to C D is

$$y = x \tan.\theta' = -\frac{b^2}{a^2}\cot.\theta = -\frac{b^2 x'}{a^2 y'} x,$$

$$\text{or,}\quad a^2 y y' + b^2 x x' = 0.$$

But the equation to the tangent at P is

$$a^2 y y' + b^2 x x' = a^2 b^2;$$

hence CD or the diameter conjugate to C P is parallel to the tangent at P.

From this circumstance the conjugate to any diameter is often defined to be the line drawn through the centre, and parallel to the tangent at the extremity of the diameter.

The equation to the conjugate diameter is readily remembered, since it is the same as that to the tangent without the last term, and therefore may be deduced from the equation to the curve, as at the end of article 111. The three equations are

$$a^2 y^2 + b^2 x^2 = a^2 b^2, \text{ to the curve,}$$

$$a^2 y y' + b^2 x x' = a^2 b^2, \text{ to the tangent,}$$

$$a^2 y y' + b^2 x x' = 0, \text{ to the conjugate.}$$

The equation to the tangent D T passing through the point D, whose co-ordinates are $\frac{b x'}{a}$ and $-\frac{a y'}{b}$ (*note* 135), and parallel to C P, is

$$y - \frac{b x'}{a} = \frac{y'}{x'}\left(x + \frac{a y'}{b}\right)$$

or reducing

$$y x' - x y' = a b.$$

And the equation to C P is

$$y x' - x y' = 0.$$

These equations to the tangents and conjugate diameters, combined with the equation to the curve, will be found useful in the solution of problems relating to tangents.

139. Let x' and y' be rectangular co-ordinates of P; then, from the equation $a_1^2 + b_1^2 = a^2 + b^2$, we have $b_1^2 = a^2 + b^2 - a_1^2 = a^2 + b^2 - x'^2 - y'^2 = a^2 + b^2 - x'^2 - b^2 + \frac{b^2}{a^2} x'^2 = a^2 - \frac{a^2 - b^2}{a^2} x'^2 = a^2 - e^2 x'^2$
$= (a - ex')\,(a + ex') = r\,r'$.
That is, the square upon the conjugate diameter C D = the rectangle under the focal distances S P and H P.

140. Draw P F perpendicular upon the conjugate diameter C D, then by (135.) the rectangle P F, C D $= a b$,

$$\therefore \text{PF} = \frac{a b}{b_1} = \frac{a b}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2 - a_1^2}} = \frac{a b}{\sqrt{r r'}}.\text{*}$$

It was shown in (128.) that P G $= \frac{b}{a} \sqrt{r r'}$, and P G′ $= \frac{a}{b} \sqrt{r r'}$;

hence, The rectangle P G, P F = The square on B C,
and The rectangle P G′, P F = The square on A C,
and The rectangle P G, P G′ = The square on C D.

SUPPLEMENTAL CHORDS.

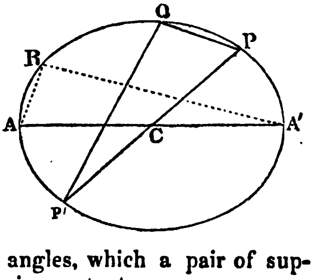
141. Two straight lines drawn from a point on the curve to the extremities of a diameter are called supplemental chords. They are called principal supplemental chords if that diameter be the axis major.

Referring the ellipse to its axes, let P P′ be a diameter, Q P, Q P′ two supplemental chords; then, if x' y' be the co-ordinates of P, $-x'$, $-y'$ are those of P′; hence, the equation to Q P is $y - y' = \alpha\,(x - x')$,

and the equation to Q P′ is $y + y' = \alpha'\,(x + x')$.

At the point of intersection, y and x are the same for both equations, being the co-ordinates of Q; hence, $y^2 - y'^2 = \alpha\alpha'\,(x^2 - x'^2)$;

but $a^2 y^2 + b^2 x^2 = a^2 b^2$ at Q,
and $a^2 y'^2 + b^2 x'^2 = a^2 b^2$ at P;
$\therefore y^2 - y'^2 = -\frac{b^2}{a^2}(x^2 - x'^2)$;
$\therefore \alpha\alpha' = -\frac{b^2}{a^2}$;



that is, The product of the tangents of the angles, which a pair of supplemental chords makes with the axis major, is constant.

---

* If the distance C P $= u$, and $p =$ the perpendicular from the centre on the tangent at P, this equation is

$$p^2 = \frac{a^2 b^2}{a^2 + \quad - u^2}.$$

If the curve was referred to any conjugate diameters, $2\,a_1$ and $2\,b_1$, we should find exactly in the same manner that the product of the tangents of the angles, which a pair of supplemental chords makes with any axis $2\,a_1$, is constant, and equal to $-\dfrac{b_1^2}{a_1^2}$.

The equation to a chord Q P being $y - y' = \alpha\,(x - x')$, the equation to its supplemental chord Q P′ is $y + y' = -\dfrac{b^2}{a^2\,\alpha}\,(x + x')$.

In the circle $b = a$ $\therefore$ $\alpha\,\alpha' = -1$, which proves that in the circle the supplemental chords are at right angles to each other, a well-known property of that figure.

The converse of the proposition is thus proved.

Let A C A′ be any diameter, C the origin, and $\alpha\,\alpha' = -\dfrac{b_1^2}{a_1^2}$, then the equation to A R is $y = \alpha\,(x + a_1)$ (1), and the equation to A′R is $y = \alpha'\,(x - a_1) = -\dfrac{b^2}{a_1^2\,\alpha}\,(x - a_1)$ (2). To find the intersection of the lines A R and A′R, let y and x be the same for (1) and (2), and eliminate α by multiplication; hence,

$y^2 = -\dfrac{b_1^2}{a_1^2}\,(x^2 - a_1^2)$; or $a_1^2\,y^2 + b_1^2\,x^2 = a_1^2\,b_1^2$, and the locus of R is an ellipse whose axes are $2\,a_1$ and $2\,b_1$.

142. The equation $\alpha\,\alpha' = -\dfrac{b^2}{a^2}$ is remarkable, as showing that $\alpha\,\alpha'$ is the same, not only for different pairs of chords drawn to the extremities of the same diameter, but also for pairs of chords drawn to the extremities of any diameter; hence, if from the extremity of the axis major we can draw one chord A R parallel to Q P′, the supplemental chord R A′ will be parallel to Q P: this is possible in all cases, except when one chord is parallel or perpendicular to the axis.

143. To find the angle between two supplemental chords.

Let x, y be the co-ordinates of Q, and x' y' those of P,

$$\text{Then tan. P Q P}' = \frac{\alpha - \alpha'}{1 + \alpha\,\alpha'} = \frac{\dfrac{y - y'}{x - x'} - \dfrac{y + y'}{x + x'}}{1 - \dfrac{b^2}{a^2}} = \frac{2\,a^2}{a^2 - b^2}\;\frac{x'\,y - y'\,x}{x^2 - x'^2};$$

$$\text{or, } = -\frac{2\,b^2}{a^2 - b^2}\;\frac{x'\,y - y'\,x}{y^2 - y'^2}.$$

For the principal supplemental chords, we have $x' = a$, $y' = 0$;

$$\therefore \text{tan. A R A}' = -\frac{2\,b^2}{a^2 - b^2}\;\frac{a}{y}.$$

This value of the tangent being negative, the angle A R A′ is always obtuse, which is also evident, since all the points on the ellipse are within the circumscribing circle.

As y increases, the numerical value of the tangent decreases, or the angle increases (since the greater the obtuse angle, the less is its tangent); hence, the angle is a maximum when y is, that is, when $y = b$. This shows that the angle A B A′ is the greatest angle contained by the principal supplemental chords, and therefore by any supplemental chords. Also, its supplement B A B′ is the least angle contained by any supplemental chords. The angle between the chords being thus limited by the angles A′B A, B A B′, of which the former is greater, and the latter less, than a right angle, chords may be drawn containing any angle between these limits. This is done by describing a segment of a circle, containing the given angle, upon any diameter, except the axis, and joining the extremities of the diameter with the points of intersection of the ellipse and circle. Also, from the value of tan. P Q P′, it appears that, if the angle be a right angle, the two chords are perpendicular to the axes.

144. It was shown in (131.) that if θ and θ' were the angles which conjugate diameters make with the axis major, $\tan.\ \theta.\ \tan.\ \theta' = -\frac{b^2}{a^2}$, but α, α' being tangents of the angles which two supplemental chords make with the same axis, we have $\alpha\alpha' = -\frac{b^2}{a^2}$; $\therefore \tan.\ \theta.\ \tan.\ \theta' = \alpha\alpha'$; hence, if $\tan.\ \theta = \alpha$, we have $\tan.\ \theta' = \alpha'$; or if one diameter be parallel to any chord, the conjugate diameter is parallel to the supplemental chord.

145. Since supplemental chords can be drawn containing any angle within certain limits, conjugate diameters parallel to these chords may be drawn containing any given angle within the same limits.

Also, since the angle between the principal supplemental chords is always obtuse, the angle P C D between the conjugate diameters is also obtuse, and is the greatest when they are parallel to A B and A B′. In this case, being symmetrically situated with respect to the axes, they are equal to one another.

The magnitude of the equal conjugate diameters is found from the equation $a_1^2 + b_1^2 = a^2 + b^2$, $\therefore a_1^2 = \frac{a^2 + b^2}{2}$.

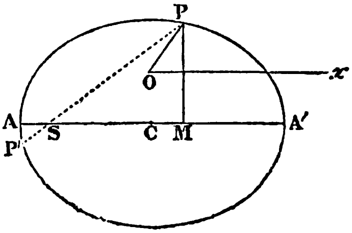
The equation to the ellipse referred to its equal conjugate diameters is $y^2 + x^2 = a_1^2$; however, this must not be confounded with the equation to the circle, which only assumes this form when referred to *rectangular* axes.

THE POLAR EQUATION.

146. Instead of an equation between rectangular co-ordinates x and y, we may obtain one between polar co-ordinates u and θ.

Let the curve be referred to the centre C, and to rectangular axes, and let the co-ordinates of the pole O be x' and y', θ the angle which the radius vector O P, or u, makes with a line O x parallel to the axis of x; then, by (61.), or by inspection of the figure, we have

$$y = y' + u \sin.\ \theta$$
$$x = x' + u \cos.\ \theta;$$



also $a^2 y^2 + b^2 x^2 = a^2 b^2$;

$\therefore$ by substitution, $a^2 (y' + u \sin.\theta)^2 + b^2 (x' + u \cos.\theta)^2 = a^2 b^2$;

Whence u may be found in terms of θ and constant quantities.

147. Let the centre be the pole:

$$\therefore x' = 0 \text{ and } y' = 0,$$

$$\therefore a^2 u^2 (\sin.\theta)^2 + b^2 u^2 (\cos.\theta)^2 = a^2 b^2;$$

$$u^2 = \frac{a^2 b^2}{a^2 (\sin.\theta)^2 + b^2 (\cos.\theta)^2} = \frac{a^2 b^2}{a^2 (\sin.\theta)^2 + (a^2 - a^2 e^2)(\cos.\theta)^2}$$

$$= \frac{a^2 b^2}{a^2 - a^2 e^2 (\cos.\theta)^2} = \frac{a^2 (1 - e^2)}{1 - e^2 (\cos.\theta)^2}.$$

148. Let the focus S be the pole:

$\therefore y' = 0,\ x' = -ae = -c$, and u becomes r;

hence the transformed equation (146.) becomes

$$a^2 (r \sin.\theta)^2 + b^2 (-c + r \cos.\theta)^2 = a^2 b^2;$$

$$\therefore a^2 r^2 (\sin.\theta)^2 + b^2 r^2 (\cos.\theta)^2 - 2 b^2 r c \cos.\theta + b^2 c^2 = a^2 b^2;$$

or, $a^2 r^2 (\sin.\theta)^2 + a^2 r^2 (\cos.\theta)^2 - c^2 r^2 (\cos.\theta)^2 - 2 b^2 r c \cos.\theta = a^2 b^2 - b^2 c^2 = b^4$ since $a^2 - b^2 = c^2$.

$$\text{or, } a^2 r^2 = c^2 r^2 (\cos.\theta)^2 + 2 b^2 r c \cos.\theta + b^4$$

$$= (c r \cos.\theta + b^2)^2;$$

$$\therefore a r = c r \cos.\theta + b^2$$

$$r = \frac{b^2}{a - c \cos.\theta} = \frac{a^2 (1 - e^2)}{a - a e \cos.\theta} = \frac{a (1 - e^2)}{1 - e \cos.\theta}.$$

149. Let any point on the curve be the pole:

Expanding the terms of the polar equation in (146.), and reducing by means of the equation $a^2 y'^2 + b^2 x'^2 = a^2 b^2$, we have

$$u = -2 \frac{a^2 y' \sin.\theta + b^2 x' \cos.\theta}{a^2 (\sin.\theta)^2 + b^2 (\cos.\theta)^2}.$$

If the pole is at A, we have $y' = 0$, and $x' = -a$,

$$\therefore u = \frac{2 b^2 a \cos.\theta}{a^2 (\sin.\theta)^2 + b^2 (\cos.\theta)^2} = \frac{2 a (1 - e^2) \cos.\theta}{1 - e^2 (\cos.\theta)^2}.$$

150. When the focus is the pole, the equation is often obtained directly from some known property of the curve.

Let $SP = r$, $CM = x$, and $ASP = \theta$,

then $SP = a + ex$ (109.)

$$= a + e(SM - SC)$$

$$= a + e(-r \cos.\theta - ae)$$

$$\therefore r + e r \cos.\theta = a - a e^2 \text{ and } r = \frac{a (1 - e^2)}{1 + e \cos.\theta}.$$

This is the equation generally used in astronomy, the focus S being the place of the sun, and the ellipse the approximate path of the planet.

Let $a\,(1 - e^2) = \frac{b^2}{a} = p$, where p is the parameter. (105.)

Then the last equation may be written under the following forms:

$$r = \frac{p}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{1 + e \cos.\theta} = \frac{p}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{1 - e + 2e\left(\cos.\frac{\theta}{2}\right)^2}$$

$$= \frac{p}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{(1 + e)\left(\cos.\frac{\theta}{2}\right)^2 + (1 - e)\left(\sin.\frac{\theta}{2}\right)^2}$$

If θ be measured, not from S A, but from a line passing through S, and making an angle α with S A, the polar equation is

$$r = \frac{p}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{1 + e \cos.(\theta - \alpha)}.$$

151. If P S meet the curve again P′, let S P′ $= r'$,

$$\text{then } r = \frac{p}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{1 + e \cos.\theta}$$

$$\text{and } r' = \frac{p}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{1 + e \cos.(\pi - \theta)} = \frac{p}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{1 - e \cos.\theta};$$

$$\therefore r + r' = \text{P P}' = \frac{p}{1 - e^2 (\cos.\theta)^2}$$

$$\text{and } r\,r' = \frac{p^2}{4} \cdot \frac{1}{1 - (e^2 \cos.\theta)^2} = \frac{p}{4}(r + r'),$$

or the rectangle S P, S P′ $= \frac{1}{4}$ of the rectangle under the principal parameter and focal chord.

152. Let C D, or b_1, be the semi-diameter parallel to S P, then (147.)

$$b_1^2 = \frac{a^2(1 - e^2)}{1 - e^2 (\cos.\theta)^2} = \frac{a}{2} \frac{p}{1 - e^2 (\cos.\theta)^2} = \frac{a}{2}(r + r'),$$

$$\therefore r + r = \frac{2\,b_1^2}{a};$$

that is, a focal chord at any point P, is a third proportional to the axis major and diameter to that chord.

CHAPTER IX.

THE HYPERBOLA.

153. In the discussion of the general equation of the second order, we observed that, referring the curve to the centre and rectangular axes, the equation to the hyperbola assumed the form

$$\left(\frac{a'}{-f'}\right)y^2 + \left(\frac{c'}{-f'}\right)x^2 = 1$$

where the co-efficients have different signs, 85. 86.

Let $\left(\frac{a'}{-f'}\right)$ be negative, then the equation becomes

$$-\left(\frac{a'}{-f'}\right)y^2 + \left(\frac{c'}{-f'}\right)x^2 = 1;$$

$$\text{or } \mathrm{P}\,y^2 - \mathrm{Q}\,x^2 = -1.$$

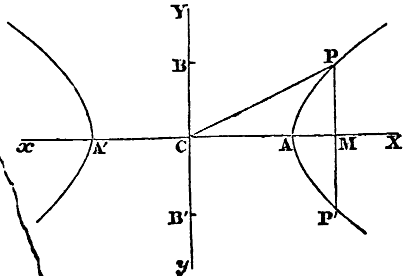
We now proceed to investigate this equation, and to deduce from it all the properties of the hyperbola.

154. Let the curve be referred to its centre C, and rectangular axes X x, Y y, meeting in C; C M $= x$, and M P $= y$; then, at the point where the curve cuts the axes, we have

$$y = 0,\ \mathrm{Q}\,x^2 = 1,\ \therefore x = \pm\frac{1}{\sqrt{\mathrm{Q}}},$$

$$x = 0,\ \mathrm{P}\,y^2 = -1,\ \therefore y = \pm\sqrt{\frac{-1}{\mathrm{P}}}.$$

In the axis of x take C A $= \frac{1}{\sqrt{\mathrm{Q}}}$, and CA$' = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{\mathrm{Q}}}$, and the curve cuts the axis X x in A and A; Since the value of y is impossible, the other axis never meets the curve; nevertheless we mark off two points B and B$'$, in that axis, whose distances from C are C B $= +\frac{1}{\sqrt{\mathrm{P}}}$ and C B$' = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{\mathrm{P}}}$.



Also if C A $= a$, and C B $= b$, we have $Q = \frac{1}{a^2}$, $P = \frac{1}{b^2}$; therefore the equation to the curve becomes

$$\frac{y^2}{b^2} - \frac{x^2}{a^2} = -1;$$

$$\text{or } a^2 y^2 - b^2 x^2 = -a^2 b^2;$$

$$\text{or } y^2 = \frac{b^2}{a^2}(x^2 - a^2)$$

155. From the last equation we have

$$y = \pm \frac{b}{a}\sqrt{x^2 - a^2}\ (1) \text{ and } x = \pm \frac{a}{b}\sqrt{y^2 + b^2}\ (2).$$

From (1) if x be less than $\pm a$, y is impossible; if, therefore, lines be drawn through A and A′, parallel to C Y, no part of the curve is found between these lines.

Again, for every value of x, greater than a, we have two real and equal values of y; that is, for any abscissa C M, greater than C A, we have two equal and opposite ordinates, M P, M P′.

Also as x increases from a to ∞, these values of y increase from 0 to $\pm\infty$; hence, we have two arcs A P, A P′, exactly equal and opposite to each other, and extending themselves indefinitely.

If x be negative, x^2 being positive, the same values of y must recur; hence, there are again two equal and opposite arcs which form another branch extending from A′ to ∞; thus the whole curve is divided into two equal parts by the axis of x.

From (2) it appears to be divided into two equal parts by the axis of y; hence it is symmetrical with respect to the axes; and its concavity is turned towards the axis of x, otherwise it might be cut by a straight line in more points than two, (71.)

156. If P be any point on the curve, we have

$$\text{C P} = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2} = \sqrt{x^2 + \frac{b^2}{a^2}(x^2 - a^2)} = \sqrt{\frac{a^2 + b^2}{a^2}x^2 - b^2};$$

hence C P is least when x is least, that is, when $x = a$, in which case C P becomes also equal to a; hence C A, or C A′, is the least line that can be drawn from the centre to the curve: thus, the axis A A′ is the least line that can be drawn through the centre to meet the curve. The other axis, B B′, never meets the curve.

In the equation $P y^2 - Q x^2 = -1$, the imaginary axis may be greater or less than the real one, according as Q is greater or less than P; hence the appellation of axis major cannot be generally applied to the real axis of the curve. In this treatise we shall call A A′ the transverse axis, and B B′ the conjugate axis.

157. The points A, A′ are called the vertices, or summits of the curve: either of these points may be taken for the origin by making proper substitutions.

Let A be the origin, A M $= x'$;

$$\text{Then } x = \text{C M} = \text{C A} + \text{A M} = a + x';$$

$$\therefore y^2 = \frac{b^2}{a^2}(x^2 - a^2) = \frac{b^2}{a^2}\{(a + x')^2 - a^2\} = \frac{b^2}{a^2}\{2\,a\,x' + x'^2\},$$

or, suppressing accents, $y^2 = \frac{b^2}{a^2}(2\,a\,x + x^2) = \frac{b^2}{a^2}x\,(2\,a + x)$.

This last equation is geometrically expressed by the following proportion:

The square upon M P : rectangle A M, M A′ :: the square upon B C : the square upon A C.

If the origin be at A′, the equation is $y^2 = \frac{b^2}{a^2}(x^2 - 2\,a\,x)$.

158. If $a = b$, the equation to the hyperbola becomes $y^2 - x^2 = -a^2$; this curve is called the equilateral hyperbola, and has, to the common hyperbola, the same relation that the circle has to the ellipse.

159. The analogy between the ellipse and hyperbola will be found to be very remarkable; the equations to the two curves differ only in the sign of b^2; for if, in the equation to the ellipse $a^2\,y^2 + b^2\,x^2 = a^2\,b^2$, we put $-b^2$ for b^2, we have the equation to the hyperbola: hence we might conclude that many of the algebraical results found in the one curve will be true for the other, upon changing b^2 into $-b^2$ in those results; and in fact this is the case, the same theorems are generally true for both, and may be proved in the same manner: for this reason we shall not enter at length into the demonstration of all the properties of the hyperbola, but merely put down the enunciations and results, with a reference at the end of each article to the corresponding one in the ellipse, except in those cases where there may be any modification required in the working. To prevent any doubt about the form of the figure, we shall insert figures in those places where they may be wanted; and, with this assistance, we trust that the present plan will offer no difficulty.

THE FOCUS.

160. The equation $y^2 = \frac{b^2}{a^2}(2\,a\,x + x^2)$ may be put under the form $y^2 = l\,x + \frac{l}{2\,a}x^2$, in which case the quantity $l = \frac{2\,b^2}{a}$ is called the principal parameter, or the Latus Rectum.

Since $l = \frac{2\,b^2}{a} = \frac{4\,b^2}{2\,a}$, the Latus Rectum is a third proportional to the transverse and conjugate axes.

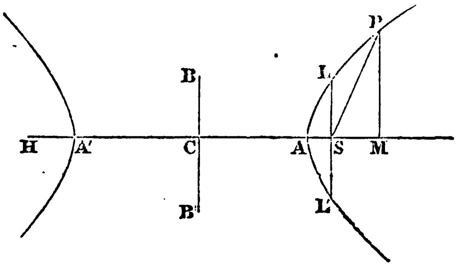
161. To find from what point in the transverse axis a double ordinate can be drawn equal to the Latus Rectum,

$$\text{Here } 4\,y^2 = l^2, \text{ or } \frac{4\,b^2}{a^2}(x^2 - a^2) = \frac{4\,b^4}{a^2};$$

$$\therefore x^2 - a^2 = b^2;$$

$$\text{or, } x^2 = a^2 + b^2;$$

$$\therefore x = \pm \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}.$$



Join A B, then $AB = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$; with centre C and radius A B describe a circle cutting the transverse axis in the points S and H, we have then $CS = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$, and $CH = -\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$; thus S and H are the points through either of which, if an ordinate as L S L′ be drawn, it is equal to the Latus Rectum.

The two points S and H, thus determined, are called the foci.

162. The fraction $\dfrac{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}}{a}$, which represents the ratio of C S to C A, is called the eccentricity: if this quantity, which is evidently greater than unity, be represented by the letter e, we have $\sqrt{a^2 + b^2} = a\,e$, whence $e^2 = \dfrac{a^2 + b^2}{a^2} = 1 + \dfrac{b^2}{a^2}$; $\therefore \dfrac{b^2}{a^2} = e^2 - 1$, and the equation to the hyperbola may be put under the form

$$y^2 = (e^2 - 1)(x^2 - a^2).$$

163. Since $a^2 + b^2 = a^2 e^2$, we have $b^2 = a^2 e^2 - a^2 = (a e - a)(a e + a)$;

Or the rectangle A S, S A′ = the square upon B C.

164. To find the distance from the focus to any point P in the curve, proceeding exactly as in (109.) we find

$$SP = e x - a,\ HP = e x + a;$$

Hence $HP - SP = 2a = AA'$, that is the difference of the distances of any point in the curve from the foci is equal to the transverse axis.

165. Conversely, To find the locus of a point, the difference of whose distances from two fixed points S and H is constant or equal $2a$.

If $SH = 2c$, the locus is an hyperbola, whose axes are $2a$ and $2\sqrt{a^2 + c^2}$, and whose foci are S and H. (110.)

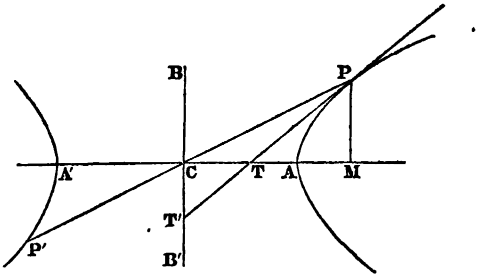
THE TANGENT.

166. To find the equation to the tangent at any point P (x'

The required equation obtained as in (111.) is

$$a^2 y y' - b^2 x x' = -a^2 b^2.$$

This form is easily recollected, since it may be obtained from the equation to the curve $a^2y^2 - b^2x^2 = -a^2b^2$, by putting yy' for y^2, and xx' for x^2.



167. To find the points where the tangent cuts the axes;

Let $y = 0$, $\therefore x = \frac{a^2}{x'} = \text{C T}$; similarly $y = \text{C T}' = -\frac{b^2}{y'}$; hence we have

The rectangle C T, C M = the square upon A C;
and The rectangle C T', M P = the square upon B C.

Since C T $\left(= \frac{a^2}{x'}\right)$ is always less than C A, the tangent to any point of the branch P A cuts the transverse axis between C and A.

The subtangent M T $= x' - \frac{a^2}{x'} = \frac{x'^2 - a^2}{x'}$. (115.)

The tangent at the extremity A of the transverse axis is perpendicular to that axis (116.).

If P C be produced to meet the curve again in P', the tangents at P and P' will be found to be parallel (116.).

168. To find the equation to the tangent at the extremity of the Latus Rectum,

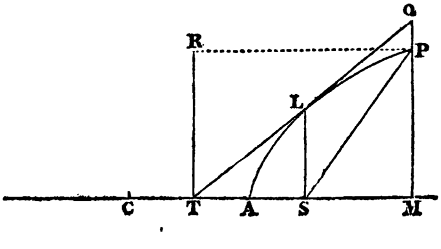
Generally the equation to the tangent is

$$a^2yy' - b^2xx' = -a^2b^2;$$

at L, $x' = ae$, $y' = \frac{b^2}{a}$;

$$\therefore a^2y\frac{b^2}{a} - b^2xae = -a^2b^2,$$

$$y = ex - a.$$



Let the ordinate y, or M Q, cut the curve in P, then we have S P $= e x - a$ (164.).

$$\therefore \text{M Q} = \text{S P}:$$

Also C T $= \frac{a}{e}$, hence from T draw T R perpendicular to A C, and from P draw P R parallel to A C, then we have

$$\text{P R} = \text{M T} = \text{M C} - \text{C T} = x - \frac{a}{e} = \frac{e x - a}{e} = \frac{1}{e}.\text{S P}.$$

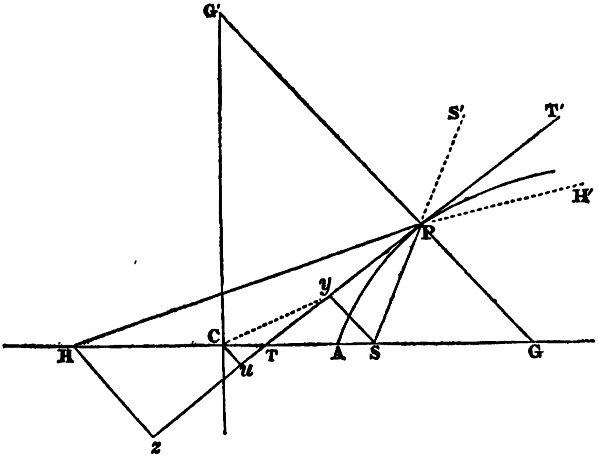
Consequently, the distances of any point P from S, and from the line T R, are in the constant ratio of $e : 1$.

The line T R is called the directrix.

If $x = 0$, we have $y = -a$; hence the tangent at the extremity of the Latus Rectum cuts the axis of y at the point where the circle on the transverse axis cuts the axis of y.

169. To find the length of the perpendicular from the focus on the tangent.

Let S y, H z be the perpendiculars on the tangent P T.



Taking the expression in (48.) we have

$$p = -\frac{y_1 - \alpha x_1 - d}{\sqrt{1 + \alpha^2}}$$

here $y_1 = 0$ and $x_1 = a e$ are co-ordinates of the point S, and $y = \alpha x + d$ is the equation to P y; but the equation to P y (166.) is also

$$y = \frac{b^2 x'}{a^2 y'} x - \frac{b^2}{y'} \therefore \alpha = \frac{b^2 x'}{a^2 y'} \text{ and } d = -\frac{b^2}{y'};$$

$$p = -\frac{-\frac{b^2 x'}{a^2 y'} a e + \frac{b^2}{y'}}{\sqrt{\left\{1 + \frac{b^4 x'^2}{a^4 y'^2}\right\}}} = +\frac{a b^2 (e x' - a)}{\sqrt{\{a^4 y'^2 + b^4 x'^2\}}}$$

$$= \frac{a b^2 (e x' - a)}{a b \sqrt{\{e^2 x'^2 - a^2\}}} = b \sqrt{\frac{e x' - a}{e x' + a}}.$$

Let S P $= r$, and H P $= 2a + r = r' \therefore p = b\sqrt{\frac{r}{r'}}$, or $p^2 = b^2 \frac{r}{2a+r}$.

Similarly if H $z = p'$, we have $p'^2 = b^2 \frac{r'}{r}$.

By multiplication we have $p\,p' = b^2$; : hence

The rectangle S y, H z = the square upon B C.

170. To find the locus of y or z in the last article.

The equation to the curve at P is $a^2 y'^2 - b^2 x'^2 = - a^2 b^2$.

The equation to the tangent at P is $a^2 y y' - b^2 x x' = - a^2 b^2$.

The equation to S y is $y = \frac{- a^2 y'}{b^2 x'} (x - c)$.

By eliminating x' and y', exactly as in (120.), we arrive at the equation

$$a^2 = y^2 + x^2;$$

Hence the locus of y is a circle described on the transverse axis as diameter.

171. To find the angle which the focal distance S P makes with the tangent P T.

The equation to the tangent is $y = \frac{b^2 x'_1}{a^2 y'} x - \frac{b^2}{y'}$, and the equation to S P is, $y - y' = \frac{y'}{x' - c}(x - x')$,

$$\text{hence tan. S P T} = \text{tan. (P S X} - \text{P T X)}$$

$$= \frac{\frac{y'}{x'-c} - \frac{b^2 x'}{a^2 y'}}{1 + \frac{b^2 x'}{a^2 y'}\,\frac{y'}{x'-c}} = \frac{a^2 y'^2 - b^2 x'^2 + b^2 c x'}{a^2 y' x' - a^2 c y' + b^2 x' y'}$$

$$= \frac{b^2 (c x' - a^2)}{y' c (c x' - a^2)} = \frac{b^2}{c y'}.$$

Similarly tan. H P T $= \frac{b^2}{c y'}$, $\therefore$ the angles S P T, H P T are equal; thus the tangent makes equal angles with the focal distances.

Produce S P to S′, then it is a property of light, that if a ray proceeding from H be reflected by the line T P T′, the angle S′ P T′ of the reflected ray will equal the angle H P T. Now, in the hyperbola, these angles are equal; hence if a light be placed at H, all rays which are incident on the curve will be reflected as if diverging from S; or if a body of rays proceeding to S be incident on the curve, they will converge to H. Hence these points S and H are called foci.

This important property of the curve is also thus proved from article (169.),

$$\text{S } y = p = b\sqrt{\frac{r}{r'}}, \text{ and H } z = p' = b\sqrt{\frac{r'}{r}};$$

$$\therefore S y : H z :: r \cdot\cdot r' :: S P : H P;$$

$\therefore$ angle $S P y = H P z$, and the tangent makes equal angles with the focal distances *.

172. To find the length of the perpendicular $C u$ from the centre on the tangent.

$$p = -\frac{y_1 - \alpha x_1 - d}{\sqrt{1 + \alpha^2}},$$

here $y_1 = 0$, $x_1 = 0$, $\alpha = \frac{b^2 x'}{a^2 y'}$, and $d = -\frac{b^2}{y'}$, $\therefore C u = \frac{a b}{\sqrt{r r'}}$

173. To find the locus of u.

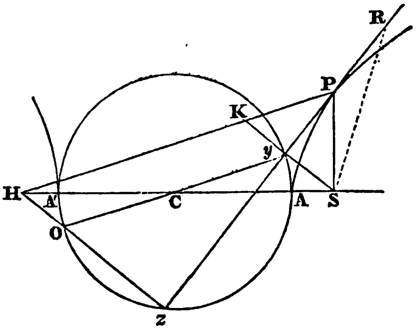
The equation to $C u$ is $y = -\frac{a^2 y'}{b^2 x'} x$, eliminating x' y' from this equation, and the equation to the tangent, we find, as in (123.), the resulting equation to be $a^2 x^2 - b^2 y^2 = (x^2 + y^2)^2$, which cannot be discussed at present.

174. From the equation to the tangent, and that to C P, we find, as in (124.),

$$\tan. C P T = \frac{a^2 b^2}{c^2 x' y'}.$$

---

* The following geometrical method of drawing a tangent to the hyperbola, and proving that the locus of the perpendicular from the focus on the tangent is the circle on the transverse axis, will be found useful.



Let A P be the hyperbola, P any point on it; join S P and H P, and in H P take P K = P S; bisect the angle S P K by the line $P y z$, and join S K, cutting $P y$ in y.

1. $P y$ is a tangent to the hyperbola; for if R be any other point in the line $P y$, we have H R − S R = H R − K R is less than H K (Geom. i. 10) less than $2 a$, hence R, and every other point in $P y$, is without the curve.

2. The locus of y is the circle on the transverse axis: draw $H z$ parallel to $S y$, and join $C y$; then, because the triangles $S P y$, $K P y$ are equal, we have the angle $S y P$ a right angle, or $S y$ and $H z$ are perpendicular to the tangent. Also since $S y = K y$, and $S C = C H$, we have $C y$ parallel to H K, and $C y = \frac{1}{2} H K = \frac{1}{2} (H P - S P) = C A$.

3. The rectangle $S y$, $H z$ = the square on B C. Let z H meet the circle again in O, and join C O; then the line $O C y$ is a straight line and a diameter, hence the triangles $C S y$, C H O are equal, and the rectangle $S y$, $H z$ = the rectangle H O, $H z$ = the rectangle H A', H A = the square upon B C.

4. Let $S P = r$, $H P = 2 a + r$, $S y = p$ and $H z = p'$, then $p^2 = \frac{b^2 r}{2 a + r}$; for by similar triangles, $S y : S P :: H z : H P$, $\therefore p = \frac{r}{2 a + r} p'$, and, as above, $p p' = b^2$, $\therefore p^2 = \frac{b^2 r}{2 a + r}$.

From $\mathrm{C}\,u = \mathrm{C}\,y \sin.\, \mathrm{C}\,y\,u$, we have

$$\frac{a\,b}{\sqrt{r\,r'}} = a \sin.\mathrm{C}\,y\,u \;\therefore\; \sin.\mathrm{C}\,y\,u = \frac{b}{\sqrt{r\,r'}}.$$

Also from $\mathrm{H}\,z = \mathrm{H\,P} \sin.\, \mathrm{H\,P}\,z$, we have

$$b\sqrt{\frac{r'}{r}} = r' \sin.\mathrm{H\,P}\,z,\; \therefore\; \sin.\mathrm{H\,P}\,z = \frac{b}{\sqrt{r\,r'}},$$

$\therefore$ angle $\mathrm{C}\,y\,u =$ angle $\mathrm{H\,P}\,z$ and $\mathrm{C}\,y$ is parallel to H P.

And if C E be drawn parallel to the tangent P T, and meeting H P in E, we have $\mathrm{P\,E} = \mathrm{C}\,y = \mathrm{A\,C}$.

THE NORMAL.

175. The equation to the line passing through the point P $(x'\,y')$, and perpendicular to the tangent $\left(y = \frac{b^2\,x'}{a^2\,y'}\,x - \frac{b^2}{y'}\right)$ is

$$y - y' = -\frac{a^2\,y'}{b^2\,x'}\,(x - x').$$

To find where the normal P G cuts the axes.

$$\text{Let } y = 0 \;\therefore\; -y' = -\frac{a^2\,y'}{b^2\,x'}\,(x - x') \;\therefore\; x = x' + \frac{b^2\,x'}{a^2}$$

$$= \frac{a^2 + b^2}{a^2}\,x' = e^2\,x' = \mathrm{C\,G}.$$

$$\text{Let } x = 0 \;\therefore\; y = y' + \frac{a^2\,y'}{b^2} = \frac{a^2 + b^2}{b^2}\,y' = \frac{a^2\,e^2}{b^2}\,y' = \mathrm{C\,G'}.$$

Also the subnormal $\mathrm{M\,G} = x - x' = \frac{b^2\,x'}{a^2}$; and $\mathrm{S\,G} = e.\,\mathrm{S\,P}$.

176. From the above values of C G, C G′, and M G′, we may demonstrate that $\mathrm{P\,G} = \frac{b}{a}\sqrt{r\,r'}$, $\mathrm{P\,G'} = \frac{a}{b}\sqrt{r\,r'}$, and consequently that

The rectangle P G, P G′ $= r\,r' =$ the rectangle S P, H P.

Also $\mathrm{S\,G'} = \frac{a\,e}{b}\sqrt{r\,r'}$, $\mathrm{G\,G'} = \frac{a\,e^2}{b}\sqrt{r\,r'}$, and $\therefore\; \mathrm{G\,G'} = e.\mathrm{SG'}$.

177. Since the tangent makes equal angles with the focal distances, the normal, which is perpendicular to the tangent, also makes equal angles with the focal distances, one of them being first produced as to H′. This theorem may be directly proved from the above value of C G; for $\mathrm{S\,G} : \mathrm{H\,G} :: e^2 x' - a\,e : e^2 x' + a\,e :: e\,x' - a : e\,x' + a :: \mathrm{S\,P} : \mathrm{H\,P}$, hence the angle S P H′ is bisected by the line P G.

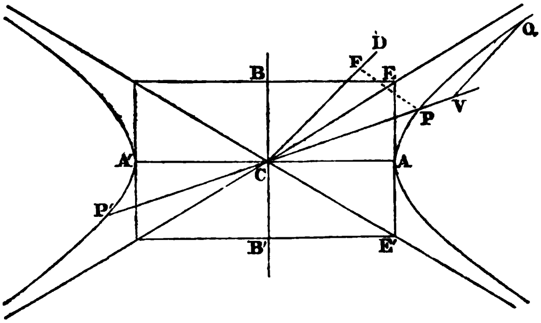
THE DIAMETERS.

178. It may be proved as for the ellipse (130.), that all the diameters of the hyperbola pass through the centre, and that any line through the

centre is a diameter. If $y = \alpha x + c$ be the equation to any chord, $a^2 \alpha y - b^2 x = 0$ is the equation to the diameter bisecting all chords parallel to $y = \alpha x + c$.

179. In the ellipse all the diameters must necessarily meet the curve; but this is not the case in the hyperbola, as will appear by finding the co-ordinates of intersection of the diameter and the curve.

Let $y = \beta x$ be the equation to a diameter C P, and substitute this value of y in the equation to the curve.



$$a^2 y^2 - b^2 x^2 = - a^2 b^2,$$
$$\therefore a^2 \beta^2 x^2 - b^2 x^2 = - a^2 b^2,$$
$$x^2 = \frac{a^2 b^2}{b^2 - a^2 \beta^2},$$
$$\therefore x = \pm \frac{a\, b}{\sqrt{b^2 - a^2 \beta^2}}.$$

These values are impossible, if $a^2 \beta^2$ is greater than b^2, that is, if β is greater than $\frac{b}{a}$; and if $\beta = \pm \frac{b}{a}$, the diameter meets the curve only at an infinite distance. The limits of the intersecting diameters are thus determined; through A, B and B′ draw lines parallel to the axes meeting in E and E′, then tan. E C A $= \frac{b}{a}$, and tan. E′ C A $= - \frac{b}{a}$, hence C E and C E′ produced are the lines required. Hence, in order that a diameter meet the curve, it must be drawn within the angle E C E′; thus the line C D never meets the curve.

The curve is symmetrical with respect to these lines C E, C E′, since the axis bisects the angle E C E′.

180. The hyperbola has an infinite number of pairs of conjugate diameters. This is proved by referring the equation to other axes by means of the formulas of transformation (57.)

$$y = x' \sin.\theta + y' \sin.\theta',$$
$$x = x' \cos.\theta + y' \cos.\theta';$$

hence the equation $a^2 y^2 - b^2 x^2 = - a^2 b^2$ becomes

$$\{a^2 (\sin.\theta')^2 - b^2 (\cos.\theta')^2\} y'^2 + \{a^2 (\sin.\theta)^2 - b^2 (\cos.\theta)^2\} x'^2$$
$$+ 2 \{a^2 \sin.\theta \sin.\theta' - b^2 \cos.\theta \cos.\theta'\} x' y' = - a^2 b^2.$$

In order that this equation be of the conjugate form, let the co-efficient of $y' x' = 0$,

$$\therefore \; a^2 \sin.\theta \sin.\theta' - b^2 \cos.\theta \cos.\theta' = 0,$$

$$\text{or,} \quad \tan.\theta \tan.\theta' = \frac{b^2}{a^2}.$$

Hence for any value of θ, we have a real value of θ', that is, there is an infinite number of pairs of axes to which, if the curve be referred, its equation is of the required conjugate form.

If $\tan.\theta$ be less than $\frac{b}{a}$, $\tan.\theta'$ must be greater than $\frac{b}{a}$, that is, if one diameter C P, in the last figure, meets the curve, the conjugate diameter C D does not; therefore in each system of conjugate diameters one is imaginary. Also, since the product of the tangents is positive, both angles are acute, or both obtuse; in the figure they are both acute, but for the opposite branch they must be both obtuse.

181. As in article (132.), it appears that there can be only one system of rectangular conjugate diameters.

182. The equation to the curve is now

$$\{a^2 (\sin.\theta')^2 - b^2 (\cos.\theta')^2\} y'^2 + \{a^2 (\sin.\theta)^2 - b^2 (\cos.\theta)^2\} x'^2 = -a^2 b^2.$$

If we successively make $y' = 0$, and $x' = 0$, we have the distances from the origin to the points in which the curve cuts the new axes; but as we already know (180.) that one of these new axes never meets the curve, we must represent one of these distances by an imaginary quantity.

Let the axis of x' meet the curve at a distance a_1 from the centre, and let the length of the other semi-axis be b_1 connected with the symbol $\sqrt{-1}$, that is, let the new conjugate diameters be $2\,a_1$ and $2\,b_1 \sqrt{-1}$, then we have

$$y = 0 \;\therefore\; \{a^2 (\sin.\theta)^2 - b^2 (\cos.\theta)^2\} a_1^2 = -a^2 b^2,$$

$$x = 0 \;\therefore\; \{a^2 (\sin.\theta')^2 - b^2 (\cos.\theta')^2\} (-b_1^2) = -a^2 b^2,$$

And the transformed equation becomes

$$\frac{a^2 b^2}{b_1^2} y'^2 - \frac{a^2 b^2}{a_1^2} x'^2 = -a^2 b^2,$$

$$\text{or,} \quad \frac{y'^2}{b_1^2} - \frac{x'^2}{a_1^2} = -1,$$

$$\text{or,} \quad a_1^2 y'^2 - b_1^2 x'^2 = -a_1^2 b_1^2.$$

183. From the transformation we obtain the three following equations:

$$a_1^2 \{a^2 (\sin.\theta)^2 - b^2 (\cos.\theta)^2\} = -a^2 b^2 \qquad (1),$$

$$b_1^2 \{a^2 (\sin.\theta')^2 - b^2 (\cos.\theta')^2\} = +a^2 b^2 \qquad (2),$$

$$\left.\begin{aligned} &a^2 \sin.\theta \sin.\theta' - b^2 \cos.\theta \cos.\theta' = 0, \\ &\text{or,} \quad \tan.\theta \tan.\theta' = \frac{b^2}{a^2} \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad (3).$$

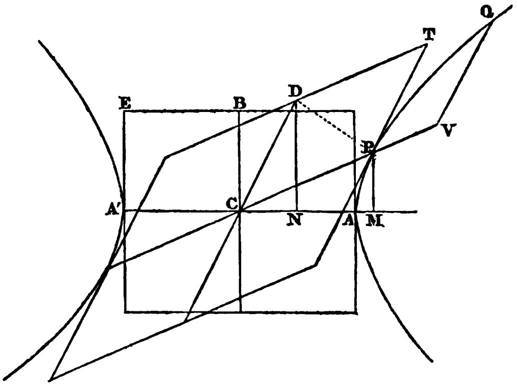
Following the steps exactly as in article (134.), or, which amounts to the same thing, putting $-b^2$ for b^2, and $-b_1^2$ for b_1^2 all through that article, we arrive at the result

$$a_1^2 - b_1^2 = a^2 - b^2,$$

or, the difference of the squares upon the conjugate diameters is equal to the difference of the squares upon the axes.

184. Again, multiplying (1) and (2) together, and (3) by itself, then subtracting the results, and reducing, as in the article (135.), we have

$$a_1\, b_1 \sin.\, (\theta' - \theta) = a\, b.$$



Now $\theta' - \theta$ is the angle P C D between the conjugate diameters C P and C D; hence, drawing straight lines at the extremities of the conjugate diameters, parallel to those diameters, we have, from the above equation, the parallelogram P C D T = the rectangle A′ C B E, and hence the whole parallelogram thus inscribed in the figure is equal to the rectangle contained by the axes *.

185. Returning to article (182.), the equation to the curve, suppressing the accents on x' and y', as no longer necessary, is

$$a_1^2\, y_1^2 - b_1^2\, x^2 = -\, a_1^2 b_1^2;$$

---

* The theorems in articles 183 and 184 may be proved also in the following manner:—

Referring the curve to its rectangular axes, as in art. (187.), let the co-ordinates of P be x' and y'; then the equation to C D is $a^2\, y\, y' - b^2\, x\, x' = 0$, and eliminating x and y between this equation and that to the curve $(a^2\, y^2 - b^2\, x^2 = -\, a^2\, b^2)$ we have the co-ordinates C N and D N, independent of the sign $\sqrt{-1}$, with which they are both affected,

$$\text{C N} = x = \frac{a\, y'}{b}, \text{ and D N} = y = \frac{b\, x'}{a};$$

Hence we have

$$a_1^2 - b_1^2 = x'^2 + y'^2 - x^2 - y^2 = x'^2 + y'^2 - \frac{a^2\, y'^2}{b^2} - \frac{b^2\, x'^2}{a^2} = \frac{b^2\, x'^2 - a^2\, y'^2}{b^2}$$

$$+ \frac{a^2\, y'^2 - b^2\, x'^2}{a^2} = \frac{a^2 b^2}{b^2} + \frac{-\, a^2\, b^2}{a^2} = a^2 - b^2.$$

Also the triangle P C D = the trapezium P M N D + the triangle D C N − the triangle P C M

$$= (x' - x)\, \frac{y + y'}{2} + \frac{x\, y - x'\, y'}{2} = \frac{x'\, y - y'\, x}{2} = \frac{1}{2} \left\{ x' \frac{b\, x'}{a} - y' \frac{a\, y'}{b} \right\}$$

$$= \frac{b^2\, x'^2 - a^2\, y'^2}{2\, a\, b} = \frac{a^2\, b^2}{2\, a\, b} = \frac{a\, b}{2},$$

therefore the parallelogram P C D T $= a\, b$.

In the last figure, C P $= a_1$, C D $= b_1$, C V $= x$ and Q V $= y$: Putting the equation into the form

$$y^2 = \frac{b_1^2}{a_1^2}(x^2 - a_1^2) = \frac{b_1^2}{a_1^2}(x - a_1)(x + a_1),$$

we have the square upon Q V : the rectangle P V, V P′ :: the square upon C D : the square upon C P.

186. The equation to the tangent at any point Q $(x' y')$ is

$$a_1^2\, y\, y' - b_1^2\, x\, x' = -a_1^2 b_1^2.$$

187. Let the curve be referred to its axes C A, C B, and let the co-ordinates of P be x' y', then the equation to C P being $y = \frac{y'}{x'}x$, the equation to C D is $y = x \tan. \theta' = x \frac{b^2}{a^2} \cot. \theta = \frac{b^2\, x'}{a^2\, y'}\, x$, or,

$$a^2\, y\, y' - b^2\, x\, x' = 0.$$

But the equation to the tangent at P is

$$a^2\, y\, y' - b^2\, x\, x' = -a^2 b^2;$$

hence C D, or the diameter conjugate to C P, is parallel to the tangent at P.

The equation to the conjugate diameter is the same as that to the tangent, omitting the last term $-a^2 b^2$.

188. Let x' and y' be the rectangular co-ordinates of P; then from the equation $a_1^2 - b_1^2 = a^2 - b^2$, we have

$$b_1^2 = a_1^2 - a^2 + b^2 = x'^2 + y'^2 - a^2 + b^2 = x'^2 + \left(\frac{b^2}{a^2}x'^2 - b^2\right) - a^2 + b^2$$

$$= \frac{a^2 + b^2}{a^2}x'^2 - a^2 = e^2 x'^2 - a^2 = (e\, x' - a)(e\, x' + a) = r\, r';$$

That is, the square upon the conjugate diameter C D = the rectangle under the focal distances S P and H P.

189. If P F be drawn perpendicular from P upon the conjugate C D, (see the last figure but one,) we have the rectangle P F, C D $= a\, b$, (184.).

$$\therefore \text{P F} = \frac{a\, b}{b_1} = \frac{a\, b}{\sqrt{a_1^2 - a^2 + b^2}} = \frac{a\, b}{\sqrt{r\, r'}};\text{*}$$

Also P G $= \frac{b}{a}\sqrt{r\, r'}$, and P G′ $= \frac{a}{b}\sqrt{r\, r'}$,

Hence the rectangle P G, P F = the square on B C;

And the rectangle P G′, P F = the square on A C;

the rectangle P G, P G′ = the square on C D.

---

* distance C R $= u$, and $p =$ the perpendicular from the centre on the tangent, t ation is

$$p^2 = \frac{a^2\, b^2}{u^2 - a^2 + b^2}.$$

SUPPLEMENTAL CHORDS.

190. Two straight lines drawn from a point on the curve to the extremities of a diameter are called supplemental chords; they are called principal supplemental chords if that diameter be the transverse axis.

The equations to a pair of chords are

$$y - y' = \alpha\,(x - x')$$
$$y + y' = \alpha'\,(x + x');$$

Whence $\alpha\,\alpha' = \frac{b^2}{a^2}$ as in (141.); hence the product of the tangents of the angles which a pair of supplemental chords makes with the transverse axis is constant; the converse is proved as in 141.

191. The angle between two supplemental chords is found from the expression

$$\text{tan. } P\,Q\,P' = \frac{2\,b^2}{a^2 + b^2}\,\frac{x'y - y'x}{y^2 - y'^2}.$$

And, if A R, A′ R be principal supplemental chords drawn to any point R on the curve,

$$\text{tan. } A\,R\,A' = \frac{2\,a\,b^2}{(a^2 + b^2)\,y}.$$

The angle A R A′ is always acute, and diminishes from a right angle to 0; the supplemental angle A A′ R′ increases at the same time from a right angle to 180°; hence, the angle between the supplemental chords may be any angle between 0 and 180°.

Chords may be drawn containing any angle between these limits, by describing on any diameter, except the axes, a segment of a circle containing the given angle, and then joining the extremities of the diameter with the point where the circle intersects the hyperbola. And therefore principal supplemental chords parallel to these may be drawn.

192. Conjugate diameters are parallel to supplemental chords (144.); and therefore they may be drawn containing any angle between 0 and 90°.

193. There are no equal conjugate diameters in the hyperbola, but in that particular curve where $b = a$, we have the equation

$$a_1^2 - b_1^2 = a^2 - b^2 = 0;$$

hence the conjugate diameters a_1 and b_1 are always equal to each other.

The equation to this curve, called the equilateral hyperbola, is

$$y^2 - x^2 = -\,a^2.$$

THE ASYMPTOTES.

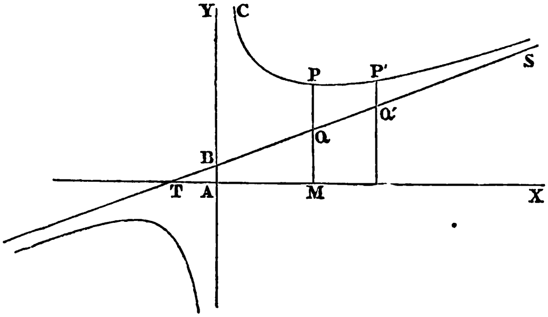
194. We have now shown that most of the properties of the ellipse apply to the hyperbola with a very slight variation: there is, however, a whole class of theorems quite peculiar to the latter curve, and these arise from the curious form of the branches extending to an infinite distance; it appears from the equation $\text{tan. }\theta\;.\;\tan\theta' = \frac{b^2}{a^2}$ in (180.), that as $\text{tan. }\theta$

approaches to $\frac{b}{a}$, tan. θ' approaches also to $\frac{b}{a}$, and thus, as a point P recedes along the curve from the origin, the conjugate diameters for that point approach towards a certain line C E, fig. (179.), and finally at an infinite distance come indefinitely near to that line.

We now proceed to show that the curve itself continually approaches to the same line C E, without ever actually coinciding with it. But as this species of line is not confined to the hyperbola, we shall state the theory generally.

195. Let C P P′ be a curve whose equation has been reduced to the form

$$y = a x + b + \frac{c}{x};$$



And let T B S be the line whose equation is

$$y = a x + b.$$

For any value of x we can find from this last equation a corresponding ordinate M Q, and by adding $\frac{c}{x}$ to M Q, we determine a point P in the curve: similarly we can determine any number of corresponding points (P′, Q′, &c.) in the curve and straight line.

Since $\frac{c}{x}$ decreases as x increases, the line P′ Q′ will be less than P Q, and the greater x becomes, the smaller does the corresponding P′ Q′ become; so that when x is infinitely great, P′ Q′ is infinitely small, or the curve approaches indefinitely near to the line T B S, but yet never actually meets it: hence T B S is called an asymptote to the curve, from three Greek words signifying "never coinciding."

The equation to the asymptote T B S is $y = a x + b$, or is the equation to the curve, with the exception of the term involving the inverse power of x.

196. The reasoning would have been as conclusive if there had been more inverse powers of x; and in general if the equation to a curve can be put into the form

$$y = \&c. + m x^3 + n x^2 + a x + b + \frac{c}{x} + \frac{d}{x^2} + \&c.$$

Then the equation to the curvilinear asymptote is

$$y = \&c. + m x^3 + n x^2 + a x + b$$

Also the equation $y = \&c. + m x^3 + n x^2 + a x + b + \frac{c}{x}$ gives a curve much more asymptotic than the preceding equation, and hence arises a series of curves, each " more nearly coinciding" with the original curve.

197. Let us apply this method to lines of the second order, whose general equation is (75.)

$$y = -\frac{b x + d}{2 a} \pm \frac{1}{2 a} \sqrt{\{(b^2 - 4 a c) x^2 + 2 (b d - 2 a e) x + d^2 - 4 a f\}}$$

$$= -\frac{b x + d}{2 a} \pm \sqrt{\{m x^2 + n x + p\}}, \text{ by substitution,}$$

$$= -\frac{b x + d}{2 a} \pm x \sqrt{m} \left\{1 + \frac{n x + p}{m x^2}\right\}^{\frac{1}{2}},$$

$$= -\frac{b x + d}{2 a} \pm x \sqrt{m} \left\{1 + \tfrac{1}{2}\left(\frac{n x + p}{m x^2}\right) - \tfrac{1}{8}\left(\frac{n x + p}{m x^2}\right)^2 + \&c.\right\}$$

$$= -\frac{b x + d}{2 a} \pm \sqrt{m}\left\{x + \tfrac{1}{2}\frac{n}{m}\right\} \pm \frac{\text{constant terms}}{\text{powers of } x}.$$

Hence the equation to the asymptote is

$$y = -\frac{b x + d}{2 a} \pm \sqrt{m}\left\{x + \tfrac{1}{2}\frac{n}{m}\right\}$$

$$= -\frac{b x + d}{2 a} \pm \frac{\sqrt{b^2 - 4 a c}}{2 a}\left\{x + \frac{b d - 2 a c}{b^2 - 4 a c}\right\}$$

Now $b^2 - 4 a c$ is negative in the ellipse, and therefore there is no locus to the above equation in this case; also if $b^2 - 4 a c = 0$, the equation to the asymptote, found as above, will contain the term $\sqrt{x}$, and therefore will belong to a curvilinear asymptote; hence the hyperbola is the only one of the three curves which admits of a rectilinear asymptote.

It appears from the ± sign, that there are two asymptotes, and that the diameter $y = -\frac{b x + d}{2 a}$ bisects them. Also these asymptotes pass through the centre; for giving to x the value $\frac{2 a e - b d}{b^2 - 4 a c}$, we have

$$y = -\frac{b x + d}{2 a} = \frac{2 c d - b e}{b^2 - 4 a c},$$

and these values of x and y are the co-ordinates of the centre (80.).

198. If the equation want either of the terms x^2 or y^2, a slight operation will enable us to express the equation in a series of inverse powers of y or x; thus if the equation be

$$b x y + c x^2 + d y + e x + f = 0,$$

we have $y = -\dfrac{c x^2 + e x + f}{b x + d} = -\dfrac{c x^2 + e x + f}{b x\left(1 + \dfrac{d}{b x}\right)}$

$$= -\frac{c x^2 + e x + f}{b x}\left(1 + \frac{d}{b x}\right)^{-1}$$

$$= -\left(\frac{c x}{b} + \frac{e}{b} + \frac{f}{b x}\right)\left(1 - \frac{d}{b x} + \left(\frac{d}{b x}\right)^2 -, \&c.\right)$$

Hence the equation to the asymptote, found by multiplying and neglecting inverse powers of x, is

$$y = -\frac{c x}{b} - \frac{e}{b} + \frac{c d}{b^2},$$

$$\text{or,}\quad b y + c x = \frac{c d - b e}{b}:$$

The other asymptote is determined by the consideration that if, for any finite value of x, we obtain a real infinite value of y, that value of x determines the position of an asymptote.

Here when $b x + d = 0$, we have $y = \infty$; hence a line drawn parallel to the axis of y, and through the point $x = -\dfrac{d}{b}$, is the required asymptote.

If the equation be

$$a y^2 + b x y + d y + e x + f = 0,$$

the equations to the asymptotes are

$$a y + b x = \frac{a e - b d}{b}, \text{ and } b y + e = 0;$$

and the second asymptote is parallel to the axis of y.

If the equation be

$$b x y + d y + e x + f = 0,$$

the equations to the asymptotes are

$$b x + d = 0, \text{ and } b y + e = 0;$$

the former asymptote being parallel to the axis of y, and the latter parallel to that of x.

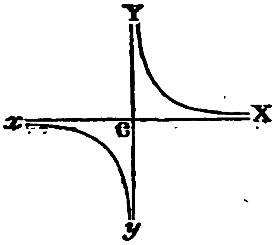
199. Lastly, if the equation be

$$b x y + f = 0,$$

the asymptotes are then the axes themselves, and the curve is referred to its centre and asymptotes as axes.

The position of the curve in this case is directly obtained from the equation $y = -\dfrac{f}{b x} = \dfrac{m}{x}$, by substitution.

Let C X and C Y be the axes, then for $x = 0$, $y = \infty$; as x increases lecreases, and when $x = \infty$, $y = 0$; hence we have the branch Y X.



For x negative, y is negative; and as x increases from 0 to ∞, y decreases from ∞ to 0; hence another branch $y\,x$, equal and similar to the former.

200. To find the equation to the asymptotes from the equation to the hyperbola referred to its centre and axes,

$$y = \pm\frac{b}{a}\sqrt{x^2 - a^2} = \pm\frac{b}{a}x\sqrt{1 - \frac{a^2}{x^2}} = \pm\frac{b}{a}x\left\{1 - \frac{1}{2}\frac{a^2}{x^2} +, \&c.\right\}$$

Hence the equation to the asymptotes is

$$y = \pm\frac{b}{a}x.$$

To draw these lines, complete the parallelogram on the principal axes (see the figure, art. 179.); the diagonals of this parallelogram are the loci of the last equation, and therefore are the asymptotes required: thus C E and C E′, when produced, are the asymptotes.

The equation to the asymptotes, referred to the centre and rectangular axes, is readily remembered, since it is the same as the equation to the curve without the last term; the two equations are

$$a^2y^2 - b^2x^2 = -a^2b^2, \text{ to the curve,}$$
$$a^2y^2 - b^2x^2 = 0 \quad\quad, \text{ to the asymptotes.}$$

If the curve be referred to conjugate axes, the equations are

$$a_1^2y^2 - b_1^2x^2 = -a_1^2b_1^2, \text{ to the curve,}$$
$$a_1^2y^2 - b_1^2x^2 = 0 \quad\quad, \text{ to the asymptotes.}$$

201. If $b = a$, the equation to the hyperbola referred to its centre and rectangular axes is $y^2 - x^2 = -a^2$, therefore the equation to the asymptotes is $y^2 - x^2 = 0$, or $y = \pm x$; hence these asymptotes cut the axes at an angle of 45°, or the angle between them is 90°; hence the equilateral hyperbola is also called the rectangular hyperbola.

202. If the curve be referred to its vertex A and rectangular axes, the equation to the curve is

$$y = \pm\frac{b}{a}(x^2 - 2ax)^{\frac{1}{2}} = \pm\frac{b}{a}x\left(1 + \frac{2a}{x}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}},$$

and, expanding and neglecting inverse powers of x, the equation to the asymptotes is

$$y = \pm\left(\frac{b}{a}x + b\right).$$

203. If we take the equation to any line $\left(y = \frac{b}{a}x + c\right)$ parallel to the asymptote, and eliminate y between this equation and the equation to the curve, we find only one value of x; and thus a straight line parallel to the asymptote cuts the hyperbola only in one point.

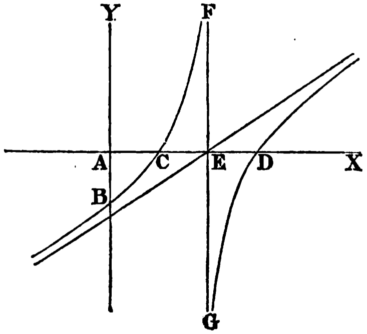
204. In article (77.) it was stated that, in some cases, the form of the curve could not be readily ascertained: thus, when the curve cuts neither diameter, there might be some difficulty in ascertaining its correct position; the asymptotes will, however, be found very useful in this respect: for example, if the equation is $xy = x^2 + bx + c^2$, or $y = x + b + \frac{c^2}{x}$, we have for $x = 0$, $y = \infty$; and when x becomes very great, y approximates to $x + b$; hence the lines A Y and T B S, in figure (194), will represent the asymptotes of the curve; and since the curve never cuts the axes, its course is entirely confined within the angle Y B S and the opposite angle T B A; hence the position of the curve is at once determined, as in figure (194).

Ex. 2. $y(x - 2) = (x - 1)(x - 3)$, or $y = \frac{(x-1)(x-3)}{x-2}$

In the first place we ascertain that the curve is an hyperbola by the test $b^2 - 4ac$ being positive; then draw the rectangular axes A X, A Y: to find the points where the curve cuts the axes,

Let $x = 0$, $\therefore y = -\frac{3}{2} =$ A B,
Let $y = 0$, $\therefore x = 1 =$ A C,
also $x = 3 =$ A D,

thus the curve passes through the points B, C, and D.



Again, to find the asymptotes, we have $y = \infty$ for $x = 2$; hence, if A E $= 2$, the line F E G, drawn perpendicular to A X, is one asymptote.

To find the other, we have

$$y = \frac{(x-1)(x-3)}{x-2} = \frac{(x-1)(x-3)}{x\left(1 - \frac{2}{x}\right)} = \frac{(x-1)(x-3)}{x}\left(1 - \frac{2}{x}\right)^{-1}$$

$$= \frac{x^2 - 4x + 3}{x} \left\{ 1 + \frac{2}{x} +, \text{\&c.} \right\} = \left(x - 4 + \frac{3}{x} \right)$$

$$\left\{ 1 + \frac{2}{x} +, \text{\&c.} \right\} = x - 4 + 2 + \frac{a}{x} +, \text{\&c.};$$

hence the equation to the asymptote is $y = x - 2$, and therefore this line must be drawn through the point E, making an angle of 45° with A X.

We can now trace the course of the curve completely; for all values of x less than 1, y is negative, hence the branch B C; for x greater than 1, but less than 2, y is positive and increases from 0 to ∞, hence the branch C F; for x greater than 2, but less than 3, y is negative, hence the branch G D; and for x greater than 3, y is positive and approximating to $x - 2$, hence the branch from D extending to the second asymptote.

For negative values of x, y is negative, and increases from $-\frac{3}{2}$ to ∞, approximating also to the value $-x - 2$; hence the curve extends downwards from B towards the asymptote.

Ex. 3. $y(x - a) = x(x - 2a)$. Here $x = a$ and $y = x - a$, are the equations to the asymptotes. The figure is like the last, supposing that A and C coincide.

Ex. 4 $y^{\frac{1}{2}} = a\,x^{-\frac{1}{2}} + x^{\frac{1}{2}}$. The axis of y is one asymptote, since $x = 0$ gives $y = \infty$: Also

$$y = x\left(1 + \frac{a}{x}\right)^2 = x + 2a + \frac{a^2}{x};$$

hence $y = x + 2a$ gives the other asymptote.

205. In order to discuss an equation of the second order completely, we have given, in Chapter VII., a general method of reducing that equation to its more simple forms.

In that chapter we showed that the equation, when belonging to an hyperbola, could be reduced to the form $a y^2 + c x^2 + f = 0$. (84.)

Now the same equation can be reduced also to the form $x y = k^2$; and as this form is of use in all discussions about asymptotes, we shall proceed to its investigation.

206. Let the general equation be referred to rectangular axes, and let it be

$$a y^2 + b x y + c x^2 + d y + e x + f = 0.$$

Let $x = x' + m$, and $y = y' + n$, and then, as in article (80.), put the co-efficients of x' and y' each $= 0$; by this means the curve is referred to its centre, and its equation is reduced to the form

$$a y'^2 + b x' y' + c x'^2 + f' = 0.$$

Again, to destroy the co-efficients of x'^2 and y'^2, take the formulas of transformation from rectangular to oblique co-ordinates (57.).

$$y' = x'' \sin.\theta + y'' \sin.\theta',$$

$$x' = x'' \cos.\theta + y'' \cos.\theta';$$

then, by substituting and arranging, the central equation becomes

$$y''^2 \{a(\sin.\theta')^2 + b \sin.\theta' \cos.\theta' + c(\cos.\theta')^2\}$$

$$+ x''^2 \{a(\sin.\theta)^2 + b \sin.\theta \cos.\theta + c(\cos.\theta)^2\}$$

$$+ x'' y'' \{2a \sin.\theta' \sin.\theta + b(\sin.\theta \cos.\theta' + \sin.\theta' \cos.\theta) + 2c \cos.\theta' \cos.\theta\} + f' = 0.$$

There are two new indeterminate quantities θ and θ' introduced; therefore we may make two suppositions respecting the co-efficients in the transformed equation; hence, letting the co-efficients of x''^2 and $y''^2 = 0$, we have

$$a(\sin.\theta)^2 + b \sin.\theta \cos.\theta + c(\cos.\theta)^2 = 0 \qquad (1),$$

$$a(\sin.\theta')^2 + b(\sin.\theta')(\cos.\theta') + c(\cos.\theta')^2 = 0 \quad (2).$$

Dividing the first of these two equations by $(\cos.\theta)^2$, we have

$$a(\tan.\theta)^2 + b \tan.\theta + c = 0;$$

$$\text{hence} \quad \tan.\theta = \frac{b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}.$$

From the similarity of the equation (1) and (2), it is evident that we shall arrive at the same value for $\tan.\theta'$; hence, letting one of the above values refer to θ, the other will refer to θ'; or both the new axes are determined in position from the above values of $\tan.\theta$.

The equation is now reduced to the form

$$b' x'' y'' + f' = 0.$$

207. To find the value of b', we have

$$b' = 2a \sin.\theta' \sin.\theta + b(\sin.\theta \cos.\theta' + \sin.\theta' \cos.\theta) + 2c \cos.\theta' \cos.\theta;$$

$$= \cos.\theta' \cos.\theta \{2a \tan.\theta' \tan.\theta + b(\tan.\theta' + \tan.\theta) + 2c\}.$$

From the equation involving $\tan.\theta$, we have

$$\tan.\theta \,.\, \tan.\theta' = \frac{c}{a}, \ \tan.\theta + \tan.\theta' = -\frac{b}{a},$$

$$\text{and therefore} \quad \cos.\theta \cos.\theta' = \frac{a}{\sqrt{(a-c)^2 + b^2}};$$

$$\therefore \ b' = \frac{a}{\sqrt{(a-c)^2 + b^2}} \left\{2c - \frac{b^2}{a} + 2c\right\} = -\frac{b^2 - 4ac}{\sqrt{(a-c)^2 + b^2}}.$$

$$\text{Also} \quad f' = \frac{ae^2 - cd^2 - bde}{b^2 - 4ac} + f \quad (80.).$$

Hence the final equation is

$$-\frac{b^2 - 4ac}{\sqrt{(a-c)^2 + b^2}} x'' y'' + \frac{ae^2 + cd^2 - bde}{b^2 - 4ac} + f = 0.$$

208. If the original axes are oblique we must take the formulas in (56.); and then, following the above process, we find

$$\tan.\theta = \frac{\pm\sqrt{b^2 - 4ac} - b + 2c \cos.\omega}{2(a + c(\cos.\omega)^2 - b \cos.\omega)},$$

$$b' = \frac{-(b^2 - 4ac)}{\sqrt{\{(a + c - b \cos.\omega)^2 + (b^2 - 4ac)(\sin.\omega)^2\}}}.$$

209. The following examples relate to the reduction of the general uation referred to rectangular axes, to another equation referred to the ymptotes.

Ex 1. $y^2 - 10\,x\,y + x^2 + y + x + 1 = 0$,

$$m = \frac{1}{8},\ n = \frac{1}{8},\ f' = \frac{9}{8};\ \tan.\ \theta = 5 \pm 2\sqrt{6},\ b' = -\frac{48}{5};$$

$$\therefore\ -\frac{48}{5}\,x''\,y'' + \frac{9}{8} = 0,$$

$$\text{or,}\quad x''\,y'' = \frac{15}{128}.$$

Ex. 2. $4\,y^2 - 8\,x\,y - 4\,x^2 - 4\,y + 28\,x - 15 = 0$,

$$b' = -8\sqrt{2},\ f' = 2,$$

$$\therefore\ -8\sqrt{2}\,x''\,y'' + 2 = 0,$$

$$\text{or,}\quad x''\,y'' = \frac{1}{4\sqrt{2}}.$$

Ex. 3. $\dfrac{a}{x} + \dfrac{b}{y} = 1$, or $x\,y = a\,y + b\,x$.

The axes are here parallel to the asymptotes (198.): in order to transfer the origin to the centre, let $y = y' + n$ and $x = x' + m$, hence we have $m = a$, $n = b$, and the reduced equation is

$$x'\,y' = a\,b.$$

210. If θ and θ' be the angles which the asymptotes make with the original rectangular axes, we have from the equation (206.),

$$a\,(\tan.\ \theta)^2 + b\tan.\ \theta + c = 0,$$

$$\therefore\ \tan.\ \theta.\ \tan. \quad = \frac{c}{a}$$

Now when $c = -a$, this equation becomes $\tan.\ \theta.\ \tan.\ \theta' = -1$, or, $\tan.\ \theta.\ \tan.\ \theta' + 1 = 0$; hence by (47.), the angle between the asymptotes is in this case $= 90°$; and thus whenever, in the general hyperbolic equation, we have $c = -a$, the curve is a rectangular hyperbola.

Ex. 4. $y^2 - x^2 = \sqrt{2}$.

The curve is a rectangular hyperbola, and is referred to its centre and rectangular axes; also taking the two values of tan. θ in (206.), we have $\tan.\ \theta = 1$, and $\tan.\ \theta' = -1$; hence $\theta = 45°$ and $\theta' = -45°$, and the formulas of transformation become

$$y = \frac{x' - y'}{\sqrt{2}},\ x = \frac{x' + y'}{\sqrt{2}};$$

$$\therefore\ \left(\frac{x' - y'}{\sqrt{2}}\right)^2 - \left(\frac{x' + y'}{\sqrt{2}}\right)^2 = \sqrt{2},$$

$$\text{or}\quad -2\,x'\,y' = \sqrt{2},$$

$$\text{and}\quad x'\,y' = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}.$$

In this example the curve is placed as in the next figure, and at first was referred to the axes C X and C Y, but now is referred t
ptotes C x and C y, supposing C y and C x to change pl
angle x C y = 90°.

211. Conversely given the equation $x y = k^2$, to find the equation referred to the rectangular axes, and thence to deduce the lengths of the axes.

For this purpose we use the formulas of transformation from oblique to rectangular axes (56.).

$$y = \frac{x' \sin. \theta + y' \cos. \theta}{\sin. \omega},$$

$$x = \frac{x' \sin. (\omega - \theta) - y' \cos. (\omega - \theta)}{\sin. \omega};$$

substituting these values in the equation $x y = k^2$, we have

$$x'^2 \sin. \theta \sin (\omega - \theta) - y'^2 \cos. \theta \cos. (\omega - \theta)$$
$$+ x' y' \{\cos. \theta \sin. (\omega - \theta) - \sin. \theta \cos. (\omega - \theta)\} = k^2 (\sin. \omega)^2.$$

Let the co-efficient of $x' y' = 0$,

$\therefore \cos. \theta \sin. (\omega - \theta) - \sin. \theta \cos. (\omega - \theta)$, or $\sin. (\omega - 2 \theta) = 0$;

$$\therefore \omega = 2 \theta, \text{ and } \theta = \frac{\omega}{2};$$

hence the new rectangular axis of x, determined by the angle θ, bisects the angle ω between the asymptotes; this agrees with the remark at the end of (179.).

The transformed equation, putting $\theta = \frac{\omega}{2}$, is

$$x'^2 \left(\sin. \frac{\omega}{2}\right)^2 - y'^2 \left(\cos. \frac{\omega}{2}\right)^2 = k^2 (\sin. \omega)^2,$$

or, putting $2 \sin. \frac{\omega}{2} \cos. \frac{\omega}{2}$ for $\sin. \omega$, and dividing

$$\frac{y'^2}{4 k^2 \left(\sin. \frac{\omega}{2}\right)^2} - \frac{x'^2}{4 k^2 \left(\cos. \frac{\omega}{2}\right)^2} = -1;$$

Comparing this with the equation $\frac{y^2}{b^2} - \frac{x^2}{a^2} = -1$, we have

$$a = 2 k \cos. \frac{\omega}{2}, \text{ and } b = 2 k \sin. \frac{\omega}{2};$$

hence the lengths of the semi-axes are determined.

If the equation had been $x y + a x + b y + c = 0$, first refer the curve to its centre, and then proceed as above.

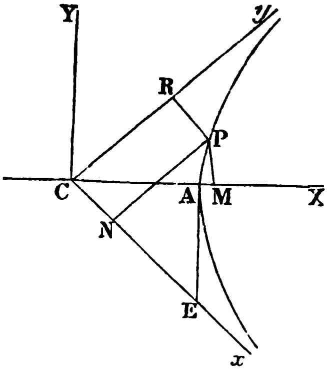
212. To deduce the equation $x y = k^2$ from the equation to the curve referred to the centre and rectangular axes.

Let C X, C Y be the rectangular axes,

C x, C y the asymptotes, or the new axes,

$\left.\begin{array}{l} \text{C M} = x \\ \text{M P} = y \end{array}\right\}$ the original co-ordinates of P,

$\left.\begin{array}{l} \text{C N} = x' \\ \text{N P} = y' \end{array}\right\}$ the new co-ordinates of P.



Then taking the formulas of transformation from rectangular to oblique axes (57),

$$y = x' \sin.\theta + y' \sin.\theta',$$
$$x = x' \cos.\theta + y' \cos.\theta',$$

and substituting in the equation $a^2 y^2 - b^2 x^2 = - a^2 b^2$, we have

$$a^2 (x' \sin.\theta + y' \sin.\theta')^2 - b^2 (x' \cos.\theta + y' \cos.\theta')^2 = - a^2 b^2,$$
$$\text{or, } \{a^2 (\sin.\theta')^2 - b^2 (\cos.\theta')^2\} y'^2 + \{a^2 (\sin.\theta)^2 - b^2 (\cos.\theta)^2\} x'^2,$$
$$+ 2 \{ a^2 \sin.\theta \sin.\theta' - b^2 \cos.\theta \cos.\theta' \} x' y' = - a^2 b^2.$$

In order that this equation may be of the required form, it must not contain the terms in x'^2 and y'^2; but since we have introduced two indeterminate quantities, we can make the two suppositions that the co-efficients of these terms shall $= 0$;

$$\therefore\ a^2 (\sin.\theta')^2 - b^2 (\cos.\theta')^2 = 0,$$
$$a^2 (\sin.\theta)^2 - b^2 (\cos.\theta)^2 = 0,$$

From the last of these equations we have $\tan.\theta = \pm \frac{b}{a}$, and as we obtain from the other equation the same value of $\tan.\theta'$, it follows that the values of θ and θ' are both contained in the equation $\tan.\theta = \pm \frac{b}{a}$, that is, if $\tan.\theta \left(= - \frac{b}{a}\right)$ refers to the axis of x, then $\tan.\theta \left(= + \frac{b}{a}\right)$ refers to the axis of y, (we have chosen $\tan.\theta = - \frac{b}{a}$ for the axis of x, in order to agree with the figure).

The equation to the curve referred to its asymptotes is now

$$2 \{a^2 \sin.\theta \sin.\theta' - b^2 \cos.\theta \cos.\theta'\} x' y' = - a^2 b^2,$$
$$\text{or, } 2 \cos.\theta \cos.\theta' \{a^2 \tan.\theta \tan.\theta' - b^2\} x' y' = - a^2 l$$

but since $\tan.\theta = \pm \frac{b}{a}$, we have

$$\cos.\theta = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1+(\tan.\theta)^2}} = \frac{a}{\sqrt{a^2+b^2}} = \cos.\theta';$$

$$\therefore 2\frac{a^2}{a^2+b^2}\left\{-a^2\frac{b^2}{a^2}-b^2\right\}x'y' = -a^2b^2,$$

$$\text{or,}\quad -\frac{4a^2b^2}{a^2+b^2}x'y' = -a^2b^2;$$

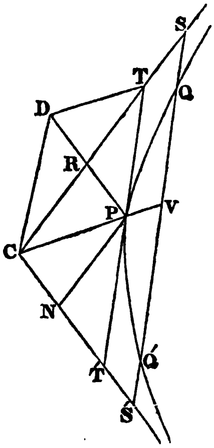
$$\therefore x'y' = \frac{a^2+b^2}{4}.$$

If $b = a$, or the curve be the rectangular hyperbola, the equation referred to the asymptotes is $xy = \frac{a^2}{2}$.

213. The angle between the asymptotes is 2θ; if therefore PR be drawn parallel to CN, the area PNCR $= xy \sin.2\theta = xy\,.\,2\sin.\theta$ $\cos.\theta = \frac{a^2+b^2}{4}\,.\,2\,.\,\frac{b}{\sqrt{a^2+b^2}}\,.\,\frac{a}{\sqrt{a^2+b^2}} = \frac{ab}{2}$.

Thus all the parallelograms constructed upon co-ordinates parallel to the asymptotes are equal to each other, and to half the rectangle in the semi-axes.

214. Let CS, CS' be the asymptotes to the curve referred to conjugate diameters CP, CD $(a_1\,b_1)$, then if PT be parallel to CD, it is a tangent at P (187.); TPT' is also a double ordinate to the asymptote, for the equation to CS is $y = \pm\frac{b_1}{a_1}x$, and when $x = a_1, y = \pm b_1$. Hence PT $=$ PT', or the parts of the tangent contained between the point of contact and the asymptotes are equal to each other, and to the conjugate diameter.



215. Join DT, then DP is a parallelogram; also because CD is equal and parallel to PT', we have the line DP parallel to the asymptote

C S′. Hence, if the conjugate diameters be given, the asymptotes may always be found by completing the parallelogram upon the conjugate diameters, and then drawing the diagonals. Also, if the asymptotes be given, a conjugate diameter to C P may be found by drawing P R parallel to C S′ and taking P D double of P R.

If the asymptotes be given, a tangent may be drawn by taking C T double of C R, and joining P T.

If the position of the focus is known, the length of the conjugate axis is equal to the perpendicular, from the focus on the asymptote.

216. To find the equation to the tangent P T, when referred to the asymptotes as axes,

Let x', y' be the co-ordinates of P, and x'' y'' co-ordinates of another point on the curve.

$$\therefore \; y' = \frac{k^2}{x'}, \text{ and } y'' = \frac{k^2}{x''}$$

$$\therefore \; \frac{y' - y''}{x' - x''} = - \frac{k^2}{x' x''} = - \frac{y'}{x''}$$

$$\therefore \; y - y' = - \frac{y'}{x''} (x - x') \text{ is the equation to a secant.}$$

When $x'' = x'$ we have the equation to the tangent

$$y - y' = - \frac{y'}{x'} (x - x') = - \frac{y'}{x'} x + y'$$

$$\therefore \; x'y + y'x = 2x'y' = 2k^2.$$

This equation to the tangent is readily obtained from the equation to the curve ($xy = k^2$ or $xy + xy = 2k^2$) by putting $x'y$ and xy' successively for xy, and then adding the results.

Let $y = 0$ $\therefore$ C T′ $= 2x' = 2$ C N; and C T $= 2y' = 2$ N P;

The triangle C T T′ $= \frac{1}{2} . 2x' . 2y'$ sin. T C T′ $= 2x'y'$ sin. $2\theta = ab$, (213.)

217. The two parts S Q, S′ Q′ of any secant S Q Q′ S comprised between the curve and its asymptote are equal; for if the diameter C P V and its conjugate C D be drawn, we have V Q = V Q′ from the equation to the curve $\left(y = \pm \frac{b_1}{a_1} \sqrt{x^2 - a_1^2}\right)$, and from the equation to the asymptotes $\left(y = \pm \frac{b_1}{a_1} x\right)$ we have V S = V S′ $\therefore$ S Q = S′ Q′.

218. If Y and y are the ordinates V S, V Q respectively, we have

$$Y^2 - y^2 = \frac{b_1^2}{a_1^2} x^2 - \frac{b_1^2}{a_1^2} (x^2 - a_1^2)$$

$$\text{or } (Y - y)(Y + y) = b_1^2.$$

Thus the rectangle S Q, Q S′ = the square upon C D.

THE POLAR EQUATION.

219. Let the curve be referred to the centre C, and to rectangular axes C A, C B, and let the co-ordinates of the pole O be x' and y', O being situated anywhere in the plane of the curve and P any point on the curve, as in (146.), θ the angle which the radius vector O P or u makes with a line parallel to the axis of x. Then we have by (61.)

$$y = y' + u \sin. \theta$$
$$x = x' + u \cos. \theta$$
$$\text{also,} \quad a^2 y^2 - b^2 x^2 = -a^2 b^2$$
$$\therefore a^2 (y' + u \sin. \theta)^2 - b^2 (x' + u \cos. \theta)^2 = -a^2 b^2$$

220. Let the centre be the pole, $\therefore x' = 0$, and $y' = 0$,

$$\therefore u^2 = \frac{-a^2 b^2}{a^2 (\sin. \theta)^2 - b^2 (\cos. \theta)^2} = \frac{a^2 (e^2 - 1)}{e^2 (\cos. \theta)^2 - 1.}$$

221. Let the focus S be the pole,

$$\therefore y' = 0, x' = a e \text{ and } u \text{ becomes } r,$$

Substituting these values, and following the steps in (148.), we find

$$r = \frac{b^2}{a - c \cos. \theta} = \frac{a (e^2 - 1)}{1 - e \cos. \theta}$$

If the angle A S P $= \theta$, we have

$$r = \frac{a (e^2 - 1)}{1 + e \cos. \theta}$$

This is the equation generally used. It may easily be obtained from the equation $r = e x - a$, fig. (161) $= e (a e - r \cos. \theta) - a$,

$$\therefore r = \frac{a (e^2 - 1)}{1 + e \cos. \theta}.$$

222. If $\frac{p}{2} = a (e^2 - 1)$ we have $r = \frac{p}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{1 + e \cos. \theta} =$ S P, and if P S meet the curve again in P$'$, we have the rectangle S P, S P$' = \frac{p}{4}$ (P S + S P$'$) $= \frac{p}{4}$ P P$'$.

The length of the chord through the focus $= 2 \frac{b_{\prime}^2}{a}$ where $b_{\prime}$ is the diameter to that chord.

THE CONJUGATE HYPERBOLA.

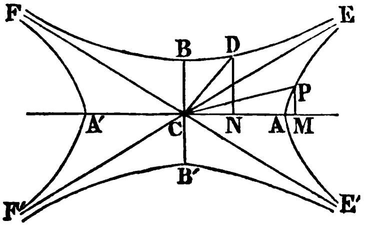
223. There is another equation to the hyperbola, not yet investigated. $\left(\frac{c'}{-f'}\right)$ be negative in article 153, the equation is $P y^2 - Q x^2 = 1$,

or $a^2 y^2 - b^2 x^2 = a^2 b^2$ if $P = \frac{1}{b^2}$, and $Q = \frac{1}{a^2}$. If we examine the course of this curve, we shall find that $B B' = 2\,b$ is the real or transverse axis, and $A A'$, or $2\,a$, is the conjugate axis, and that the curve extends indefinitely from B to B′, so that it is, in form, like the hyperbola already investigated, but only placed in a different manner.

Both curves are represented in the next figure; the real axis of the one being the conjugate or imaginary axis of the other.

It is evident from the form of the equations that both curves have got common asymptotes E C E′, F C F′.

224. Let C P and C D be two conjugate diameters to the original hyperbola A P E, it is required to find the locus of D.



Let $C M = x'$, $M P = y'$, $C N = x$, $N D = y$,

$$\text{then } a_1^2 - b_1^2 = a^2 - b^2;$$

$$\therefore x'^2 + y'^2 = x^2 + y^2 + a^2 - b^2$$

but the equation to C D is

$$a^2 y y' - b^2 x x' = 0 \quad \therefore x' = \frac{a^2 y y}{b^2 x},$$

$$\therefore x'^2 + y'^2 = \frac{a^4 y^2 + b^4 x^2}{b^4 x^2} y'^2 = x^2 + y^2 + a^2 - b^2,$$

$$\therefore y'^2 = \frac{b^4 x^2}{a^4 y^2 + b^4 x^2} (x^2 + y^2 + a^2 - b^2),$$

$$\text{and } x'^2 = \frac{a^4 y^2}{a^4 y^2 + b^4 x^2} (x^2 + y^2 + a^2 - b^2).$$

Substituting these values in the equation $a^2 y'^2 - b^2 x'^2 = -\,a^2 b^2$, and reducing, we have $a^2 y^2 - b^2 x^2 = a^2 b^2$, hence the locus of D is the conjugate hyperbola, and hence arises its name.

By changing the sign of the constant term in the equation to any hyperbola, referred to its centre, we directly obtain the equation to its conjugate, referred to the same axes of x and y. Both curves are comprised in the form

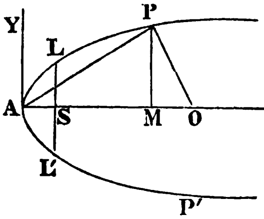
$$(a^2 y^2 - b^2 x^2)^2 = a^4 b^4, \text{ or } x^2 y^2 = k^4.$$

CHAPTER X.

THE PARABOLA.

225. THE equation to the parabola, referred to rectangular axes, has been reduced to the form $a' y^2 + e' x = 0$ (94.).

From this equation we proceed now to deduce all the important properties of the parabola.



Let $\dfrac{e'}{-a'} = p, \quad \therefore y^2 = p x.$

Let A be the origin; A X, A Y the axes; then for $x = 0$ we have $y = 0$, and the curve passes through the origin A.

For each positive value of x there are two equal and opposite values of y, which increase from 0 to ∞, according as x increases from 0 to ∞; hence there are two equal arcs, A P and A P', proceeding from A, without any limit. This curve is symmetrical with respect to its axis A X, and its concavity is turned towards that axis, otherwise it could be cut by a straight line in more points than one.

For every negative value of x, y is imaginary.

226. The point A is called the vertex of the parabola; A X, A Y the principal axes; but, generally speaking, A X alone is called the Axis of the parabola. Thus the equation to the curve referred to its axis and vertex is $y^2 = p x$.

From this equation we have The square upon the ordinate = The rectangle under the abscissa and a constant quantity; or the square upon the ordinate varies as the abscissa.

227. The last property of this curve points out the difference between the figures of the hyperbola and parabola; both have branches extending to infinity, but of a very different nature; for the equation to the hyperbola is $y^2 = \dfrac{b^2}{a^2}(x^2 - a^2) = \dfrac{b^2}{a^2} x^2 \left(1 - \dfrac{a^2}{x^2}\right)$, and therefore, for large values of x, the values of y^2 increase nearly as the corresponding values of x^2 or y varies nearly as x; hence the hyperbolic branch rises much more rapidly than that of the parabola, whose ordinate varies only as $\sqrt{x}$. When x is very great, the former takes nearly the course of the line $y = \dfrac{b}{a} x$, but in the parabola, y is not much increased by an increase of x, and therefore the curve tends rather towards parallelism with the axis of x.

228. The equation to the parabola may be derived from that of the ellipse by considering the axis major of the ellipse to be infinite.

Let C be the centre, and S the focus of an ellipse whose equation is

$$y^2 = \frac{2\,b^2}{a}\,x - \frac{b^2}{a^2}\,x^2. \quad (105.)$$

$$\text{Let } m = \text{A S} = \text{A C} - \text{S C} = a - \sqrt{a^2 - b^2}, \text{ (fig. 106.)}$$

$$\therefore b^2 = 2\,a\,m - m^2;$$

$$\therefore y^2 = \left(4\,m - \frac{2\,m^2}{a}\right)x - \left(\frac{2\,m}{a} - \frac{m^2}{a^2}\right)x^2.$$

Now if a be considered to vary, this will be the equation to a series of ellipses, in which the distance A S, or m, is the same for all, but the axis major different for each; thus giving to a any particular value, we have a corresponding ellipse. Let now a be infinite, then, since all the other terms vanish, the equation becomes $y^2 = 4\,m\,x$; hence the ellipse has gradually approached to the parabolic form, as its axes enlarged, and finally coincided with it when the axis major was infinite *.

In the same manner the equation to the parabola may be derived from that to the hyperbola.

THE FOCUS.

229. The quantity p, which is the co-efficient of x in the equation to the parabola, is called the principal parameter, or Latus Rectum of the parabola.

Since $p = \frac{y^2}{x}$, the principal parameter is a third proportional to any abscissa and its corresponding ordinate.

In article (228.) we have used the equation $y^2 = 4\,m\,x$ for the parabola, merely to avoid fractions with numerical denominators; it appears that many of the operations in this chapter are similarly shortened, without losing any generality, by merely putting $4\,m$ for p; hence we shall use the equation $y^2 = 4\,m\,x$ in most of the following articles, recollecting that all the results can be expressed in terms of the principal parameter, by putting $\frac{p}{4}$ for m wherever m occurs.

230. To find the position of the double ordinate which is equal to the Latus Rectum.

Let $2\,y = 4\,m$, $\therefore 4\,y^2 = 16\,m^2$, or $16\,m\,x = 16\,m^2$, and $x = m$.

In A X take A S $= m$, then the ordinate L S L′ drawn through S, is the Latus Rectum.

The point S is called the focus.

The situation of the focus S may be also thus determined:

Let A M $= x$, M P $= y$, join A P, and draw P O perpendicular to A P,

Then A M : M,P :: M P : M O $= \frac{y^2}{x} = 4\,m$, $\therefore$ A S $= m = \frac{1}{4}$ M O;

---

* If x is very small when compared with a, the equation to the ellipse is very nearly that to a parabola; and this is the reason that the path of a comet near its perihelion appears to be a portion of a parabola.

231. To find the distance of any point P in the curve from the focus:

Let $SP = r$, $AM = x$, $MP = y$; also at s, $y' = 0$, and $x' = m$,

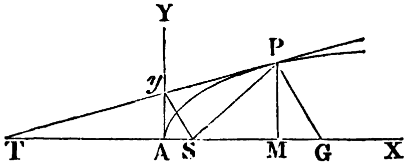
$$\therefore r^2 = (y - y')^2 + (x - x')^2 = y^2 + (x - m)^2 = 4mx + (x - m)^2$$
$$= (x + m)^2;$$
$$\therefore r = SP = x + m.$$

THE TANGENT.

232. To find the equation to the tangent at any point P (x', y') of the parabola.

The equation to a secant through two points on the curve (x', y') $(x'' y'')$ is

$$y - y' = \frac{y' - y''}{x' - x''}(x - x'),$$



$$\text{Also } y'^2 = 4mx', \text{ and } y''^2 = 4mx'';$$
$$\therefore y'^2 - y''^2 = 4m(x' - x''),$$
$$\text{and } \frac{y' - y''}{x' - x''} = \frac{4m}{y' + y''}.$$

Thus the equation to the secant becomes

$$y - y' = \frac{4m}{y' + y''}(x - x');$$

but when the two points coincide $y'' = y'$, and the secant becomes a tangent,

$$\therefore y - y' = \frac{4m}{2y'}(x - x'),$$
$$\text{or } yy' - y'^2 = 2m(x - x'),$$
$$\therefore yy' = y'^2 + 2m(x - x') = 4mx' + 2m(x - x'$$
$$\therefore yy' = 2m(x + x').$$

This equation is immediately deduced from that to the curve

$$(y^2 = 4mx = 2m(x + x))$$

by writing yy' for y^2, and $x + x'$ for $x + x$.

233. To find the points where the tangent cuts the axes.

Let $y = 0$, $\therefore x + x' = 0$, $\therefore x = -x'$, or $AT = -AM$; Hence the absolute value of the sub-tangent MT is 2 AM.

Let $x = 0$, $\therefore\ y = 2m\frac{x'}{y'} = \frac{y'^2}{2y'} = \frac{y'}{2}$, $\therefore\ Ay = \frac{1}{2}MP$.

234. The equation to the tangent being $yy' = 2m(x + x')$, we have at the vertex A, x' and y' each $= 0$, therefore the equation to the tangent becomes $2mx = 0$, or $x = 0$;

But $x = 0$ is the equation to the axis A Y;

Hence the tangent at the vertex of the parabola coincides with the axis of y.

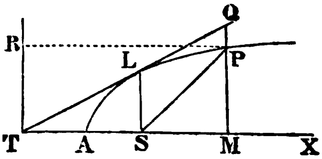
235. To find the equation to the tangent at the extremity of the principal parameter.

$$yy' = 2m(x + x')$$

At L we have $x' = m$, and $y' = 2m$,

$$\therefore\ 2my = 2m(x + m),$$

$$\therefore\ y = x + m,$$



If the ordinate y or M Q cut the parabola in P, we have $SP = x + m$ (231.), $\therefore\ MQ = SP$.

236. To find the point where this particular tangent cuts the axis of x.

$$\text{Let } y = 0,\ \therefore\ x = AT = -m = -AS.$$

From T draw T R perpendicular to A X, and from P draw P R parallel to A X, then taking the absolute value of A T, we have

$$PR = AT + AM = m + x = SP.$$

Consequently the distances of any point P from S, and from the line T R, are equal to one another.

This line, T R, is called the directrix; for knowing the position of this line and of the focus, a parabola may be described.

This tangent cuts the axis at an angle of 45°. (35. Ex. 3.)

237. To find the length of the perpendicular S y from the focus on the tangent.

Taking the expression in (48.) we have

$$Sy = -\frac{y_1 - \alpha x_1 - b}{\sqrt{1 + \alpha^2}}.$$

But from the figure 232, we have $y_1 = 0$, and $x_1 = m$ for the coordinates of the point S, and $y = \alpha x + b$ is the equation to the line P T; also the equation to P T is

$$y = \frac{2m}{y'}(x + x'),$$

$$\therefore\ \alpha = \frac{2m}{y'},\ \text{and } b = \frac{2mx'}{y'},$$

$$\therefore\ Sy = \frac{\frac{2m}{y'}m + \frac{2mx'}{y'}}{\sqrt{\left\{1 + \frac{4m^2}{y'^2}\right\}}} = \frac{2m(m + x')}{\sqrt{\{y'^2 + 4m^2\}}} = \frac{2m(m + x')}{\sqrt{\{4mx' + 4m^2\}}}$$

$$= \sqrt{m(m + x')} = \sqrt{mr},\ \text{if } SP = r;$$

Hence the square on S y = the rectangle S P, S A;

or, S P : S y :: S y : S A.

238. To find the locus of y in the last article.

The equation to the tangent P T, fig. 232, is $y = \frac{2m}{y'}(x + x')$;

Hence the equation to S y passing through the point $(m, 0)$, and perpendicular to P T, is

$$y = -\frac{y'}{2m}(x - m).$$

To find where this line cuts the axis of y, put $x = 0$, $\therefore y = \frac{y'}{2}$, but this is the point where the tangent at P cuts the same axis (233.); hence the tangent and the perpendicular on it from the focus meet in the axis A Y, or the locus of y is the axis A Y.

239. Again, to find where the perpendicular S y cuts the directrix, put $x = -m$, $\therefore y = -\frac{y'}{2m}(x - m) = -\frac{y'}{2m}(-m - m) = y'$, but this is the ordinate M P; hence a tangent being drawn at any point P, the perpendicular on it from the focus cuts the directrix in the point where the perpendicular from P on the directrix meets that directrix.

240. To find the angle which the tangent makes with the focal distance.

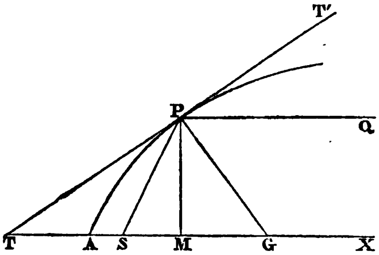
The equation to the tangent P T is $y = \frac{2m}{y'}(x + x')$.

The equation to the focal distance S P through the points S $(= 0, m)$ and P $(= x', y')$ is

$$y = \frac{y'}{x' - m}(x \quad m),$$

And tan. S P T = tan. (P S X − P T X)

$$= \frac{\frac{y'}{x' - m} - \frac{2m}{y'}}{1 + \frac{y'}{x' - m}\frac{2m}{y'}}$$



$$= \frac{y'^2 - 2m(x' - m)}{y'(x' - m) + 2my'} = \frac{4mx' - 2mx' + 2m^2}{y'(x' + m)} = \frac{2m(x' + m)}{y'(x' + m)}$$

$$= \frac{2m}{y'} = \frac{y'}{2x'}, \text{ since } 2m = \frac{y'^2}{2x'}:$$

But M P = M T tan. P T M, $\therefore$ tan. P T M $= \frac{y'}{2x'}$, $\therefore$ tan. S P T

$=$ tan. S T P $=$ tan. T′P Q, if P Q be drawn parallel to the axis of x. Thus the tangent at P makes equal angles with the focal distance, and with a parallel to the axis through P.

This important theorem may also be deduced from the property in article 233. It is there proved that the absolute value of A T is A M, hence we have S T $=$ S A $+$ A T $= m + x =$ S P, and therefore the angle S P T $=$ angle S T P $=$ angle Q P T′.

If a ray of light, proceeding in the direction Q P, be incident on the parabola at P, it will be reflected to S, on account of the equal angles Q P T′, S P T: similarly all rays coming in a direction parallel to the axis, and incident on the curve, would converge to S; and if a portion of the curve revolve round its axis, so as to form a hollow concave mirror, all rays from a distant luminous point in the direction of the axis would be concentrated in S. Thus, if a parabolic mirror be held with its axis pointing to the sun, a very powerful heat will be found at the focus.

Again, if a brilliant light be placed in the focus of such a mirror, all the rays, instead of being lost in every direction, will proceed in a mass parallel to the axis, and thus illuminate a very distant point in the direction of that axis. This property of the curve has led to the adoption of parabolic mirrors in many light-houses.

THE NORMAL.

241. To find the equation to the normal P G, at a point P $(x'y')$.

The equation to a straight line, through P, is $y - y' = \alpha\,(x - x')$, and as this line must be perpendicular to the tangent whose equation is $y = \frac{2\,m}{y'}\,(x + x')$, we have $\alpha = -\frac{y'}{2\,m}$, hence the equation to the normal is $y - y' = -\frac{y'}{2\,m}\,(x - x')$..

242. To find the point where the normal cuts the axis of x.

Let $y = 0$ $\therefore$ $x - x' = m$, or the subnormal M G is constant and equal to half the principal parameter.

Hence S G $=$ S M $+$ M G $= x' - m + 2\,m = x' + m$ S $=$ P.

And P G $= \sqrt{y'^2 + 4\,m^2} = \sqrt{4\,m\,x' + 4\,m^2} = \sqrt{4\,m\,(x' + m)} = \sqrt{4\,m\,r}$.

Hence the normal P G is a mean proportional between the principal parameter and the distance S P.

THE DIAMETERS.

243. It was shown in article 81, that the parabola has no centre.

Since for every positive value of x there are two equal and opposite values of y, the axis of x is a diameter, but that of y is not; hence the axes cannot be called conjugate axes. The parabola has an infinite number of diameters, all parallel to the axis; to prove this,

Let $y = \alpha\,x + b$ be the equation to any chord,

$y^2 = p\,x$ the equation to the curve.

Transfer the origin to the bisecting point $x'\,y'$ of the chord, then the equations become $y = \alpha\,x$, and $(y + y')^2 = p\,(x + x')$:

To find where the chord intersects the curve, put $a\,x$ for y in the second equation.

$$\therefore\ (a\,x + y')^2 = p\,(x + x')$$

$$\text{or}\ a^2\,x^2 + (2\,a\,y' - p)\,x + y'^2 - p\,x' = 0$$

But since the origin is at the bisection of the chord, the two values of x must be equal to one another, and have opposite signs; hence the second term of the last equation must $= 0$, $\therefore\ 2\,a\,y' - p = 0$.

This equation gives the value of y', and since it is independent of b, it will be the same for any chord parallel to $y = a\,x + b$; hence $y = \dfrac{p}{2\,a}$ is the equation to the locus of all the middle points of a system of parallel chords, and this equation is evidently that to a straight line parallel to the axis; and conversely.

244. To transform the equation into another referred to a new origin and to new axes, and so that it shall preserve the same form,

$$\text{Let}\ x = a + x' \cos.\,\theta + y' \cos.\,\theta',$$

$$\text{and}\quad y = b + x' \sin.\,\theta + y' \sin.\,\theta', \quad (57.)$$

Substituting these values in the equation $y^2 = p\,x$ and arranging, we have

$$y'^2\,(\sin.\,\theta')^2 + x'^2\,(\sin.\,\theta)^2 + 2\,x'\,y' \sin.\,\theta \sin.\,\theta' + y'\,(2\,b \sin.\theta' - p \cos.\,\theta')$$
$$+ x'\,(2\,b \sin.\,\theta - p \cos.\,\theta) + b^2 - a\,p = 0.$$

And as this equation must be of the form $y^2 = p\,x$, we must have

$$(\sin.\,\theta)^2 = 0 \quad \ldots \quad (1),$$
$$2 \sin.\,\theta.\,\sin.\,\theta' = 0 \quad \ldots \quad (2),$$
$$2\,b \sin.\,\theta' - p \cos.\,\theta' = 0 \quad (3),$$
$$b^2 - a\,p = 0 \quad \ldots \quad (4).$$

Hence the equation becomes

$$y'^2\,(\sin.\,\theta')^2 + (2\,b \sin.\,\theta - p \cos.\,\theta)\,x' = 0;$$

$$\text{or since}\ \theta = 0, \quad y'^2\,(\sin.\,\theta')^2 - p\,x' = 0.$$

245. On the examination of the equations (1) (2) (3) and (4), it appears from (1) that the new axis of x' is parallel to the original axis of x; and θ being 0 from (1), of course (2) is destroyed, and thus the equations of condition are reduced to three: but there are four unknown quantities, hence there are an infinite number of points to which, if the origin be transferred, the equation may be reduced to the same simple form.

We may take the remaining three quantities a, b and θ', in any order, and arrive at the same results. Suppose a is known, then from (4), $b^2 = p\,a$, this equation shows that a must be taken in a positive direction from A, and also that the new origin must be taken on the curve itself, or the new origin is at some point P on the curve, as in the next figure.

From (3) we have $\tan.\,\theta = \dfrac{p}{2\,b} = \dfrac{b}{2\,a}$;

is is exactly the value of the tangent of the angle which a tangent the curve makes with the Axis (240.): hence the new axis of y is a t to the curve at the new origin P.

The results are therefore these,—the new origin is at any point P on the curve (see the next figure). The axes are one (P X′) parallel to the axis A X, and the other (P Y′) is a tangent at the new origin P. Lastly, from the form of the equation, the new axis of x is a diameter.

246. The equation is $y'^2 = \frac{p}{(\sin.\ \theta')^2} x' = p'x$ where $p' = \frac{p}{(\sin \theta')^2}$

$$= p\,(\text{cosec.}\ \theta')^2 = p\,(1 + \cot.\ \theta')^2 = p\left(1 + \frac{4\,a^2}{b^2}\right) = p + 4\,a$$

$$= 4\left(\frac{p}{4} + a\right) = 4\ \text{S P} \quad (231.)$$

Hence the new parameter at P is four times the focal distance S P.

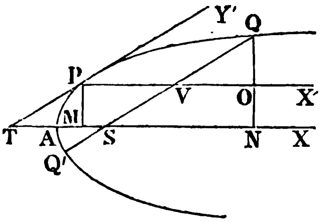
247. The equation to the parabola, when we know the position and direction of the new axes, is readily obtained from the original equation referred to rectangular co-ordinates.

Let the point P be the new origin, P X′, P Y′ the new axes, angle Y′ P X′ $= \theta$.

Also, let A N $= x$, N Q $= y$ be the rectangular co-ordinates of Q.

And A M $= a$, M P $= b$ . . . . . . P.

P V $= x'$, V Q $= y'$ be the new co-ordinates of Q.



Then $y = \text{Q N} = \text{M P} + \text{O Q} = b + y' \sin.\ \theta,$

$$x = \text{A N} = \text{A M} + \text{P V} + \text{V O} = a + x' + y' \cos.\ \theta.$$

Substituting these values in the equation $y^2 = p\,x$,

we have $(b + y' \sin.\ \theta)^2 = p\,(a + x' + y' \cos\ \theta)$;

$$\therefore\ y'^2 (\sin.\ \theta)^2 + (2\,b \sin.\ \theta - p \cos.\ \theta)\, y' + b^2 = p\,a + p\,x';$$

but $b^2 = p\,a$, and $\tan.\ \theta = \tan.\ \text{P T M} = \frac{b}{2\,a} = \frac{b}{2\frac{b^2}{p}} = \frac{p}{2\,b}$;

$$\therefore\ 2\,b \sin.\theta - p \cos.\theta = 0,$$

and the equation is reduced to the form

$$y'^2 (\sin.\ \theta)^2 = p\,x'.$$

Also from $(\tan.\ \theta)^2 = \frac{b^2}{4\,a^2}$ we have $(\cos.\ \theta)^2 = \frac{4\,a^2}{4\,a^2 + b^2}$.

and $(\sin.\ \theta)^2 = \frac{b^2}{4\,a^2 + b^2} = \frac{p}{4\,a + p}$;

$$\therefore y'^2 \frac{p}{4a+p} = px'$$

$$y'^2 = (4a+p)\,x' = 4\left(a + \frac{p}{4}\right) x' = p'\,x', \text{ where } p' = 4\,\mathrm{S\,P}.$$

Hence the square upon the ordinate = the rectangle under the abscissa and parameter.

248. To find the length of the ordinate which passes through the focus:

Here, $x = \mathrm{PV} = \mathrm{ST} = \mathrm{SP} = r \;\therefore\; y^2 = px = 4r\,.\,r = 4r^2$
$\therefore y = 2r.$

Hence, $\mathrm{Q\,Q'} = 4\,\mathrm{S\,P}$.

Thus the ordinate through the focus is equal to four times the focal distance S P, is equal to the parameter at the point P.

Hence, generally, if the origin of co-ordinates be at any point P on the parabola, and if the axes be a diameter and a tangent at P, the parameter to the point P is that chord which passes through the focus.

249. The equation to a tangent at any point Q $(x'\ y')$, referred to the new axes P X′, P Y′, is

$$y\,y' = \frac{p'}{2}\left(x + x'\right)$$

Let $y = 0 \;\therefore\; x = -x'$, hence the sub-tangent = twice the abscissa.

Let $x = 0 \;\therefore\; y = \dfrac{p'\,x'}{2y} = \dfrac{y'}{2} = \tfrac{1}{2}$ the ordinate.

For y put $-y$, then we have the equation to the tangent at the other extremity Q′ of the ordinate Q V Q′; hence it may be proved that tangents at the two extremities of a chord meet in a diameter to that chord.

250. If the chord Q V Q′ pass through the focus, as in the figure, the co-ordinates of Q are $y' = 2\,\mathrm{S\,P} = 2\,r$, and $x' = \mathrm{P\,V} = \mathrm{S\,P} = r$, also $p' = 4\,r$; hence the equation to the tangent at Q, or $y\,y' = \dfrac{p'}{2}\,(x + x')$ becomes $y = x + r$, and similarly the equation to the tangent at Q′ is $-y = x + r$, and these lines meet the axis P X′ at a distance $-r$ from P, that is, tangents at the extremity of any parameter meet in the directrix.

Also, the angle between these tangents is determined from the equation

$$\tan.\theta = \frac{(\alpha - \alpha')\sin.\omega}{1 + \alpha\alpha' + (\alpha + \alpha')\cos.\omega} \qquad (51.)$$

$$= \frac{(1+1)\sin.\omega}{1 - 1 + 0} \text{ (since } \alpha = 1 \text{ and } \alpha' = -1)$$

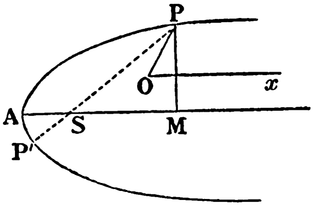
$$= \frac{1}{0} = \tan.90^\circ.$$

Hence, **pairs of tangents drawn at the extremities of any parameter** ***meet in the*** **directrix at right-angles.**

THE POLAR EQUATION.

251. To find the polar equation to the curve.

Let the co-ordinates of any point O be x' and y', and let θ be measured from a line O x, which is parallel to the axis of the curve:



Then by (61.), or by inspection of the figure, we have

$$y = y' + u \sin.\ \theta$$

$$x = x' + u \cos.\ \theta$$

Substituting these values of x and y in the equation $y^2 = p\,x$, we have

$$(y' + u \sin.\ \theta)^2 = p\ (x' + u \cos.\ \theta)$$

252. Let the pole be at any point on the curve,

$$\therefore\ y'^2 + 2\,u\,y' \sin.\ \theta + u^2 (\sin.\ \theta)^2 = p\,x' + p\,u \cos.\ \theta\,;$$

$$\text{or, } u\ (\sin.\ \theta)^2 = p \cos.\ \theta - 2\,y' \sin.\ \theta, \quad \text{since } y'^2 = p\,x'\,;$$

$$\therefore\ u = \frac{p \cos.\ \theta - 2\,y' \sin.\ \theta}{(\sin.\ \theta)^2},$$

And if the vertex be the pole, we have $y' = 0$;

$$\therefore\ u = \frac{p \cos.\ \theta}{(\sin.\ \theta)^2}.$$

253. Let the focus S be the pole, $\therefore\ y' = 0,\ x' = \frac{p}{4}$, and u becomes r;

hence the general equation $(y' + u \sin.\ \theta)^2 = p\ (x' + u \cos.\ \theta)$ becomes

$$r^2 (\sin.\ \theta)^2 = \frac{p^2}{4} + p\,r \cos.\ \theta,$$

$$\text{or } r^2 (\sin.\ \theta)^2 + r^2 (\cos.\ \theta)^2 = \frac{p^2}{4} + p\,r \cos.\ \theta + r^2 (\cos.\ \theta)^2$$

$$\therefore\ r^2 = \left(\frac{p}{2} + r \cos.\ \theta\right)^2$$

$$r = \frac{p}{2} + r \cos.\ \theta; \quad \text{or } r = \frac{p}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{1 - \cos.\ \theta}.$$

The polar equation in this case is also easily deduced from article (231). Let angle A S P $= \theta$,

then $r = \text{SP} = \text{AM} + \text{AS} = 2\,\text{AS} + \text{SM} = \frac{p}{2} - r \cos.\ \theta$;

$$\therefore\ r = \frac{p}{2}\,\frac{1}{1 + \cos.\ \theta} = \frac{p}{\left(\cos.\ \frac{\theta}{2}\right)^2}$$

254. If P S meet the curve again in P′, we have S P′

$$\frac{p}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{1 - \cos.\,(\pi - \theta)} = \frac{p}{2}\,\frac{1}{1 + \cos.\,\theta};$$

hence the rectangle

$$\text{P S, S P}' = \frac{p}{4}\,\frac{p}{1 - (\cos.\,\theta)^2} = \frac{p}{4}\,(\text{S P} + \text{S P}') = \frac{p}{4},\,\text{P P}'.$$

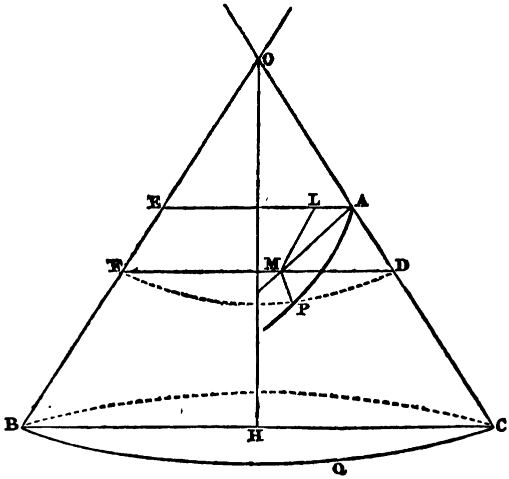
CHAPTER XI.

THE SECTIONS OF A CONE.

255. It is well known that the three curves, the ellipse, the hyperbola, and parabola, were originally obtained from the section of a cone, and that hence they were called the conic sections. We shall now show the manner in which a cone must be cut by a plane, in order that the section may be one of these curves.

A right cone is the solid generated by the revolution of a right-angled triangle about one of its perpendicular sides.

The fixed side, O H, about which the triangle revolves, is called the axis; and the point O, where the hypothenuse of the triangle meets the axis, is called the vertex of the cone. If the revolving hypothenuse be produced above the vertex, it will describe another cone, having the same axis and vertex. Any point in the hypothenuse of the triangle describes a circle; hence, the base of the triangle describes a circular area called the base of the cone.



Section made by planes which pass through the vertex and along the axis are called vertical sections; these are, evidently, triangles.

If a plane pass through the cone in any direction, the intersection of it with the surface of the cone is called a conic section. The nature of the line thus traced will be found to be different, according to the various positions of the cutting plane. It is our purpose to show, generally, to what class of curves a section must necessarily belong; and, afterwards, to point out the particular species of curve due to a given position of the cutting plane.

256. Let O B Q C be a right cone, O the vertex, O H the axis, B C Q the circular base, P A the line in which the cutting plane meets the surface of the cone; A being the point in the curve nearest to the vertex O. Let O B H C A be a vertical plane passing through the axis O H and perpendicular to the cutting plane P A M.

A M, the intersection of these planes, is a straight line, and is called the axis of the conic section, the curve being symmetrically placed with regard to it.

Let F P D be a section parallel to the base, it is therefore a circle, and F M D, its intersection with the vertical plane O B H C A, is a diameter.

Since both this last plane F P D and the cutting plane P A M are perpendicular to the vertical plane O B H C, M P the intersection of the two former is perpendicular to the vertical plane, (Euc. xi. 19, or Geometry iv. 18,) and, therefore, to all lines meeting it in that plane. Hence M P is perpendicular to F D and to A M.

Let the angle O A M, which is the inclination of the cutting plane to the side of the cone, $= \alpha$, and let the $\angle$ A O B $= \beta$, draw A E parallel to B H and M L parallel to O B.

Let A M $= x$, M P $= y$, and A O $= a$.

Then by the property of the circle

The square on M P = the rectangle F M, M D;

$$\text{and } MD = \frac{MA \sin. MAD}{\sin. MDA} = x \frac{\sin. \alpha}{\cos. \frac{\beta}{2}};$$

$$\text{Also, } FM = EA - AL = \frac{AO \sin. AOE}{\sin. OEA} - \frac{AM \sin. AML}{\sin. ALM};$$

But angle O E A $= 90° - \frac{\beta}{2}$, angle A L M $= 90° + \frac{\beta}{2}$, and if we produce M L to meet O A, we shall find that the angle A M L $= 180° - (\alpha + \beta)$;

$$\text{hence } FM = a \frac{\sin. \beta}{\cos. \frac{\beta}{2}} - x \frac{\sin. (\alpha + \beta)}{\cos. \frac{\beta}{2}};$$

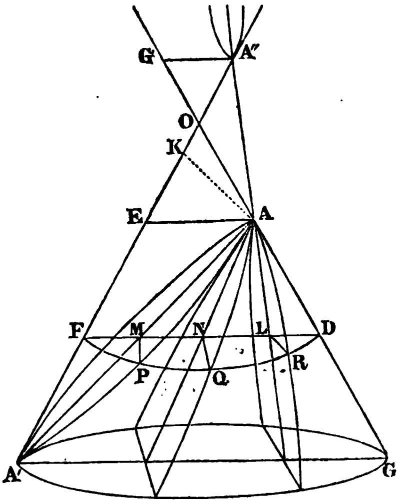
$$\therefore\ y^2 = x \frac{\sin. \alpha}{\cos. \frac{\beta}{2}} \left\{ a \frac{\sin. \beta}{\cos. \frac{\beta}{2}} - x \frac{\sin. (\alpha + \beta)}{\cos. \frac{\beta}{2}} \right\}$$

$$= \frac{\sin. \alpha}{\left(\cos. \frac{\beta}{2}\right)^2} \{a \sin. \beta \,.\, x - \sin. (\alpha + \beta)\, x^2\};$$

which equation being of the second degree, it follows that the sections of the cone are curves of the second degree.

Comparing this with the equation $y^2 = p\,x + q\,x^2$, which represents an ellipse, a parabola, or an hyperbola, according as q is negative, nothing, or positive; we observe that the section is an ellipse, a parabola, or an hyperbola, according as sin. $(\alpha + \beta)$ is positive, nothing, or negative. To investigate these various cases, we shall suppose the cutting plane to move about A, so that α may take all values from 0 to 180°.

257. Let $\alpha = 0$, $\therefore\ y^2 = 0$, and $y = 0$; this is the equation to the straight line which is the axis of x.



And this appears, also, from the figure; for when $\alpha = 0$, the cutting plane just touches the cone, and hence the line of intersection A M is in the position A O.

258. Let $\alpha + \beta$ be less than 180°. The curve is an ellipse. In the figure the angles A O E and O A M being together less than 180°, the lines O E and A M meet in A′, or the sectional plane cuts both sides of the cone.

259. Let M be the centre of the ellipse, then F M $= \frac{1}{2}$ A E and M D $= \frac{1}{2}$ A′ G;

$\therefore$ The square on the axis minor = The rectangle A E, A′ G.

Also by drawing perpendiculars from A and E upon A′ G, it may be proved that

The square on the axis major = The square on A G + The rectangle A E, A′ G.

And $\therefore$ The distance between the foci = A G.

If the straight line A K be drawn making the angle E A K = the gle E A A′, then A K is the latus rectum of the section.

And if a circle be inscribed in the triangle A′ A O, it will touch the line A′ in the focus of the section. (Geometry, Appendix, prop. 21.)

260. Let $\alpha = 90^\circ - \frac{\beta}{2}$, then $\frac{\sin.\alpha \sin.(\alpha + \beta)}{\left(\cos.\frac{\beta}{2}\right)^2} = 1$, and the equation is that to a circle, the cutting plane being parallel to the base.

261. Let $\alpha + \beta = 180^\circ$, $\therefore \sin.(\alpha + \beta) = 0$, and the curve is a parabola. The plane, continuing to turn, has now come into the position A N Q, the axis A N being parallel to O F, or the cutting plane parallel to a side of the cone.

The equation to the parabola is $y^2 = 4a\left(\sin.\frac{\beta}{2}\right)^2 x$.

If A K be drawn making the angle E A K = the angle A O K, then A K is the latus rectum of the section, and the circle which touches A O, A N and O F, will touch A N in the focus of the parabola.

262. Let $\alpha + \beta$ be greater than 180° $\therefore \sin.(\alpha + \beta)$ is negative, and the curve is an hyperbola; The cutting plane is now in the position A L R; in this case the lines A L, E O must meet if produced backwards, or the plane cuts both cones, and the curve consists of two branches, one on the surface of each cone.

As in the ellipse, it may be proved that the square on the conjugate axis = the rectangle A E, A″ G′; that A G′ is the distance between the foci, that A K is the latus rectum, and that the circle touching A′ O, O A and A L touches A L at the focus.

263. We may also suppose a to have different values, or the cutting plane to meet the cone in some other point than A, for example:

$$\text{Let } a = 0 \quad \therefore y^2 = -\frac{\sin.\alpha \sin.(\alpha + \beta)}{\left(\cos.\frac{\beta}{2}\right)^2} x^2;$$

Since $\sin.\alpha$ and $\left(\cos.\frac{\beta}{2}\right)^2$ are positive, the rationality of this equation will depend upon $\sin.(\alpha + \beta)$.

If $\alpha + \beta$ is less than 180° the radical quantity is impossible, and the only solution of the equation is $x = 0$ and $y = 0$, or the section is a point; this is the case when the cutting plane passes through the vertex O, and is parallel to any elliptic section A P A′.

If $\alpha + \beta$ is greater than 180° we have two straight lines which cut each other at the origin. In this case the cutting plane is drawn through O, parallel to A L R, and the intersection with the cone is two straight lines meeting in O.

264. We may conclude from this discussion, that the conic sections are seven: a point, a straight line, two straight lines which intersect, a circle, an ellipse, an hyperbola, and a parabola or all the curves of the second degree and their varieties, with the exception of two parallel lines, which is a variety of the parabola.

The three latter sections, the ellipse, hyperbola, and parabola, are those which are usually termed "conic sections," and which have been the study and delight of mathematicians since the time of Plato. In his school they were first discovered; and his disciples, excited, no doubt, the many beautiful properties of these curves, examined them with industry, that in a very short time several complete treatises on the conic sections were published. Of these, the best still extant is that of Apollonius of Perga. It is in eight books, four of which are elementary; and four on the abstruser properties of these curves. The whole work is well worth attention, as showing how much could be done by the ancient analysis, and as giving a very high opinion of the geometrical genius of the age.

Apollonius gave the names of ellipse and hyperbola to those curves—Hyperbola, because the square on the ordinate is equal to a figure "exceeding" ("ὑπερβαλλον") the rectangle under the abscissa and latus rectum by another rectangle.—B. i. p. 13.

Ellipse, because the square on the ordinate is "defective" ("ελλειπον") with regard to the same rectangle.—p. 14.

It is not known who gave the name of parabola to that curve—probably Archimedes, because the square of the ordinate is equal ("παραβαλλον") to the rectangle of the abscissa and latus rectum.

Thus, the ancients viewed these curves geometrically, in the same manner as we are accustomed to express them by the equations:

$$y^2 = p\,x + \frac{p}{2\,a}\,x^2,$$

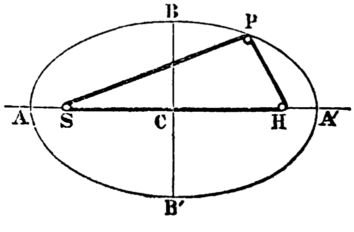
$$y^2 = p\,x - \frac{p}{2\,a}\,x^2,$$

$$y^2 = p\,x.$$

DESCRIPTION OF THE CONIC SECTIONS BY CONTINUED MOTION.

265. The conic sections being curves of great importance, not only from their mathematical properties, but also from their usefulness in the arts and sciences, it becomes necessary that we should be able to describe these curves with accuracy. Now, a curve may be drawn in two ways, either by "mechanical description" or by "points." As an instance of the first method we may mention the circle, described by the compasses, or by means of a string fastened at one end to the centre, and the other carried round by the hand, the hand tracing the curve. This mechanical method, or, as it is sometimes called, "that by continued motion," is not always practicable: no curve is so simple, in this respect, as the circle; hence we are often obliged to have recourse to the second method, or that by points: this is done by taking the equation to the curve and from some property expressed geometrically, finding a number of points, all of which belong to the curve, and then neatly joining these points with a pen or other instrument. We shall commence with the mechanical description of these curves.

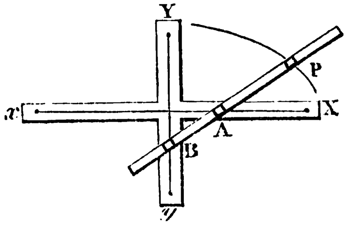
266. To trace an ellipse of which the axes are given:



Let A A′, B B′ be the axes: with centre B and radius A C describe a circle cutting A A′ in S and H, these points are the foci. Place pegs at S and H. Let one extremity of a string be held at A, and pass the string round H back again to A, and there join [illegible] two ends by a knot, so that its length shall be just double of A H; place a pen or other pointed instrument within this string, and move it round the points S and H, so that the string be always stretched; the pen will trace out the required ellipse. For if P be one of its positions, we have

$$\mathrm{SP} + \mathrm{PH} + \mathrm{HS} = 2\mathrm{AH} = \mathrm{AA}' + \mathrm{HS};$$
$$\therefore \mathrm{SP} + \mathrm{PH} = \mathrm{AA}'.$$

267. Another method is by means of an instrument called the elliptic compasses, or the trammel.



Let X x and Y y be two rulers with grooves in them, and fastened at right angles to each other. Let B P be a third ruler, on which take B P equal to the semi-axis major, and P A the semi-axis minor. At B a peg is so fixed that the point B with the peg can move along Y y; a similar peg is fixed at A. By turning the ruler B P round, a pen placed at P will trace out the curve. Suppose C to be the point where the axes meet, C M $= x$ and M P $= y$, the rectangular co-ordinates of P, and suppose that B N is drawn parallel to C M and meeting P M in N, then A M $= \frac{b}{a}$ B N, and

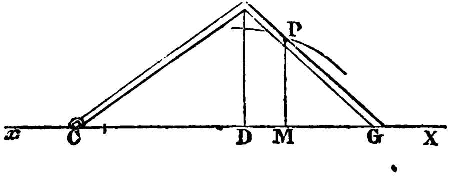
The square on A P = the square on P M + the square on A M;

$$\text{or } b^2 = y^2 + \frac{b^2}{a^2} x^2,$$
$$\therefore a^2 y^2 + b^2 x^2 = a^2 b^2.$$

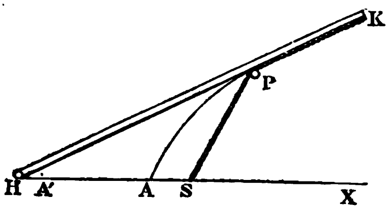
268. The following is also a very simple method of describing the ellipse. X x is a ruler of any length, C F, F G are two rulers, each equal to half the sum of the semi-axes. These rulers are fastened together by a moveable joint at F, and F C turns round a pivot at C; F P is taken equal to half the difference of the semi-axes. Let the point G slide along the line X x, then the point P will trace out the curve. Draw F D and P M perpendicular to C X, and let C M $= x$, and M P $= y$, then

The square on F G = the square on F D + the square on D G;

$$\text{or } \left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)^2 = \left(\frac{a+b}{2}\,\frac{y}{b}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{a+b}{2}\,\frac{x}{a}\right)^2$$
$$\therefore \frac{y^2}{b^2} + \frac{x^2}{a^2} = 1.$$

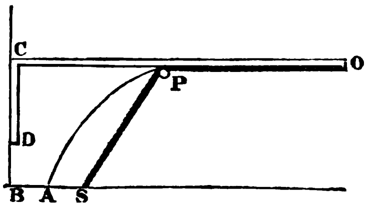


For a description of the Elliptograph, and other instruments for describing ellipses, we must refer our readers to the treatise on Practical Geometry, where an extremely good account is given of all the instruments, and also the advantages and disadvantages of each are well exhibited.



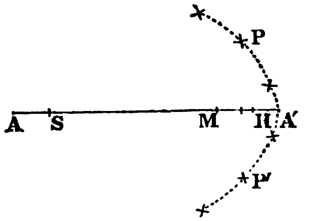
269. To trace the hyperbola by continued motion, let A A' be the transverse axis, S H the distance between the foci, H P K a ruler movable about H. A string, whose length is less than H K by A A' is fastened to K and S; when the ruler is moved round H, keep the string stretched, and in part attached to the ruler by a pencil as at P; then, since the difference of H P and P S is constantly the same, the point P will trace out the curve.

If the length of the string be H K, a straight line perpendicular to H S will be traced out; and if the string be greater than H K, the opposite branch, or that round H, will be described.

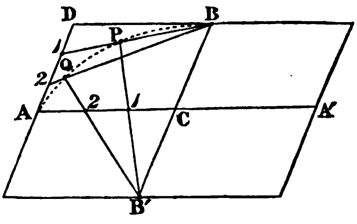


270. To trace the parabola by continued motion. Let S be the focus, and B C the directrix. Apply a carpenter's square O C D to the ruler B C, fasten one end of a thread whose length is C O to O, and the other end to the focus S; slide the square D C O along B C, keeping the thread tight by means of a pencil P, and in part attached to the square. Then since S P = P C, the point P will describe a parabola.

Description of the Conic Sections by Points.



271. Given the axes of an ellipse to describe the curve. Let A A' be the axis major, S and H the foci. With centre S, and any radius A M less than A A', describe a circle, and with centre H and radius A' M describe a second circle, cutting the former in two points P and P'; then since S P + P H = A M + M A' = A A', P is a point in the required curve; and thus any number of points may be found, and the curve described.



272. Given a pair of conjugate diameters to describe the curve. Let A A', B B', be the conjugate diameters. Through B draw B D parallel to A C, and through A draw A D parallel to B C. Divide A D and A C into the same number of equal parts as three. From B draw lines to the dividing points in A D, and from B' draw lines to the dividing points in A C; the intersections P, Q, of these lines are points in the ellipse.

For let C be the origin; $CA = a_1$, $CB = b_1$,

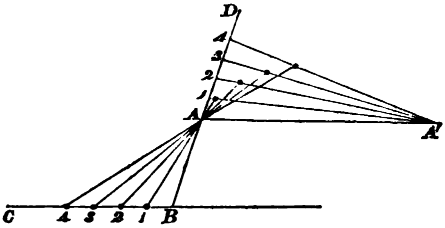
Then the equation to B P is $y - b_1 = \frac{b_1}{3a_1}x$;

and the equation to B′P is $y + b_1 = -\frac{3b_1}{a_1}x$.

Hence the product of the tangents of the angles which these lines B P, B′P make with the axis of $x = -\frac{b_1}{3a_1}\,\frac{3b_1}{a_1} = -\frac{b_1^2}{a_1^2}$ and is constant; therefore P is a point in the curve (141).

Innumerable points may be thus found in the four quadrants of the figure.

273. The following is perhaps the best method of tracing the ellipse by points:



Let A A′ be a diameter and A B equal and parallel to the conjugate diameter. Through B draw B C parallel to A A′ and equal to any multiple of A A′. In B A produced, take A D the same multiple of A B. Divide B C into any number of equal parts, and A D into the same number of equal parts. Through A draw lines to the points of division in B C, and through A′ draw lines to the points of division in A D; the intersections of corresponding lines will give points in an ellipse whose conjugate diameters are A A′ and A B. The proof is the same as in the last case.

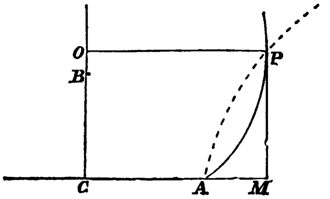
274. Given the axes of an hyperbola to trace the curve.

Let A A′ be the transverse axis, S and H the foci, which are given points; with centre S and any radius A M greater than A A′, describe a circle, and with centre H and radius A′M describe a second circle, cutting the former in two points P and P, these are points in the required curve.

The proof is much the same as that for the ellipse (271.)

Again, if, in article 273, B C was taken to the right of B instead of the left, as in the figure, the intersections of the corresponding lines will give an hyperbola.

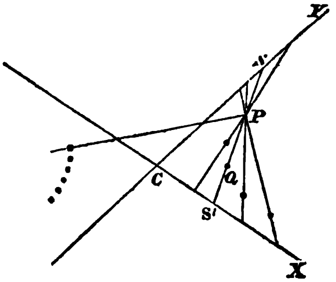
275. To describe the rectangular hyperbola by points.



Let C A, C B be the equal semi-axes with any centre O in C B produced and with radius O A, describe a circle; draw O P perpendicular to C O meeting the circle in P, then P is a point in the curve; Let $CM = x$, $MP = y$; then the square on C O = the square on O A − the square on C A;

$$\text{or } y^2 = x^2 - a^2.$$

276. Given the asymptotes CX, CY of an hyperbola, and one point P in the curve, to describe the curve by points.

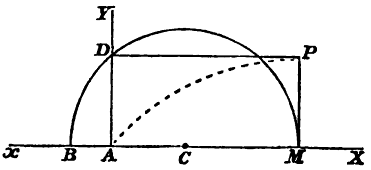


Through P draw any line SPS' terminated by the asymptotes; in it take $S'Q = SP$; then Q is a point in the curve (217), and similarly any number of points may be found.

Together with the asymptotes, another condition must always be given to enable us to trace the curve, for the position of the asymptotes only gives us the ratio of the axes, and not the axes themselves.

277. To describe the parabola by points, when the principal parameter p is given.

Let AX, AY be the rectangular axes; in Ax take $AB = p$; with any centre C in AX and radius CB describe a circle BDM, cutting AY in D and AX in M, draw DP and MP perpendicular to AY and AX respectively; then P is a point in the curve.

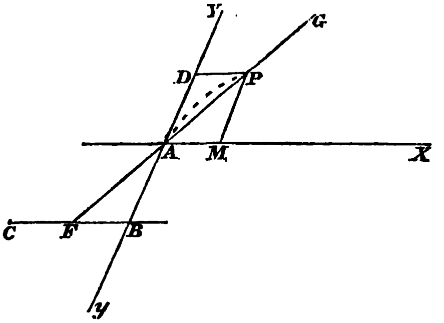


Let $AM = x$, $MP = y$; then the square on AD = the rectangle BA, AM,

$$\text{or } y^2 = px.$$

278. Given the angle between the axes and any parameter p' to describe the curve.

Let AX, YAy be the axes, AB the parameter. Through B draw CB parallel to AX. Through A draw any line FAG, meeting BC in F; in AY take $AD = BF$, and draw DP parallel to AX, cutting AG in P, then P is a point in the curve.



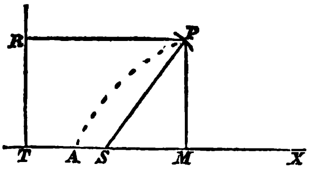
Draw MP parallel to AY, and let

$$AM = x, \text{ and } MP = y,$$

$$\text{then } MP : MA :: AB : FB,$$

$$\text{or } y : x :: p' : y; \quad \therefore y^2 = p'x.$$

279. Given the position of the directrix TR and the focus S, to trace any of the conic sections by points.



Draw S T perpendicular to T R, then T S produced will be the axis of the curve.

Let $e : 1$ be the ratio of the distance of any point P in the curve from the focus and from the directrix; hence if A S : A T :: e : 1; A is a point in the curve. Take any point M in A X, and with centre S and radius equal to e times T M, describe a circle; draw M P perpendicular to A X, and meeting the circle in P, then P is a point in the curve.

Let A be the origin of rectangular co-ordinates, $AM = x$, $MP = y$, $AS = m$, and $\therefore AT = \frac{m}{e}$;

$$\text{then } SP = e \,.\, TM = e \,.\, PR$$

$$\therefore\ y^2 + (x-m)^2 = e^2\left(x + \frac{m}{e}\right)^2$$

$$\text{or } y^2 + x^2 - 2mx + m^2 = e^2x^2 + 2emx + m^2;$$

$$\therefore\ y^2 + (1-e^2)x^2 - 2mx(1+e) = 0;$$

which is the equation to the curves of the second order.

Let e be less than unity, $\therefore\ y^2 = (1-e^2)\left\{\frac{2m}{1-e}x - x^2\right\}$.

Comparing this equation with that to the ellipse $y^2 = \frac{b^2}{a^2}(2ax - x^2)$, we have

$$2a = \frac{2m}{1-e} \text{ and } \frac{b^2}{a^2} = 1 - e^2,$$

$$\therefore\ b^2 = \frac{m^2}{(1-e)^2}(1-e^2) = m^2\frac{1+e}{1-e};$$

hence the curve is an ellipse whose axes are $\frac{2m}{1-e}$ and $2m\sqrt{\frac{1+e}{1-e}}$.

Let e be greater than unity, $\therefore\ y^2 = (e^2-1)\left\{\frac{2m}{e-1}x + x^2\right\}$;

and the curve is an hyperbola, whose axes are $\frac{2m}{e-1}$ and $2m\sqrt{\frac{e+1}{e-1}}$.

Let e be equal to unity, $\therefore\ y^2 = 4mx$;

the curve is a parabola, whose principal parameter is $4m$.

280. The general equation to all the conic sections being

$$y^2 + (1-e^2)x^2 - 2mx(1+e) = 0,$$

it follows that if we find any property of the ellipse from this equation, it will be true for the hyperbola and parabola, making the necessary changes in the value of e:

Thus the equation to the tangent is

$$yy' + (1-e^2)xx' - m(1+e)(x+x') = 0, \text{ for the ellipse,}$$

$$yy' - (e^2-1)xx' - m(1+e)(x+x') = 0, \text{ for the hyperbola,}$$

$$\text{and } yy' - 2m(x+x') = 0, \text{ for the parabola.}$$

Also most of the results found in Chapter VIII. for the ellipse will be true for the hyperbola, by putting $-b^2$ for b^2; and will be true for the parabola by transferring the origin to the vertex of the ellipse, by then putting $\frac{m}{1-e}$ for a, and $m^2\,\frac{1+e}{1-e}$ for b^2; and then making $e = 1$. Thus the equation to the tangent at the extremity of the Latus Rectum in the ellipse, when the origin is at the vertex, is

$$y = a + e\,(x - a) \text{ (117)},$$

$$\text{or, } y = a\,(1 - e) + e\,x,$$

$$\text{for } a \text{ put } \frac{m}{1-e}, \text{ and then let } e = 1;$$

$$\therefore\ y = m + x, \text{ as in (235).}$$

281. If $\mathrm{S\,P} = r$, and $\mathrm{A\,S\,P} = \theta$, the polar equation to the curve thus traced is easily found:

$$\mathrm{S\,P} = e.\,\mathrm{P\,R} = e\,(\mathrm{T\,S} + \mathrm{S\,M}),$$

$$\text{or } r = e\,(m\,\frac{1+e}{e} - r\cos.\,\theta);$$

$$\therefore\ r = \frac{m\,(1+e)}{1 + e\cos.\,\theta}.$$

Or since $m\,(1 + e) = \frac{b^2}{a}$ for the ellipse and hyperbola, and $= 2\,m$ for the parabola, we have (putting p for the principal parameter) the general polar equation to the three curves,

$$r = \frac{p}{2}\,\frac{1}{1 + e\cos.\,\theta} \text{ (150).}$$

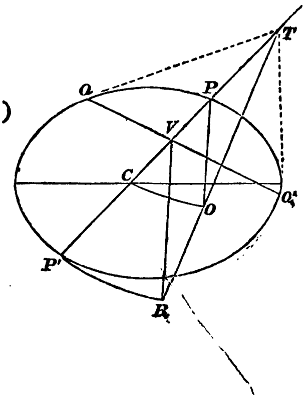
282. To draw a tangent at a given point P on the ellipse.

Draw the ordinate M P, and produce it to meet the circumscribing circle in Q, from Q draw a tangent to the circle meeting the axis major produced in T, join P T; this line is a tangent to the ellipse (114).

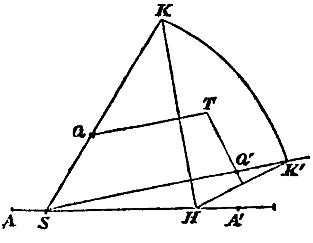
Again, taking the figure in the note appended to Art. 121, join S P, H P, and produce H P to K, so that P K = P H; join S K; the line P y bisecting S K is a tangent.

283. To draw a tangent to the ellipse from a point T without the curve.

(1)



(2)



Draw the line T P C P′ through the centre, fig. 1.; draw a conjugate diameter to C P: then the question is reduced to finding a point V in C P, through which a chord Q V Q′ is to be drawn, so that T Q and T Q′ may be tangents.

Take C V a third proportional to C T and C P, then V is the required point (136).

Again, with centre T and radii T P′, T C describe circles C O, P′ R, draw any line T O R, cutting these circles in O and R; join P O, and draw R V parallel to P O: then it may be proved by similar triangles that C V is a third proportional to C T and C P, and therefore V is the required point.

284. If the axes, and not the ellipse, are given, take S and H the foci, fig. 2, with centre S and radius A A′ describe a circle, and with centre T and radius T H describe another circle, cutting the former in the points K and K′; join S K and SK′, H K and H K′; from T draw the lines T Q and TQ′ perpendicular to H K and H K′, these lines meet S K and SK′ in the required points Q and Q′. The proof will readily appear upon joining H Q and H Q′, and referring to the note, page 77.

285. To draw a tangent to the hyperbola at a given point P on the curve.

Join S P and H P, note, page 97; in H P take PK = S P, and join S K; the line P Y bisecting S K is the required tangent.

286. To draw a tangent from a given point T without the curve.

The two methods given (283) for the ellipse will apply, with the necessary alteration of figure, to the hyperbola.

287. To draw a tangent to the parabola at a given point P on the curve.

Draw an ordinate P M to the axis, fig. 232, and in the axis produced take A T = A M, join P T; this line is a tangent (233); or take S T = S P, and join P T.

288. To draw a tangent to a parabola from a given point T without the curve.

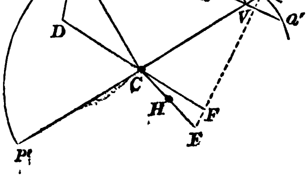
Draw a diameter T P V parallel to the axis, and cutting the curve in P, take P V = P T, and draw an ordinate Q V Q′ to the abscissa P V, then T Q and T Q′ are the required tangents (249).

If the directrix and focus be given, but not the curve; with centre T and radius T S describe a circle, cutting the directrix in the points R and R′, join R S and R′ S; draw R Q and R′ Q′ parallel to the axis, and then TQ and T Q′ perpendicular to R S and R′ S (239).

289. An arc Q P Q′ of a conic section, being traced on a plane to find to which of the curves it belongs; and also the axes and focus of the section.

Draw a line L through the middle of two parallel chords, and another line L′ through the middle of other two parallel chords, if the lines L, L′ are parallel, the curve is a parabola, if they meet on the concave side of the curve it is an ellipse, if on the convex side it is an hyperbola. (130. 243.)

290. Let the curve be an ellipse, the point where the lines L L′ meet is the centre C; let P P′ be a diameter, its conjugate C D is thus found; describe a circle on P P′ as diameter, and draw V R, C B perpendicular to P P′; join R Q, and draw B D parallel to R Q, meeting a line parallel to Q V, passing through C; then C D is the conjugate diameter (136).

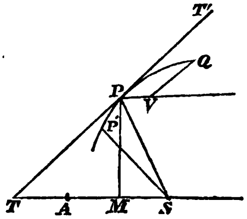


To find the length and position of the axes; draw P F perpendicular on C D, and produce it to E, making P E = C D, join C E, and bisect C E in H; join P H; then from the triangle C P E we have the side C E in terms of C P and C D $= \sqrt{\{a_1^2 + b_1^2 - 2\,a_1 b_1 \sin.\ (\theta' - \theta)\}} = \sqrt{\{a^2 + b^2 - 2\,a\,b\}} = a - b\ \therefore$; C H $= \dfrac{a-b}{2}$; also from the same triangle we have P H $= \dfrac{a+b}{2}$; hence P H + H E is the semi-axis major, and P H − H E is the semi-axis minor.

In H P take H K = H E, then C K is the direction of the axis-major.

291. If the arc Q P Q′ be an hyperbola, the conjugate diameter may be found by a process somewhat similar to that for the ellipse; the asymptotes may then be drawn by Art. 215. The direction of the axes bisects the angle of the asymptote, and their length is determined by drawing a tangent P T, and perpendicular P M, to the axis, and taking C A a mean proportional between C M and C T (167).

292. If the arc be a portion of a parabola, draw T P T′ parallel to Q V, and then draw P S, making the angle S P T = the angle T′ P V; repeat this construction for another point P′, then the junction of PS and P′S determines the focus S (240); the axis is parallel to P V, and the vertex is found by drawing a perpendicular on the axis, and then bisecting T M (233).



293. We shall conclude the subject of conic sections with the following theorem.

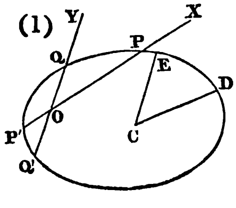
If through any point within or without a conic section two straight lines making a given angle with each other, be drawn to meet the curve, the rectangle contained by the segments of the one will be in a constant ratio to the rectangle contained by the segments of the other.

Case 1. The ellipse and hyperbola.

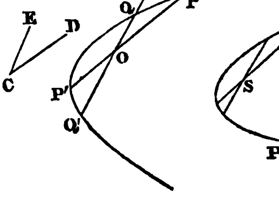
Let C D, C E be two semi-diameters parallel to the chords P O P′, Q O Q′; then, wherever chords parallel to these be drawn, we shall always have the following proportion:

The rectangle P O, O P′ : the rectangle Q O, O Q′ :: the square on C D : the square on C E.

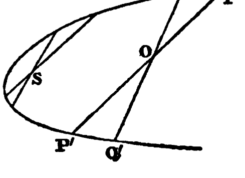
(1)



(2)



(3)



Let O be the origin of oblique axes O X, O Y: then the equation to the curve will be of the form

$$ay^2+bxy+cx^2+dy+ex+f=0.$$

Let $x=0$; $\therefore\ ay^2+dy+f=0$, and the product of the roots being $\frac{f}{a}$, we have

$$\text{The rectangle } QO,\ OQ' = \frac{f}{a};$$

$$\text{Similarly the rectangle } PO,\ OP' = \frac{f}{c};$$

$\therefore$ the rectangle QO, OQ' : the rectangle PO, OP' $::\frac{f}{a}:\frac{f}{c}::c:a$

Now, let the origin be transferred to the centre without changing the direction of the axes, then the form of the equation is

$$ay^2+bxy+cx^2+f'=0 \quad (81).$$

Let $x=0$; $\therefore$ the square on $CE = \frac{-f'}{a}$; and the square on $CD = \frac{-f'}{c}$; $\therefore$ the square on CE : the square on CD; $::c:a$;

$\therefore$ the rectangle QO, OQ' : the rectangle PO, OP' :: the square on CE : the square on CD.

In the hyperbola fig. (2), CE and CD do not meet the curve; but in order to show that these lines are semi-diameters, let the axis of y be carried round till it becomes conjugate to CD, then the formulas for transformation in (55) become for $\theta=0$,

$$y=y'\frac{\sin.\theta'}{\sin.\omega},\ x=x'+y'\frac{\sin.(\omega-\theta')}{\sin.\omega}.$$

If these values of x and y be substituted in the general central equation above, and it be reduced to the conjugate form by putting $b'=0$, the transformed equation is of the form $a'y^2+cx^2+f'=0$, where c and f' are not changed, and $-\frac{f'}{c}$ is the square on the semi-diameter along the axis of x (86); hence the theorem is true for the hyperbola.

Case 2. The Parabola fig. (3.)

As before, we have the rectangle PO, OP' : the rectangle QO, OQ' $::c:a$.

Let P and Q be the parameters to the chords POP' and QOQ'; transfer the origin to the focus, the axes remaining parallel to PO, and QO, by which transformation c and a are not altered.

Now in this case, the chords passing through the focus, we have the rectangle PS, SP' : the rectangle QS, SQ'; $::\frac{p}{4}P:\frac{p}{4}Q$ (254) and also as $c:a$; hence the rectangle PO, OP' : the rectangle QO, OQ' $::c:a::P:Q$.

294. If the point O be without the curves, and the points $P\,P'$ coincide as well as Q and Q', or the lines become tangents, we have for the ellipse and hyperbola,

The square on O P : the square on O Q :: the square on C D : the square on C E;

or O P : O Q :: C D : CE.

For the parabola;

The square on O P : the square on O Q :: S P : S Q;

hence it may be proved that, if a polygon circumscribe an ellipse, the algebraical product of its alternate segments are equal. And the same theorem will apply to tangents about an hyperbola; the tangents commencing from any point in the asymptotes.

CHAPTER XII.

ON CURVES OF THE HIGHER ORDERS.

295. Having completed the discussion of lines of the second order, we should naturally proceed to the investigation of the higher orders; but the bare mention of the number of those in the next or third order (for they amount to eighty) is quite sufficient to show that their complete investigation would far exceed the limits of an elementary treatise like the present. Nor is it requisite: we have examined the sections of the cone at great length, because, from their connexion with the system of the world, every property of these curves may be useful; but it is not so with the higher orders; generally speaking they possess but few important qualities, and may be considered more as objects of mathematical curiosity than of practical utility.

The third order is chiefly remarkable from its investigation having been first undertaken by Newton. Of the eighty species now known, seventy-two were examined by him; eight others, which escaped his searching eye, have since been discovered.

Those who wish to study these curves, may refer to Newton's "Enumeratio Linearum tertii Ordinis;" or to the work of Stirling upon the same subject.

Of the fourth order there are above five thousand species, and the number in the higher orders is so enormous as to preclude the possibility of their general investigation in the present state of analysis.

A systematic examination of curves being thus impossible, all that we can do is to give a selection, taking care that amongst them shall be found all the algebraical or transcendental curves which are most remarkable either for their utility or history.

We shall generally introduce them as examples of indeterminate problems, that is, of problems leading to final equations, containing two variables. We shall then trace the loci of those equations, and explain, when necessary, anything relating to the construction or properties of the curves.

It would be useless to give any general rules for the working of these questions; those given for determinate problems will here serve equally well; but, in both cases, experience is the only sure guide. In the solution of these problems we shall not always follow the same, nor even the easiest, method; but we shall endeavour to vary the manner, so that an attentive observer may learn how to act in any particular case.

We commence with problems leading to loci of the second order.

296. Given the straight line A B ($= a$) to find the point P without A B, so that A P : PB :: m : 1.

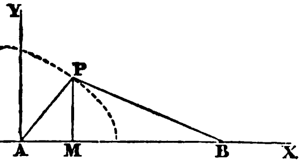
Let A be the origin of rectangular co-ordinates, A X and A Y the axes, $\text{A M} = x$, $\text{M P} = y$, and $\therefore \text{M B} = a - x$,

$$\text{then A P} : \text{P B} :: m : 1$$

$$\text{or } \sqrt{x^2 + y^2} : \sqrt{(a-x)^2 + y^2} :: m : 1;$$

$$\therefore x^2 + y^2 = m^2(a-x)^2 + m^2 y^2,$$

$$\text{or } (1 - m^2)y^2 + (1 - m^2)x^2 + 2m^2 a x - m^2 a^2 = 0,$$



$$\text{or } y^2 + \left(x + \frac{m^2 a}{1 - m^2}\right)^2 = \frac{m^2 a^2}{(1 - m^2)^2}.$$

This equation shows that there are an infinite number of points satisfying the conditions of the problem, all situated on the circumference of a circle (66).

To draw this circle; in A x take A C $= \frac{m^2 a}{1 - m^2}$, and with centre C and radius $\frac{m a}{1 - m^2}$ describe a circle; this is the required locus.

If $m = 1$, reverting to the original equation we have $x = \frac{a}{2}$, which is the equation to a straight line drawn through the bisection of A B, and parallel to A Y.

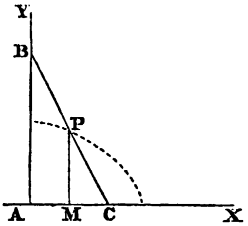
297. If perpendiculars be drawn to two lines given in position from a point P, and the distance between the feet of the perpendiculars be a constant quantity a, required the locus of P.

Let the intersection of the given lines be the origin of rectangular axes, take one of the lines for the axis of x, and let $y = \alpha x$ be the equation to the other; then the equation to the line passing through P $(x' y')$, and perpendicular to the line $y = \alpha x$, is $y - y' = -\frac{1}{\alpha}(x - x')$; then from these two equations the co-ordinates of the point where their loci meet, that is, the co-ordinates of the foot of the perpendicular are readily obtained; and then the final equation found, by art. 29, is $y'^2 + x'^2 = a^2 \frac{(1 + \alpha^2)}{\alpha^2}$, which belongs to a circle whose centre is at the intersection of the lines.

298. A given straight line B C moves between two straight lines, A B, A C, so that its extremities B C are constantly on those lines; to find the curve traced out by any given point P in B C.

Let the lines A B, A C be the axes of y and x,

$$\text{A M} = x, \qquad \text{B P} = a,$$
$$\text{M P} = y, \qquad \text{P C} = b,$$



and let B A C be a right angle;

then A M : B P :: M C : P C,

$$x : a :: \sqrt{b^2 - y^2} : b$$
$$\therefore\ b^2 x^2 = a^2 b^2 - a^2 y^2,$$
$$\text{or } a^2 y^2 + b^2 x^2 = a^2 b^2,$$

which is the equation to an ellipse whose centre is A and axes $2\,a$, $2\,b$. If a ladder be placed against a wall, and its foot drawn along the ground at right angles to the wall, any step will trace out a quarter of an ellipse, and the middle step will trace out a quadrant of a circle.

If the co-ordinate axes be inclined at an angle θ, we have

$$\text{A B} = \frac{a + b}{b}\, y, \text{ and A C} = \frac{a + b}{a}\, x,$$

$$\text{Whence } a^2 y^2 + b^2 x^2 - 2\,a\,b \cos.\theta\,.\,x\,y - a^2 b^2 = 0,$$

which is the equation to an ellipse (76).

It is easy to see that from this problem arises a very simple mechanical method of describing the ellipse.

If a straight line B C of variable length move between two straight lines A B, A C, so that the triangle A B C is constant, the curve traced out by a point P which divides B C in a given ratio is an hyperbola.

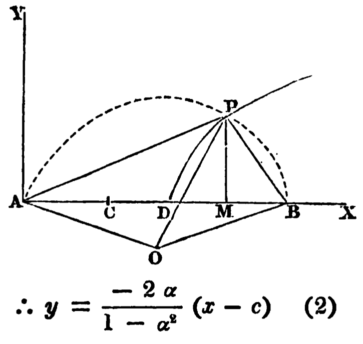
299. Given the line A B ($= c$) to find a point P without A B, such that drawing P A and P B, the angle P B A may be double of P A B.

Let A be the origin; A X, A Y the rectangular axes:

The equation to A P is $y = \alpha\, x$, (1)

and that to B P is $y = \alpha' (x - c)$;

but $\alpha' = \tan.\ \text{PBX} = -\tan.\ \text{PBA} = -\tan.\ 2\,\text{PAB} = -\dfrac{2\,\alpha}{1 - \alpha^2}$;



$$\therefore\ y = \frac{-\,2\,\alpha}{1 - \alpha^2}\,(x - c) \qquad (2)$$

Eliminating α between the equations (1) and (2), we have $y^2 = 3\,x^2 - 2\,c\,x$, hence the locus of P is an hyperbola; comparing its equation with the equation $y^2 = \dfrac{b^2}{a^2}\,(x^2 - 2\,a\,x)$, we find the axes to be $\dfrac{2\,c}{3}$ and

$\frac{2c}{\sqrt{3}}$, and the centre at C where $A\,C = \frac{c}{3}$.

By this hyperbola, a circular arc may be trisected; for if A P B be the arc to be trisected, describe the hyperbola D P as above, and let the curves intersect in P; then if 0 be the centre of the circle, the angle $A\,O\,P = 2\,A\,B\,P = 4\,P\,A\,B = 2\,P\,O\,B$, or the arc P B is one-third of B P A.

This problem may also be thus solved:

$$\text{Let } A\,M = x,\ M\,P = y, \text{ and angle } P\,A\,B = \theta;$$

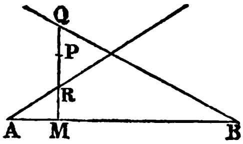
Then $\tan.\,\theta = \frac{y}{x}$, and $\tan.\,2\,\theta = \frac{y}{c - x}$ but $\tan.2\,\theta = \frac{2\tan.\,\theta}{1 - (\tan.\,\theta)^2}$,

$$\therefore \frac{y}{c - x} = \frac{\frac{2\,y}{x}}{1 - \frac{y^2}{x^2}}, \text{ or } y^2 = 3\,x^2 - 2\,c\,x.$$

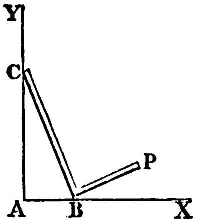
On examination it will be seen that the above two methods of solution are identical.

300. The following problems give loci of the second order.

1. From the given points A and B, (fig. 1,) two straight lines given in position are drawn, M R Q is a common ordinate to these lines, and M P is taken in M R Q a mean proportional to M Q and M R; required the locus of P.



(1)



(2)

2. A common carpenter's square C B P, (fig. 2,) moves in the right angle X A Y, so that the point C is always in A Y, and the right angle B in the line A X; required the locus of P.

3. If the base and difference of the angles at the base of a triangle be given, the locus of the vertex is an equilateral hyperbola.

4. To find a point P, from which, drawing perpendiculars on two given straight lines, the enclosed quadrilateral shall be equal to a given square.

301. Let A Q A′ be an ellipse, A A′ the axis major, Q Q′ any ordinate, join A Q and A′ Q′; required the locus of their intersection P.

Let C be the origin of rectangular co-ordinates.

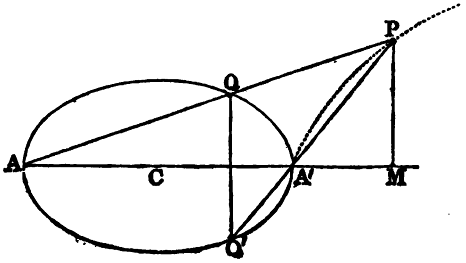
$$C\,M = x,\ M\,P = y,\ C\,N = x', \text{ and } N\,Q = y'.$$

Then the equation to A Q is $y = \alpha\,x + c$

$$\text{which at A is } 0 = -\,\alpha\,a + c;$$

$$\therefore\quad y = \alpha\,(x + a),$$

At Q it becomes $y' = \alpha\,(x' + a)$ $\therefore\ \alpha = \dfrac{y'}{x' + a}$;



Hence the equation to A Q is $y = \dfrac{y'}{x' + a}\,(x + a)$, (1)

And similarly that to A′Q′ is $y = \dfrac{-\,y'}{x' - a}\,(x - a)$, (2)

$$\text{Also } a^2 y'^2 + b^2 x'^2 = a^2 b^2; \qquad (3)$$

Eliminating x' and y' between (1) and (2), we have

$$x' = \frac{a^2}{x} \text{ and } y' = \frac{a\,y}{x}.$$

Substituting in (3) we obtain the final equation

$$a^2\ \frac{a^2 y^2}{x^2} + \frac{b^2 a^4}{x^2} = a^2 b^2,$$

$$\text{or } a^2 y^2 - b^2 c^2 = -\,a^2 b^2,$$

which is the equation to an hyperbola, whose centre is C, and transverse axis 2 a.

The method of elimination used in this problem is of great use; the principle admits of a clear explanation. We have the equations to A Q and A′ Q′; putting x and y the same for both equations intimates that x and y are the co-ordinates C M and M P in one particular case of intersection; but the elimination of x' and y' intimates that x and y are also always the co-ordinates of intersection, and therefore that the resulting equation belongs to the locus of their intersection.

302. To find the locus of the centres of all the circles drawn tangential to a given line A X, and whose circumferences pass through a given point Q (a b).

Let S Q M be one of these circles, referred to rectangular axes A x, A y.

x, y the co-ordinates of its centre P,

x', y' . . . . . . any point on its circumference.

Then the equation to S Q M is

$$(y' - y)^2 + (x' - x)^2 = r^2; \quad (65)$$

but passing through Q, it becomes

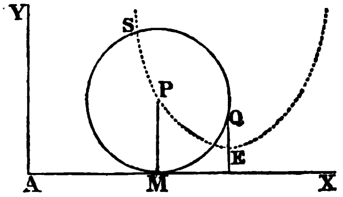
$$(b - y)^2 + (a - x)^2 = r^2,$$

and, being tangential to A X, we have $r = y$,

$$\therefore (b - y)^2 + (a - x)^2 = y^2,$$

$$\text{or } x^2 - 2ax - 2by + a^2 + b^2 = 0,$$

This is the equation to a parabola (78).



It may be put in the form $(x - a)^2 = 2b\left(y - \frac{b}{2}\right)$. Hence if we transfer the origin to the point E $\left(a, \frac{b}{2}\right)$, we have the equation $x^2 = 2by$, and the curve is referred to its vertex E, which is the centre of the least circle.

If, instead of the circle passing through a given point, it touch a given circle, a parabola is again the locus of P.

303. Let A B, B C, C D, and D A (fig. 1, p. 148) be four straight lines given in position, to find the locus of a point P, such, that drawing the lines P E, P F, P G, and P H making given angles with A B, B C, C D, and D A, we may have the rectangle P E, P F = the rectangle P G, P H.

Let O be the origin of rectangular axes O X, O Y; x and y the coordinates of P; β, β', β'' and β''' the cosecants of the angles which the lines P E, P F, &c., make with A B, B C, &c. Then the equation

to A B being $y' = \alpha x' + b$ we have $\mathrm{PE} = \dfrac{y - \alpha x - b}{\sqrt{1 + \alpha^2}}\,\beta$ (49)

to B C . . $y' = \alpha' x' + b'$. . . $\mathrm{PF} = \dfrac{y - \alpha' x - b'}{\sqrt{1 + \alpha'^2}}\,\beta'$

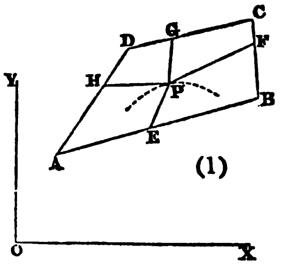
to D C . . $y' = \alpha'' x' + b''$ . . $\mathrm{PG} = \dfrac{y - \alpha'' x - b''}{\sqrt{1 + \alpha''^2}}\,\beta''$

to A D . . $y' = \alpha''' x' + b'''$ . . $\mathrm{PH} = \dfrac{y - \alpha''' x - b'''}{\sqrt{1 + \alpha'''^2}}\,\beta'''$;

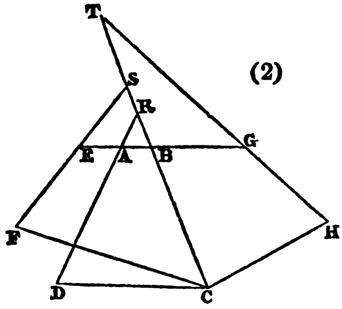
$$\therefore \text{ by the question } \frac{y - \alpha x - b}{\sqrt{1 + \alpha^2}}\,\frac{y - \alpha' x - b'}{\sqrt{1 + \alpha'^2}}\,\beta\beta'$$

$$= \frac{y - \alpha'' x - b''}{\sqrt{1 + \alpha''^2}}\,\frac{y - \alpha''' x - b'''}{\sqrt{1 + \alpha'''^2}}\,\beta''\beta'''.$$

This equation being evidently of two dimensions, the locus of P is conic section, the particular species of which depends on the situation of the given lines.



(1)



(2)

This problem may be expressed much more generally. Suppose 3, 4, 5 or a greater number of lines to be given in position, required a point from which, drawing lines to the given lines, each making a given angle with them, the rectangle of two lines thus drawn from the given point may have a given ratio to the square on the third, if there are three; or to the rectangle of the two others, if there are four: or again, if there are five lines, that the parallelopiped composed of three lines may have a given ratio to the parallelopiped of the two remaining lines, together with a third given line, or to the parallelopiped composed of the three others, if there are six: or again, if there are seven, that the algebraical product of four may have a given ratio to the algebraical product of the three others and a given line, or to the four others, if there are eight, and so on.

This was a problem which very much perplexed the ancient geometricians. Pappus says, that neither Euclid nor Apollonius could give a solution. He himself knew that when there are only three or four lines the locus was a conic section, but he could not describe it, much less could he tell what the curve would be when the number of lines were more than four. When the number of lines were seven or eight, the ancients could scarcely enunciate the problem, for there are no figures beyond solids, and without the aid of algebra, it is impossible to conceive what the product of four lines can mean.

It was this problem which Descartes successfully attacked, and which, most probably, led him to apply algebra generally to geometry. The following solution is that given by Descartes, with a few abbreviations:

A B, A D, E F and G H (fig. 2) are the given lines, C the required point from which are drawn the lines C B, C D, C F and C H making given angles C B A, C D A, C F E, and C H G. A B ($= x$) and B C ($= y$) are the principal lines to which all the others will be referred. Suppose the given lines to meet C B in the points R, S, T, and A B in the points A, E and G. Let A E $= c$ and A G $= d$.

Then since all the angles of the triangle A B R are known, we have B R $= \alpha . \mathrm{AB} = \alpha x$; $\therefore$ C R $= \alpha x + y$ and C D $= \beta (\alpha x + y)$; also B S $= \alpha' . \mathrm{BE} = \alpha' (c + x)$; $\therefore$ C S $= y + \alpha' (c + x)$ and C F $= \beta' \{y + \alpha' (c + x)\}$; also B T $= \alpha'' . \mathrm{BG} = \alpha'' (d - x)$; $\therefore$ C T $= y + \alpha'' (d - x)$ and C H $= \beta'' \{y + \alpha'' (d - x)\}$; then since the rectangle C B, C F = the rectangle C D, C H, we have the equation

$$y\beta'\{y + \alpha'(c + x)\} = \beta(\alpha x + y)\beta''\{y + \alpha''(d - x)\}.$$

This equation Descartes showed to belong to a conic section which he described. He also gave the following numerical example:

Let E A = 3, A G = 5, A B = B R, B S = ½ B E, G B = B T, C D = $\frac{3}{2}$ C R, C F = 2 C S, C H = $\frac{2}{3}$ C T, the angle A B R = 60°, and the rectangle C B, C F = the rectangle C D, C H. By the above method he found the equation to be

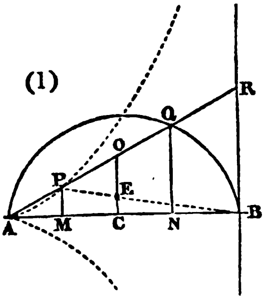
$$y^2 + xy + x^2 - 2y - 5x = 0;$$

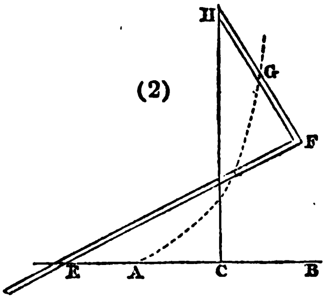
which he showed belonged to a circle. Taking the expressions in art. (72) we have the co-ordinates of the centre $\frac{8}{3}$ and $-\frac{1}{3}$, and the radius $= \frac{\sqrt{19}}{3}$.

304. Let A Q B be a semi-circle of which A B is the diameter, B R an indefinite straight line perpendicular to A B, A Q R a straight line meeting the circle in Q and B R in R; take A P = Q R; required the locus of P.

Let A be the origin of rectangular axes, and A B the axis of x.

A B = $2a$, A M = x, M P = y, and draw Q N parallel to M P;





then since A P = Q R, we have A M = B N,

and A M : M P :: A N : N Q;

that is, $x : y :: (2a - x) : \sqrt{(2a - x)x}$; (65)

$$\therefore y^2 = \frac{x^3}{2a - x} \text{ and } y = \pm\sqrt{\frac{x^3}{2a - x}}.$$

The following table gives the corresponding values of x and y:

	1	2	3	4	5	6
Values of x	0	a	$< 2a$	$2a$	$> 2a$	$-$
Values of y	0	a	possible	∞	impos.	impos.

From (1) the curve passes through the origin, from (2) it bisects the semi-circular arc A Q B, from (3) there are possible values of y for all values of x less than $2a$, from (4) there is an infinite ordinate at B, or B R is an asymptote to the curve: from these values we thus obtain an infinite arc proceeding from A to meet the asymptote B R. Again, from (5) for any value of x greater than $2a$, y is impossible, or no part of the curve is found to the right of the asymptote; and from (6) no part of the curve is on the left of A. Also, for every value of x there are two of y equal and opposite; hence there is a branch below A B similar to the one above it.

Diocles, a mathematician of the sixth century, invented this curve, which he called the Cissoid, from a Greek word signifying "ivy," because this curve climbs up its asymptote like ivy up a tree. He employed it in solving the celebrated problem of the insertion of two mean proportionals between given extremes.

Before his time, Pappus had reduced the problem to this case:

Let B C, C E be the two extremes, and A Q B a circle whose centre is C and radius C B; draw an indefinite straight line B E P through E and then draw the straight line A P O Q meeting B E and C E produced, and also meeting the circle at Q in such a manner that O Q = O P, then C O will be the first of the two mean proportionals. But the point P could not be directly found: hence, Diocles invented this curve to determine a series of points which will solve the problem for any length of C E: for example, suppose that B C, C E and the cissoid be drawn, join B E meeting the curve in P, then since O R = O A and Q R = A P we have O Q = O P.

From the definition of the curve it can be readily described by points; but as this is only a tentative process at best, and therefore not geometrically correct, Newton invented a very simple instrument for describing the curve by continued motion:

Let C H (fig. 2, p. 149) be a straight line parallel to B R; take A E = A C and let E F H be a common carpenter's square, the side F E being of indefinite length, and F H = A B; move this square so that the longer leg F E always passing through E, the extremity H of the other slides along C H, the middle point G of F H traces out the cissoid.

To obtain the polar equation to this curve:

$$\text{Let } y = r \sin. \theta \text{ and } x = r \cos. \theta;$$

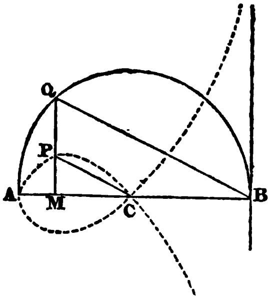
Substitute these values in the equation $y^2 = \frac{x^3}{2a-x}$,

$$\therefore r^2 (\sin.\theta)^2 = \frac{r^3 (\cos.\theta)^3}{2a - r\cos.\theta}; \text{ whence } r = 2a \sin.\theta . \tan\theta .$$

Ex. If a perpendicular be drawn from the vertex of a parabola to a tangent, the locus of their intersection is the cissoid.

305. If C be a point in the diameter A B of the circle A Q B, and M Q any ordinate, join B Q, and draw C P parallel to B Q, meeting M Q in P; required the locus of P.

Let $AM = x$,
$MP = y$,
$AB = a$,
$AC = b$;
then $BM : MQ :: CM : MP$,



$$\text{or } (a - x) : \sqrt{ax - x^2} :: (b - x) : y,$$

$$\therefore y = \pm (b - x)\sqrt{\frac{x}{a - x}}.$$

Hence the following table of values:

	1	2	3	4	5	6
Values of x	0	b	a	$< a$	$> a$	$-$
Values of y	0	0	$\pm \infty$	pos.	imp.	imp.

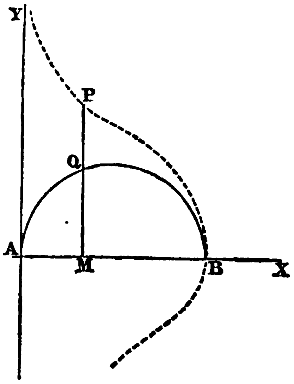
From (1) and (2) the curve passes through A and C; from (3) the ordinate at B is an asymptote to the curve; from (4) there are two arcs between A and C, also two between C and B; from (5) and (6) no part of the curve extends to the right of B or the left of A.

If $b = 0$, the oval between A and C disappears, and the curve is the cissoid of Diocles.

If b is negative, or the point C on the left of A, the curve consists of two branches proceeding from A to the asymptote through B, and th point C, though not on the curve, yet essentially belongs to it. This sulated point is called a conjugate point. The theory of such points be fully explained in the treatise on the Differential Calculus.

Ex. A point Q is taken in the ordinate M P of the parabola, always equidistant from P, and from the vertex of the parabola; required the locus of Q.

306. M Q is an ordinate to the semicircle A Q B, and M Q is produced to P, so that M P : M Q :: A B : A M to find the locus of P.



Let A B X and A Y be the rectangular axes.

A M = x,

M P = y,

A B = $2a$;

Then M P : M Q :: A B : A M,

$$\text{or } y : \sqrt{2ax - x^2} :: 2a : x,$$

$$yx = \pm 2a\sqrt{2ax - x^2},$$

$$\therefore y = \pm 2a\sqrt{\frac{2a - x}{x}};$$

	1	2	3	4	5
Values of x	0	$2a$	$< 2a$	$> 2a$	neg.
Values of y	$\pm \infty$	0	pos.	imp.	imp.

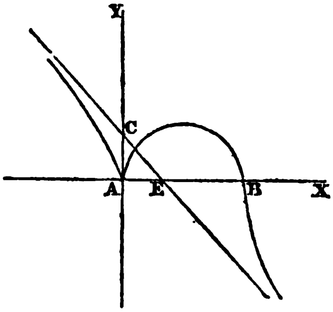
From (1) we have the ordinate at the origin infinite, and therefore an asymptote to the curve; from (2) the curve cuts the axis at B; from (3) the curve extends between A and B; from (4) no part of the curve is beyond B; from (5) no part is to the left of A.

This curve is called the Witch, and is the invention of an Italian lady, Maria Gaetana Agnesi, Professor of Mathematics in the University of Bologna, A.D. 1748.

307. In the circle the square on the ordinate is equal to the rectangle under the segments of the diameter; required the form of the curve on which the curve upon the ordinate is equal to the parallelopiped, of which the base is the square on one segment, and the altitude is the other segment, or $y^3 = x^2 (2a - x)$.

Let A be the origin, A X, A Y the rectangular axes, and A B $= 2a$.

Let $x = 0$ or $= 2a$, $\therefore\ y = 0$; hence the curve passes through A and B; for $x < 2a$, y is positive; but when x is $> 2a$, y increases negatively to infinity, since the third root of a negative quantity is negative and possible. Again, y is positive for all negative values of x, and increases to ∞; also for each value of x, there is only one real value of y, the other two roots of an equation $y^3 \pm 1 = 0$, being always impossible.



Expanding the equation we have

$$y = -x\sqrt[3]{1 - \frac{2a}{x}} = -x\left\{1 - \frac{1}{3}\frac{2a}{x} - \frac{4a^2}{9x^2} + \&c. \right\};$$

$\therefore$ the equation to the asymptote is $y = -x + \frac{2a}{3}$ (195).

In A Y take A C $= \frac{2a}{3}$, and in A X take A E $= \frac{2a}{3}$, join C E, this line produced is an asymptote to the curve.

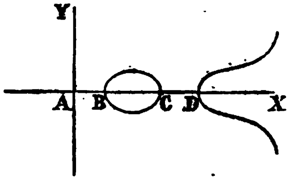
Ex. Find the locus of the equation, $y^3 + x^3 = a^3$; and of the equation $y^3 = a^2x - x^3$.

308. To trace the curve whose equation is $ay^2 = x^3 + mx^2 + nx + p$.

Case (1). Suppose the roots of this equation to be real and unequal, and to be represented by the letters a, b, and c, of which a is less than b and b less than c, then the equation is of the form

$$y = \pm\sqrt{\left\{\left(\frac{x-a}{a}\right)(x-b)\ (x-c)\right\}}.$$

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
Values of x	0	a	$< a$	$>a<b$	b	$>b<c$	—	$> c$	∞	—
Values of y	imp.	0	imp.	pos.	0	imp.	0	pos.	$\pm\infty$	imp.



Let A be the origin, A X, A Y, the axes; A B $= a$, A C $= b$, and A D $= c$;

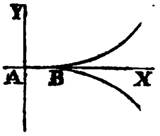
From (2) (5) and (7) the curve passes through B, C, and D; from (3) and (6) no part of the curve is found between A and B, or C and D; from (4) there are two branches between B and C; from (8) and (9) the curve proceeds from D to ∞, and from (10) no part of the curve is on the left of A.

If the roots had been negative, the curve would have the same form, but would be rather differently situated with regard to the origin.

Case (2). If two roots be equal, the equation is $y = (x-c)\sqrt{\frac{x-a}{a}}$, or $y = \pm (x-a)\sqrt{\frac{x-c}{a}}$; in the former case the figure is nearly the same as above, when the points C and D coincide; in the latter, supposing the points B and C to coincide, or the oval to become a conjugate point.

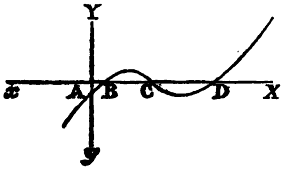
Case (3). If two of the roots be impossible, we have only the bell-shaped part of the curve from D.

Case (4). If the three roots be equal, the equation is $a y^2 = (x - a)^3$. The figure now consists of two branches proceeding from B with their convexity towards the axis. This curve is called the semi-cubical parabola; its equation is the most simple when the origin is at the vertex B; that is, putting x instead of $x - a$, when $a y^2 = x^3$.



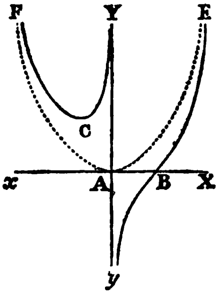
This curve is remarkable as being the first curve which was rectified, that is, the length of any portion of it was shown to be equal to a number of the common rectilinear unit.

309. The equation $a^2 y = x^3 + m x^2 + n x + p$, can be traced exactly as in the last article: the accompanying figure applies to the case when the three roots are positive, real, and unequal. If two of them be equal, one of the semi-ovals disappears; if three are equal, both disappear: in this case the equation is of the form $a^2 y = (x - a)^3$, or $a^2 y = x^3$, if the origin be transferred to B; the curve is then called the cubical parabola.



310. If the equation be $a x y = x^3 + m x^2 + n x + p$, the axis of y is an asymptote, and there is a branch in the angle Y A x; the rest

of the curve is like that in the last figure, supposing the lower branch from B to come to A y as the asymptote, the form will vary as the roots vary. We shall take the case where $y = \frac{x^3 - a^3}{a x}$.



	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
Values of x	0	a	$< a$	$> a$	∞	$-$	$-\infty$
Values of y	∞	0	$-$	$+$	∞	$+$	$+\infty$

From (1) Ay is an asymptote; from (2) the curve cuts the axis at B (A B $= a$); from (3, 4, 5) it is below the axis of x from A to B, and above from B to ∞; from (6) and (7) we have the branch F C Y.

This curve is called the trident, from its form. This curve enables us to point out the difference between what are called parabolic and hyperbolic branches of a curve: B y and C Y are hyperbolic, because they admit of a straight line Y y for the asymptote; but B E and C F are parabolic, because they admit of a parabolic asymptote, represented by the dotted curve F A E,

whose equation is $y = \frac{x^2}{a}$ (196).

Ex. Find the locus of the equation $x^2 y - y - x^3 - x = 0$.

If the equation be $x y^2 + a^2 y = x^3 + m x^2 + n x + p$, the form of the curve will depend on the nature of the roots of the equation $x^4 + m x^3 + n x^2 + p x + \frac{a^4}{4} = 0$; there will be no difficulty in any particular case. Generally the equation to the asymptotes is $y = \pm (x + \frac{1}{2} m)$; and the axis of y is an asymptote.

311. If the terms x^3 and $m x^2$ are wanting, the equation is

$$x y^2 + a^2 y = n x + p,$$

$$\therefore\ y = \frac{-a^2 \pm \sqrt{\{a^4 + 4 p x + 4 n x^2\}}}{2 x}$$

If the denominator of this expression had been constant, the equation would have belonged to an ellipse, hyperbola, or parabola, according as n was negative, positive or nothing; hence if such constant quantity be replaced by the variable quantity $2x$, the conic section becomes " hyperbolized" by having an infinite branch proceeding to the axis of y as an asymptote.

For the nine figures corresponding to the values of p, see Newton, Enum. Lin. Tert. Ord.

From the last article it appears that all curves of the third order have infinite branches; and this must necessarily be the case, for every equation of an odd degree has at least one real root, so that there is always one real value of y corresponding to any real value of x.

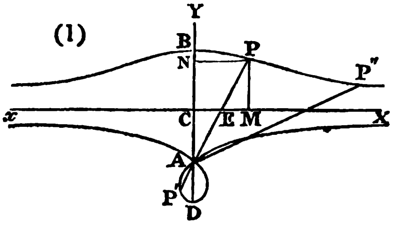
312. The conchoid of Nicomedes.

Let X x (fig. 1) be an indefinite straight line, A a given point, from which draw the straight line A C B perpendicular to X x, and also any number of straight lines A E P, A E P″, &c.; take E P always equal to C B, then the locus of P is the conchoid.

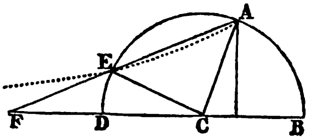
If in E A we take E P′ = E P the locus of P′ is called the inferior conchoid; both conchoids form but one curve, that is, both are expressed by the same equation.

C B is called the modulus, and X x the base or rule;

(1)



(2)



Let $AC = a$, $CM = x$,

$CB = b$, $MP = y$,

then $EP : PM :: AP : AN$,

or $b : y :: \sqrt{x^2 + (a+y)^2} : a + y$,

$$\therefore\ y^2 x^2 + y^2 (a+y)^2 = b^2 (a+y)^2,$$

$$\therefore\ x^2 = (b^2 - y^2)\left(\frac{a+y}{y}\right)^2$$

$$\therefore\ x = \pm \frac{a+y}{y}\sqrt{b^2 - y^2}.$$

have three cases according as b is $> a$, $= a$, or $< a$.

Case 1. $b > a$.

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
Values of y	0	b	$< b$	$> b$	$-a$	$-b$	$< -a$	$> -a, < -b$
Values of x	∞	0	pos.	imp.	0	0	pos.	pos.

From (1) X x is an asymptote; from (2) the curve passes through B; from (3) and (4) the curve extends from the asymptote upwards to B and no higher; hence the branch B P P″. Again from (5) and (6) the curve passes through A and D if C D $= b$; from (7) there is a branch A × extending from A to the asymptote; and from (8) the curve exists between A and D; the double value of x gives the same results along C x.

Case 2. $b = a$; in the table of values put $b = a$, and omit (8); thus the figure will be the same as the preceding, with the exception of the oval A P′ D, which vanishes by the coincidence of A and D.

Case 3. $b < a$; in the table of values put b for a in (7), and for (8) write "if y is $> -b$, x is impossible;" the upper part of the curve is not altered, but the point D falls between A and C; from (8) no part of the curve is between D and A; but from (5) A is a point not on the curve, but belonging to it, and called a conjugate point. In this case the lower curve is similar to the upper one.

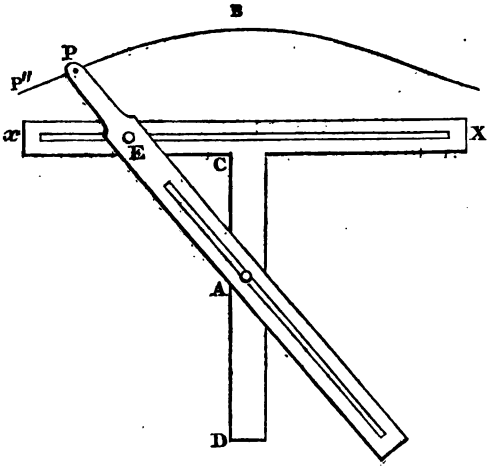
The generation of the conchoid gives a good idea of the nature of an asymptote, for the line E P must always be equal to C B, and this condition manifestly brings the curve continually nearer to C X, as at P″, so that the curve, though never actually coinciding with C X, approaches nearer to it than by any finite distance.

This curve was invented by Nicomedes, a Greek geometrician, who flourished about 200 years B.C. He called it the Conchoid, from a Greek word signifying "a shell;" it was employed by him in solving the problems of the duplication of the cube, and the trisection of an angle.

To show how the curve may be applied to the latter problem, let B C A (fig. 2) be the angle to be trisected; draw A E F meeting the circle in E, and the diameter produced in F, and so that the part E F equal the radius C A, then it is directly seen that the arc D E is one-third of B A.

Now it is not possible by the common geometry, that is, with the straight line and circle alone, to draw the line A E F, so that E F shall be equal to C A (the tentative process, though easy, being never considered geometrically correct), and for a long time the ancient geometricians would not hear of any other mathematical instruments than the ruler and compasses; hence the problem was quite insuperable: finding at last that this was the case, they began to invent some curves to assist in the solution of this and other problems: of these curves, the most celebrated is the conchoid of Nicomedes. It may be thus applied to the present problem. Let A be the pole of the inferior conchoid, B F the asymptote or base, and A C the modulus, the intersection of the curve with the circle evidently gives the required point E. The superior conchoid may also used for the same purpose.

Unless the curve could be described by continued motion, the solution would be incomplete. Nicomedes therefore invented the following simple machine for describing it. Let x X be a straight ruler with a groove cut in it; C D is another ruler fixed at right angles to x X; at A there is a fixed pin, which is inserted in the groove of a third ruler A E P; in A P is a fixed pin at E, which is inserted into the groove of x X; P E is any given length; then, by the constrained motion of the ruler P E A, a pencil at P will trace out a conchoid, and another pencil fixed in E A would trace out the inferior curve.



This curve was formerly used by architects; the contour of the shaft of a column being the portion B P P'' of a conchoid.

The polar equation to the conchoid is thus found:

Let A (fig. 1, page 156) be the pole, A P $= r$, P A B $= \theta$;

$$\therefore\ y + a = r \cos.\ \theta, \text{ and } x = r \sin.\ \theta.$$

Substituting these values in the equation, and reducing, we arrive at the polar equation $r = a \sec.\ \theta + b$.

The polar equation may, however, be much more easily obtained from the definition of the curve. We have

$$r = \mathrm{A\,P} = \mathrm{A\,E} + \mathrm{E\,P} = \mathrm{A\,C} \sec.\ \mathrm{C\,A\,E} + \mathrm{C\,B} = a \sec.\ \theta + b.$$

313. The following method of obtaining the equation to the conchoid will be found applicable to many similar problems.

Let any number of lines, A E P, fig. 1, be drawn cutting C X in different points E, &c.; from each of these points E as centre, and with radius b describe a circle cutting the line A E P in P and P'; the locus of the point P is the conchoid.

Let A be the origin of the rectangular co-ordinates.

A B the axis of y, and A X parallel to C X in the figure.

Let the general equation to the line A E P be $y = \alpha x$, where α is indeterminate;

Then $y' = a$, and $x' = \frac{a}{\alpha}$ are the equations to the point E;

The equation to the circle which has the point E for its centre and radius b, is

$$(y - y')^2 + (x - x')^2 = b^2,$$

$$\text{or} \quad (y - a)^2 + \left(x - \frac{a}{\alpha}\right)^2 = b^2.$$

And eliminating α between this equation, and that to the line A E P, we have the final equation to the curve,

$$(y - a)^2 + \left(x - \frac{a\,x}{y}\right)^2 = b^2,$$

$$\text{or } (y - a)^2\,\frac{x^2 + y^2}{y^2} = b^2.$$

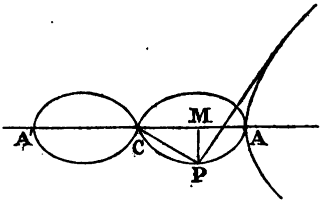
In general if the line C X be a curve whose equation is $y = f(x)$, the co-ordinates of the point E are found by eliminating x and y from the equations $y = \alpha\,x$, and $y = f(x)$; hence we find $x = f'(\alpha)$, and $y = \alpha f'(\alpha)$, and the equation to the circle is

$$\{y - \alpha f'(\alpha)\}^2 + \{x - f'(\alpha)\}^2 = b^2,$$

And the general equation to the curve is

$$\left\{y - \frac{y}{x} f'\left(\frac{y}{x}\right)\right\}^2 + \left\{x - f'\left(\frac{y}{x}\right)\right\}^2 = b^2.$$

314. A perpendicular is drawn from the centre of an hyperbola upon a tangent, find the locus of their intersection.



The equation to the tangent is

$$a^2\,y\,y' - b^2\,x\,x' = -a^2\,b^2. \qquad (1)$$

The equation to the perpendicular on it from the centre is

$$y = -\frac{a^2}{b^2}\,\frac{y'}{x'}\,x. \qquad (2)$$

In order to get the equation to their intersection, we must eliminate x' and y' from these two equations and that to the hyperbola; from (1) and (2) we find

$$x' = \frac{a^2\,x}{x^2 + y^2},\; y' = \frac{-\,b^2\,y}{x^2 + y^2}.$$

Substituting in the equation $a^2\,y'^2 - b^2\,x'^2 = -\,a^2\,b^2$, we have

$$(x^2 + y^2)^2 + b^2\,y^2 - a^2\,x^2 = 0,$$

which is an equation of the fourth degree.

We shall only investigate the figure in the case when $b = a$, that is, when the hyperbola is equilateral, in which case the equation is $(x^2 + y^2)^2 = a^2 (x^2 - y^2)$,

$$\therefore\ y^4 + (2\,x^2 + a^2)\,y^2 + x^4 - a^2\,x^2 = 0,$$

$$\text{and } y = \pm\sqrt{\left\{-\left(x^2 + \frac{a^2}{2}\right) \pm a\sqrt{2\,x^2 + \frac{a^2}{4}}\right\}}.$$

If the sign of the interior root be negative, y is impossible; hence we shall only examine the equation

$$y = \pm\sqrt{\left\{-\left(x^2 + \frac{a^2}{2}\right) + a\sqrt{2\,x^2 + \frac{a^2}{4}}\right\}};$$

here y is impossible, if $x^2 + \frac{a^2}{2}$ is $> a\sqrt{2\,x^2 + \frac{a^2}{4}}$,

$$\text{if } x^4 + a^2\,x^2 + \frac{a^4}{4} \text{ is } > 2\,a^2\,x^2 + \frac{a^4}{4},$$

$$\text{if } x^4 \text{ is } > a^2\,x^2,$$

$$\text{if } x \text{ is } > \pm\,a;$$

hence we have the following table:

	1	2	3	4
Values of x	0	$\pm\,a$	$< \pm\,a$	$> \pm\,a$
Values of y	0	0	pos.	imp.

From (1) the curve passes through C; from (2) it passes through A and A′; from (3) it has two branches from C to A and from C to A′; from (4) it does not extend beyond A and A′.

We may judge yet more nearly of the form of these ovals, for the tangent at the vertex of the hyperbola being perpendicular to the axis, the oval will cut the axis at A at a right angle; and again at C in an angle of 45°, because the tangent nearly coinciding with the asymptote, the perpendicular on it makes an angle of 45° with the axis ultimately.

This curve was invented by James Bernouilli; it is called the Lemniscata, and forms one of a series of curves corresponding to different values of b.

To find the polar equation to the lemniscata,

$$\text{Let } y = r \sin.\ \theta, \text{ and } x = r \cos.\ \theta;$$

hence the equation $(x^2 + y^2)^2 = a^2 (x^2 - y^2)$ becomes $r^2 = a^2 \cos.\ 2\,\theta$.

Any curve that is of the form of this figure is called a lemniscata.

315. In the following example the curve may be easily traced by points.

Let a circle be described with centre C and any radius C Q; draw the ordinate Q M, and in Q C take Q P = Q M; the locus of P is a lemniscata.

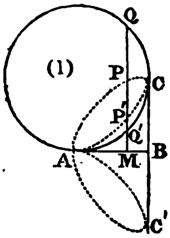
Again, if in M Q we take M R = a third proportional to M Q and C M, the locus of R is another lemniscata whose equation is

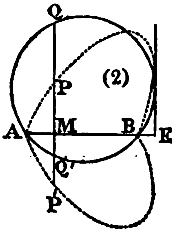
$$x^4 - a^2\,x^2 + a^2\,y^2 = 0.$$

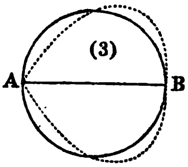
The equation $a^2(y-a)^2 = (x-a)^2(2ax - x^2)$ belongs to the same curve referred to a different origin.

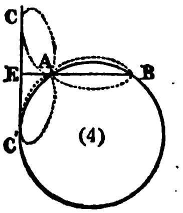
Ex. Trace the locus of the equation $y^2 = x^2 \dfrac{a^2 + x^2}{a^2 - x^2}$.

316. A M, fig. 1, is a tangent to a circle A C Q, M Q an ordinate to the abscissa A M; M P is taken a mean proportional between A M and M Q; required the locus of P.









Let $AM = x$, and $MP = y$, be the rectangular co-ordinates of P, and let the radius of the circle $= b$,

then the square on $MP =$ the rectangle A M, M Q.

To find M Q, we have the equation to the circle

$$(y - y')^2 + (x - x')^2 = r^2,$$

$$\text{or } y^2 - 2by + x^2 = 0, \text{ since } x' = 0, \text{ and } y' = r = b,$$

$$\therefore MQ = b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - x^2},$$

$$\therefore MP \text{ or } y = \pm \sqrt{\{bx \pm x\sqrt{b^2 - x^2}\}}.$$

Since $b^2 - x^2$ is $< b^2$, there are four values of y to each positive value of $x < b$, and no value of y to x negative; hence if $AB = b$, fig. 1, the straight line C B C′ perpendicular to A B is a limit to the curve, and when $x = b$, the ordinate to the curve is equal to the extreme ordinate of the circle, that is, to the tangent B C.

Between $x = 0$, and $x = b$, we have four values of y, which give the two dotted ovals of fig. (1).

To make the question more general we shall suppose the line A B to be a chord of the circle, figs. (2) (3) (4).

Then if b and a are the co-ordinates to the centre of the circle, and A the origin, the equation to the curve will be

$$y = \pm \sqrt{\{bx \pm x\sqrt{b^2 + 2ax - x^2}\}},$$

and we have four cases depending on the values of b and a; hence we have four curves of different forms, yet partaking of the same character and generation.

Case (1). $a = 0$, fig. (1) already discussed.

Case (2). a and b positive, fig. (2). $AE = a + \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$.

Case (3). $b = 0$, fig. (3).

Case (4). b negative, fig. (4), the equation is

$$y = \pm \sqrt{\{-bx \pm x\sqrt{b^2 + 2ax - x^2}\}}.$$

There are two values of y for x positive, and $< 2a$; but four values for x negative, and $< \sqrt{a^2 + b^2} - a$, that is, $<$ A E.

The gradual transition of one curve to another is apparent, but that the same problem should produce such very different curves as (2) and (4) requires some explanation.

In fig. (1) P and P′ are determined by mean proportionals between A M and M Q, and also between A M and M Q′. Moreover P may be in Q M produced as well as in M Q, thus we have the double oval, fig. (1.) On the left of A the abscissas A M will be negative, and the ordinates M Q positive; hence no possible mean proportional can exist, or no part of the curve can be on the left of A.

In fig. (2) A M and M Q determine the points P and P′; but A M and M Q′ give only an imaginary locus.

Fig. (3) requires no comment.

In fig. (4) the reasoning on fig. (2) will explain the positive side of A; on the left of A the abscissa and both ordinates are negative; therefore two mean proportionals can be found, or four points in the curve for each abscissa.

Such curves may be invented at pleasure, by taking the parabola or other curves for the base instead of the circle.

Ex. To find the locus of the equation $y^4 + 2axy^2 - ax^3 = 0$.

317. To find a point P′, such that drawing straight lines to two given points S and H, we may have the rectangle S P, H P constant.

Join the points S and H, and bisect S H in C; let C be the origin of rectangular axes, S H $= 2a$, C M $= x$, M P $= y$ and let the rectangle S P, H P, $= ab$.

Then since S M $= a + x$, and H M $= a - x$, we have

$$\{y^2 + (a+x)^2\}\{y^2 + (a-x)^2\} = a^2b^2,$$

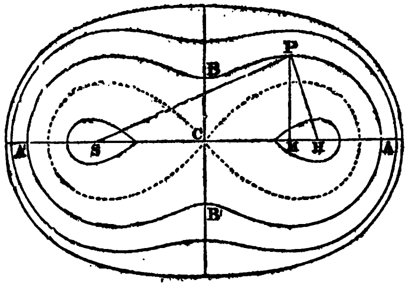
$$\text{or } (y^2 + x^2 + a^2 + 2ax)(y^2 + x^2 + a^2 - 2ax) = a^2b^2,$$

$$\text{or, } \{y^2 + x^2 + a^2\}^2 - 4a^2x^2 = a^2b^2;$$

$$\text{hence } \quad y = \pm\sqrt{\{-(a^2 + x^2) + a\sqrt{b^2 + 4x^2}\}}.$$

$$\text{Let } y = 0, \quad \therefore x = \pm\sqrt{a(a \pm b)} \qquad (1).$$

$$\text{Let } x = 0, \quad \therefore y = \pm\sqrt{a(b - a)} \qquad (2).$$



1. Let a be less than b.

Then from (1) we have the points A and A′, and from (2) we have the points B and B′.

Also by comparing the values of y in the original equation and in equation (2) we shall find that M P is greater than C B as long as x is greater than $\sqrt{2a(2a-b)}$; thus the form of the curve must be like that of the figure A P B A′ B′ A.

As b increases, the oval becomes flatter at the top, and takes the form of the outer curves.

2. Let $a = b$, then we have the dotted curve passing through C; also since the equation becomes $(x^2 + y^2)^2 = 2a^2(x^2 - y^2)$ the locus is in this case the lemniscata of Bernouilli.

3. Let a be greater than b.

Then from (1) we have two values of x, and from (2) an impossible value of y; hence the curve must consist of the two small oval figures round S and H.

As b decreases, the little ovals decrease; and when $b = 0$, we have the points S and H themselves for the locus.

These curves are called the ovals of Cassini, that celebrated astronomer having imagined that the path of a planet was a curve like the exterior one in the above figure.

The equation $(y^2 + x^2)^2 = b^2 y^2 + a^2 x^2$, found in art. (128), gives a figure like that in case 1.

318. There are some cases in which it is useful to introduce a third variable; for example, if the equation be $y^4 + x^2 y^2 + 2y^3 + x^3 = 0$, it requires the solution of an equation of three or four dimensions, in order to find corresponding values of x and y; to avoid this difficulty, assume $x = uy$,

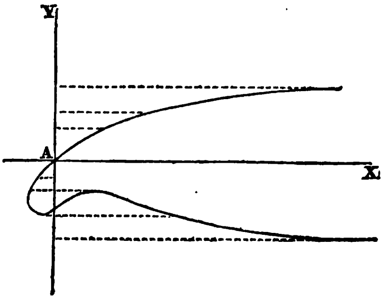
$$\therefore\ y^4 + u^2 y^4 + 2y^3 - u^3 y^3 = 0,$$

$$\text{or,}\quad y + u^2 y + 2 - u^3 = 0,$$

$$\therefore\ y = \frac{u^3 - 2}{u^2 + 1},\ \text{and}\ x = u.\frac{u^3 - 2}{u^2 + 1};$$

from these equations we can find a series of corresponding values for x and y.

$$\begin{array}{llll}
u = -3 & ,\quad y = -2\frac{9}{10} & ,\quad x = & 8\frac{7}{10} \\
u = -2 & \quad\ \ = -2 & & = 4 \\
\ \ = -1 & \quad\ \ = -1\frac{1}{2} & & = 1\frac{1}{2} \\
\ \ = -\ \frac{1}{2} & \quad\ \ = -1\frac{7}{19} & & = \frac{17}{20} \\
\ \ = 0 & \quad\ \ = -2 & & = 0 \\
\ \ = \frac{1}{2} & \quad\ \ = -1\frac{1}{2} & & = -\frac{3}{4} \\
\ \ = 1 & \quad\ \ = -\ \frac{1}{2} & & = -\frac{1}{2} \\
\ \ = 1\frac{1}{2} & \quad\ \ = \frac{11}{26} & & = \frac{33}{52} \\
\ \ = 2 & \quad\ \ = 1\frac{1}{5} & & = 2\frac{2}{5} \\
\ \ = 3 & \quad\ \ = 2\frac{1}{2} & & = 7\frac{1}{2} \\
\ \ = 4 & \quad\ \ = 3\frac{11}{17} & & = 14\ \frac{10}{} \\
\quad \&c. & \quad\ \&c. & &
\end{array}$$

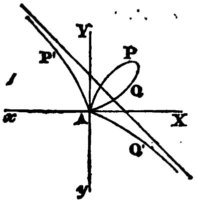


Also when $y = 0$, $x = 0$, hence the curve passes through A. Let A X, A Y be the axes; along the axis of y take values equal to those in the table for y; and from the points thus determined draw lines equal to the corresponding values in the table for x (these are the dotted lines in the figure); by this method we obtain a number of points in the curve sufficient to determine its course.

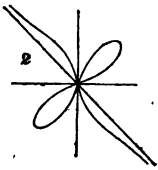
This example is taken from the "Analyse des Lignes Courbes, by G. Cramer. Geneva. 1750," a work which will be found extremely useful in the study of algebraical curves.

319. To trace the curve whose equation is $y^5 - 5ax^2y^2 + x^5 = 0$.

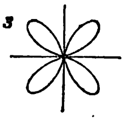
1



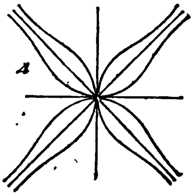
2



3



4



Let x be very small ∴ x^5 being exceedingly small may be omitted, and the equation becomes $y^5 = 5ax^2y^2$, or $y^3 = 5ax^2$, which is the equation to a semi-cubical parabola P A P′ fig. (1.); and if y be very small, we have $x^3 = 5ay^2$, which gives the parabola Q A Q′; hence near the origin the curve assumes the forms of the two parabolic branches. Again when x is infinitely great, x^2 may be neglected in comparison with x^5 and the equation becomes $y^5 = -x^5$, ∴ $y = -x$; hence for x positive, we have an infinite branch in the angle X A y, and for x negative an infinite branch in the angle Y A x.

To find the asymptote:

$$y^5 = -x^5 + 5ax^2y^2,$$

$$= -x^5\left(1 - 5\frac{ay^2}{x^3}\right),$$

$$\therefore y = -x\left(1 - 5a\frac{y^2}{x^3}\right)^{\frac{1}{5}},$$

$$= -x\left\{1 - a\frac{y^2}{x^3} - 2a^2\frac{y^4}{x^6} -, \&c.\right\}$$

$$= -x + a\left(\frac{y}{x}\right)^2 + 2a^2\frac{y^2}{x^3} +, \&c.$$

$$= -x + a + 2\frac{a^2}{x^3} +, \&c. \text{ when } y = -x:$$

Therefore the equation to the asymptote is $y + x = a$; this being drawn and the branches A P′, A Q′ produced towards it, we have nearly a correct idea of the curve.

If the equation be $y^5 - 5a^2x^2y + x^5 = 0$, the curve will be traced in the same manner, fig. (2).

If the equation be $y^6 - a^2x^2y^2 + x^6 = 0$, we have fig. (3);

And the equation $y^6 - a^2x^2y^2 - x^6 = 0$ will give fig. (4).

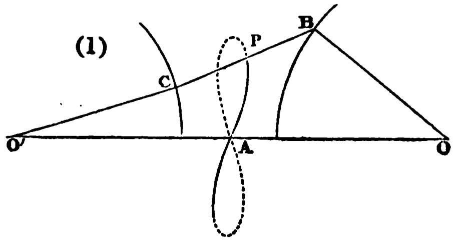
Ex. Find the locus of the equation $y^4 - 4a^2xy - x^4 = 0$.

For the above method of tracing curves of this species, see a treatise on the Differential Calculus, by Professor Miller. Cambridge, 1832.

320. B C is a straight line of given length ($2b$), having its extremities always in the circumferences of two equal circles, to find the locus of the middle point P of the line B C.

Let the line joining the centres O, O′ of the circles be the axis of x, and let the origin of rectangular axes be at A, the bisecting point of O O′.

Let $x\,y$ be the co-ordinates of B.
$x'y'$ . . . . . C.
X Y . . . . . P.



$$A\,O = A\,O' = a,$$
$$O\,B = O'\,C = c,$$

$$\left.\begin{array}{rr} \text{the equation to B is } y^2 + (x-a)^2 = c^2 & (1) \\ \text{to C is } y'^2 + (x'+a^2)^2 = c^2 & (2) \\ \text{also } (y-y')^2 + (x-x')^2 = 4b^2 & (3) \\ 2Y = y + y' & (4) \\ 2X = x + x' & (5) \end{array}\right\}$$

From these five equations we must eliminate the four quantities y, x, y' and x'; from (1) and (2)

$$y^2 - y'^2 + x^2 - x'^2 - 2a(x + x') = 0,$$

$$\text{or } (y - y')\,Y + (x - x')\,X - 2aX = 0 \qquad (6),$$

from (4) and (5) $y^2 + y'^2 + x^2 + x'^2 + 2yy' + 2xx' = 4Y^2 + 4X^2$,

from (3) $y^2 + y'^2 + x^2 + x'^2 - 2yy' - 2xx' = 4b^2$,

from (1) and (2) $2y^2 + 2y'^2 + 2x^2 + 2x'^2 - 4a(x - x') =$ [illegible].

$\therefore$ by substitution $4a(x - x') = 4(Y^2 + X^2 + b^2$

$$\text{or } (x - x') = \frac{Y^2 + X^2 + m^2}{a}, \text{ if } m^2 = a^2 + b^2 - c^2,$$

and from (6)

$$y - y' = \{2a - (x - x')\}\frac{X}{Y} = \left(2a - \frac{Y^2 + X^2 + m^2}{a}\right)\frac{X}{Y}.$$

Substituting these values of $x - x'$ and $y - y'$ in (8), we have

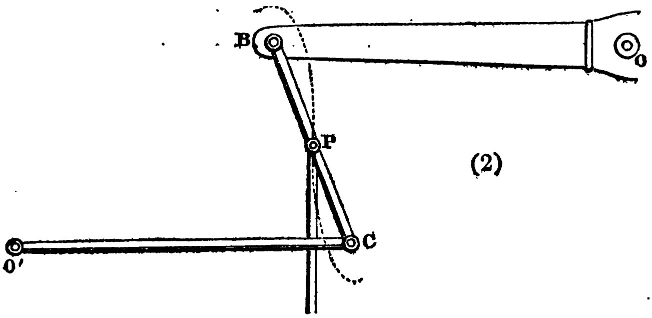
$$\left\{2a - \frac{Y^2 + X^2 + m^2}{a}\right\}^2 \frac{X^2}{Y^2} + \left\{\frac{Y^2 + X^2 + m^2}{a}\right\}^2 = 4b^2,$$

$$\text{or } 4a^2X^2 - 4(Y^2 + X^2 + m^2)X^2 + \left(\frac{Y^2 + X^2 + m^2}{a}\right)^2 (X^2 + Y^2) = 4b^2Y^2$$

$$\therefore\ a^2X - b^2Y^2 - X^2(X^2 + Y^2 + m^2) + (X^2 + Y^2)\left(\frac{X^2 + Y^2 + m^2}{2a}\right)^2 = 0.$$

This equation, being of the sixth dimension, and the highest terms being both positive, the curve must be limited in every direction: when X is very small, there are four values of Y; also when X = 0, we have Y = 0; hence the curve is a species of double oval, or lemniscata.

If the circles be unequal, and P be any point in the line B C, the curve will be of the same nature, but the investigation is much longer.



(2)

The very beautiful contrivance of Watt to reduce a circular to a rectilinear motion is well known to every one. Suppose the point B to be the extremity of an engine-beam, moveable about its centre O, this beam is required to moved a piston-rod always in the same vertical position; it is plain that this motion cannot be obtained by fixing the piston-rod to B, or to any point in O B. Suppose now, a beam O′ C, called the radius-rod, to move about a centre O′, and join the extremities B, C, by a bar B C; the extremity of the piston-rod is fixed to the middle of the beam B C, and its motion, according to the above demonstration, is in a portion of the curve, such as the dark part of the lemniscate in the first figure, and consequently the rod itself continues much more in the same vertical line than if attached to B. The comparative lengths of the rods necessary to render the motion as nearly vertical as possible are stated in most works on the steam-engine, and in the Mechanics' Magazine. For a more complete but very different method of finding the equation to the above curve, see "Prony, Hydraulique."

321. We have no space for the discussion of any higher algebraic curves, if it were necessary; but in fact we have not the means: it must

have been already seen that many of the preceding curves have not been drawn with mathematical exactness; for unless we took the trouble of tracing them by points, we could not easily determine their curvature; we shall therefore pass to the consideration of the general equation of the nth dimension, and then proceed to the intersection of algebraic curves*.

322. The general equation of the nth degree, with all its terms complete, is

$$y^n + (a x + b) y^{n-1} + (c x^2 + d x + e) y^{n-2} + \ldots\ldots + f x^n + g x^{n-1} \\ + h x^{n-2} + \ldots\ldots + k x + l = 0;$$

it contains all the possible combinations of x and y, so that the sum of the exponents in no one term exceeds n.

The number of terms is $1 + 2 + 3 + \ldots\ldots + (n + 1)$, or is the sum of an arithmetic progression, whose first term and common difference is unity, and the number of terms is $n + 1$; therefore the sum of this series is $\frac{(n + 2)\ (n + 1)}{2}$.

The number of independent constants is (dividing by the co-efficient of y^n if necessary) one less than the number of terms in the equation, that is,
$= \frac{(n + 2)\ (n + 1)}{2} - 1 = \frac{n\ (n + 3)}{2}$.

323. An algebraic curve of the nth degree may pass through as many given points as it has arbitrary constants, that is, through $\frac{n\ (n+3)}{2}$ points, for giving to x and y their values at each one of the given points, we have $\frac{n\ (n + 3)}{2}$ different equations, by which the values of the constants may be determined. For example,

---

* We must refer our readers to our treatise on the Differential Calculus for information on the curvature of lines. It must not, however, be imagined that algebraic geometry is incapable of exhibiting the form of curves; the following method of determining the curvature is an instance to the contrary.

Let y_1, y_2, and y_3 be three consecutive ordinates, at equal distances from each other; then drawing a corresponding figure, it will be seen that the curve is concave or convex to the axis, according as y_2 is $>$ or $< \frac{y_1 + y_3}{2}$; as an example, take the cubical parabola, whose equation is $a^2 y = x^3$, then the curve is convex, if $2 x^3$ is $< (x - 1)^3 + (x + 1)^3$ is $> 2 x^3 + 6 x$, which it is, and therefore the curve is convex. The distances at which the ordinates are drawn from each other must depend on the constants in the equation.

Again, to determine the angle at which a curve cuts the axis of x, transfer the origin to that point; then the tangent to the curve at that point and the curve itself make the same angle with the axis; but the value of the tangent of the angle which the tangent to the curve makes with the axis is then $\frac{y}{x} = \frac{0}{0}$, which may be any value whatever: for example, let $a^2 y = x$ $\therefore \frac{y}{x} = \frac{x^2}{a^2} = 0$ when $x = 0$, therefore the curve coincides with the axis at the origin. Again, take the example in art. 307. $y^3 = x^2\ (2 a - x)$; at A we have $\frac{y^3}{x^3} = \frac{2 a - x}{x} = \frac{1}{0}$, and at B we have $\frac{y}{2 a -}$ $= \frac{x^2}{y^2} = \frac{4 a^2}{0}$; hence the curve cuts the axis of x in both cases at a[illegible].

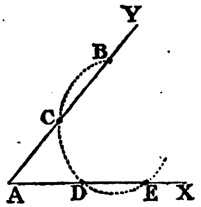
The general equation to the conic sections, dividing by the co-efficient of y^2, is

$$y^2 + bxy + cx^2 + dy + ex + f = 0,$$

in which there are five co-efficients, and therefore a conic section may pass through five given points; substituting the co-ordinates of the given points separately for x and y we obtain five equations from which the constants can be determined, and thence we have the particular curve required; it will be an ellipse, hyperbola, or parabola, according as $b^2 - 4c$ is negative, positive, or nothing. (79.)

324. The elimination is long, but the trouble may be much lessened by assuming one of the given points for the origin, and two lines drawn from the origin to other two given points for the axes.

For example, if it be required to pass a conic section through four given points B C D E, join B C and D E, and let them meet in A; let A B be the axis of y and A D the axis of x,



Let $AC = y_1$, $AB = y_2$,

$AD = x_1$, $AE = x_2$;

Assume the equation to be

$$y^2 + bxy + cx^2 + dy + ex + f = 0;$$

we have for $x = 0$, $y_1^2 + dy_1 + f = 0$

and $y_2^2 + dy_2 + f = 0$;

$$\therefore\ d = -(y_1 + y_2),\ \text{and}\ f = y_1 y_2.$$

Similarly for $y = 0$, $e = -c(x_1 + x_2)$, and $f = cx_1 x_2$;

equating the values of f, we have $c = \dfrac{y_1 y_2}{x_1 x_2}$.

Substituting and dividing by $y_1 y_2$, we have

$$\frac{y^2}{y_1 y_2} + \frac{b}{y_1 y^2} x y + \frac{x^2}{x_1 x_2} - \frac{y_1 + y_2}{y_1 y_2} y + \frac{x_1 + x_2}{x_1 x_2} x + 1 = 0,$$

an equation involving only one unknown co-efficient b.

There are some restrictions depending on the situation of the given points; thus no more than two can be in the same straight line, or else the conic section degenerates into two straight lines.

The five given points are the same as five conditions expressed analytically; four are sufficient if the curve is to be a parabola; for $b^2 - 4c = 0$, is equivalent to one. If the curve has a centre, whose position is given, three other conditions suffice, because we may assume the equation to be $y^2 + bxy + cx^2 + f = 0$. If the position of two conjugate diameters be given, only two more conditions are requisite.

Newton, in his Universal Arithmetic, gives excellent methods for describing, by continued motion, a conic section passing through five given points.

325. If it be required to pass a curve, whose species is not given, through a number of given points, we may with advantage assume the equation to be of the form

$$y = a + bx + cx^2 + dx^3 +, \text{\&c.}$$

The elimination of the constants is more regular, and therefore easier in this equation than in any other: such curves are called parabolic (the three first terms giving the common parabola) and consist of a series of sinuosities, such as in (309), which are easily traced. For the elimination of the constants, see Lagrange, or Lardner's Algebraic Geometry, art. 617.

326. We saw in article (79) that the general equation of the second order sometimes gave straight lines for the loci; such will be the case whenever any equation is reducible into rational factors of the first degree; so that we must not always conclude that an equation of the nth order has a curve of the nth order for its locus. If the equation be reducible into factors of lower degrees, there will be a series of lines corresponding to those factors; thus if an equation of the 4th degree be composed of one factor of two degrees, and two factors of the 1st degree, the loci are a conic section and two straight lines; and hence a general equation of any order embraces under it all curves of inferior orders: if any of the factors be impossible, their loci are either points, or imaginary.

If the sum of the indices of x and y be the same in every term, the loci are either straight lines or points; for an equation of this species will have the form

$$y^n + a y^{n-1} x + b y^{n-2} x^2 \dots\dots + l x^n = 0,$$

$$\text{or} \quad \left(\frac{y}{x}\right)^n + a\left(\frac{y}{x}\right)^{n-1} + b\left(\frac{y}{x}\right)^{n-2} \dots\dots + l = 0,$$

let the roots of this equation be α, β, γ, &c., then the equation will be

$$\left(\frac{y}{x} - \alpha\right)\left(\frac{y}{x} - \beta\right)\left(\frac{y}{x} - \gamma\right)\dots = 0,$$

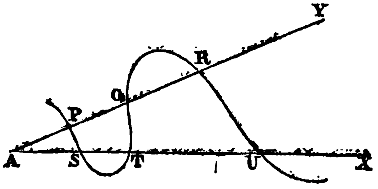
each factor of which being $= 0$, its corresponding locus is evidently a straight line; if the roots of the equation be impossible, the corresponding loci are points.

Ex. $y^2 - 2xy \sec.\alpha + x^2 = 0$. The locus consists of two straight lines whose equations are $y = x\,\dfrac{1 \pm \sin.\alpha}{\cos.\alpha} = x \tan.\left(45^\circ \pm \dfrac{\alpha}{2}\right)$ and therefore the lines pass through the origin, and are inclined to the axis of x at angles of $45^\circ \pm \dfrac{\alpha}{2}$.

327. Since the general equation includes all equations below it, the properties of the curve of n dimensions will generally be true for the lower orders, and also for certain combinations of the lower orders; thus, a property of a line of the third degree will be generally true for a conic section, or for a figure consisting of a conic section and a straight line, or for three straight lines. Moreover the lower orders of curves have generally some analogy to the higher curves, and hence the properties of inferior orders often lead to the discovery of those of the superior.

328. From the application of the theory of equations to curves, an immense number of curious theorems arise, which may be seen in the

works of Waring and Maclaurin: we have only room for two or three of the most important.



If two straight lines, A X, A Y cut a curve of n dimensions, in the points P Q R, &c., S T U, &c., so that A P, A Q, A R, &c. $= y_1, y_2, y_3$, &c. respectively, and A S, A T, A U, &c. $= x_1, x_2, x_3$, &c. respectively, then if A X and A Y move parallel to themselves, we shall always have $y_1 \cdot y_2 \cdot y_3 \cdot$ &c. : $x_1 \cdot x_2 \cdot x_3 \cdot$ &c., in a constant ratio.

Let the equation to the curve be referred to the origin A, and to axes A X, A Y, by means of the transformation of co-ordinates, and suppose the equation to be

$$y^n + (a x + b) y^{n-1} + \dots c x^n + d x^{n-1} + \dots k x + l = 0.$$

$$\text{Let } y = 0 \quad \therefore c x^n + d x^{n-1} + \dots k x + l = 0. \qquad (1)$$

$$x = 0 \quad \therefore y^n + b y^{n-1} + \dots k y + l = 0. \qquad (2)$$

The roots of (1) are A S, A T, A U, &c.; $\therefore x_1 \cdot x_2 \cdot x_3 \cdot$ &c. $= \frac{l}{c}$.

The roots of (2) are A P, A Q, A R, &c.; $\therefore y_1 \cdot y_2 \cdot y_3 \cdot$ &c. $= l$.

$$\therefore y \cdot y_2 \cdot y_3, \text{\&c.} : x_1 \cdot x_2 \cdot x_3, \text{\&c.} :: c : 1.$$

Now the transformation of the axes, parallel to themselves, never alters the co-efficients of y^n and x^n; hence the above ratio is constant for any parallel position of A X and A Y.

Article 293 is an example of this theorem.

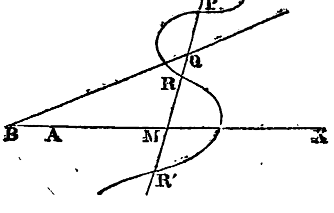
329. A diameter was defined in (76) to be a straight line, bisecting a system of parallel chords; more generally it is a line, such that if any one of its parallel chords be drawn, meeting the curve in various points, the sum of the ordinates on one side shall equal the sum on the other; thus, in the figure, if P Q + P′ Q + &c. = R Q + R′ Q = &c., and the same be true for all lines parallel to P R, then B Q is a diameter.

To find the equation to the diameter B Q let the equation to the curve, referred to A X and a parallel to P Q, &c.

$$y^n + (a x + b) y^{n-1} + (c x^2 + d x + e) y^{n-2} +, \text{\&c.} = 0,$$

Let M Q $= u$, and P Q $= y'$, $\therefore y = y' + u$, by substitution we have

$$y'^n + (a x + b + n u) y'^{n-1} + \{c x^2 + d x + e + \overline{n-1}\, u \,.\, \overline{a x + b} + n \,.\, \frac{n-1}{2} u^2\} y'^{n-2} +, \text{\&c.} = 0,$$



By the definition the sum of the values of y' must equal nothing, and that sum ~~is the co-efficient of the second term~~ in the last equation with its sign changed,

$$\therefore ax + b + nu = 0,$$

$$\text{or } u = -\frac{ax+b}{n},$$

and this is the equation to the diameter B Q.

Again, by the same reasoning, the equation

$$cx^2 + dx + e + \overline{n-1}\,u\,.\,\overline{ax+b} + n\,.\,\frac{n-1}{2}u^2 = 0$$

is that to a conic section drawn so that the sum of the products of the values of y, taken two and two together, shall equal nothing.

We might proceed on with the co-efficient of the fourth term.

These curves are sometimes called curvilinear diameters.

330. The method of finding the centre, if any, of a curve, is given in (81); the operation is too long to apply it to a general equation of high dimensions, and therefore we shall take an example among the lines of the third order as fully illustrating the subject.

Let the equation be $xy^2 + ey = ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d$, under which form are comprehended most of the curves of the third order.

Let $x = x + m$, $y = y + n$; the transformed equation is

$$\begin{gathered} xy^2 + 2nxy + my^2 + (2nm + e)y - ax^3 - (3am + b)x^2 \\ + (n^2 - 3am^2 - 2bm - c)\,x + mn^2 + en - am^3 - bm^2 \\ - cm - d = 0; \end{gathered}$$

in order that the curve may have a centre, the 2nd, 3rd, 6th, and last or constant term must each $= 0$; $\therefore n = 0$, $m = 0$, $b = 0$, $d = 0$, so that the corresponding curve has a centre, which is the origin, only when the co-efficients b and d are wanting.

CHAPTER XIII.

ON THE INTERSECTION OF ALGEBRAIC CURVES.

331. The intersection of a straight line with a line of the nth order is found by eliminating y from the two equations; hence the resulting equation in terms of x will be of the nth order, and therefore may have n real roots; thus there may be n intersections: there may be le
since some of the roots of the resulting equation may be equal to
another, or some impossible.

Generally speaking, a curve of n dimensions may be cut by a stra
line drawn in some direction in n points; but the curve, in it
form, must be taken; otherwise certain points as conjug

points, must be considered as evanescent ovals or evanescent branches of the curve, and thus a line passing through such points is equivalent to two or more intersections.

332. The intersections of two lines of the mth and nth orders are found also by eliminating y from both; hence the resulting equation may be of the mnth order, or there may be $m\,n$ intersections; there are often less, for not all the real roots of the equation $X = 0$ will give points of intersection: for example, if we eliminate y from the equations

$$y^2 = 2\,a\,x - x^2 \text{ and } y^2 = 2\,a\,(x - b) \text{ we find } x = \sqrt{2\,a\,b};$$

hence, apparently, there is always an intersection corresponding to the abscissa $\sqrt{2\,a\,b}$; but this is not the case; for then $y^2 = 2\,a\,(\sqrt{2ab} - b)$, and therefore y is impossible, if b is $> 2\,a$, which is evident on drawing the two curves; hence after the abscissa is found, we must examine the corresponding ordinates in each curve; if they are not real, there can be no intersection corresponding to such abscissa.

If we have the two equations $y^2 + 2\,x = 0$, $y^2 + 4\,x^2 - 10\,x - 16 = 0$, the elimination y gives the abscissas of intersection $x = 4$ and $x = -1$, the second of which alone determines a point of intersection.

333. In finding the intersections of lines, we often fall upon a final equation of an order higher than the second, or arrive at an equation whose roots are of a form not readily constructed; to avoid this difficulty a method is often used which consists in drawing a line which shall pass through all the required points of intersection, and thus determine their situation.

Let $y = f\,(x)$* (1), and $y = \phi\,(x)$ (2), be the equations to two lines, then at the point of intersection they have the same ordinates and abscissas; or calling X and Y the co-ordinates of the point of intersection, we have simultaneously $Y = f(X)$ and $Y = \phi\,(X)$; hence $f\,(X) = \phi\,(X)$, from which equation X and Y might be obtained, and their values constructed.

$$\begin{array}{rll}
\text{But since} & Y = f\,(X) \ldots. & (3)\\
 & \text{and } Y = \phi\,(X) \ldots. & (4)\\
\text{we have by addition} & 2\,Y = f\,(X) + \phi\,(X) \ldots. & (5)\\
\text{or by multiplication} & Y^2 = f\,(X)\,.\,\phi\,(X) \ldots. & (6)\\
\text{or generally} & Y = F\,\{f(X), \phi\,(X)\} \ldots. & (7)
\end{array}$$

F implying any function arising from the addition, subtraction, multiplication, &c. of (3) and (4).

Now any one of these equations gives a true relation between the co-ordinates X and Y of the point of intersection of (1) and (2); but by supposing X and Y to vary, it will give a relation between a series of points, of which the required point of intersection is certainly one; that is, drawing the locus of (5) or (6) or (7), it must pass through the required point of intersection of (1) and (2).

It is manifest that if one of the equations (5), (6), or (7), be a circle or straight line, it will be much easier to draw this circle or straight line than to find the intersection by means of elimination.

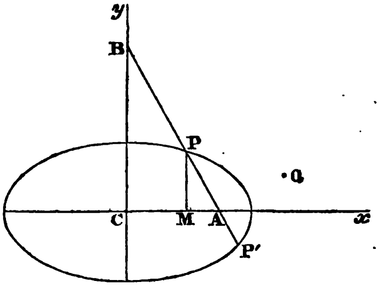
---

* The symbols $F\,(x)$, $f\,(x)$, $\phi\,(x)$, serve to denote different functions of x, that is, indicate expressions into which the same quantity x enters, but combined in different ways with given quantities. But $f\,(x)$, $f\,(y)$, indicate similar formulæ for both x and y; thus, if $f\,(x) = 2\,a\,x - x^2$, then $f\,(y) = 2\,a\,y - y^2$, or $2\,b\,y - y^2$.

Also we may often find the intersection of (1) and (2), when one of them is a given curve, by drawing the locus of the other, and this method is the simplest when that other is a straight line.

We shall give a few examples to illustrate the subject.

334. From a given point Q without an ellipse, to draw a tangent to it.



Let the co-ordinates of Q be m and n, and let X and Y be the co-ordinates of the point P, where the required tangent meets the curve.

Then by (111) the equation to the tangent through P is

$$a^2yY + b^2xX = a^2b^2,$$

and since this passes through Q we have

$$a^2nY + b^2mX = a^2b^2 \qquad (1)$$

$$\text{and} \quad a^2Y^2 + b^2X^2 = a^2b^2. \qquad (2)$$

From (1) and (2) we might, by elimination, find X and Y, and their constructed values would be the co-ordinates C M, M P of the required point.

Now (1) is not the equation to any straight line, but only gives the relation between C M and M P; but if we suppose X and Y to vary, it will give the relation between a series of points, of which P is certainly one; and therefore, if the line whose equation is (1) be drawn, it must pass through P, and consequently, with the ellipse (2), will completely fix the situation of P.

To draw the line (1),

Let $X = 0$; $\therefore Y = \frac{b^2}{n}$; Let $Y = 0$; $\therefore X = \frac{a^2}{m}$;

in C y take C B $= \frac{b^2}{n}$, and in C x take C A $= \frac{a^2}{m}$; join B A; B A produced is the locus of (1), and it cuts the ellipse in two points P and P′; hence if Q P and Q P′ be joined, they are the tangents required.

The same method may be employed in drawing tangents to the parabola and hyperbola.

To take the more general case, let $ay^2 + cx^2 + dy + ex = 0$ (1) be the equation to the curves of the second order referred to axes parallel to conjugate diameters.

Then the equation to a tangent at a point $x'\,y'$ is

$$ayy' + cxx' + \frac{d}{2}(y + y') + \frac{e}{2}(x + x') = 0,$$

or $(2ay'+d)y+(2cx'+e)x+dy'+ex'=0$ (2).

Let this tangent pass through a point $m\ n$, then (2) becomes

$$(2ay'+d)n+(2cx'+e)m+dy'+ex'=0 \qquad (3),$$

or, $$(2an+d)y'+(2cm+e)x'+dn+em=0 \qquad (4).$$

Now let x' and y' in (4) be considered variable, and construct the straight line, which is the locus of (4); this with the curve itself, determines the position of the secant line which joins the two points on the curve, whence tangents are drawn to the point $m\,n$.

335. Again, suppose the secant line (4) to pass through a given point $m'\,n'$; Then the equation (4) becomes

$$(2an+d)n'+(2cm+e)m'+dn+em=0 \qquad (5),$$

and of course the point $m\ n$, whence tangents were originally drawn, must have a particular position corresponding to each secant line passing through $m'\,n'$; if therefore we make m and n variable in (5) we shall have the equation to the locus of the point $m\,n$

$$(2an'+d)n+(2cm'+e)m+dn'+em'=0$$

where m and n are the variable co-ordinates.

Hence we have the following theorem: if from any point secants be drawn to a line of the second order, and from the two points where each of these secants intersect the curve, tangents be drawn meeting each other, the locus of all such points of concourse is a straight line.

336. To draw a normal to a parabola from a point Q $(a, b,)$ not on the curve.

Let $y^2=4mx$, be the equation to the curve, and let X and Y be the co-ordinates of the required point, then the equation to the tangent at the point X Y, is by (232)

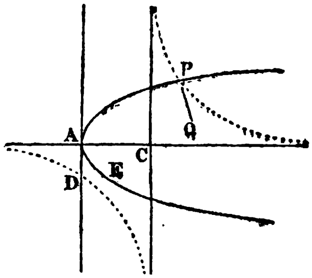
$$Yy=2m(X+x),$$

and therefore that to the normal at X Y is

$$y-Y=-\frac{Y}{2m}(x-X),$$

and since it passes through $(a\,b)$ we have

$$b-Y=-\frac{Y}{2m}(a-X),$$



or, $$XY-(a-2m)Y-2mb=0, \qquad (1)$$

also, $$Y^2=4mX \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \qquad (2)$$

The elimination of X gives $Y^3-4m(a-2m)Y-8m^2b=0$ (3), an equation whose roots would give the three required ordinates.

To avoid this equation we shall construct the locus of (1), which is the equation to an equilateral hyperbola. The axis of x is one asymptote (198), and the other is parallel to the axis of y, and at a distance $AC=a-2m$ from A; the equation to the hyperbola referred to its centre C and asymptotes is $XY=2mb$; moreover the hyperbola cuts the axis of y in the point D, where $AD=\frac{2mb}{2m-a}$; hence this hyperbola (the dotted curve in the figure) may be constructed.

We have drawn the figure, so that there shall be only one intersection of the curves, and hence only one normal is drawn from Q. If the curves touched, as at E, there would be two normals; and if the hyperbola cut the parabola in the lower branch, there would be three normals drawn from Q. These cases correspond respectively to the equation (3), having one real root; three real roots of which two are equal; and, lastly, three real and unequal roots.

337. We must particularly observe that, in the construction of loci, those are to be selected which admit of the easiest description, and of all curves the circle is to be preferred; hence, in the present case, we must look carefully to see if it is possible, by any combination of (1) and (2), to obtain the equation to the circle; for by 333 this will pass through the required normal points.

Multiply (1) by Y, then

$$XY^2 - (a-2m)Y^2 - 2mbY = 0,$$

$$\text{or, } X \cdot 4mX - (a-2m)\,4mX - 2mbY = 0;$$

$$\therefore X^2 - (a-2m)X - \frac{b}{2}Y = 0,$$

$$\text{and } Y^2 - 4mX = 0, \text{ from (2)}$$

$$\therefore \text{by addition } Y^2 + X^2 - (a+2m)X - \frac{b}{2}Y = 0,$$

which is the equation to a circle, the co-ordinates of whose centre are $\frac{a}{2} + m$ and $\frac{b}{4}$, and whose radius is $\sqrt{\left\{\left(\frac{a}{2}+m\right)^2 + \frac{b^2}{16}\right\}}$. Although this circle passes through the vertex of the parabola, yet that point is not one of the required intersections, but merely arises from the multiplication of (1) by Y.

If the parabola and circle be drawn, the latter in various situations according to the position of Q, we shall see, as before, that there will be one, two or three intersections: such practice will be found very useful.

The problem of drawing a normal to an ellipse is of the same nature, only in this case there may be four intersections.

338. The intersection of curves has been employed in the last articles to avoid the resolution of equations resulting from elimination, but the principle may be extended, so as to render curves generally subservient to the solution of equations; for as two equations combined produce one whose roots give the intersection of their loci, so that one may in its turn be separated into two, whose loci can be drawn, and their intersection will determine the roots of the one.

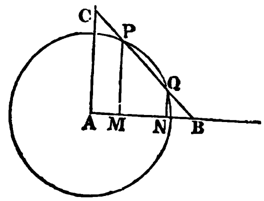
This method, known by the name of "the construction of equations," was much used by mathematicians before the present methods of approximation were invented; it is even now useful to a certain extent, and therefore we proceed to explain it.

Let there be two equations: $y + x = a$ (1), $y^2 + x^2 = b^2$ (2), by elimination we find

$$x^2 - ax + \frac{a^2 - b^2}{2} = 0 \quad (3).$$

We already know that the roots of (3) are the abscissas to the points of intersection of the loci (1) (2); but, conversely, it is manifest that the roots of (3) can be determined by drawing the loci of (1) and (2), and measuring the abscissas of intersection.

Hence if it be required to exhibit geometrically the roots of (3), let it be decomposed into the two equations (1) and (2), and let C P Q B be the locus of (1), and the circle E P Q of (2), having the same origin and axes: draw the ordinates M P, N Q, then A M and A N are the roots of (3).



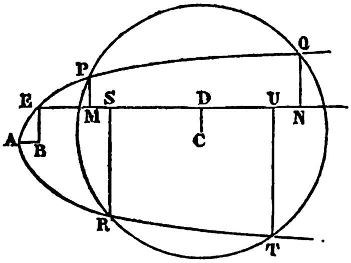
The method consists in parting any given equation into two others, and then drawing the loci of those two; and as it is obvious that there are a great many equations which, when combined together, may produce the given equation, so we may construct a great many loci, whose intersections will give the required roots: thus, in the above case, the equation (3) may be resolved into the two $x^2 = ay$, and $ay - ax + \frac{a^2 - b^2}{2} = 0$, and the corresponding parabola and straight line being drawn, their intersections will give the roots of (3).

In general the roots of an equation can be found by the intersection of any two species of curves whose indices, multiplied together, are equal to the index of the equation: thus, a straight line and a curve of the third order will give the solution of an equation of the third order; and any two conic sections, except two circles, will give the roots of an equation of the fourth order.

339. As equations of the third and fourth order are of frequent recurrence in mathematical researches, we proceed to the solution of the complete equation of the fourth order,

$$y^4 + py^3 + qy^2 + ry + s = 0.$$

Here the circle and parabola, as curves of easy description, ought to be chosen, and assuming the equation to the parabola a slight artifice will give us that to the circle.



Let $y^2 + \frac{p}{2} y = x$ (1);

$$\therefore\ y^4 + p\,y^3 + \frac{p^2}{4}y^2 = x^2$$

$$\text{but}\quad y^4 + p y^3 + q y^2 + r y + s = 0,$$

$$\therefore \text{ by subtraction } \left(q - \frac{p^2}{4}\right) y^2 + x^2 + r y + s = 0,$$

$$\text{or from (1), } \left(q - \frac{p^2}{4}\right)\left(x - \frac{p}{2}y\right) + x^2 + r y + s = 0;$$

$$\text{or } x^2 + \left(q - \frac{p^2}{4}\right) x + \left(r - \frac{p\,q}{2} + \frac{p^3}{8}\right) y + s = 0,$$

$$\text{and from (1), } y^2 + \frac{p}{2}y - x = 0,$$

$$\therefore\ y^2 + x^2 + \left(r + \frac{p^3}{8} + \frac{p}{2} - \frac{p\,q}{2}\right) y + \left(q - 1 - \frac{p^2}{4}\right) x + s = 0 \quad (2).$$

The locus of (1) is the parabola A E Q, the origin being at E $\left(\text{BE} = \frac{p}{4}\right)$, and the co-ordinates rectangular. The locus of (2) is the circle Q P R; the co-ordinates E D, D C of the centre, and the radius are readily determined from (2). The roots of the equation are drawn as if two, P M, Q N were positive, and other two R S, T U were negative. If the circle touch the parabola, two roots are equal; the cases of three or four equal roots can only be discussed by the principles of osculation, but as two roots are sufficient to depress the equation to one of the second order, we need not here consider those cases. If there be only two intersections, two roots are impossible; and if there be no intersection, all four roots are impossible.

340. In practice the operation is shortened by first taking away the second term of the equation; for example, to construct the roots of the equation

$$x^4 + 8x^3 + 23x^2 + 32x + 16 = 0. \quad (1).$$

Let $x = y - 2$, and the reduced equation is

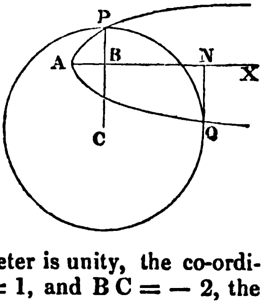
$$y^4 - y^2 + 4y - 4 = 0. \quad (2).$$

Let $y^2 = x$ (3);

$\therefore$ by substitution $x^2 - x + 4y - 4 = 0$,

$\therefore$ by addition $y^2 + x^2 + 4y - 2x - 4 = 0$,

or, $(y + 2)^2 + (x - 1)^2 = 9$ (4).



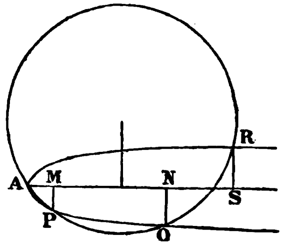
Let P A Q be the parabola (3), whose parameter is unity, the co-ordinates of the centre C of the circle (4) are A B = 1, and B C = − 2, the radius = 3. Describing this circle, the ordinates B P and Q N are the possible roots of (2); measuring these values we shall find P B = 1 and Q N = − 2; hence the possible roots of (2) are 1 and − 2, an therefore those of (1) are − 1 and − 4.

341. The construction of equations of the third order is involved in th

of the fourth order. Take away the second term, if necessary, multiply the resulting equation $Y = 0$ by y, and then proceed precisely as in the last article. The circle will always pass through the vertex of the parabola, but this intersection gives the root $y = 0$, introduced by multiplication, and has therefore nothing to do with the roots of the given equation. This circumstance of the circle passing through the vertex of the parabola, is singularly convenient, as it entirely saves the trouble of calculating the radius to decimal places, which is often necessary in the preceding cases.

Ex. 1. $x^3 - 6x^2 - x + 6 = 0$. Let $x = y + 2$;

$$\therefore y^3 - 13y - 12 = 0,$$
$$\text{or, } y^4 - 13y^2 - 12y = 0.$$
$$\text{Let } y^2 - x = 0 - (1)$$
$$\therefore x^2 - 13x - 12y = 0,$$
$$\therefore y^2 - 12y + x^2 - 12x = 0,$$
$$\text{or, } (y-6)^2 + (x-6)^2 = 72 \quad (2).$$



The three roots of y, as given by the figure, are 4, − 1 and − 3; hence the values of x are 6, − 1 and − 1.

Ex. 2. $4y^3 + 6y - 5 = 0$. There is one possible root nearly $= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$.

Ex. 3. $4y^3 - 3y + 1 = 0$.

There never can be any difficulty in constructing the loci of these equations; having once drawn a parabola, whose parameter is unity, with tolerable exactness, it will serve for the construction of any number of such equations.

As another example, we take the following question.

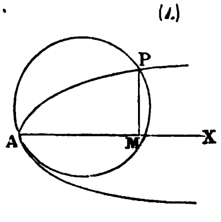
342. To find two mean proportionals between two given lines a and b,

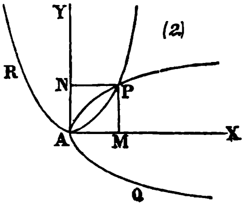
Let y and x be the required lines;

$$\text{then } a : y :: y : x, \quad \therefore y^2 = ax \quad (1),$$
$$y : x :: x : b, \quad \therefore x^2 = by \quad (2),$$
$$\therefore y^4 = a^2x^2 = a^2by, \text{ or } y^3 - a^2b = 0;$$

but by addition of (1) and (2), $y^2 - by + x^2 - ax = 0$,

$$\text{or, } \left(y - \frac{b}{2}\right)^2 + \left(x - \frac{a}{2}\right)^2 = \frac{a^2 + b^2}{4} \quad (3).$$





Let P A Q be the parabola (1), then the intersection of the circle (3) will give M P and A M, the two mean proportionals required.

The other roots of the equation $y^3 - a^2b = 0$ are impossible.

This problem was one of those so much celebrated by the ancient mathematicians. Menechme, of the school of Plato, was the first who gave a solution of it: his method being particularly ingenious, as well as being the first instance known of the application of geometrical loci to plain problems, is well worth insertion.

With a parameter a, draw the parabola P A Q (fig. 2), and on A Y perpendicular to A X describe the parabola P A R with parameter b.

Then the rectangle a, A M or a, N P is equal to the square on M P;

$$\therefore\ a,\ \text{M P and N P are in continued proportion.}$$

Again, the rectangle b, A N or b, M P is equal to the square on N P;

$$\therefore\ \text{M P, N P, and } b \text{, are in continued proportion;}$$

hence we have at the same time the two proportions

$$a : \text{MP} :: \text{M P} : \text{N P and M P} : \text{N P} :: \text{N P} : b;$$

$$\therefore\ a,\ \text{M P, N P, and } b \text{, are in continued proportion.}$$

Menechme also gave a second solution depending on the intersection of a parabola and hyperbola.

343. To find a cube which shall be double of a given cube.

Let a be a side of the given cube, then the equation to be solved is

$$y^3 = 2\,a^3, \text{ or } y^4 - 2\,a^3\,y = 0,$$

$$\text{Let } y^2 = a\,x \ (1), \quad \therefore\ a^2\,x^2 - 2\,a^3\,y = 0, \quad \text{or, } x^2 - 2\,a\,y = 0;$$

$$\therefore \text{ by addition, } \quad y^2 - 2\,a\,y + x^2 - a\,x = 0 \quad (2);$$

The loci of (1) and (2) being drawn, the ordinate P M of their intersection is the side of the required cube.

This problem, like the former, occupied the attention of the early geometricians; they soon discovered that its solution is involved in the preceding one; for if $b = 2\,a$, the resulting equations are the same.

In this manner a cube may be found which shall be m times greater than a given cube.

344. We may thus find any number of mean proportionals between two given quantities a and b.

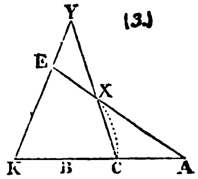
For if y be the first of the mean proportionals, they will form the following progression:

$$a,\ y,\ \frac{y^2}{a},\ \frac{y^3}{a^2},\ \frac{y^4}{a^3}, \text{ \&c.}$$

Let there be four mean proportionals, then the sixth term of the progression being b we have $\frac{y^5}{a^4} = b$, or $y^5 - a^4\,b = 0$.

Describe the parabola whose equation is $y^2 = a\,x$, and then draw the locus of the equation $y\,x^2 - a^2\,b = 0$. The last curve consists of an hyperbolic branch in each of the angles Y A X, Y A x, and therefore the ordinate corresponding to the real root is readily found.

345. Newton constructed equations by means of the conchoid of Nicomedes: he justly observes that those curves are to be preferred whose mechanical description is the easiest; and he adds, that of all curves, the conchoid next to the circle is, in this respect, the most simple. See the instrument in (312). The following is one of the many examples given in the Universal Arithmetic.



Let the equation be $x^3 + q x + r = 0$, draw a straight line K A, of any length n. In K A take K B $= \frac{q}{n}$, and bisect B A in C; with centre k and radius K C describe a circle, in which inscribe the straight line C X $= \frac{r}{n^2}$; join A X, and between the lines C X and A X produced, inscribe E Y equal to C A, so that, when produced, it passes through the point K.

A geometrical proof follows to show that, from this construction, the equation for the length of X Y is $x^3 + q x + r = 0$, so that X Y is a root of the equation.

The conchoid is employed to insert the line E Y between C X and C A.

Let K be the pole, A X E the base, and C A the modulus; then the common description of the curve determines the point Y on the line C X Y, such that E Y = C A.

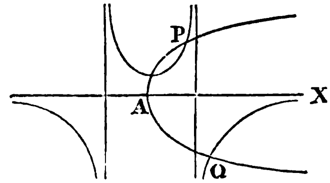
346. With regard to the higher equations, there is not much advantage in constructions, since it is extremely difficult to draw the curves with sufficient exactness. The method, however, is so far useful as enabling us to detect the number of impossible roots in any equation, as we can generally trace the curves with sufficient accuracy to determine the number of intersections, though not the exact points of intersection.

Ex. $y^5 - 3y + 1 = 0$.

Let $y^2 = x$ . . . . . (1),

$\therefore y x^2 - 3 y + 1 = 0$, (2)

or $y = \frac{1}{3 - x^2}$;



the locus of (1) is a parabola P A Q, that of (2) is a curve of the third order, and there are three intersections; and, therefore, three possible roots, two positive, and one negative.

347. There is some uncertainty in the employment of curves in finding roots; we stated in (332), that real roots may correspond to imaginary intersections; so, on the contrary, imaginary intersections, or what is the same, the absence of intersections, does not always prove the absence of real roots; for example, if to prove the equation $x^4 + 15 x + 14 = 0$ we assume $y^2 = x^3$ (1), and therefore $x y^2 + 15 x + 14 = 0$ (2), the loci of (1) and (2) will not intersect, but yet two roots are possible. The error was in choosing a curve (1), which proceeds only in the positive direction, when from the form of the equation it is apparent that there are negative roots. Taking the circle and common parabola for the loci, as in (340), we shall find the roots to be -1 and -2. Hence, in general, to ascertain real roots it will be advisable to try more than two curves.

CHAPTER XIV.

TRANSCENDENTAL CURVES.

348. It was stated in art. (23), that those equations which cannot be put into a finite and rational algebraical form with respect to the variables, are called Transcendental; of this nature are the equations $y = \sin. x$ and $y = a^x$. In Chapter XII. we have obtained the equations to curves, generally from some distinct Geometrical property of those curves; but there are many curves whose equations thus obtained cannot be expressed in the ordinary language of algebra; that is, the equation resulting from the description or generation of the curve is dependent upon Trigonometrical or Logarithmical quantities; these curves, from the nature of their equations, are called Transcendental.

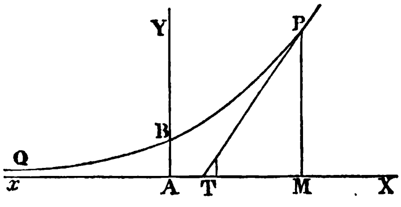
We shall here investigate the equations and the forms of the most celebrated of these curves, and mention a few of the remarkable properties belonging to them, although they can be only fully investigated by the higher calculus.

349. In this class will be found some curves, as the Cardioide, whose equations may be expressed in finite algebraic terms; but these examples are only particular cases of a species of curves decidedly Transcendental, and which cannot be separated from the rest without injury to the general arrangement.

Some of the Transcendental class have been called Mechanical curves, because they can be described by the continued motion of a point; but this name as a distinction is erroneous, for it is very probable that all curves may be thus described by a proper adjustment of machinery.

THE LOGARITHMIC CURVE.

350. The curve Q B P, of which the abscissa A M is the logarithm of the corresponding ordinate M P, is called the Logarithmic curve.



Let A M $= x$, M P $= y$, then $x = \log. y$, that is, if a be the base of the system of logarithms, $y = a^x$.

To examine the course of the curve we find when $x = 0$, $y = a^0 = 1$; as x increases from 0 to ∞, y increases from 1 to ∞; as $-x$ increases to ∞, y decreases from 1 to 0. In A Y take A B $=$ the linear unit, then the curve proceeding from B to the right of A B, recedes from the axis of x, and on the left continually approaches that axis, which is therefore an asymptote.

This curve was invented by James Gregory; Huyghens discovered that if P T be a tangent meeting A X in T, M T is constant and equal to the modulus $\left(\frac{1}{\log. a}\right)$ of the system of logarithms. Also that the whole area M P Q x extending infinitely towards x is finite, and equal to twice the triangle P M T, and that the solid described by the revolution of the same area about X x is equal to $1\frac{1}{2}$ times the cone, by the revolution of P T M about X x.

That such areas and solids are finite is curious, but not unintelligible to those who are accustomed to the summation of decreasing infinite series.

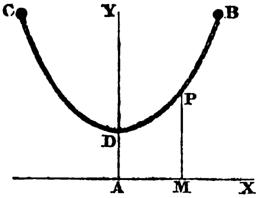
If the equation be $y = a^{-x}$, the curve is the same, but placed in the opposite direction with regard to the axis of y.

351. The equation to the curve called the Catenary, formed by suspending a chain, or string, between two points B and C, is

$$y = \tfrac{1}{2}(e^x + e^{-x})$$

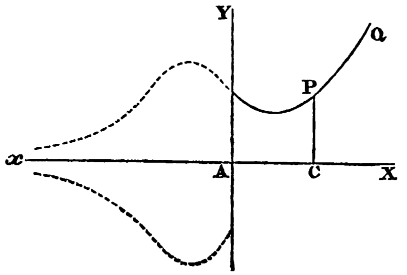
where A M $= x$, M P $= y$,

and A D $= 1$.



This equation cannot be obtained by the ordinary algebraical analysis; but it is evident that the curve may be traced from this equation, by adding together the ordinates of two logarithmic curves corresponding to the equations $y = e^x$ and $y = e^{-x}$.

352. Trace the locus of the equation $y = a^{\frac{1}{x}}$. (Fig. 1.)



353. To trace the curve whose equation is $y = x^x$. Let $x = 0$ $\therefore$ $y = 1$; let $x = 1$ $\therefore$ $y = 1$; and between $x = 0$ and $x = 1$, we have y less than 1; also x increases from 1 to ∞, y increases to infinity;

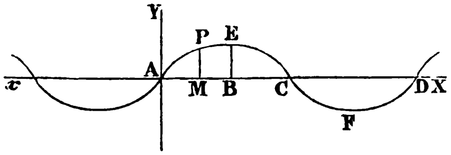
hence if A B = 1 (fig. 2,) and A C = 1, we have the branch B P Q corresponding to positive values of x.

Let x be negative $\therefore\ y = (-x)^{-x} = \dfrac{1}{(-x)^x}$; now if we take for x three consecutive values, as 2, 2½, 3, it is evident that y will be positive, impossible, or negative; hence the curve must consist of a series of isolated points above and below the axis A x.

For further information on this subject see a very interesting memoir by M. Vincent, in the fifteenth volume of the "Annales des Math." M. Vincent calls such discontinuous branches by the name "Branches Ponctuées;" and he also shows, that in the common logarithmic curve there must be a similar branch below the axis of x, corresponding to fractional values of x with even denominators.

THE CURVE OF SINES.

354. The curve A P E C, of which the ordinates M P, B E are the sines of the corresponding abscissas A M, A B, is called the Curve of Sines.



Let A M $= x$, M P $= y$, then the equation is $y = \sin.\ x$,

$$y = r \sin.\ \frac{x}{r}.$$

	1	2	3	4	5
Values of x	0	$\dfrac{\pi r}{2}$	πr	$\dfrac{3\pi r}{2}$	$2\pi r$
Values of y	0	r	0	$-r$	0

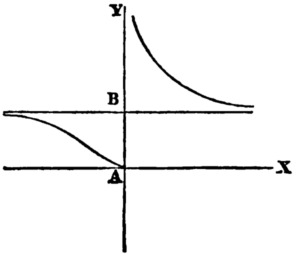
Take A B $= \dfrac{\pi r}{2}$, A C $= \pi r$, A D $= 2\pi r$; then from (1) the curve cuts the axis at A; from (2), if B E $= r$, the curve passes through E, and this is the highest point of its course, because between (1) and (2) y increases, and between (2) and (3) y decreases; the curve cuts the axis again in C; from C, y increases negatively until it equals $-r$, and then decreases to 0, so that we have a second branch C F D equal and similar to the first. Beyond D the values of y recur, and the curve continues the same course *ad infinitum;* also since $\sin.\ (-x) = -\sin.\ x$ there is a similar branch to the left of A.

This curve may be supposed to arise from the development of circular arcs into a straight line X x, ordinates being drawn corresponding to the sines of these circular arcs.

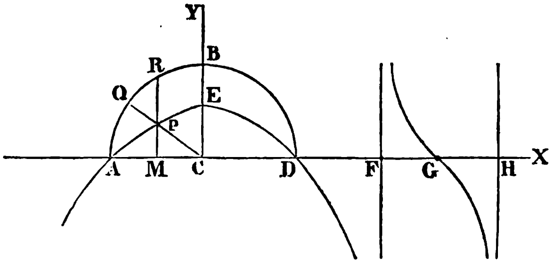
In a similar manner the curve of cosines, of versed sines, of tangents, &c., may readily be investigated.

If the ordinates of the curve of sines be increased or diminished in a given ratio, the resulting curve ($y = m \sin. x$) is the curve formed by the simple vibration of a musical chord: hence this curve is called the Harmonic Curve.

355. The accompanying figure belongs to the curve whose equation is $y = x \tan. x$. Such curves are useful in finding the roots of an equation as $x \tan. x = a$; for, supposing the curve to be described, in A Y take A B $= a$, and from B draw a line parallel to A X; then the ordinates corresponding to the points of intersection of this straight line with the curve are the values of y, that is, of $x \tan. x$.



THE QUADRATRIX.



356. Let C be the centre of a circle A Q B D; let the ordinate M R move uniformly from A to B C, and in the same time let the radius C Q, turning round C, move from C A to C B; then the intersection P of C Q and R M traces out a curve called the Quadratrix.

Let A be the origin, A M $= x$, M P $= y$, A C $= r$, angle A C Q $= \theta$,

Then A M : A C :: A Q : A B,

$$x : r :: r\theta : \frac{\pi r}{2} \therefore \theta = \frac{\pi x}{2r}.$$

But M P $=$ M C $\tan. \theta$,

$$\therefore y = (r - x) \tan. \frac{\pi x}{2r}, \text{ which is the equation to the curve.}$$

When $x = 0$, $y = 0$; $\therefore$ the curve passes through A; as x increases from 0 to r, y increases, because the tangent increases faster than the angle; when $x = r = \text{A C}$, $y = \frac{0}{0}$, the real value of which found by the Differential Calculus is $\frac{2r}{\pi}$; hence if $\text{C E} = \frac{2r}{\pi}$, the curve passes through E; as x increases beyond r the tangent diminishes but is negative, and so is $r - x$; $\therefore$ y is positive and diminishes until it finally becomes 0, when $x = 2r = \text{A D}$; when x is greater than $2r$ the tangent is positive, therefore y is negative and increases; when $x = 3r$, the tangent $= \infty$; $\therefore$ $y = -\infty$; this gives an asymptote through F. As x increases beyond $3r$ the tangent decreases but is negative; hence y is positive; when $x = 4r$, $y = 0$, when $x = 5r$, $y = -\infty$, and between $x = 4r$ and $5r$, y is negative: therefore we have the branch between the asymptotes at F and H, and proceeding onwards we should find a series of branches like the last. The part of the curve to the left of A is the same as that to the right of D.

This curve was invented most probably by a Greek mathematician of the name of Hippias, a cotemporary of Socrates; his object was to trisect an angle, or generally to divide an angle into any number of equal parts, and this would be done if the curve could be accurately drawn; thus to trisect an angle A C Q, draw the quadratrix and the ordinate M P, trisect the line A M in the points N and O, draw the ordinates N S, O T to the quadratrix. Then from the equation $\theta = \frac{\pi x}{2r}$, we shall see that C S and C T trisect the angle A C Q.

This curve was afterwards employed by Dinostratus to find the area or quadrature of the circle, and hence its name: supposing the point E to be determined by mechanical description we have the value of π given by the equation $\text{C E} = \frac{2r}{\pi}$, and therefore the ratio of the circumference to the diameter of the circle would be known.

There is another quadratrix, that of Tschirnhausen, which is generated by drawing two lines through Q and M parallel respectively to A C and B C, and finding the locus of their intersection; its equation will be

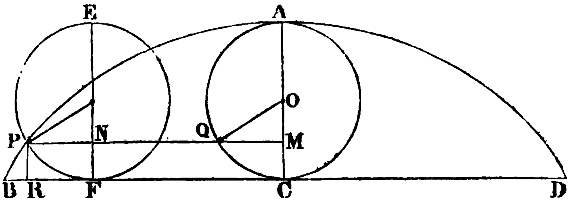
$$y = r \cos.\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - \theta\right) = r \sin.\,\theta = r \sin.\,\frac{\pi x}{2r}.$$

THE CYCLOID.

357. If a circle E P F be made to roll in a given plane upon a straight line B C D, the point in the circumference which was in contact with B at the commencement of the motion, will, in a revolution of the circle, describe a curve B P A D, which is called the cycloid.

This is the curve which a nail in the rim of a carriage-wheel describes in the air during the motion of the carriage on a level road; hence the generating circle E P F is called the wheel. The curve derives its name from two Greek words signifying "circle formed."

The line B D which the circle passes over in one revolution is called the base of the cycloid; if A Q C be the position of the generating circle in the middle of its course, A is called the vertex and A C the axis of the curve. The description of the curve shows that the line B D is equal to the circumference of the circle, and that B C is equal to half that circumference. Hence also if E P F be the position of the generating circle, and P the generating point, then every point in the circular arc P F having coincided with B F, we have the line B F = the arc P F, and F C = the arc E P or A Q;



Draw P N Q M parallel to the base B D.

Let A be the origin of rectangular axes,

A C the axis of x, and O the centre of the circle A Q C.

Let $AM = x$, $AO = a$,

$MP = y$, angle $AOQ = \theta$;

then by the similarity of position of the two circles, we have

$$PN = QM, \text{ and } PQ = NM;$$

$$\therefore MP = PQ + QM = NM + QM = FC + QM = \text{arc } AQ + QM$$

$$\text{that is, } y = a\theta + a \sin.\theta = a(\theta + \sin.\theta) \quad (1)$$

$$x = a - a\cos.\theta = a \text{ vers. } \theta \quad (2)$$

The equation between y and x is found by eliminating θ between (1) and (2)

$$\cos.\theta = \frac{a - x}{a} \quad \therefore \sin.\theta = \frac{\sqrt{2ax - x^2}}{a}$$

$$\text{and } y = a\theta + a \sin.\theta$$

$$= a \cos.^{-1}\left(\frac{a - x}{a}\right) + \sqrt{2ax - x^2}$$

But we can obtain an equation between x and y from (1) alone; that is, from the equation, $MP = \text{arc } AQ + QM$.

For arc A Q = a circular arc whose radius is a and versed sine x

$$= a \left\{ \text{a circular arc whose radius is unity and vers. sin. } \frac{x}{a} \right\}$$

$$= a \text{ vers.}^{-1} \frac{x}{a}$$

$$\therefore y = a \text{ vers.}^{-1} \frac{x}{a} + \sqrt{2ax - x^2},$$

If the origin is at B, B R $= x$ and R P $= y$, the equations are

$$x = a\theta - a \sin.\theta$$

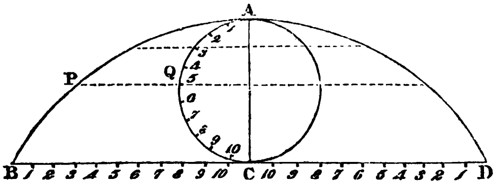
$$y = a - a \cos.\theta.$$

We shall not stop to discuss these equations, as the mechanical description of the curve sufficiently indicates its form.

The cycloid, if not first imagined by Galileo, was first examined by him; and it is remarkable for having occupied the attention of the most eminent mathematicians of the seventeenth century.

Of the many properties of this curve the most curious are that the whole area is three times that of the generating circle, that the arc A P is double of the chord of A Q, and that the tangent at P is parallel to the same chord. Also that if the figure be inverted, a body will fall from any point P on the curve to the lowest point A in the same time; and if a body falls from one point to another point, not in the same vertical line, its path of quickest descent is not the straight line joining the two points, but the arc of a cycloid, the concavity or hollow side being placed upwards.

358. Given the base of a cycloid to trace the curve.

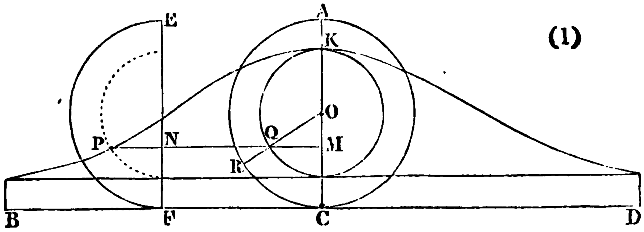


Let the base B D be divided into twenty-two equal parts, and let them be numbered from B and D towards the middle point C; from C draw the perpendicular line C A equal to 7 of these parts; and on A C describe a circle A Q C. Along the circumference mark off the same number of equal parts, either by measurement or by applying the line B C to the circle C A. In the figure the point Q is supposed to coincide with the end of the fifth division from the top.

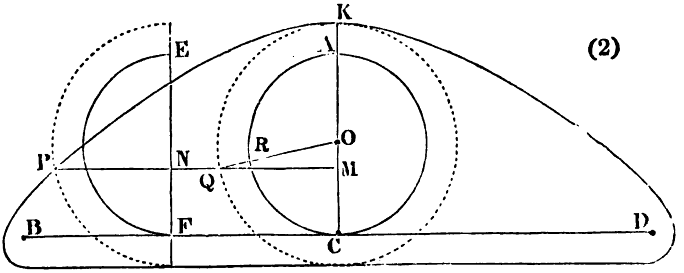
Then the arc C Q being equal to the length C 5 measured on the base, if P Q be drawn parallel to the base, and equal to the remainder of the base, that is, to B 5 or A Q, it is evident that P is a point in the cycloid, and thus any number of points may be found.

The ratio of the circumference to the diameter of a circle is generally taken as in this case to be as 22 to 7.

359. Instead of the point P being on the circumference of the circle, it may be anywhere in the plane of that circle, either within or without the circumference. In the former case the curve is called the prolate cycloid or trochoid, (fig. 1,) in the latter case the curtate or shortened cycloid, (fig. 2.)



(1)



(2)

B D is the base on which the generating circle A R C rolls, O the centre of the generating circle, P the describing point when that circle is at F. Draw P N Q M parallel to the base.

Let A be the origin of rectangular axes,

$$A M = x,\ M P = y,\ A O = a,\ K O = m\,a,\ \text{angle } A O R = \theta, \text{ then}$$

$$M P = M N + P N = M N + Q M = F C + Q M = \text{arc } A R + Q M$$

$$\text{and } A M = A O + O M;$$

$$\therefore\ y = a\,\theta + m\,a \sin.\theta$$

$$\text{and } x = a \text{ vers.}\,\theta.$$

These are the equations to the prolate, curtate, or common cycloid, according as m is less than, greater than, or equal to, unity.

If the vertex K of the curve be the origin of co-ordinates in figs. (1) and (2,) we have $K O = a$, and $A O = m a$: also $M P = F C + Q M = \text{arc } A R + Q M$

$$\therefore y = m\,a\,\theta + a \sin.\theta$$

$$= m \text{ vers.}^{-1} \frac{x}{a} + \sqrt{2\,a\,x - x^2}$$

The curve whose equations are $y = a\,\theta$, and $x = a$ vers. θ is called the companion to the cycloid.

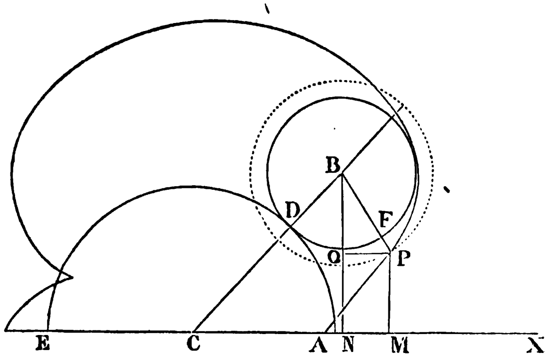
360. The class of cycloids may be much extended by supposing the base on which the circle rolls to be no longer a straight line, but itself a curve: thus let the base be a circle, and let another circle roll on the cumference of the former; then a point either within or without the

circumference of the rolling circle will describe a curve called the epitrochoid; but if the describing point is on the circumference, it is called the epicycloid.

If the revolving circle roll on the inner or concave side of the base, the curve described by a point within or without the revolving circle is called the hypotrochoid; and when the point is on the circumference it is called the hypocycloid.

To find the equation to the epitrochoid.

Let C be the centre of its base E D, and B the centre of the revolving circle D F in one of its positions: C A M the straight line passing through the centres of both circles at the commencement of the motion; that is, when the generating point P is nearest to C or at A.



Let C A be the axis of x,

$CM = x$, $MP = y$,

$CD = a$, $DB = b$,

$BP = mb$, angle $ACB = \theta$

Draw B N parallel to M P, and P Q parallel to E M. Then, since every point in D F has coincided with the base A D, we have $DF = a\theta$, and angle $DBF = \frac{a\theta}{b}$; also angle FBQ = angle FBD − angle QBD

$$= \frac{a\theta}{b} - \left(\frac{\pi}{2} - \theta\right) = \frac{a+b}{b}\theta - \frac{\pi}{2}$$

Now $CM = CN + NM = CB \cos. BCN + PB \sin. PBQ$

$$= (a+b)\cos.\theta + mb\sin.\left(\frac{a+b}{b}\theta - \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$$

And $MP = BN - BQ = (a+b)\sin.\theta - mb\cos.\left(\frac{a+b}{b}\theta - \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$

$$\left.\begin{aligned} \text{or } x &= (a+b)\cos.\theta - mb\cos.\frac{a+b}{b} \\ \text{and } y &= (a+b)\sin.\theta - mb\sin.\frac{a+b}{b}\theta \end{aligned}\right\} \quad (1)$$

The equations to the epicycloid are found by putting b for $m\,b$ in (1.)

$$\left.\begin{aligned} \therefore\ x &= (a + b)\ \text{cos.}\ \theta - b\ \text{cos.}\ \frac{a+b}{b}\ \theta \\ \text{and}\ y &= (a + b)\ \text{sin.}\ \theta - b\ \text{sin.}\ \frac{a+b}{b}\ \theta \end{aligned}\right\} (2)$$

The equations to the hypotrochoid may be obtained in the same manner as the system (1), or more simply by putting $-b$ for b in the equations (1.)

$$\left.\begin{aligned} \therefore\ x &= (a - b)\ \text{cos.}\ \theta + m\,b\ \text{cos.}\ \frac{a-b}{b}\ \theta \\ \text{and}\ y &= (a - b)\ \text{sin.}\ \theta - m\,b\ \text{sin.}\ \frac{a-b}{b}\ \theta \end{aligned}\right\} (3)$$

The equations to the hypocycloid are found by putting $-\ b$ for both b and $m\,b$ in system (1.)

$$\left.\begin{aligned} \therefore\ x &= (a - b)\ \text{cos.}\ \theta + b\ \text{cos.}\ \frac{a-b}{b}\ \theta \\ \text{and}\ y &= (a - b)\ \text{sin.}\ \theta - b\ \text{sin.}\ \frac{a-b}{b}\ \theta \end{aligned}\right\} (4)$$

We have comprehended all the systems in (1), but each of them might be obtained from their respective figures.

361. The elimination of the trigonometrical quantities is possible, and gives finite algebraic equations whenever a and b are in the proportion of two integral numbers. For then cos. θ, cos. $\frac{a+b}{b}\ \theta$, sin. θ, &c., can be expressed by trigonometrical formulas, in terms of cos. ϕ and sin. ϕ, where ϕ is a common submultiple of θ and $\frac{a+b}{b}\ \theta$; and then cos. ϕ and sin. ϕ may be expressed in terms of x and y. Also since the resulting equation in $x\,y$ is finite, the curve does not make an infinite series of convolutions, but the wheel or revolving circle, after a certain number of revolutions, is found, having the generating point exactly in the same position as at first, and thence describing the same curve line over again.

For example, let $a = b$, the equations to the epicycloid become

$$x = a\ (2\ \text{cos.}\ \theta - \text{cos.}\ 2\ \theta)$$
$$y = a\ (2\ \text{sin.}\ \theta - \text{sin.}\ 2\ \theta)$$
$$\therefore\ x = a\ (2\ \text{cos.}\ \theta - 2\ (\text{cos.}\ \theta)^2 + 1)$$
$$\text{and}\ y = 2\ a\ \text{sin.}\ \theta\ (1 - \text{cos.}\ \theta).$$

From the first of these equations we find cos. θ, and then from the second we have sin. θ, adding the values of $(\text{cos.}\ \theta)^2$ and $(\text{sin.}\ \theta)^2$ together and reducing, we have

$$(y^2 + x^2 - 3\,a)^2 = 4\,a^4 \left(3 - \frac{2\,x}{a}\right)$$
$$\text{or}\ \{x^2 + y^2 - a^2\}^2 - 4\,a^2\ \{(x - a)^2 + y^2\} = 0.$$

This curve, from its heart-like shape, is called the cardioide.

Let A be the origin; that is, for x put $x + a$ in the last algebraical equation, and then by transformation into polar co-ordinates, the equation he cardioide becomes

$$r = 2a\,(1 - \cos.\,\phi).$$

362. If $b = \frac{a}{2}$ the equations (4) to the hypocycloid become

$$x = a\cos.\,\theta$$
$$\text{and } y = 0\,;$$

and the hypocycloid has degenerated into the diameter of the circle A C E.

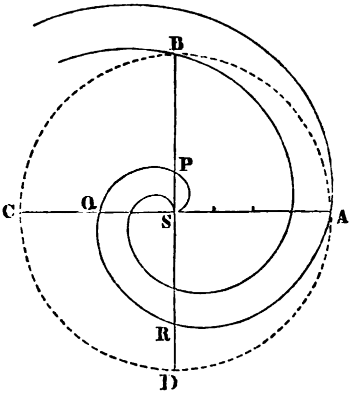
In the same case the equations to the hypotrochoid become

$$x = \frac{a}{2}\,(1 + m)\cos.\,\theta$$

$$y = \frac{a}{2}\,(1 - m)\sin.\,\theta\,;$$

which by the elimination of θ give the equation to an ellipse, whose axes are $a\,(1 + m)$ and $a\,(1 - m)$.

363. If a thread coinciding with a circular axis be unwound from the circle, the extremity of the thread will trace out a curve called the involute of the circle.



Thus suppose a thread fixed round the circle A B C D; then if it be unwound from A, the extremity in the hand will trace out the curve A P Q R S; the lines B P, D Q, C R, A S, which are particular positions of the thread, are also tangents to the circle, and each of them is equal to the length of the corresponding circular arc measured from A.

The curve makes an infinite number of revolutions, the successive branches being separated by a distance equal to the circumference of the circle.

To find the equation to the involute.

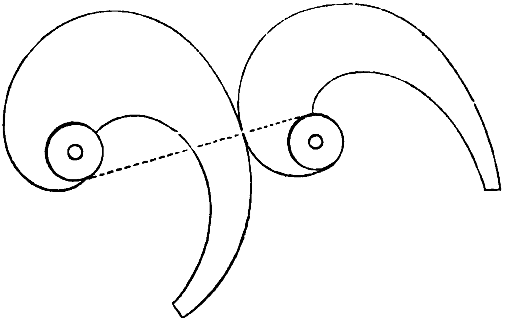
Let C A $= a$, C P $= r$, and angle A C P $= \theta$; then from the triangle B C P, we have B C $=$ P C cos. P C B, or angle P C B $= \cos.^{-1}\frac{a}{r}$;

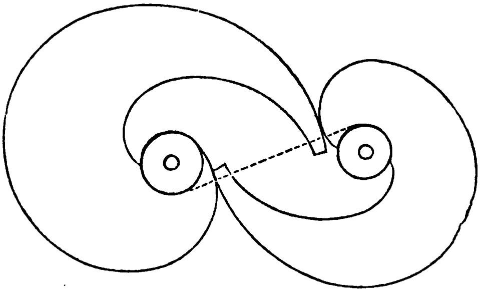
$$\therefore \text{B P} = \text{B A} = a\left(\cos.^{-1}\frac{a}{r} + \theta\right)$$

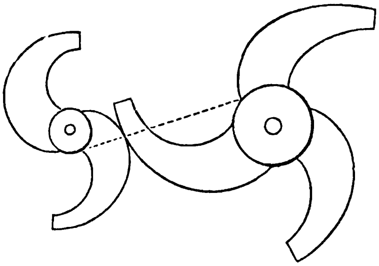
$$\text{or } \sqrt{(r^2 - a^2)} = a\left(\cos.^{-1}\frac{a}{r} + \theta\right)$$

$$\therefore \theta = \frac{\sqrt{\{r^2 - a^2\}}}{a} - \cos.^{-1}\frac{a}{r}.$$

The involute of the circle is usefully employed in toothed wheels ; for there is less waste of power in passing from one tooth to another when they are of this form than in any other case.







In the figures (2) and (3) we have examples of two equal wheels which have each two teeth ; and by turning one wheel the other wheel will be kept in motion by means of the continual contact of the teeth. The dotted line of contact is, by the property of the involute, a common tangent to the two wheels ; this dotted line is the constant line of contact, and the force is the same in every part of a revolution.

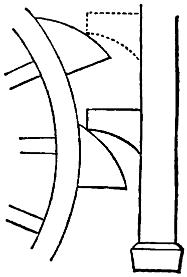


Fig. (3) is another example ; and by making the teeth smaller and more numerous we shall have toothed wheels always in contact, and therefore giving no jar or shake to the machinery.

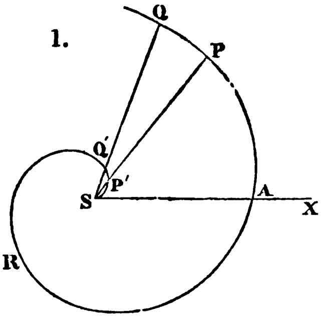
Again, in raising a piston or hammer, the involute of the circle is the best form for the teeth of the ning-wheel, as the force acts on the piston entirely vertical direction.

ON SPIRALS.

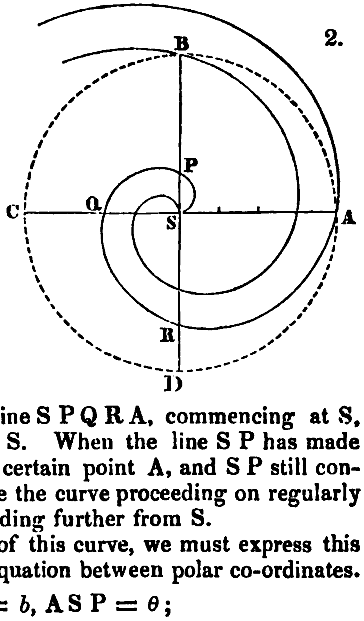
364. There is one class of transcendental curves which are called spirals, from their peculiar twisting form. They were invented by the ancient geometricians, and were much used in architectural ornaments. Of these curves, the most important as well as the most simple, is the spiral invented by the celebrated Archimedes.

This spiral is thus generated: Let a straight line S P of indefinite length move uniformly round a fixed point S, and from a fixed line S X, and let a point P move uniformly also along the line S P, starting from S, at the same time that the line S P commences its motion from S X, then the point will evidently trace out a curve line S P Q R A, commencing at S, and gradually extending further from S. When the line S P has made one revolution, P will have got to a certain point A, and S P still continuing to turn as before, we shall have the curve proceeding on regularly through a series of turnings, and extending further from S.

1.



2.



To examine the form and properties of this curve, we must express this method of generation by means of an equation between polar co-ordinates.

$$\text{Let } SP = r,\ SA = b,\ ASP = \theta;$$

then since the increase of r and θ is uniform, we have

$$SP : SA :: \text{angle } ASP : \text{four right angles} :: \theta : 2\pi$$

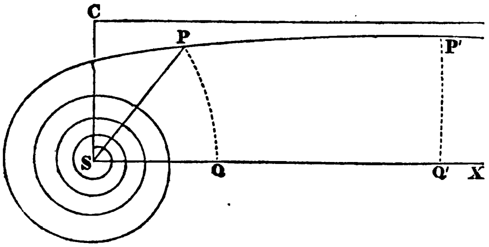
$$\therefore r = \frac{b\theta}{2\pi} = a\theta, \text{ if } a = \frac{b}{2\pi}.$$

From this equation it appears that when S P has made two revolutions or $\theta = 4\pi$, we have $r = 2b$, or the curve cuts the axis S X again at a distance 2 S A; and similarly after 3, 4, n revolutions it meets the axis S X at distances 3; 4, n times S A. Archimedes discovered that the area S P Q R A is equal to one-third of the area of the circle described with centre S and radius S A.

365. The spiral of Archimedes is sometimes used for the volutes of the capitals of columns, and in that case the following description by points is useful.

Let a circle A B C D, fig. (2), be described on the diameter C S A, and draw the diameter B D at right angles to C A; divide the radius S A into four equal parts, and in S B take S P $= \frac{1}{4}$ S A, in S C take S Q $= \frac{1}{2}$ S A, and in S D take S R $= \frac{3}{4}$ S A; then from the equation to the curve these points belong to the spiral; by subdividing the radius S A and the angles in each quadrant we may obtain other points as in the figure. In order to complete the raised part in the volute, another spiral commences from S B.

366. The spiral of Archimedes is one of a class of spirals comprehended in the general equation $r = a\theta^n$. Of this class we shall consider the cases where $n = -1$, and $n = -\frac{1}{2}$.



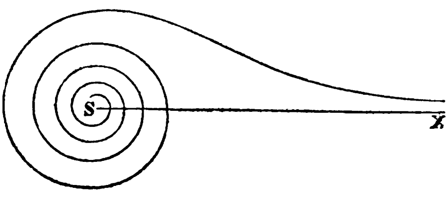
Let $n = -1 \quad \therefore r = a\theta^{-1}$

Let S be the pole, S X the axis from which the angle θ is measured, S P $= r$.

When $\theta = 0$, $r = \infty$; as θ increases, r decreases very rapidly at first and more uniformly afterwards; as θ may go on increasing ad infinitum r also may go on diminishing ad infinitum without ever actually becoming nothing: hence we have an infinite series of convolutions round S: Describe a circular arc P Q with centre S and radius S P, then P Q $= r\theta = a$; and since this value of a is the same for all positions of P, we must have P Q $=$ P′ Q′ $=$ the straight line S C at an infinite distance, and therefore the curve must approach to an asymptote drawn through C parallel to S X.

This curve is called the reciprocal spiral from the form of its equation, since the variables are inversely as each other, or the hyperbolic spiral, from the similarity of the equation to that of the hyperbola referred to its asymptotes ($xy = k^2$).

367. Let $n = -\frac{1}{2}$; $\therefore r = a\theta^{-\frac{1}{2}}$ or $r^2\theta = a^2$. This curve, called the lituus or trumpet, is described as in the figure; proceeding from the asymptote S X, it makes an infinite series of convolutions round S.



368. If in the equation $r\theta = a$, we always deduct the constant quantity, b, we have the equation $(r - b)\,\theta = a$; this curve commences its course like the reciprocal spiral; but as θ increases we have $r - b$ approximating to nothing, or r approximating to b; hence the spiral, after an infinite number of convolutions, approaches to an asymptotic circle, whose centre is S, and radius b.

369. Trace the spiral whose equation is $\theta\sqrt{ar - r^2} = b$; this curve has an infinite number of small revolutions round the pole, and gradually extends outwards to meet an asymptotic circle whose radius is a.

370. The spiral whose equation is $(r - a)^2 = b^2\,\theta$ commences its course from a point in the circumference of the circle whose radius is a, and extends outwards round S in an infinite series of convolutions. This curve is formed by twisting the axis of the common parabola round the circumference of a circle, the curve line of the parabola forming the spiral.

371. The curve whose equation is $r = a^\theta$ is called the logarithmic spiral, for the logarithm of the radius vector is proportional to the angle θ. Examining all the values of θ from 0 to $\pm\infty$ we find that there are an infinite series of convolutions round the pole S. This curve is also called the equiangular spiral, for it is found by the principles of the higher analysis that this curve cuts the radius vector in a constant angle.

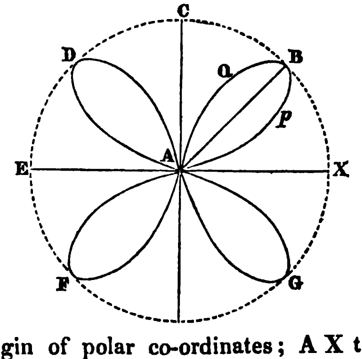
Descartes, who first imagined this curve, found also that the whole length of the curve from any point P to the pole was proportional to the radius vector at P.

372. It will often happen that the algebraical equation of a curve is much more complicated than the polar equation; the conchoid art. 312 is an example. In these cases it is advisable to transform the equation from algebraical to polar co-ordinates, and then trace the curve from the polar equation.

For example, if the equation be $(x^2 + y^2)^{\frac{3}{2}} = 2\,a\,x\,y$, there would be much difficulty in ascertaining the form of the curve from this equation; but let $x = r \cos.\theta$ and $y = r \sin.\theta$ (61)

$$\therefore\ r^3 = 2\,a\,r^2 \cos.\theta \sin.\theta,$$

$$\text{or } r = a \sin. 2\,\theta.$$



Let A be the origin of polar co-ordinates; A X the axis whence θ is measured; with centre A and radius a describe a circle B C D. Then for $\theta = 0$ we have $r = 0$, as θ increases from 0 to 45°, r increases from

0 to a; hence the branch A P B. Again, as θ increases from 45° to 90°, sin. 2θ diminishes from 1 to 0; $\therefore$ r diminishes, and we trace the branch B Q A. As θ increases from 90° to 180°, sin. 2θ increases and decreases as before; hence the similar oval in the second quadrant. By following θ from 180° to 360°, we shall have the ovals in the third and fourth quadrant: and since the sine of an arc advances similarly in each quadrant of the circle, we have the four ovals similar and equal.

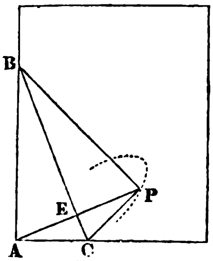
In this case we have paid no regard to the algebraical sign of r; we have considered θ to vary from 0 to 360°, which method we prefer to that of giving θ all values from 0 to 180°, and then making the sign of r to vary.

If the equation had been $(x^2 + y^2)^2 = 2a^2 x y$, we should have found two equal and similar ovals in the first and third quadrant.

The locus of the equation $r = a\,(\text{cos. }\theta - \text{sin. }\theta)$ is the same kind of figure differently situated with respect to the lines A X and A C.

The equation to the lemniscata $r^2 = a^2 \text{ cos. } 2\theta$ art. (314), may be similarly traced.

373. In many indeterminate problems we shall find that polar co-ordinates may be very usefully employed. For example,



Let the corner of the page of a book be turned over into the position B C P, and in such a manner that the triangle B C P be constant, to find the locus of P.

Let A P $= r$, angle P A C $= \theta$, and let the area A B C $= a^2$; then since the triangles A B E, P B E are equal, we have A E $= \frac{r}{2}$, and the angle A E B a right angle $\therefore$ A E $=$ A C cos. θ, and A E $=$ A B cos. $\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - \theta\right) =$ A B sin. θ $\therefore \frac{r^2}{4} = \frac{a^2}{2} \text{ sin. } \theta \text{ cos. } \theta$, or $r^2 = a^2 \text{ sin. } 2\theta$. Hence the locus is an oval A P B Q as in the last figure.

If a point be taken in the radius vector S P of a parabola so that its distance from the focus is equal to the perpendicular from the focus on the tangent, the locus of the point is the curve whose equation is $r = a \text{ sec. } \frac{\theta}{2}$.

PART II.

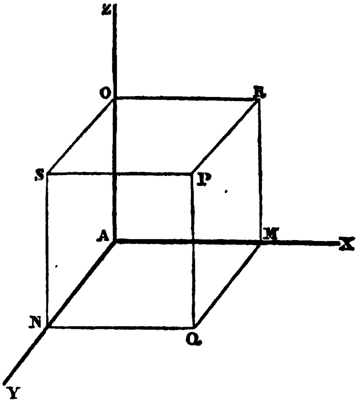
APPLICATION OF ALGEBRA TO SOLID GEOMETRY.

CHAPTER I.

INTRODUCTION.

374. In the preceding part of this Treatise lines and points have always been considered as situated in one plane, and have been referred to two lines called axes situated in that plane. Now we may readily imagine a curve line, the parts of which are not situated in one plane; also, if we consider a surface, as that of a sphere, for example, we observe immediately that all the points in such a surface cannot be in the same plane; hence the method of considering figures which has been hitherto adopted cannot be applied to such cases, and therefore we must have recourse to some more general method for investigating the properties of figures.

375. We begin by showing how the position of a point in space may be determined.



Let three planes Z A X, Z A Y, and X A Y, be drawn perpendicular to each other, and let the three straight lines A X, A Y, A Z be the intersections of these planes, and A the common point of concourse.

From any point P in space draw the lines P Q, P R, and P S respectively perpendicular to the planes X A Y, Z A X, and Z A Y; then the position of the point P is completely determined when these three perpendicular lines are known.

Complete the rectangular parallelopiped A P, then P Q, P R, and P S are respectively equal to A O, A N, and A M.

These three lines A M, A N, and A O, or more commonly their equals A M, M Q, and Q P, are called the co-ordinates of P, and are denoted by the letters x, y, and z respectively.

The point A is called the origin.

The line A X is called the axis of x, the line A Y is called the axis of y, and the line A Z is called the axis of z.

The plane X A Y is called the plane of xy, the plane Z A X is called the plane of zx, and the plane Z A Y is called the plane of zy*.

From P we have drawn three perpendicular lines, P Q, P R, and P S, on the three co-ordinate planes. The three points, Q, R, and S are called the projections of the point P on the planes of xy, xz, and zy respectively.

The method of projections is so useful in the investigation and description of surfaces, that we proceed to give a few of the principal theorems on the subject so far as may be required in this work.

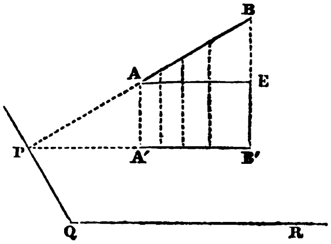
PROJECTIONS.

376. If several points be situated in a straight line, their projections on any one of the co-ordinate planes are also in a straight line.

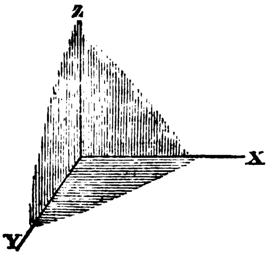
For they are all comprised in the plane passing through the given straight line, and drawn perpendicular to the co-ordinate plane; and as the intersection of any two planes is a straight line, the projections of the points must be all in one straight line.

This plane, which contains all the perpendiculars drawn from different points of the straight line, is called the projecting plane; and its intersection with the co-ordinate plane is called the projection of the straight line.

377. To find the length of the projection of a straight line upon a plane.



Let A B be the line to be projected on the plane P Q R; produce A B to meet this plane in P; draw A A′ and B B′ perpendicular to the plane, and meeting it in A′ and B′. Join A′ B′; then A′ B′ is the projection of A B.



---

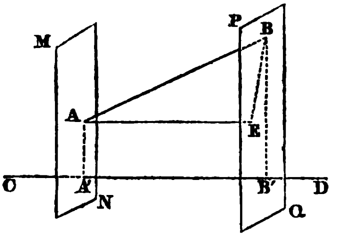
* This system of co-ordinate planes may be represented by the sides and floor of a room, the corner being the origin of the axes, the plane X Y is then represented by the floor of the room, and the two remaining planes by the two adjacent sides of the room.

Since A B and A′ B′ are in the same plane, they will meet in P. Let the angle B P B′ or the angle of the inclination of A B to the plane $= \theta$, and in the projecting plane A B′ draw A E parallel to A′ B′, then

$$A'B' = AE = AB \cos.\ BAE = AB \cos.\ \theta$$

The same proof will apply to the projection of a straight line upon another straight line, both being in the same plane.

378. To find the length of the projection of a straight line upon another straight line not in the same plane.



Let A B be the line to be projected; C D the line upon which it is to be projected. From A and B draw lines A A′ and B B′ perpendicular to C D, then A′ B′ is the projection of A B.

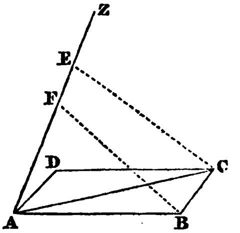
Through A and B draw planes M N and P Q perpendicular to C D. These planes contain the perpendicular lines A A′ and B B′.

From A draw A E perpendicular to the plane P Q, and therefore equal and parallel to A′ B′; join B E; then the triangle A B E having a right angle at E, we have $A'B' = AE = AB \cos.\ BAE$, and angle B A E is equal to the angle θ of inclination between A B and C D; hence

$$A'B' = AB \cos.\ \theta.$$

Also any line equal and parallel to A B has an equal projection A′ B′ on C D, and the projection of A B on any line parallel to C D is of the same length as A′ B′.

379. The projection of the diagonal of a parallelogram on any straight line is equal to the sum of the projections of the two sides upon the same straight line.



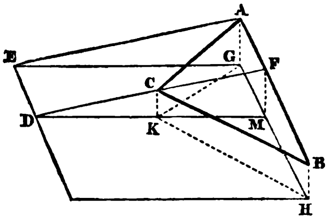
Let A B C D be a parallelogram, A Z any straight line through A inclined to the plane of the parallelogram. From C and B draw perpendiculars C E and B F upon A Z, then A E is the projection of A C upon A Z or $AE = AC \cos.\ CAZ$; and A F is the projection of A B upon

AZ or $AF = AB$ cos. BAZ. Also FE is the projection of BC or AD upon AZ or $FE = BC$ cos. DAZ

$$\text{and } AE = AF + FE;$$

hence the projection of $AC =$ the sum of projections of AB and BC.

380. To find the projection of the area of any plane figure on a given plane $EDGH$.



Let ABC be a triangle inclined to the given plane $EDGH$ at an angle θ; draw AE, CD, perpendicular to the intersection ED of these planes; then the triangle ABC and its projection GKH have equal bases AB, GH, but unequal altitudes CF, KM;

$$\therefore \text{ area } ABC : GKH :: CF : KM :: DF : DM :: 1 : \cos.\theta$$

$$\text{or area } GKH = ABC \cos.\theta;$$

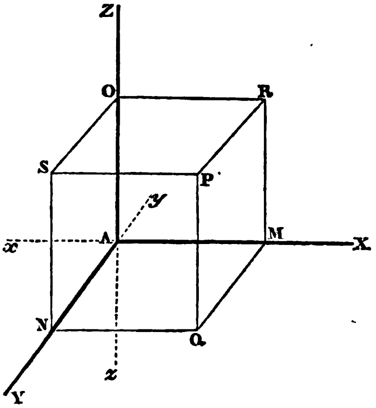
and this being true for any triangle, is true for any polygon, and therefore ultimately for any plane area.

CHAPTER II.

THE POINT AND STRAIGHT LINE.

381. We have already explained how the position of a point in space is determined by drawing perpendicular lines from it upon three fixed planes called the co-ordinate planes. If, then, on measuring the lengths of these three perpendicular lines or co-ordinates of P we find $AM=a$, $AN=b$, and $AO=c$, we have the position of a point P completely determined by the three equations $x=a$, $y=b$ and $z=c$; and as these are sufficient for that object, they are called the equations to the point P.

This point may also be defined as in Art. (25) by the equation $(x-a)^2+(y-b)^2+(z-c)^2=0$, since the only values that render this expression real are $x=a$, $y=b$, and $z=c$.



382. The algebraical signs of the co-ordinates x, y, and z, are determined as in Plane Geometry, by the directions of the co-ordinate lines: thus A O is positive or negative according as it is drawn from A along A Z or A z, that is, according as it is above or below the plane of xy: and so on for the other lines: hence we have the following values of co-ordinates for a point in each of the eight compartments into which space is divided by the co-ordinate planes.

$+x+y+z$	a point P situated in the angle	$XAYZ$
$+x-y+z$	. . .	$XAyZ$
$-x-y+z$	. . .	$xAyZ$
$-x+y+z$	. . .	$xAYZ$
$+x+y-z$	. . .	$XAYz$
$+x-y-z$	. . .	$XAyz$
$-x-y-z$	. . .	$xAyz$
$-x+y-z$	. . .	$xAYz$

383. A point also may be situated in one of the co-ordinate planes, in which case the co-ordinate perpendicular to that plane must $= 0$; thus, if the point be in the plane of xy, its distance z from this plane must $= 0$: hence the equations to the point in the plane of xy are

$$x = a, y = b, z = 0$$

$$\text{or } (x-a)^2 + (y-b)^2 + z^2 = 0.$$

If the point be in the plane of xz, the equations are

$$x = a, y = 0, z = c$$

And if the point be in the plane of yz

$$x = 0, y = b, z = c.$$

Also, if the point be on the axis of x, its distance from the planes xy and $yz = 0$, therefore the equations to such a point are

$$x = a, y = 0, z = 0;$$

and so on for points situated on the other axes.

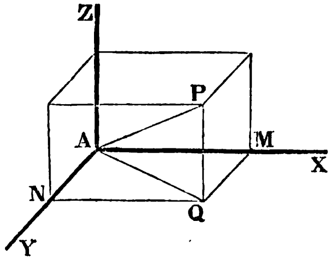
384. The points Q, R, and S, in the last figure, are the projections of the point P on the co-ordinate planes; on referring each of these points to the axes in its own plane, we have

The equations to Q on xy are $x = a$, $y = b$
R on xz are $x = a$, $z = c$
S on yz are $y = b$, $z = c$

Hence we see that the projections of the point P on two of the co-ordinate planes being known, the projection on the third plane is necessarily given: thus, if S and R are given, draw S N and R M parallel to A Z, also N Q and M Q respectively parallel to A X and A Y, and the position of Q is known.

385. To find the distance A P of a point from the origin of co-ordinates A.

Let A X, A Y, and A Z be the rectangular axes; A M $= x$, M Q $= y$, and P Q $= z$, the co-ordinates of P.



The square on A P = the square on A Q + the square on P Q

= the squares on A M, M Q + the square on P Q

or $d^2 = x^2 + y^2 + z^2$.

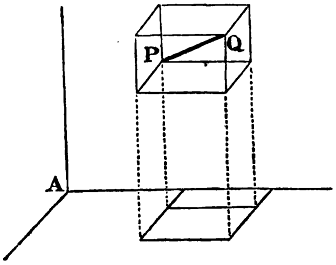
386. Let α, β, γ, be the angles which A P makes with the axis of x, y, and z, respectively;

$$\text{then } x = AM = AP \cos PAM = d \cos \alpha$$
$$y = MQ = AN = AP \cos. PAN = d \cos. \beta$$
$$z = PQ = AP \sin. PAQ = d \cos. \gamma$$
$$\therefore d^2 = x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = d^2 (\cos. \alpha)^2 + d^2 (\cos. \beta)^2 + d^2 (\cos. \gamma)^2$$
$$\therefore (\cos. \alpha)^2 + (\cos. \beta)^2 + (\cos. \gamma)^2 = 1.$$

387. Again $d^2 = x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = x d \cos. \alpha + y d \cos. \beta + z d \cos. \gamma$

$$\therefore d = x \cos. \alpha + y \cos. \beta + z \cos. \gamma.$$

388. To find the distance between two points, let the co-ordinates of the points P and Q be respectively $x\ y\ z$ and $x_1\ y_1\ z_1$; then the distance between these points is the diagonal of a parallelopiped, the three contiguous sides of which are the differences of the parallel co-ordinates; hence, by the last article we have



$$d^2 = (x - x_1)^2 + (y - y_1)^2 + (z - z_1)^2$$

If d_1 and d_2 be the distances of the points $x_1\ y_1\ z_1$ and $x_2\ y_2\ z_2$ respectively from the origin, the above expression may be put in the form

$$d^2 = d_1^2 + d_2^2 - 2 (x_1 x_2 + y_1 y_2 + z_1 z_2).$$

THE STRAIGHT LINE.

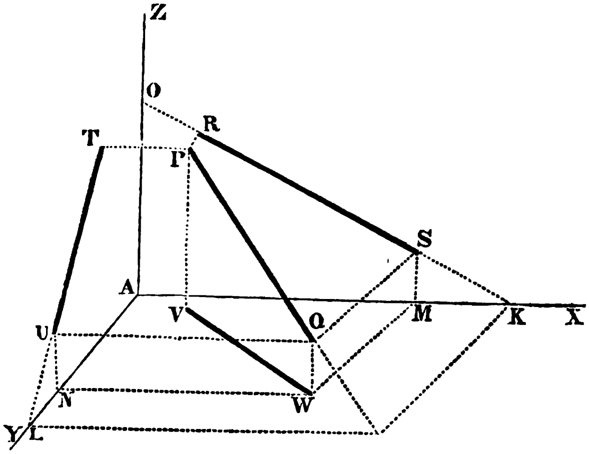
389. A straight line may be considered as the intersection of two planes, and therefore its position will be known if the situation of these planes is known; hence it may be determined by the projecting planes, and the situation of these last is fixed by their intersections with the co-ordinate planes, that is, by the projections of the line upon the co-ordinate planes; hence, the position of a straight line is geometrically fixed by knowing its ojections; and it is also algebraically determined by the equations to se projections taken conjointly. Taking the axis of z as the axis of cissas the equation to the projection on the plane $x\ z$ is of the form

$x = \alpha z + a$ (31), and the equation to the projection on the plane of $y z$ is $y = \beta z + b$.

As these two equations fix the position of the straight line in space, they are, taken together, called the equations to a straight line.

390. To illustrate this subject we shall let P Q be a portion of the straight line, R S its projection on $x z$, T U its projection on $y z$, V W its projection on $x y$;

And let $x = \alpha z + a$, be the equation to R S, and $y = \beta z + b$, be the equation to T U:



then any point Q in the projecting plane P Q R S has the same values of z and x that its projection S has, that is, the co-ordinates A M and M S are the same as N W and W Q; hence there is the same relation between them in each case; and therefore, the equation $x = \alpha z + a$ expresses not only the relation between the x and z of all the points in R S, but also of all the points in the plane P Q R S.

Similarly the equation $y = \beta z + b$ not only relates to T U, but also to all the points in the plane T U Q P.

Therefore, the system of the two equations exists for all the points in the straight line P Q, the intersection of the two projecting planes, and for this line only; hence, the equations to the straight line P Q are

$$\left.\begin{array}{l} x = \alpha z + a \\ y = \beta z + b \end{array}\right\}.$$

The elimination of z between these two equations gives

$$z = \frac{1}{\alpha}(x - a) = \frac{1}{\beta}(y - b)$$

$$\therefore\ y - b = \frac{\beta}{\alpha}(x - a)$$

and this is the relation between the co-ordinates A M and M W of the projection W of any point Q in the line P Q; and therefore, this last equation is that to the projection V W on the plane $x y$.

391. In the equations $x = \alpha z + a$ and $y = \beta z + b$, a is the dist-

of the origin from the intersection of R S with A X, or $a =$ AK; similarly $b =$ A L.

Let $x = 0 \therefore z = -\dfrac{a}{\alpha} =$ A O $\therefore$ A K $= -\alpha$ A O, but A K = A O tan. A O K = − A O tan. Z O R $\therefore$ α is tangent of the angle which R S makes with A Z, and similarly β is tangent of the angle which U T makes with A Z.

392. The straight line will assume various positions according to the algebraical signs of a, b, α and β: however, it would be of very little use to go through all the cases arising from these changes of sign, especially as they offer nothing of consequence, and no one case presents any difficulty. We shall only consider the cases where the absolute value of a, b, α and β is changed.

Let $a = 0$ and $b = 0$, then $x = \alpha z$ and $y = \beta z$, and the two projections pass through the origin, and therefore the line itself passes through the origin; the equation to the third projection is $y = \dfrac{\beta}{\alpha} x$.

Let $a = 0$ then $x = \alpha z$ and $y = \beta z + b$, the projection on $x z$ passing through the origin, the line itself must pass through the axis A Y perpendicular to $x z$: similarly, if $b = 0$, the equations $x = \alpha z + a$, $y = \beta z$ belong to a line passing through the axis of x, and if the equations are $y = \alpha x$, $y = \beta z + b$, the straight line passes through the axis of z: this last case may be represented by supposing (in the last figure) W V to pass through A, then the equation to V W is of the form $y = \alpha x$, and the equation to O T U is $y = \beta z + b$; now, if two planes be drawn, one through T U perpendicular to $y z$, and the other through V W perpendicular to $x y$, both planes pass through the point O, and therefore the line itself must pass through O.

393. Let $\beta = 0 \therefore x = \alpha z + a$, $y = b$, the line is in a plane parallel to $x z$ and distant from it by the quantity b. If the last figure be adapted to this case we should have U T perpendicular to A Y, and therefore P Q equal and parallel to R S situated in the plane W N U Q perpendicular to $x y$.

Let $\alpha = 0 \therefore x = a$, $y = \beta z + b$, the line is in a plane parallel to to $y z$.

Similarly $z = c$, $y = \alpha' x + a'$ belong to a line in a plane parallel to $x y$.

394. A straight line may also be situated in one of the co-ordinate planes as in the plane of $y z$; for example, the equations to such a line are $y = \beta z + b, x = 0$. If the line be in the plane of $x z$ the equations are $x = \alpha z + a$, $y = 0$; and if the line be in the plane of $x y$ the equations become $y = \alpha' x + a'$ $z = 0$.

395. If the straight line be perpendicular to one of the co-ordinate planes, as $x y$ for example; α and β must each equal 0, and therefore the equations to this line are

$$x = a, y = b, z = \frac{0}{0}.$$

Similarly the equations to a line perpendicular to $x z$ are

$$x = a, y = \frac{0}{0}, z = c$$

and the equations to a line perpendicular to $y\,z$ are

$$x = \frac{0}{0},\ y = b, z = c.$$

396. To find the point where a straight line meets the co-ordinate planes:

Let $x = \alpha\,z + a$ and $y = \beta z + b$ be the equations to the line; when it meets the plane of $x\,y$ we have $z = 0$ $\therefore$ $x = a, y = b$ are the equations to the required point.

Similarly $z = -\dfrac{b}{\beta}, x = -\dfrac{\alpha}{\beta}\,b + a$ are the equations to the point where the line meets the plane of $x\,z$, and $z = -\dfrac{a}{\alpha}, y = -\dfrac{\beta}{\alpha}\,a + b$ are the equations to the point where the line pierces the plane of $z\,y$.

397. There are four constant quantities in the general equations to a straight line, and if they are all given, the position of the line is completely determined; for we have only to give to one of the variables as z a value z', and we have

$$x = \alpha\,z + a = \alpha\,z' + a = x' \text{ and } y = \beta\,z + b = \beta\,z' + b = y';$$

or, x' and y' are also necessarily determined; hence, taking A M $= x'$, (see the last figure,) and drawing M W ($= y'$) parallel to A Y, and lastly, drawing from W a perpendicular W Q $= z'$, the point Q thus determined belongs to the line; and similarly, any number of points in the line are determined, or the position of the line is completely ascertained. Again, the straight line may be subject to certain conditions, as passing through a given point, or being parallel to a given line; or, in other words, conditions may be given which will enable us to determine the quantities α, β, a and b, supposing them first to be unknown; in this manner arises a series of Problems on straight lines similar to those already worked for straight lines situated in one plane (40, 50).

PROBLEMS ON STRAIGHT LINES.

398. To find the equations to a straight line passing through a given point:

Let the co-ordinates of the given point be x_1, y_1 and z_1, and let the equations to the straight line be $x = \alpha\,z + a, y = \beta\,z + b$.

Now since this line passes through the given point, the projections of the line must also pass through the projections of the point; hence the projection $x = \alpha\,z + a$ passing through x_1 and z_1, we have $x_1 = \alpha\,z_1 + a$,

$$\therefore\ x - x_1 = \alpha\,(z - z_1)$$

$$\text{and similarly } y - y_1 = \beta\,(z - z_1)$$

hence these are the equations required: α and β being indeterminate, there may be an infinite number of straight lines passing through the given point.

If the given point be in the plane of $x\,y$, we have $z_1 = 0$,

$$\therefore\ \left.\begin{aligned} x - x_1 &= \alpha\,z \\ y - y_1 &= \beta\,z \end{aligned}\right\}$$

If the given point be on the axis of x, we have $z_1 = 0$ and $y_1 = 0$,

$$\left.\begin{array}{l} x - x_1 = \alpha z \\ y = \beta z \end{array}\right\}$$

And the equation would assume various other forms according to the position of the given point.

399. To find the equations to a straight line passing through two given points, $x_1\, y_1\, z_1$ and $x_2\, y_2\, z_2$.

Since the line passes through the point $x_1\, y_1\, z_1$ its equations are

$$x - x_1 = \alpha (z - z_1)$$

$$y - y_1 = \beta (z - z_1).$$

And since the line also passes through $x_2\, y_2\, z_2$ the last equations become

$$x_2 - x_1 = \alpha (z_2 - z_1)$$

$$y_2 - y_1 = \beta (z_2 - z_1)$$

$$\therefore\ \alpha = \frac{x_2 - x_1}{z_2 - z_1} \text{ and } \beta = \frac{y_2 - y_1}{z_2 - z_1};$$

hence the equations to the required line are

$$x - x_1 = \frac{x_2 - x_1}{z_2 - z_1} (z - z_1)$$

$$y - y_1 = \frac{y_2 - y_1}{z_2 - z_1} (z - z_1).$$

These equations will assume many various forms dependent on the position of the given point, for example: If the first point be in the plane of $y\, z$, and the second in the axis of x, we have $x_1 = 0$; $y_2 = 0$, $z_2 = 0$

$$\therefore\ x = \frac{x_2}{-z_1} (z - z_1)$$

$$y - y_1 = \frac{y_1}{z_1} (z - z_1).$$

If the second point be the origin, we have $x_2\, y_2\, z_2$ each $= 0$,

$$\therefore\ x - x_1 = \frac{x_1}{z_1} (z - z_1) = \frac{x_1}{z_1} z - x_1$$

$$y - y_1 = \frac{y_1}{z_1} (z - z_1) = \frac{y_1}{z_1} z - y_1;$$

hence the equations to a point passing through the origin are

$$x = \frac{x_1}{z_1} z, \text{and } y = \frac{y_1}{z_1} z.$$

And these equations may be also obtained by considering that the projections pass through the origin, and therefore their equations are of the form $x = \alpha z$, $y = \beta z$, and the first passing through $x_1\, z_1$ we have $\alpha = \frac{x_1}{z_1}$, and similarly $\beta = \frac{y_1}{z_1}$.

400. To find the equation to a straight line parallel to a given straight line.

Since the lines are parallel their projecting planes on any one of the co-ordinate planes are also parallel, and therefore the projections themselves parallel; hence, if the equations to the given line are

$$x = \alpha z + a, \; y = \beta z + b,$$

the equations to the required line are

$$x = \alpha z + a', \; y = \beta z + b'.$$

If the straight line pass also through a given point $x_1 \, y_1 \, z_1$ its equations are

$$x - x_1 = \alpha\,(z - z_1), \; y - y_1 = \beta\,(z - z_1).$$

401. To find the intersection of two given straight lines.

Two straight lines situated in one plane must meet in general, but this is not necessarily the case if the lines be situated anywhere in space; hence there must be a particular relation among the constant quantities in the equation in order that the lines may meet: to find this relation, let the equations to the lines be

$$\left.\begin{array}{l} x = \alpha z + a \\ y = \beta z + b \end{array}\right\} \qquad \left.\begin{array}{l} x = \alpha' z + a' \\ y = \beta' z + b' \end{array}\right\}$$

For the point of intersection the projected values of x, y and z must be the same in all the equations; hence

$$\alpha z + a = \alpha' z + a' \text{ and } z = \frac{a' - a}{\alpha - \alpha'},$$

$$\text{and } \beta z + b = \beta' z + b' \text{ and } z = \frac{b' - b}{\beta - \beta'},$$

$$\therefore \frac{a' - a}{\alpha - \alpha'} = \frac{b' - b}{\beta - \beta'};$$

$$\text{or, } (a' - a)\,(\beta' - \beta) = (b' - b)\,(\alpha' - \alpha).$$

And this is the relation which must exist amongst the constants in order that the two lines may meet.

Having thus determined the necessary relation among the constants, the co-ordinates of intersection are given by the equations

$$z = \frac{a' - a}{\alpha - \alpha'} \text{ or } = \frac{b' - b}{\beta - \beta'}$$

$$y = \beta z + b = \beta \frac{b' - b}{\beta - \beta'} + b = \frac{\beta b' - \beta' b}{\beta - \beta'}$$

$$x = \alpha z + a = \alpha \frac{a' - a}{\alpha - \alpha'} + a = \frac{\alpha a' - \alpha' a}{\alpha - \alpha'}.$$

402. To find the angles which a straight line (l) makes with the co-ordinate axes; and thence with the co-ordinate planes:

Let the equations to the given line be

$$\begin{array}{l} x = \alpha z + a \\ y = \beta z + b; \end{array}$$

the equations to the parallel line through the origin are

$$x = \alpha z, \; y = \beta z;$$

also let r be the distance of any point (x, y, z) in this last line from the origin:

$$\therefore r^2 = x^2 + y^2 + z^2$$
$$= (\alpha^2 + \beta^2 + 1) z^2$$
$$\text{or, } z^2 = \frac{r^2}{1 + \alpha^2 + \beta^2}$$

But $l\,x$, $l\,y$, and $l\,z$ being the angles which either line makes with the axes of x, y, and z respectively, we have from the second line

$$\cos. l\,x = \frac{x}{r} = \frac{\alpha z}{r} = \frac{\alpha}{\sqrt{1 + \alpha^2 + \beta^2}}$$
$$\cos. l\,y = \frac{y}{r} = \frac{\beta z}{r} = \frac{\beta}{\sqrt{1 + \alpha^2 + \beta^2}}$$
$$\cos. l\,z = \frac{z}{r} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + \alpha^2 + \beta^2}}$$

$$\text{Also } (\cos. l\,x)^2 + (\cos. l\,y)^2 + (\cos. l\,z)^2 = 1;$$

and this is the equation connecting the three angles which any straight line makes with the rectangular axes.

Since the system is rectangular, the angle which a line makes with any axis is the complement of the angle which it makes with the plane perpendicular to that axis: hence the angles which a line makes with the co-ordinate planes are given.

403. To find the cosine, sine, and tangent of the angle between two given straight lines.

Let the equations to the two straight lines be

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x &= \alpha z + a \\ y &= \beta z + b \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad \left.\begin{aligned} x &= \alpha' z + a' \\ y &= \beta' z + b' \end{aligned}\right\}.$$

These two lines may meet, or they may not meet; but in either case their mutual inclination is the same as that of two straight lines parallel to them and passing through the origin; hence the problem is reduced to find the angle between the lines represented by the equations

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x &= \alpha z \\ y &= \beta z \end{aligned}\right\} (1) \qquad \left.\begin{aligned} x &= \alpha' z \\ y &= \beta' z \end{aligned}\right\} (2)$$

Let r = the distance of a point $x\ y\ z$ in (1) from the origin,
r_1 = ... $x_1 y_1 z_1$ in (2) . . . .
d = the distance between these points,
θ = the angle between the given lines,

then
$$d^2 = r^2 + r_1^2 - 2 r r_1 \cos. \theta$$
$$= (x - x_1)^2 + (y - y_1)^2 + (z - z_1)^2 \quad (388)$$
$$= x^2 + y^2 + z^2 + x_1^2 + y_1^2 + z_1^2 - 2 (x x_1 + y y_1 + z z_1)$$
$$= r^2 + r_1^2 - 2 (x x_1 + y y_1 + z z_1)$$
$$\therefore r r_1 \cos. \theta = x x_1 + y y_1 + z z_1$$

Now $x x_1 + y y_1 + z z_1 = \alpha z \alpha' z_1 + \beta z \beta' z_1 + z z_1 = (\alpha\alpha' + \beta\beta' + 1) z z_1$.

And
$$r r_1 = \sqrt{(x^2 + y^2 + z^2)} \sqrt{(x_1^2 + y_1^2 + z_1^2)}$$
$$= z z' \sqrt{(\alpha^2 + \beta^2 + 1)} \sqrt{(\alpha'^2 + \beta'^2 + 1)}.$$

$$\therefore \cos. \theta = \frac{x x_1 + y y_1 + z z_1}{r r_1}$$

$$= \frac{\alpha\alpha' + \beta\beta' + 1}{\sqrt{(\alpha^2 + \beta^2 + 1)}\,\sqrt{(\alpha'^2 + \beta'^2 + 1)}}$$

Hence $\sin.\ \theta = \dfrac{\sqrt{\{(\alpha\beta' - \alpha'\beta)^2 + (\alpha - \alpha')^2 + (\beta - \beta')^2\}}}{\sqrt{(\alpha^2 + \beta^2 + 1)}\,\sqrt{(\alpha'^2 + \beta'^2 + 1)}}$.

And $\tan.\ \theta = \dfrac{\sin.\ \theta}{\cos.\ \theta} = \dfrac{\sqrt{\{(\alpha\beta' - \alpha'\beta)^2 + (\alpha - \alpha')^2 + (\beta - \beta')^2\}}}{\alpha\alpha' + \beta\beta' + 1.}$

The value of the cosine of the angle between two straight lines may also be expressed in terms of the angles which the two straight lines l and l_1 make with the co-ordinate axes.

For $x = r \cos.\ l\,x, \quad y = r \cos.\ l\,y, \quad z = r \cos.\ l\,z,$

and $x_1 = r_1 \cos.\ l_1\,x, \quad y_1 = r_1 \cos.\ l_1\,y, \quad z_1 = r_1 \cos.\ l_1\,z,$

$$\therefore\ \cos.\ \theta = \frac{x x_1}{r r_1} + \frac{y y_1}{r r_1} + \frac{z z_1}{r r_1}$$

$$= \cos.\ l\,x \cos.\ l\,x + \cos.\ l\,y \cos.\ l\,y + \cos.\ l\,z \cos.\ l_1\,z.$$

404. If the lines are parallel, we must have $\sin.\ \theta = 0$.

$$\therefore\ (\alpha\beta' - \alpha'\beta)^2 + (\alpha - \alpha')^2 + (\beta - \beta')^2 = 0,$$

an equation which cannot be satisfied unless by supposing $\alpha = \alpha'$, $\beta = \beta'$, and $\alpha\beta' = \alpha'\beta$, the first two of these conditions are the same as those already shown to determine the parallelism of two lines (400), and the third condition is only a necessary consequence of the other two, and therefore implies nothing further.

405. If the lines are perpendicular to each other, we must have $\cos.\ \theta = 0$.

$$\therefore\ \alpha\alpha' + \beta\beta' + 1 = 0.$$

or, $\cos.\ l\,x \cos.\ l_1\,x + \cos.\ l\,y \cos.\ l_1\,y + \cos.\ l\,z \cos.\ l_1\,z = 0$;

Now, one line in space is considered as perpendicular to a second straight line, whenever it is in a plane perpendicular to this second line; hence an infinite number of lines can be drawn perpendicular to a given line; and this appears from the above equation, for there are four constants involved in the equation to the perpendicular line, and only one equation between them.

406. If the lines also meet, we have then the additional equation,

$$(a' - a)\,\beta' - \beta = (b' - b)\,(\alpha' - \alpha) \quad (401).$$

However, even yet an infinite number of straight lines can be drawn, meeting the given line at right angles, for an infinite number of planes can be drawn perpendicular to the given line, and in each plane an infinite number of straight lines can be drawn passing through the given line.

407. To find the equation to a straight line passing through a given point $x_1 y_1 z_1$, and meeting a given line (1) at right angles.

Let the equations to the lines be,

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x &= \alpha z + a \\ y &= \beta z + b \end{aligned}\right\} (1) \qquad \left.\begin{aligned} x - x_1 &= \alpha'(z - z_1) \\ y - y_1 &= \beta'(z - z_1) \end{aligned}\right\} (2)$$

hence the two equations of condition are,

$$\alpha\alpha' + \beta\beta' + 1 = 0 \quad (3)$$

$$(a' - a)(\beta - \beta') - (b' - b)(\alpha - \alpha') = 0$$

or since $a' = x_1 - \alpha' z_1$, and $b' = y_1 - \beta' z_1$

$(x_1 - \alpha' z_1 - a)(\beta - \beta') - (y_1 - \beta' z_1 - b)\,(\alpha$ [illegible] $'4).$

The elimination of α' and β' from (3) and (4) give the equations

$$\beta' = \frac{\{(x_1 - a)\,\alpha + z_1\}\,\beta - (y_1 - b)\,(1 + \alpha^2)}{(y_1 - b)\,\beta + (x_1 - a)\,\alpha - (\alpha^2 + \beta^2)\,z_1}$$

$$\alpha' = \frac{\{(y_1 - b)\,\beta + z_1\}\,\alpha - (x_1 - a)\,(1 + \beta^2)}{(y_1 - b)\,\beta + (x_1 - a)\,\alpha - (\alpha^2 + \beta^2)\,z_1}.$$

These values of α' and β' substituted in (2) give the final equation to the straight line, passing through a given point, and meeting a given straight line at right angles.

In particular cases other methods may be adopted, for example, to find the equations to a straight line passing through the axis of y at right angles to that axis:
here $x_1 = 0$, and $z_1 = 0$, therefore the equations to the line are

$$x = \alpha z$$
$$y - y_1 = \beta z$$

but because the line is perpendicular to the axis of y we have $\beta = 0$, hence the required equations are $x = \alpha z$, $y = y_1$. By assuming the axes of co-ordinates to be conveniently situated, this and many other problems may be worked in a shorter manner. This will be shown hereafter.

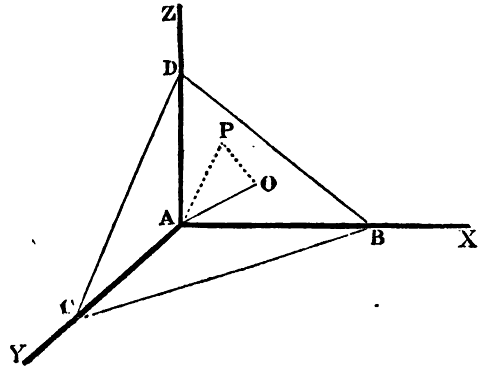
CHAPTER III.

THE PLANE.

408. A **Plane** may be supposed to be generated by the motion of a straight line about another straight line perpendicular to it.

Let A be the origin, A X, A Y, A Z the axes, B C D a portion of a plane, A O the perpendicular from the origin upon this plane, P any point in this plane; then, according to the above definition, we suppose the plane to be formed by the revolution of a line like O P round A O, the angle A O P being a right angle.

To find the equation to the plane.
Let x, y, z, be the co-ordinates of P, and x_1, y_1, z_1, those of O, and let the fixed distance AO $= d$.



Then the square on A P = the square on A O + the square on O P;
or, $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = d^2 + (x - x_1)^2 + (y - y_1)^2 + (z - z_1)^2$

$$= d^2 + x^2 + y^2 + z^2 + x_1^2 + y_1^2 + z^2 - 2xx_1 - 2yy_1 - 2zz_1.$$

$$\therefore 2(xx_1 + yy_1 + zz_1) = d^2 + d^2 = 2d^2$$

$$\text{or } xx_1 + yy_1 + zz_1 = d^2.$$

409. Let $\frac{x_1}{d^2} = m$, $\frac{y_1}{d^2} = n$, and $\frac{z_1}{d^2} = p$, then the above equation becomes

$$mx + ny + pz = 1.$$

And it is under this form that we shall generally consider the equation to the plane.

Let $\frac{d^2}{x_1} = a$, $\frac{d^2}{y_1} = b$, and $\frac{d^2}{z_1} = c$, then the equation to the plane is

$$\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b} + \frac{z}{c} = 1.$$

And this is perhaps the most intelligible form in which the equation to the plane can be put, the constants a, b and c being equal to A B, A C and A D the respective distances of the origin from the intersection of the plane with the co-ordinate axes; this is found by putting y and z both $= 0$, hence $\frac{x}{a} = 1$, or A B $= a$, and similarly for the other lines.

410. Let the word "plane" be represented by the letter P, and let the angles which A O or d makes with the co-ordinate axes be represented by $d\,x$; $d\,y$; $d\,z$; and let the angles which the plane makes with the same axes be denoted by Px; Py; Pz; then, since A O B is a right angle, and A B O is the angle which the plane makes with A X, we have

$$d = a \cos. dx = a \sin. Px$$
$$d = b \cos. dy = b \sin. Py$$
$$d = c \cos. dz = c \sin. Pz;$$

therefore the last equation to the plane may be put in either of the forms

$$x \cos. dx + y \cos. dy + z \cos. dz = d$$
$$\text{or } x \sin. Px + y \sin. Py + z \sin. Pz = d.$$

411. Let P, yz represent the angle which the plane makes with the co-ordinate plane yz, then since angle O A B. is equal to the angle of inclination of the plane to yz, we have $\cos. dx = \cos. P, yz$, hence the equation of the plane becomes

$$x \cos. P, yz + y \cos. P, xz + z \cos. P, xy = d.$$

412. Since by (386) $(\cos. dx)^2 + (\cos. dy)^2 + (\cos. dz)^2 = 1$
we have $(\cos. P, yz)^2 + (\cos. Pxz)^2 + (\cos. Pxy)^2 = 1$ *.

---

* If A be the area of a plane P, the projections of this area on the co-ordinate planes are represented by A cos. P, xy; A cos. P, xz; A cos. P, yz; hence $(A \cos. P, xy)^2 + (A \cos. P, xz)^2 + (A \cos. P, yz)^2 = A^2 \left\{(\cos. P, xy)^2 + (\cos. P, xz)^2 + (\cos. P, yz)^2\right\} = A^2$ by (412). This theorem, referring to the numerical values of the projected areas, is of use in finding the area of a plane between the three co-ordinate planes. Thus, if the equation to a plane be $\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b} + \frac{z}{c} = 1$, we have by the last figure the area A B C $= \frac{ab}{2}$; area A D C $= \frac{bc}{2}$, and area A B D $= \frac{ac}{2}$; hence the area B C D $= \sqrt{\frac{1}{4}(a^2 b^2 + a^2 c^2 + b^2 c^2)}$ by the above theorem. The volume of the pyramid A C D B $= \frac{c}{3}\frac{ab}{2} = \frac{abc}{6}$

413. To find the angles which a plane makes with the co-ordinate planes in terms of the co-efficients of the equation to the plane.

Let the equation to the plane be

$$mx + ny + pz = 1.$$

Now the equation to a plane expressed in terms of the angles which it makes with the co-ordinate planes is given by (411.)

$$x \cos. \mathrm{P}, yz + y \cos. \mathrm{P}, xz + z \cos. \mathrm{P}, xy = d,$$

hence equating co-efficients, we have

$$m = \frac{\cos. \mathrm{P}, yz}{d}, \; n = \frac{\cos. \mathrm{P}, xz}{d}, \; p = \frac{\cos. \mathrm{P}, xy}{d}$$

$$\therefore \; m^2 + n^2 + p^2 = \frac{1}{d^2} \text{ and } d = \frac{1}{\sqrt{m^2 + n^2 + p^2}};$$

$$\text{and } \cos. \mathrm{P}, yz = md = \frac{m}{\sqrt{m^2 + n^2 + p^2}}$$

$$\text{Cos. P}, xz = nd = \frac{n}{\sqrt{m^2 + n^2 + p^2}}$$

$$\text{Cos. P}, xy = pd = \frac{p}{\sqrt{m^2 + n^2 + p^2}}.$$

414. The equation to the plane will assume various forms according to the various positions of the plane.

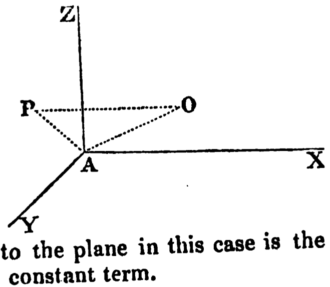
Let the plane pass through the origin, then $d = 0$; therefore, putting $d = 0$ in the equation, art. (408), we have the equation to the plane passing through the origin; but as the equation to the plane has been obtained on the supposition of d being finite, it becomes necessary to give an independent proof for this particular case.

Let A O (= d) be the length of a perpendicular from the plane to a given point O; whose co-ordinates are x_1, y_1, z_1; x, y, z, as before, the co-ordinates of any point P in the plane, then the square on O P = the square on A O + the square on A P;

or $(x - x_1)^2 + (y - y_1)^2 + (z - z_1) = d^2 + x^2 + y^2 + z^2$.

$$\therefore \; -2(x x_1 + y y_1 + z z_1) + d^2 = d^2,$$

$$\text{or } x x_1 + y y_1 + z z_1 = 0.$$



So that the equation to the plane in this case is the same as the original equation without the constant term.

415. Let the plane be parallel to any of the co-ordinate planes, as xy for example, then $a = \infty$ and $b = \infty$; therefore the equation $\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b} +$

$\frac{z}{c} = 1$ becomes $0\,x + 0\,y + \frac{z}{c} = 1$; $\therefore\ z = c,\ x = \frac{0}{0}$ and $y = \frac{0}{0}$; of these three equations the first signifies that every point in the plane is equidistant from the plane $x\,y$, and the other two signify that for this single value of z, every possible value of x and y will give points in the plane. The two latter equations are generally omitted; and we say that for a plane parallel to $x\,y$ the equation is $z = c$; similarly for the plane parallel to $x\,z$ it is $x = a$, and for a plane parallel to $y\,z$ the equation is $y = b$.

The equations to a co-ordinate plane, as $x\,y$ for example, are $z = 0$, $x = \frac{0}{0}$; $y = \frac{0}{0}$; or, more simply, $z = 0$.

416. The lines B C, B D, and D C, where the plane intersects the co-ordinate planes, are called the traces of the plane. The equations to these traces are found, from the equation to the plane, by giving to x, y, or z the particular values which they have when the plane intersects the co-ordinate planes.

Let the equation to the plane be $m\,x + n\,y + p\,z = 1$; then for the intersection B C we have the equations

$$z = 0,\ m\,x + n\,y = 1.$$

Similarly the equations to the traces B D and C D are respectively

$$y = 0,\ m\,x + p\,z = 1$$
$$x = 0,\ n\,y + p\,z = 1.$$

PROBLEMS ON THE PLANE.

417. To find the equation to a plane parallel to a given plane.

Let the given plane be $m\,x + n\,y + p\,z = 1$,
and the required plane be $m'\,x + n'\,y + p'\,z = 1$.
Then the planes being parallel, their traces on the co-ordinate planes must be parallel; now their traces on $x\,z$ are

$$m\,x + p\,z = 1,\ m'\,x + p'\,z = 1;$$

$$\therefore\ \frac{m}{p} = \frac{m'}{p'},\ \text{or}\ m' = \frac{m}{p}\,p';\ \text{similarly}\ n' = \frac{n}{p}\,p'.$$

Hence the required equation becomes

$$\frac{m}{p}\,p'\,x + \frac{n}{p}\,p'\,y + p'\,z = 1,$$

$$\text{or}\ m\,x + n\,y + p\,z = \frac{p}{p'}.$$

In this case the resulting equation contains one indeterminate constant p', and therefore shows that an infinite number of planes can be drawn parallel to a given plane, which is also geometrically evident. Three conditions are apparently given, since the three traces of one plane are parallel to the three traces of the other plane; but if the traces on two of the co-ordinate planes be parallel, the traces on the third co-ordinate plane are necessarily parallel; for if $\frac{m}{p} = \frac{m'}{p'}$, and $\frac{n}{p} = \frac{n'}{p'}$, we have $\frac{m}{n} =$

$\frac{m'}{n'}$, or $m x + n y = 1$ parallel to $m' x + n' y = 1$. Thus, in reality, only two conditions are given to determine the three constants.

418. To find the equation to a plane parallel to a given plane, and passing through a given point x_1, y_1, z_1.

Let $m' x + n' y + p' z = 1$ be the required plane, then since the plane passes through $x_1\ y_1\ z_1$ we have

$$m' x_1 + n' y_1 + p' z_1 = 1$$

$$\therefore\ m' (x - x_1) + n' (y - y_1) + p' (z - z_1) = 0.$$

$$\text{Also } \frac{m'}{p'} = \frac{m}{p}, \text{ and } \frac{n'}{p'} = \frac{n}{p};$$

$$\therefore\ \frac{m}{p} p' (x - x_1) + \frac{n}{p} p' (y - y_1) + p' (z - z_1) = 0;$$

$$\text{or } m (x - x_1) + n (y - y_1) + p (z - z_1) = 0.$$

419. To find the intersection of a straight line and plane.

Let $m x + n y + p z = 1$ be the equation to the plane,

$$\left.\begin{array}{l} x = \alpha z + a \\ y = \beta z + b \end{array}\right\} \text{the equations to the line;}$$

then, since the co-ordinates of the point of intersection are common, we have

$$m (\alpha z + a) + n (\beta z + b) + p z = 1,$$

$$\therefore\ z = \frac{1 - m a - n b}{m \alpha + n \beta + p},$$

$$\text{and } x = \alpha z + a = \frac{\alpha - n b \alpha + n \beta a + p a}{m \alpha + n \beta + p}$$

$$y = \beta z + b = \frac{\beta - m a \beta + m \alpha b + p b}{m \alpha + n \beta + p}.$$

Thus the required point of intersection is found.

420. To find the conditions that the straight line and plane be parallel or coincide.

If they are parallel, the values of x, y, and z must be infinite

$$\therefore\ m \alpha + n \beta + p = 0.$$

If they coincide, the values of x, y, and z must be indeterminate, or each $= \frac{0}{0}$.

$$\therefore\ m \alpha + n \beta + p = 0, \text{ and } 1 - m a - n b = 0;$$

and these are the two conditions for coincidence, the numerators of x and y being both given $= 0$ by combining the last two equations.

Hence, to find the equation to a plane coinciding with a given straight line, we have the two conditions

$$m a + n b = 1,$$
$$m \alpha + n \beta + p = 0;$$

whence, by elimination, we have

$$m = \frac{\beta + p b}{a \beta - b \alpha} \text{ and } n = - \frac{\alpha + p a}{a \beta - b \alpha};$$

therefore the equation to the plane is

$$(\beta + p\,b)\,x - (\alpha + p\,a)\,y + p\,(a\,\beta - b\,\alpha)\,z = a\,\beta - b\,\alpha,$$

where p remains indeterminate.

421. To find the equation to a plane coinciding with two given lines.

$$m\,x + n\,y + p\,z = 1.$$

$$\left.\begin{array}{l} x = \alpha\,z + a \\ y = \beta\,z + b \end{array}\right\} \qquad \left.\begin{array}{l} x = \alpha'\,z + a' \\ y = \beta'\,z + b' \end{array}\right\}$$

the plane coinciding with the given lines, we have

$$m\,a + n\,b = 1 \quad (1) \qquad m\,\alpha + n\,\beta + p = 0 \quad (3)$$

$$m\,a' + n\,b' = 1 \quad (2) \qquad m\,\alpha' + n\,\beta' + p = 0 \quad (4)$$

From (1) and (2) we have m and n, and these values being substituted in (3) and (4), give two values of p, hence we have the equation of condition

$$(\beta' - \beta)\,(a - a') + (\alpha' - \alpha)\,(b - b') = 0.$$

This equation is verified either if the lines are parallel (in which case $\alpha' = \alpha$ and $\beta' = \beta$), or if they meet; hence in either of these cases a plane may be drawn coinciding with the two lines; the equation to this plane is found, from the values of m, n, and p, to be

$$(b' - b)\,x - (a' - a)\,y + \{\,(a' - a)\,\beta - (b' - b)\,\alpha\,\}\,z = a\,b' - a'\,b.$$

422. If it be required to find the equation to a plane which coincides with one given straight line, and is parallel to another given straight line, we have the three equations

$$\left.\begin{array}{r} m\,a + n\,b = 1 \\ m\,\alpha + n\,\beta + p = 0 \end{array}\right\} \text{ for coincidence with one line,}$$

$$m\,\alpha' + n\,\beta' + p = 0 \text{ for parallelism with the other;}$$

and from these three equations we may determine m, n, and p, and then substitute these values in the general equation to the plane.

423. To find the intersection of two given planes.

Let the equations to the two planes be

$$m\,x + n\,y + p\,z = 1$$

$$m'\,x + n'\,y + p'\,z = 1.$$

By the elimination of z we obtain an equation between x and y, which belongs to the projection of the intersection of the planes on $x\,y$,

hence $(m\,p' - m'\,p)\,x + (n\,p' - n'\,p)\,y = p' - p$

is the projection on $x\,y$ of the required intersection.

Similarly

$$(m\,n' - m'\,n)\,x + (p\,n' - p'\,n)\,z = n' - n$$

is the equation to the projection on $x\,z$.

But the equations to the projections of a line on two co-ordinate planes are called the equations to the line itself; hence the above two equations are the required equations to the intersection.

The third projection is given by the other two, or it may be found separately

$$(n\,m' - n'\,m)\,y + (p\,m' - m\,p')\,z = m' - m.$$

424. To find the intersection of three planes.

Let the intersection of the first and second, found as in the last article, be expressed by the equations

$$x = \alpha z + a$$
$$y = \beta z + b,$$

and let the intersection of the first and third planes be denoted by the equations

$$x = \alpha' z + a'$$
$$y = \beta' z + b'.$$

Then, finding the intersection of these two lines from their four equations, we have the values of x, y, and z, corresponding to the point of intersection of the two lines, and therefore to the point of intersection of the three planes.

In this manner we may find the relation among the co-efficients of any number of planes meeting in one point.

425. To find the relation among the coefficients of the equations to four planes so that they may meet in the same straight line.

Let the equations be

$$m\,x + n\,y + p\,z = 1$$
$$m_1 x + n_1 y + p_1 z = 1$$
$$m_2 x + n_2 y + p_2 z = 1$$
$$m_3 x + n_3 y + p_3 z = 1.$$

Then the first and second plane intersect in a line whose equations are

$$x = \alpha z + a$$
$$y = \beta z + b$$

The first and third intersect in the line

$$x = \alpha_1 z + a_1$$
$$y = \beta_1 z + b_1$$

And the first and fourth in the line

$$x = \alpha_2 z + a_2$$
$$y = \beta_2 z + b_2$$

Now, in order that these intersections all coincide, we must have

$$\alpha = \alpha_1 = \alpha_2\,;\ \beta = \beta_1 = \beta_2\,;\ a = a_1 = a_2\,;\ \text{and } b = b_1 = b_2.$$

And the values of α, β, a and b are given in terms of m, n, p, &c., by article (423), hence the relation among the co-efficients is found.

The same relation exists among the co-efficients of any number of planes meeting in one point.

426. To find the relation among the co-efficients of a straight line and plane, so that they may be perpendicular to one another.

Let $(x_1\, y_1\, z_1)$ be the point in which the plane and line meet, then the equation to the plane is

$$m\,(x - x_1) + n\,(y - y_1) + p\,(z - z_1) = 0 \ (1)$$

And the equations to the line are

$$\left.\begin{array}{l} x = \alpha z + a \\ y = \beta z + b \end{array}\right\} (2)$$

Also let the equations to a line perpendicular to (2) and passing through the point $(a_1\, y_1\, z_1)$ in (2) be

$$\left.\begin{array}{l} x - x_1 = \alpha'(z - z_1) \\ y - y_1 = \beta'(z - z_1) \end{array}\right\} \quad (3)$$

But since these two lines are perpendicular to one another, we have the cosine of the angle between them $= 0$,

$$\therefore\ \alpha\alpha' + \beta\beta' + 1 = 0 \quad (402)$$

Now, this equation combined with that to the last line (3), will give the relation among the co-ordinates of x, y, and z, so that the point to which they refer is always in a locus perpendicular to the first given line; hence substituting for α' and β', we have the equation to the plane which is the locus of all the lines perpendicular to (2), this equation is

$$\alpha\frac{x - x_1}{z - z_1} + \beta\frac{y - y_1}{z - z_1} + 1 = 0$$

$$\text{or } \alpha(x - x_1) + \beta(y - y_1) + z_{\,} - z_1 = 0 \quad (4)$$

and as this equation (4) must coincide with (2) we have, by equating the co-efficients,

$$\alpha = \frac{m}{p}, \text{ and } \beta = \frac{n}{p},$$

and these are the conditions required.

427. Hence, if the line be given, the equation to the plane perpendicular to it is

$$\alpha x + \beta y + z = \frac{1}{p}.$$

Or if the plane be given, the equations to the straight line perpendicular to it are

$$x = \frac{m}{p}z + a,$$

$$y = \frac{n}{p}z + b.$$

From the form of these equations to the plane and perpendicular straight line, it appears that the trace of the plane is perpendicular to the projection of the line upon the same co-ordinate plane.

428. If the plane pass through a given point $x_1\,y_1\,z_1$, and be perpendicular to a given straight line, ($x = \alpha z + a$, $y = \beta z + b$) its equation is

$$\alpha(x - x_1) + \beta(y - y_1) + z - z_1 = 0.$$

429. If the straight line pass through a given point, and be perpendicular to a given plane ($mx + ny + pz = 1$) its equations are

$$x - x_1 = \frac{m}{p}(z - z_1),$$

$$y - y_1 = \frac{n}{p}(z - z_1).$$

430. To find the length of a perpendicular from a given point on a given plane.

Let $x_1\,y_1\,z_1$ be the co-ordinates of the given point,

$mx + ny + pz = 1$ the equation to the given plane.

It was shown in Art. 413, that if d be the perpendicular distance of the origin from a plane, whose equation is

$$mx + ny + pz = 1$$

$$\text{we have } d = \frac{1}{\sqrt{m^2 + n^2 + p^2}}.$$

Now, the equation to the plane, parallel to the given plane, and passing through the given point, is

$$m(x - x_1) + n(y - y_1) + p(z - z_1) = 0 \ (418).$$

$$\text{or } \frac{mx + ny + pz}{mx_1 + ny_1 + pz_1} = 1.$$

Hence the distance d_1 of the origin from this plane is

$$d_1 = \frac{mx_1 + ny_1 + pz_1}{\sqrt{m^2 + n^2 + p^2}}.$$

But the distance of the given point from the given plane is evidently the distance between the two planes, that is, $= d_1 - d$

$$= \frac{mx_1 + ny_1 + pz_1 - 1}{\sqrt{m^2 + n^2 + p^2}}.$$

431. To find the distance of a point from a straight line.

Let the equations to the given line be $x = \alpha z + a$, $y = \beta z + b$, then the equation to the plane passing through the given point $x_1 y_1 z_1$, and perpendicular to the given line, is

$$\alpha(x - x_1) + \beta(y - y_1) + z - z_1 = 0.$$

Eliminating x, y, and z by means of the above equations to the straight line, we find

$$z = \frac{\alpha(x_1 - a) + \beta(y_1 - b) + z_1}{1 + \alpha^2 + \beta^2};$$

or, if this fraction $= \frac{\text{M}}{\text{N}}$, we have

$$z = \frac{\text{M}}{\text{N}}, \quad x = \alpha\frac{\text{M}}{\text{N}} + a, \quad y = \beta\frac{\text{M}}{\text{N}} + b.$$

These are the co-ordinates of the intersection of the given line, with the perpendicular plane passing through the given point; and the required perpendicular line (P) is the distance of the given point from this intersection.

Hence $\text{P}^2 = (x_1 - x)^2 + (y_1 - y)^2 + (z_1 - z)^2$

$$= \left(x_1 - a - \alpha\frac{\text{M}}{\text{N}}\right)^2 + \left(y_1 - b - \beta\frac{\text{M}}{\text{N}}\right)^2 + \left(z_1 - \frac{\text{M}}{\text{N}}\right)^2$$

which, after expansion and reduction, becomes

$$= (x_1 - a)^2 + (y_1 - b)^2 + z_1^2 - \frac{\text{M}^2}{\text{N}}.$$

432. If the given point be the origin, we have $x_1\ y_1\ z_1$, each equal $= 0$

$$\therefore \text{P}^2 = a^2 + b^2 - \frac{(\alpha a + \beta b)^2}{1 + \alpha^2 + \beta^2}.$$

433. To find the angle θ between two given planes.

Let the equations to the planes be

$$mx + ny + pz = 1 \quad (1)$$

$$m_1 x + n_1 y + p_1 z = 1 \quad (2).$$

Then, if from the origin we draw perpendiculars on each of these planes, the angle between these perpendiculars is equal to the angle between the planes: let the equations to the two lines be

$$\left.\begin{array}{l} x = \alpha z \\ y = \beta z \end{array}\right\} (3) \qquad \left.\begin{array}{l} x = \alpha' z \\ y = \beta' z \end{array}\right\} (4).$$

In order that (3) may be perpendicular to (1), we must have

$$\alpha = \frac{m}{p}, \beta = \frac{n}{p} \text{ (426), and similarly } \alpha' = \frac{m_1}{p_1}, \beta' = \frac{n_1}{p_1}.$$

Then the angle between the two lines is found from the expression

$$\cos.\theta = \frac{\alpha\alpha' + \beta\beta' + 1}{\sqrt{(1 + \alpha^2 + \beta^2)}\sqrt{(1 + \alpha'^2 + \beta'^2)}} \text{ (403).}$$

$$\therefore \cos.\theta = \frac{m m_1 + n n_1 + p p_1}{\sqrt{m^2 + n^2 + p^2}\ \sqrt{m_1^2 + n_1^2 + p_1^2}}.$$

434. This value of cos. θ may also be expressed in another form by means of Art. (413.)

$$\cos.\ \theta = \cos. \mathrm{P}, x \cos. \mathrm{P}', x + \cos. \mathrm{P}, y \cos. \mathrm{P}', y + \cos. \mathrm{P}, z \cos. \mathrm{P}', z.$$

$$\text{or } \cos.\theta = \cos. \mathrm{P}, yz \cos. \mathrm{P}', yz + \cos. \mathrm{P}, xz \cos. \mathrm{P}', xz + \cos. \mathrm{P}, xy \cos. \mathrm{P}', xy.$$

435. If the planes be perpendicular to each other, we have cos. $\theta = 0$:

$$\therefore m m_1 + n n_1 + p p_1 = 0.$$

Hence, if the equation to any plane be $mx + ny + pz = 1$, the equation to the plane perpendicular to it is

$$m_1 x + n_1 y - \frac{m m_1 + n n_1}{p} z = 1,$$

where two constants remain indeterminate.

436. If the planes be parallel, we have cos. $\theta = 1$; and putting therefore the expression for cos. θ equal to unity, we shall arrive at the results,

$$\frac{m}{n} = \frac{m_1}{n_1} \text{ and } \frac{m}{p} = \frac{m_1}{p_1};$$

the same as already obtained when two planes are parallel.

437. To find the angle between a straight line and a plane.

This angle is the angle which the line makes with its projection on the plane; and therefore, drawing a perpendicular from any point in the line to the plane, is the complement of the angle which this perpendicular makes with the given line.

Let the equations to the plane and the line be

$$mx + ny + pz = 1$$
$$x = \alpha z + a, y = \beta z + b,$$

then the equations to the perpendicular from any point $x_1\, y_1\, z_1$ in the line to the plane are $x = \frac{m}{p}(z - z_1), y = \frac{n}{p}(z - z_1)$. (429)

$$\therefore \cos.(\pi - \theta) = \sin.\theta = \frac{\alpha\frac{m}{p} + \beta\frac{n}{p} + 1}{\sqrt{1 + \alpha^2 + \beta^2}\ \sqrt{1 + \frac{m^2}{p^2} + \frac{n^2}{p^2}}}$$

$$= \frac{m\alpha + n\beta + p}{\sqrt{1 + \alpha^2 + \beta^2}\ \sqrt{m^2 + n^2 + p^2}}.$$

CHAPTER IV.

THE POINT, STRAIGHT LINE, AND PLANE REFERRED TO OBLIQUE AXES.

438. If the co-ordinate axes are not rectangular but inclined to each other at any given angles, they are then called oblique axes. The equations to the point, Art. (381.) remain exactly the same as before, but the quantities a, b, and c, are no longer the representatives of lines drawn perpendicular to the co-ordinate planes, but of lines respectively parallel to the oblique axes.

439. To find the distance of a point from the origin referred to oblique axes.

Let A X, A Y, A Z, be the oblique axes; and let x, y, z, be the co-ordinates of P, draw P N perpendicular on A Q produced,

then the sq. on AP = the sqs. on AQ and PQ + twice the rectangle AQ, QN.

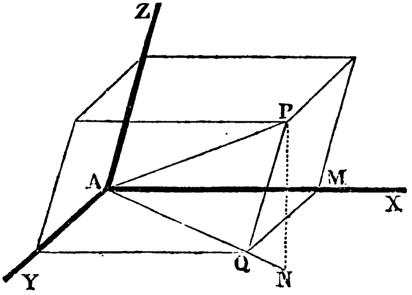
$$\text{Now, } QN = PQ \cos. PQN = z \cos. ZAQ$$

$$\text{and } AQ \cos. ZAQ = AM \cos. MAZ + MQ \cos. YAZ \ (379)$$

$$= x \cos. XAZ + y \cos. YAZ$$

$$\therefore \text{ the rectangle } AQ, QN = z\,(x \cos. XZ + y \cos. YZ)$$

$$\text{also the square on } AQ = x^2 + y^2 + 2\,xy \cos. YX,$$



$$\therefore\ d^2 = x^2 + y^2 + z^2 + 2\,xy \cos. XY + 2\,xz \cos. XZ + 2\,yz \cos. YZ.$$

440. To find the distance between two points when the axes are oblique

Let $x\ y\ z$ be the co-ordinates of one point,

and $x_1\ y_1\ z_1$ . . the other point,

then the distance between these points is the diagonal of a parallelopiped, of which the sides are the differences of parallel co-ordinates (388); hence,

$$d^2 = (x - x_1)^2 + (y - y_1)^2 + (z - z_1)^2 + 2\,(x - x_1)\,(y - y_1) \cos. XY + 2\,(x - x_1)\,(z - z_1) \cos. XZ + 2\,(y - y_1)\,(z - z_1) \cos. YZ.$$

441. To find the equation to a straight line referred to oblique co-ordinates. The straight line must be considered to be the intersection of two planes formed by drawing straight lines through the several points of the given straight line parallel respectively to the planes of $x\,z$, $y\,z$; the traces of these planes on the co-ordinate planes are of the same *form* as for rect-

angular axes; that is, the equation to the traces, and therefore to the line itself are of the *form*

$$x = \alpha z + a$$
$$y = \beta z + b$$

but the values of α and β are not the tangents of any angles, but the ratio of the sines of the angles which each trace makes with the axes in its plane (51).

The quantities a and b remain the same as when the straight line is referred to rectangular co-ordinates, and since the equations are of the same form as before, those problems which do not affect the inclination of lines will remain the same as before.

442. To find the angle between two straight lines referred to oblique co-ordinates we shall follow the plan adopted in Art. 402.

Let the equations to the parallel lines through the origin be

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x &= \alpha z \\ y &= \beta z \end{aligned}\right\} (1) \qquad \left.\begin{aligned} x &= \alpha' z \\ y &= \beta' z \end{aligned}\right\} (2)$$

And let r be the distance of a point $x\,y\,z$ in (1) from the origin, and r_1 the distance of a point $x_1\,y_1\,z_1$ in (2) from the origin.

Then if d be the distance between these points, we have

$$d^2 = r^2 + r_1^2 - 2\,r\,r'\cos.\theta$$
$$= (x - x_1)^2 + (y - y_1)^2 + (z - z_1)^2 + 2.(x - x_1)(y - y_1)\cos.\,XY$$
$$+ 2(x - x_1)(z - z_1)\cos.\,XZ + 2(y - y_1)(z - z_1)\cos.\,YZ,$$
$$= r^2 + r_1^2 - 2(x\,x_1 + y\,y_1 + z\,z_1)$$
$$- 2\{(x_1 y + x y_1)\cos.\,XY + (x_1 z + x z_1)\cos.\,XZ + (y_1 z + y z_1)\cos.\,YZ\}$$
$$\therefore r\,r_1\cos.\,\theta = x\,x_1 + y\,y_1 + z\,z_1$$
$$+\{(x_1 y + x y_1)\cos.\,XY + (x_1 z + x z_1)\cos.\,XZ + (y_1 z + y z_1)\cos.\,YZ\}$$
$$\therefore \cos.\,\theta = \frac{x\,x_1 + y\,y_1 + z\,z_1}{r\,r_1}\,.$$
$$\frac{\alpha\,\alpha^1 + \beta\,\beta^1 + 1 + (\alpha^1\beta + \alpha\,\beta^1)\cos.\,XY + (\alpha^1 + \alpha)\cos.\,XZ + (\beta^1 + \beta)\cos.\,YZ}{\sqrt{\{1 + \alpha^2 + \beta^2 + 2\alpha\,\beta\cos.\,XY + 2\,\alpha\cos.\,XZ + 2\beta\cos.\,YZ\}}\sqrt{\{1 + \alpha'^2 + \beta'^2\&c.\}}}$$

443. To find the equation to a plane referred to oblique axes.

We consider a plane as the locus of all the straight lines which can be drawn perpendicular to a given straight line, and passing through a given point in that given straight line.

Let the equations to the given line be

$$x = \alpha z + a$$
$$y = \beta z + b$$

Also the equations to the straight line passing through a point x_1, y_1, z_1, in the above line, are

$$x - x_1 = \alpha'(z - z_1)$$
$$y - y_1 = \beta'(z - z_1)$$

But these two last lines being perpendicular to each other, we have the angle θ between them $= 90°$, or $\cos.\,\theta = 0$; hence by the last article:

$$\alpha\,\alpha' + \beta\,\beta' + 1 + (\alpha'\beta + \alpha\,\beta')\cos.XY + (\alpha' + \alpha)\cos.XZ + (\beta' + \beta)\cos.YZ = 0$$

and eliminating α' and β'

$$\alpha\frac{x-x_1}{z-z_1}+\beta\frac{y-y_1}{z-z_1}+1+\left(\frac{x-x_1}{z-z_1}\beta+\frac{y-y_1}{z-z_1}\alpha\right)\cos. X Y$$

$$+\left(\frac{x-x_1}{z-z_1}+\alpha\right)\cos. X Z+\left(\frac{y-y_1}{z-z_1}+\beta\right)\cos. Y Z = 0$$

or, $(\alpha + \beta \cos. X Y + \cos. X Z)(x - x_1) + (\beta + \alpha \cos. X Y + \cos. Y Z)(y - y_1) + (1 + \alpha \cos. X Z + \beta \cos. Y Z)(z - z_1) = 0$

and this equation, which is the locus of all the straight lines meeting the given straight line at a given point and at right angles, is called the equation to the plane.

444. To find the conditions that a straight line be perpendicular to a given plane;

The method is the same as that in article 426.

The equation to a plane passing through a point $x_1\, y_1\, z_1$ in the given line is

$$m(x-x_1)+n(y-y_1)+p(z-z_1)=0.$$

But the equations to the given line being

$$x=\alpha z+a,\ y=\beta z+b$$

the equation to the plane perpendicular to it is given at the end of the last article; hence, equating co-efficients we have

$$m=\alpha+\beta\cos. X Y+\cos. X Z,$$
$$n=\beta+\alpha\cos. X Y+\cos. Y Z,$$
$$p=1+\alpha\cos. X Z+\beta\cos. Y Z.$$

From these equations we have the values of m, n, p; or the values of α and β in terms of m, n, p.

445. To find the angle between a plane and straight line.

Let the given equations be

$$mx+ny+pz=1 \quad (1)$$
$$\left.\begin{array}{l} x=\alpha z+a \\ y=\beta z+b \end{array}\right\} (2)$$

And let the equations to a straight line perpendicular to the given plane be

$$\left.\begin{array}{l} x=\alpha' z+a^{1} \\ y=\beta' z+b^{1} \end{array}\right\} (3)$$

where α' and β' have the values of α and β in the last article.

Also the angle between the lines (2) and (3) is given in article (442.), and the angle between the plane and the line (1) being the complement of the angle between the two lines (2) and (3) may be obtained.

446. To find the angle between two planes.

The equations to the lines perpendicular to the given planes, and passing through the origin are given by Article (444.); and the angle between these lines, which is the angle between the given planes, is given by Article (442.).

CHAPTER V.

THE TRANSFORMATION OF CO-ORDINATES.

447. To transform an equation referred to an origin A to an equation referred to another origin A′, the axes in the latter case being parallel to those in the former.

The co-ordinates of the new origin being a, b, and c, it is evident that if a point be referred to this new origin and to the new axes, that each original ordinate is equivalent to the new ordinate together with the corresponding ordinate to the new origin; hence if x, y, z be the original co-ordinate of a point P, and X, Y, Z the new co-ordinates, we have

$$\begin{aligned} x &= a + X, \\ y &= b + Y, \\ z &= c + Z; \end{aligned}$$

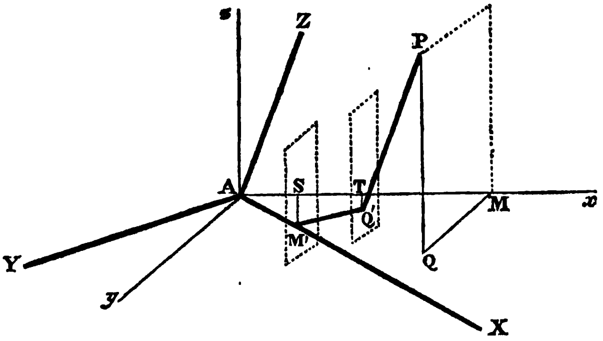
Substituting these values for x, y and z in the equation to the surface, we have the transformed equation between X, Y, and Z referred to the origin A′.

448. To transform the equation referred to rectangular axes to an equation referred to oblique axes having the same origin.

Let A x, A y, A z be the original axes,

A X, A Y, A Z the new axes,

$$\left.\begin{aligned} AM &= x \\ MQ &= y \\ QP &= z \end{aligned}\right\} \quad \left.\begin{aligned} AM' &= X \\ M'Q' &= Y \\ Q'P &= Z \end{aligned}\right\}$$



Through the points M′, Q′, P draw planes parallel to $y\,z$, or, which is the same thing, perpendicular to A x and meeting A x in S, T and M (these planes are represented by the dotted lines in the figure). Then A S, S T and T M are the respective projections of A M′, M′ Q′ and Q′ P on A x, also

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{AM} &= \mathrm{AS} + \mathrm{ST} + \mathrm{TM}, \\ &= \mathrm{AM}' \cos. \mathrm{X A} x + \mathrm{M}'\mathrm{Q}' \cos. \mathrm{Y A} x + \mathrm{Q}'\mathrm{P} \cos. \mathrm{Z A} x \quad (378) \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore \left.\begin{aligned} x &= \mathrm{X} \cos. \mathrm{X} x + \mathrm{Y} \cos. \mathrm{Y} x + \mathrm{Z} \cos. \mathrm{Z} x \\ y &= \mathrm{X} \cos. \mathrm{X} y + \mathrm{Y} \cos. \mathrm{Y} y + \mathrm{Z} \cos. \mathrm{Z} y \\ z &= \mathrm{X} \cos. \mathrm{X} z + \mathrm{Y} \cos. \mathrm{Y} z + \mathrm{Z} \cos. \mathrm{Z} z \end{aligned}\right\}$$

$$\text{Or,} \quad \left.\begin{aligned} x &= m\mathrm{X} + m_1 \mathrm{Y} + m_2 \mathrm{Z} \\ y &= n\mathrm{X} + n_1 \mathrm{Y} + n_2 \mathrm{Z} \\ z &= p\mathrm{X} + p_1 \mathrm{Y} + p_2 \mathrm{Z} \end{aligned}\right\} \quad 1.$$

where m is put for cos. X x, &c.

We have also, by art. 397, the following equation between the angles which one straight line, as A X, makes with the axes of x, y, z.

$$(\cos. \mathrm{X} x)^2 + (\cos. \mathrm{X} y)^2 + (\cos. \mathrm{X} z)^2 = 1,$$

Hence the following system,

$$\left.\begin{aligned} m^2 + n^2 + p^2 &= 1 \\ m_1^2 + n_1^2 + p_1^2 &= 1 \\ m_2^2 + n_2^2 + p_2^2 &= 1 \end{aligned}\right\} \quad 2.$$

449. If the new system be rectangular, we have also the equations in art. (405), which signify that the new axes are perpendicular to each other; hence the system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} m m_1 + n n_1 + p p_1 &= 0 \\ m m_2 + n n_2 + p p_2 &= 0 \\ m_1 m_2 + n_1 n_2 + p_1 p_2 &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \quad 3.$$

Hence we observe that of the nine cosines involved in the system (1) three are determined by the system (2), and other three by the system (3); and therefore that there are only three arbitrary angles remaining.

450. In the place of these three systems the following three may also be used:

$$\left.\begin{aligned} \mathrm{X} &= m x + n y + p z \\ \mathrm{Y} &= m_1 x + n_1 y + p_1 z \\ \mathrm{Z} &= m_2 x + n_2 y + p_2 z \end{aligned}\right\} \quad 4.$$

$$\left.\begin{aligned} m^2 + m_1^2 + m_2^2 &= 1 \\ n^2 + n_1^2 + n_2^2 &= 1 \\ p^2 + p_1^2 + p_2^2 &= 1 \end{aligned}\right\} \quad 5. \qquad \left.\begin{aligned} m n + m p + n p &= 0 \\ m_1 n_1 + m_1 p_1 + n_1 p_1 &= 0 \\ m_2 n_2 + m_2 p_2 + n_2 p_2 &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \quad 6.$$

For, multiplying the values of x, y and z in (1) by m, n and p respectively; then adding the results together, and reducing by means of (2) and (3), we have $\mathrm{X} = m x + n y + p z$; and repeating this operation with the other multipliers $m_1\, n_1\, p_1$ and $m_2\, n_2\, p_2$, we have the system (4). Also, since the distance of P from the origin is the same for both systems, we have $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = \mathrm{X}^2 + \mathrm{Y}^2 + \mathrm{Z}^2$; putting here, for X, Y and Z, their values in (4), and then equating co-efficients on both sides, we have the two systems (5) and (6).

Whenever we see the systems (2) and (3), we may replace them by (5) and (6); this may be proved independently of any transformation of co-ordinates, by assuming the quantities $m\, n\, p$, &c. to be connected as in (1).

451. The transformation from oblique axes to others oblique, is effected by drawing a perpendicular from M in the last figure upon the

plane of $y\,z$, and by projecting x, X, Y, and Z on this perpendicular, we shall have

$$x \sin. x, y z = \mathrm{X} \sin. \mathrm{X}, y z + \mathrm{Y} \sin. \mathrm{Y}, y z + \mathrm{Z} \sin. \mathrm{Z}, y z;$$

and similarly for the other two, x and y,

$$y \sin. y, x z = \mathrm{X} \sin. \mathrm{X}, x z + \mathrm{Y} \sin. \mathrm{Y}, x z + \mathrm{Z} \sin. \mathrm{Z}, x z,$$

$$z \sin. z, x y = \mathrm{X} \sin. \mathrm{X}, x y + \mathrm{Y} \sin. \mathrm{Y}, x y + \mathrm{Z} \sin. \mathrm{Z}, x y.$$

452. Another useful method of transformation from rectangular axes to others also rectangular, is the following:

Let the equations to the axes of X, Y and Z be respectively

$$\left.\begin{array}{l} x = \alpha z \\ y = \beta z \end{array}\right\} \quad \left.\begin{array}{l} x = \alpha_1 z \\ y = \beta_1 z \end{array}\right\} \quad \left.\begin{array}{l} x = \alpha_2 z \\ y = \beta_2 z \end{array}\right\}$$

and let

$$m = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + \alpha^2 + \beta^2}}, \quad m_1 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + \alpha_1^2 + \beta_1^2}}, \quad m_2 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + \alpha_2^2 + \beta_2^2}}$$

then by art. (402.) we have

$$\cos. \mathrm{X} x = m \alpha, \quad \cos. \mathrm{X} y = m \beta,' \cos. \mathrm{X} z = m; \text{ \&c.}$$

Hence by substitution, the first formulas for transformation in art. (448.) become

$$x = m \alpha \mathrm{X} + m_1 \alpha_1 \mathrm{Y} + m_2 \alpha_2 \mathrm{Z}$$

$$y = m \beta \mathrm{X} + m_1 \beta_1 \mathrm{Y} + m_2 \beta_2 \mathrm{Z}$$

$$z = m \mathrm{X} + m_1 \mathrm{Y} + m_2 \mathrm{Z}.$$

And the nine angles in (1) are replaced by the six unknown terms $\alpha, \alpha_1, \alpha_2, \beta, \beta_1, \beta_2$.

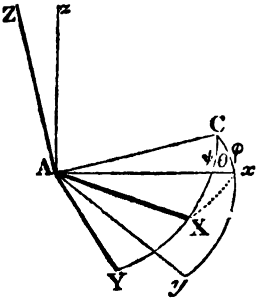
Instead of these systems, we may obtain a system involving only five arbitrary constants by supposing the solid trihedral angle formed by the original co-ordinate planes to turn about the origin into a new position: such a system has been ably discussed by M. Gergonne in the "Annales de Maths.," tome vii. p. 56.

453. It appears throughout these articles that only three arbitrary quantities are absolutely necessary; and therefore it might be supposed that formulas for transformation would be obtained involving only three angles: such formulas have been discovered by Euler, and as they are generally useful in various branches of analysis, we proceed to their investigation.

Let A C be the intersection of the original plane of $x\,y$ with the new plane of X Y, and suppose the plane C X Y A to lie above the plane C $x\,y$ A, which last we may assume to be the plane of the paper.

Let a sphere be described with centre A and radius unity, cutting the axes in the points indicated by their respective letters.

Let $C\,x = \phi$, $C\,X = \psi$, and let the angle $X\,C\,x$ between the planes $x\,y$ and $X\,Y$ be called θ.



Then the object is to substitute in formula (1) art. (448.) the values of the cosines in terms of the new variables ϕ, ψ, and θ.

This is effected by means of the elementary theorem in spherical trigonometry for finding one side of a triangle in terms of the other two and the included angle. In the triangles $C\,X\,x$ and $C\,Y\,x$, we have

$$\cos.\,X\,x = \cos.\,\theta\,\sin\,\psi\,\sin.\,\phi + \cos.\,\psi\,\cos.\,\phi$$

$$\cos.\,Y\,x = \cos.\,\theta\,\sin.\,(90^\circ + \psi)\,\sin.\,\phi + \cos.\,(90^\circ + \psi)\,\cos.\,\phi$$

$$= \cos.\,\theta\,\cos.\,\psi\,\sin.\,\phi - \sin.\,\psi\,\cos.\,\phi\,.$$

Similarly $\cos.\,X\,y$ and $\cos.\,Y\,y$ may be found.

Also, supposing $Z\,x$ and $Z\,C$ to be joined by arcs of the sphere, we have from the triangle $Z\,C\,x$

$$\cos.\,Z\,x = \cos.\,Z\,C\,x\,\sin.\,Z\,C\,\sin.\,C\,x + \cos.\,Z\,C\,\cos.\,C\,x$$

$$= \cos.\,(90^\circ + \theta)\,\sin.\,90^\circ\,\sin.\,\phi + \cos.\,90^\circ\,\cos\,\phi$$

$$= -\sin.\,\theta\,\sin.\,\phi.$$

Similarly $\cos.\,Z\,y$, $\cos.\,X\,z$, and $\cos.\,Y\,z$ may be determined.

And $\cos.\,Z\,z = \cos.\,\theta$; hence the system (1) becomes

$$x = X\,(\cos.\,\theta\,\sin.\,\psi\,\sin.\,\phi + \cos.\,\psi\,\cos.\,\phi)$$

$$+\,Y\,(\cos.\,\theta\,\cos.\,\psi\,\sin.\,\phi - \sin.\,\psi\,\cos.\,\phi)$$

$$-\,Z\,\sin.\,\theta\,\sin.\,\phi$$

$$y = X\,(\cos.\,\theta\,\sin.\,\psi\,\cos.\,\phi - \cos.\,\psi\,\sin.\,\phi)$$

$$+\,Y\,(\cos.\,\theta\,\cos.\,\psi\,\cos.\,\phi + \sin.\,\psi\,\sin.\,\phi)$$

$$-\,Z\,\sin.\,\theta\,\cos.\,\phi$$

$$z = X\,\sin.\,\theta\,\sin.\,\psi + Y\,\sin.\,\theta\,\cos.\,\psi + Z\,\cos.\,\theta.$$

These are the formulas investigated, but in a different manner, by Laplace, "Méc. Cél." i. p. 58. They will be found in most works on this subject, but often with some slight alteration in the algebraic signs of the terms, arising from the various positions of A C.

THE INTERSECTION OF A SURFACE BY A PLANE.

454. The last system may be advantageously employed in finding the nature of the intersection of curve surfaces made by planes. If we propose to cut a surface, as a cone for example, by a plane, we should eliminate z from the equations to the surface and plane; but this gives us the equation to the projection of their intersection on $x\,y$, not the equation to the intersection itself; and as the projection will not always suffice to determine the nature of a curve, it is requisite to find the equation to that curve traced on the cutting plane.

This may be done by a transformation of co-ordinates.

Let the cutting plane be that of X Y, and the trace A C the axis of X; the surface will then be referred to new axes X, Y, Z, of which X and Y are in the cutting plane. By putting $Z = 0$ in the equation thus transformed, we shall have the intersection of the surface with the plane X Y, which is the intersection required.

Now, as the present object is only to obtain the curve of intersection, we may at first put $Z = 0$, and then transform the equation.

Let therefore $Z = 0$, and the angle C A X or $\psi = 0$, then the last formulas become

$$\begin{aligned} x &= \mathrm{X}\cos.\phi + \mathrm{Y}\sin.\phi\cos.\theta \\ y &= -\mathrm{X}\sin.\phi + \mathrm{Y}\cos.\phi\cos.\theta \\ z &= \mathrm{Y}\sin.\theta. \end{aligned}$$

These formulas may be separately investigated, with great ease, without deduction from the general case.—See "Francœur," vol. ii. art. 369, or "Puissant, Géométrie," art. 134.

455. In applying these formulas to a particular case, a little consideration will greatly alleviate the labour of transformation: thus, in many cases, we may suppose the cutting plane to be perpendicular to $x\,z$, without at all diminishing the generality of the result, but only adding much to its simplicity; for in this case the trace A C either coincides with A y or y A produced, and therefore $\phi = 90°$; hence the last formulas become

$$\begin{aligned} x &= +\,\mathrm{Y}\cos.\theta \\ y &= -\,\mathrm{X} \\ z &= \,\mathrm{Y}\sin.\theta. \end{aligned}$$

These formulas may be readily investigated by drawing a figure like the last, but letting A C, A X and y A produced coincide, $\phi = 90°$ and $\mathrm{C\,Y} = 90°$, and then taking the original formulas (1) in art. 448.

456. If in the above cases the origin is also changed, we must introduce the quantities a, b, c into the left side of the above equations.

CHAPTER VI.

THE SPHERE AND SURFACES OF REVOLUTION.

457. A CURVE surface as a sphere being given for discussion, we proceed as in plane geometry to find its equation from some known property of the surface; and generally we arrive at a relation between three unknown quantities x, y, and z, which relation is expressed by the symbol $f(x, y, z) = 0$, or $z = f(x, y)$. This equation is called the equation to the surface, and it corresponds to all points of the surface, and to it alone.

458. Conversely, an equation of the form $f(x, y, z) = 0$, where x, y, and z represent the co-ordinates of a point, refers to some surface. That it cannot belong to all the points in a solid may be thus shown.

Let there be two equations $f(x, y, z) = 0$, and $f'(x, y, z) = 0$; giving to x, y, and z the same values in both these equations, and then eliminating z, we have the equation to the intersection of the above loci projected on the plane of xy: this equation is of the form $\phi(x\ y) = 0$, and therefore it belongs to a *line*. Similarly the projections of the intersection on the other co-ordinate planes are *lines*; but if the projections of a locus on three different planes are lines, the locus itself must be a line, that is, it cannot be a surface. Hence the intersection of the two loci of $f(x, y, z) = 0$, and $f'(x, y, z) = 0$ being a line, each of these equations must belong to a surface.

459. Surfaces as well as lines are divided into orders, and for the same object, to avoid the confusion of ideas and to allow us to unite the important properties of generality and simplicity in our investigations as far as possible. Hence a plane which is the locus of a simple equation between three unknown quantities is called a surface of the first order; the locus of an equation of two dimensions between three unknown quantities is called a surface of the second order, and so on. The length, rather than the difficulty of the mathematical operations, renders this part of the subject tedious. Hence we shall omit many of the investigations which merely require manual labour, and rather dwell upon what we consider the important steps.

A much more serious difficulty arises from the state of the figures: we cannot give complete graphical illustrations of this part of geometry, and a mind unaccustomed to the conception of solid figures cannot always comprehend the meaning of the corresponding analytical results. We have endeavoured to obviate this difficulty as much as possible by descriptions of what the figures intend to represent, and to these descriptions we beg the particular attention of our readers, for we are convinced that this part of geometry is by no means difficult, if attention be paid to the form of the body; but without this care it is quite unintelligible.

We commence with the discussion of the Sphere.

THE SPHERE.

460. To find the equation to the surface of a sphere.

Let the surface be referred to rectangular axes, and let x, y, z be the co-ordinates of any point on the surface, and a, b, c the corresponding co-ordinates of the centre. Then since the surface is such that the distance of any point in it from the centre of the sphere is constant or equal to a line r, called the radius, we have by art. (388.)

$$(x-a)^2+(y-b)^2+(z-c)^2=r^2.$$

461. This equation will assume various forms corresponding to the position of the centre.

Let the centre be in the plane of xy $\therefore c=0$,

$$\therefore (x-a)^2+(y-b)^2+z^2=r^2.$$

Let the centre be on the axis of z $\therefore a=0$, and $b=0$,

$$\therefore x^2+y^2+(z-c)^2=r^2.$$

462. Let the centre be the origin $\therefore a=b=c=0$, and the equation is

$$x^2+y^2+z^2=r^2.$$

And this is the equation to the surface of the sphere most generally used.

463. The general equation upon expansion becomes

$$x^2+y^2+z^2-2ax-2by-2bz+a^2+b^2+c^2-r^2=0.$$

And hence the sphere corresponding to any equation of this form may be described as for the circle, art. 67.

464. The sections of a surface made by the co-ordinate planes are called the principal sections of the surface, and the boundaries of the principal sections are called the traces of the surface on the co-ordinate planes.

The equation to a trace is determined by putting the ordinate perpendicular to the plane of the trace $=0$ in the general equation. Thus, to find the curve in which the sphere cuts the plane of xy, put $z=0$, and then we have the equation to the points where the plane and sphere meet, which in this case is

$$(x-a)^2+(y-b)^2+c^2=r^2.$$

Hence the section on xy is a circle as long as x and y have real values. And, similarly, the other traces are circles.

The theorem that the intersection of any plane with a sphere is a circle, is best proved geometrically, as in Geometry, *b.* v. 19.

465. To find the equation to the tangent plane to a sphere.

Let $x_1\, y_1\, z_1$ be the co-ordinates of the point on the surface through which the tangent plane passes, and let the equation to the spherical surface be

$$(x-a)^2+(y-b)^2+(z-c)^2=r^2;$$

then the equation to the plane passing through the point $x_1\, y_1\, z_1$ is

$$m(x-x_1)+n(y-y_1)+p(z-z_1)=0.$$

Also, the equations to the radius passing through the points $(a\ b\ c)$ $(x_1\, y_1\, z_1)$ are

$$x - x_1 = \frac{x_1 - a}{z_1 - c}\,(z - z_1)\,,\; y - y_1 = \frac{y_1 - b}{z_1 - c}\,(x - x_1).$$

And since every line in the tangent plane, and therefore the plane itself, is perpendicular to the radius at the point of tangence, we have from the equations to the plane and line

$$\frac{m}{p} = \frac{x_1 - a}{z_1 - c}\,,\; \frac{n}{p} = \frac{y_1 - b}{z_1 - c} \quad (426.)$$

Hence the equation to the tangent plane becomes

$$\frac{x_1 - a}{z_1 - c}\,(x - x_1) + \frac{y_1 - b}{z_1 - c}\,(y - y_1) + z - z_1 = 0,$$

or, $(x_1 - a)\,(x - x_1) + (y_1 - b)\,(y - y_1) + (z_1 - c)\,(z - z_1) = 0$.

This equation may be modified by means of the condition

$$(x_1 - a)^2 + (y_1 - b)^2 + (z_1 - c)^2 = r^2,$$

or, $(x_1 - a)\,(x_1 - a) + (y_1 - b)\,(y_1 - b) + (z_1 - c)\,(z_1 - c) = r^2$.

Adding this equation, term by term, to the above one for the tangent plane, we have

$$(x_1 - a)\,(x - a) + (y_1 - b)\,(y - b) + (z_1 - c)\,(z - c) = r^2.$$

466. If the origin is in the centre of the sphere, the equation to the tangent plane is

$$x\,x' + y\,y' + z\,z' = r^2,$$

which equation is at once obtained from that to the sphere $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = r^2$, or, $x\,x + y\,y + z\,z = r^2$, by putting $x\,x'$, $y\,y'$, and $z\,z'$ for $x\,x$, $y\,y$, and $z\,z$ respectively.

The line in which the tangent plane cuts any co-ordinate plane is found by putting the ordinate perpendicular to that plane $= 0$; and the point in which the tangent plane cuts any axis is found by putting the two variables measured along the other axes each 0.

467. The equation to the spherical surface referred to oblique co-ordinates by (440.) is

$$(x - a)^2 + (y - b)^2 + (z - c)^2 + 2\,(x - a)\,(y - b)\cos. \mathrm{X\,Y} + 2\,(x - a)\,(z - c)\cos. \mathrm{X\,Z} + 2\,(y - b)\,(z - c)\cos. \mathrm{Y\,Z} = r^2.$$

ON COMMON SURFACES OF REVOLUTION.

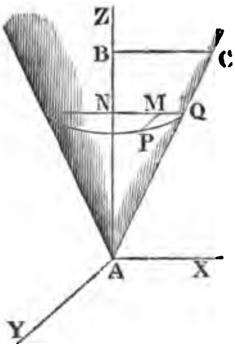
468. A right cone is formed by the revolution of the hypothenuse of a right-angled triangle about one of its sides.

Let A C be the side which revolves about A B as an axis, so that any section Q P perpendicular to the axis is a circle.

Let A X, A Y, A Z be the rectangular axes to which the cone is referred, having the origin at the vertex of the cone, and the axis of Z coincident with the axis of the cone.

$$\text{Let}\ \left.\begin{array}{l} \mathrm{A\,N} = z \\ \mathrm{N\,M} = x \\ \mathrm{M\,P} = y \end{array}\right\}\ \text{be the co-ordinates of any point on the surface.}$$

Then the squares on N M and M P = the square on N P



and N P = N Q = A N tan. C A B,

therefore the equation to the surface is

$$x^2 + y^2 = e^2 z^2,$$

where e = tangent of the semiangle of the cone.

469. Let the line A C be a curve, as a parabola, for example, in which case the surface is called the common paraboloid.

Let the equation to the generating parabola A Q C be N Q = $\sqrt{p z}$. Then the squares on N M, M P = the square on N P = the square on N Q,

$$\therefore x^2 + y^2 = p z.$$

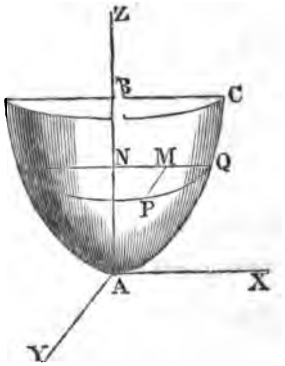
470. Let A C be an ellipse, centre and origin at B.

Let B N = z, N M = x, and M P = y, C B = b and B A = a.

Then the squares on N M and M P = the square on N Q; and N Q being an ordinate to the ellipse A Q C, whose semiaxes are a and b, we have

$$\text{N Q} = \frac{b}{a} \sqrt{a^2 - z^2},$$

and therefore the equation to the surface is



$$x^2 + y^2 = \frac{b^2}{a^2} (a^2 - z^2);$$

$$\text{or, } x^2 + y^2 + \frac{b^2}{a^2} z^2 = b^2.$$

Let a and b change places in the equation, we have then for the surface of revolution round the axis minor the equation

$$x^2 + y^2 + \frac{a^2}{b^2} z^2 = a^2.$$

The former surface is called the prolate spheroid, the latter the oblate spheroid.

471. The equation to the hyperboloid round the transverse axis is

$$x^2 + y^2 - \frac{b^2}{a^2} z^2 = - b^2.$$

And putting a for b and b for a, we have the surface by revolution round the conjugate axis.

472. In general the equation to all these surfaces may be comprehended under the form $x^2 + y^2 = f(z)$ if A Z be the axis of revolution; or, $z^2 + y^2 = f(x)$ if A X be the axis of revolution.

To find the curve of intersection of a plane and a surface of revolution.

473. Let the section be made by a plane perpendicular to $x\,z$, and as the nature of the curve is the same in whatever part of the cutting plane we place the origin, we shall let the origin be in the plane $x\,z$.

Then the formulas for transformation are

$$x = a + y \cos.\theta$$
$$y = - x$$
$$z = c + y \sin.\theta.$$

Hence by substitution in the equation to a surface, we shall have the required curve of intersection.

474. Let the surface be a paraboloid

$$x^2 + y^2 = p\,z$$

$$\therefore\ (a + y\cos.\theta)^2 + x^2 = p\,(c + y\sin.\theta)$$

or, $y^2 (\cos.\theta)^2 + x^2 + (2\,a\cos.\theta - p\sin.\theta)\,y = 0$, since $a^2 = p\,c$; hence the curve of intersection is a line of the second order.

It is an ellipse generally (76); a circle if $\theta = 0$; and a parabola similar to the generating one, if $\theta = 90°$.

475. Let the surface be the spheroid formed by the revolution of an ellipse round its axis major

$$x^2 + y^2 + \frac{b^2}{a^2} z^2 = b^2;$$

by substitution this equation becomes

$$y^2 \{ (\cos.\theta)^2 + \frac{b^2}{a^2} (\sin.\theta)^2 \} + x^2 + 2y \{ c\,\frac{b^2}{a^2} \sin.\theta - a_1 \cos.\theta \} = 0.$$

This is the equation to an ellipse generally, and to a circle when $\theta = 0$.

476. Let the surface be the hyperboloid, whose equation is

$$x^2 + y^2 - \frac{b^2}{a^2} z^2 = - b^2,$$

the sections will be found to depend on the value of $\tan.\theta$: if $\tan.\theta$ is less than $\frac{b}{a}$, the curve is an ellipse; if it is equal to $\frac{b}{a}$, the curve is a parabola; and if $\tan.\theta$ is greater than $\frac{b}{a}$, it is an hyperbola; and lastly, a circle if $\theta = 0$

CHAPTER VII.

SURFACES OF THE SECOND ORDER.

477. THE general equation to surfaces of the second order is

$$a x^2 + b y^2 + c z^2 + 2 d x y + 2 e x z + 2 f y z + 2 g x + 2 h y + 2 i z + k = 0$$

the number 2 being prefixed to some of the terms merely for convenience. In order to discuss this equation, that is, to examine the nature and position of the surfaces which it represents, we shall render it more simple by means of the transformation of co-ordinates.

Let the origin be transferred by putting

$$x = x' + m, \ y = y' + n, \ z = z' + p,$$

substituting these values in the general equation, and then putting the terms containing the first powers of the variables each $= 0$, we have the equation

$$a x'^2 + b y'^2 + c z'^2 + 2 d x' y' + 2 e x' z' + 2 f y' z' + k' = 0.$$

This equation remains the same if we change x', y', z', into $-x', -y', -z'$ respectively; thence we conclude that any straight line drawn through the origin, and intercepted by the surface, will be divided into two equal parts at the origin; this new origin therefore will be the centre of the surface, attributing to this expression the same signification as we did in treating of curves of the second order (81.)

478. The values of m, n, and p, are to be determined from the three equations

$$\begin{array}{ll} a m + d n + e p + g = 0, & \text{co-efficient of } x', \\ b n + d m + f p + h = 0, & \quad \ldots \quad y', \\ c p + e m + f n + i = 0, & \quad \ldots \quad z'. \end{array}$$

Eliminate p from the first and second of these equations, and also from the first and third, then from the two resulting equations eliminate n, and we shall arrive at an equation of the first order involving m, whence we have the value of m, and therefore of n and p.

The denominator of the values of m, n and p is

$$a b c + 2 d e f - a f^2 - b e^2 - c d^2$$

hence, if this quantity $= 0$, the values of m and p are infinite, or the surface has no centre when there is this relation among the co-efficients of the original equation. This circumstance corresponds to the case of the parabola in lines of the second order (81.)

479. To destroy the co-efficients of the terms involving $x' y'$, $x' z'$, and $y' z'$, we must have recourse to another transformation of co-ordinates.

Taking the formulas in (452) we have

$$x' = m\,\alpha\,x'' + m_1\,\alpha_1\,y'' + m_2\,\alpha_2\,z''$$
$$y' = m\,\beta\,x'' + m_1\,\beta_1\,y'' + m_2\,\beta_2\,z''$$
$$z' = m\,x'' \quad + m_1\,y'' \quad + m_2\,z''$$

Substituting in the general equation, and then putting the co-efficients of $x''\,y''$, $x''\,z''$, and $y''\,z''$, each $= 0$, we have the three equations

$$(a\alpha + d\beta + e)\,\alpha_1 + (d\alpha + b\beta + f)\,\beta_1 + e\alpha + f\beta + c = 0 \ldots\ldots x''\,y''$$
$$(a\alpha + d\beta + e)\,\alpha_2 + (d\alpha + b\beta + f)\,\beta_2 + e\alpha + f\beta + c = 0 \ldots\ldots x''\,z''$$
$$(a\alpha_2 + d\beta_2 + e)\,\alpha_1 + (d\alpha_2 + b\beta_2 + f)\,\beta_1 + e\alpha_2 + f\beta_2 + c = 0 \ldots y''\,z''$$

Our object is now to ascertain if this transformation can always be effected, that is, to determine the possibility of the values of the six unknown quantities in the last three equations.

480. The equations to the new axis of y'' are $x = \alpha_1\,z$, $y = \beta_1\,z$ (452.); hence, by substitution, the first of the above three equations becomes

$$(a\alpha + d\beta + e)\,x + (d\alpha + b\beta + f)\,y + (e\alpha + f\beta + c)\,z = 0,$$

which is the equation to a plane passing through the origin.

Now the co-ordinates of every point in this plane satisfy the condition that the co-efficient of $x''\,y'' = 0$, that is, give the necessary relation between α_1 and β_1; hence, if the new axis of y'' be drawn in this plane the condition is still satisfied. Thus, the direction of the axis of x'' being quite arbitrary, that of y'' is determined to be in the particular plane given above; and the term $x''\,y''$ is gone.

Again, by a similar elimination of α_2 and β_2 from the co-efficient of $x''\,z''$, and from the equations of z'' ($x = \alpha_2\,z$, $y = \beta_2\,z$), we have, from the similarity of the equations, the same plane as before; hence, if the axis of z'' be also drawn in this plane, the term $x''\,z''$ will disappear.

Also, α_2 and β_2 being thus obtained, the relation between α_1 and β_1 may be found from the co-efficient of $y''\,z'' = 0$.

Thus, fixing upon any position of the axis of x'', that is, giving any values to α and β, we have determined a plane passing through the origin, in which plane any two straight lines whatever drawn from the origin may be the axes of y'' and z'', and one of them as z'' being so drawn, α_2 and β_2 are given, and then the relation between α_1 and β_1 is determined from the co-efficient of $x''\,y'' = 0$.

But since the relation between these quantities α_1 and β_1, and not the quantities themselves, is given by the last equation, it appears that there are an infinite number of systems to which, if the axes be transferred, the products of the variables may be destroyed.

481. Let the new axes be rectangular.

In this case the axis of x'' must be perpendicular to the plane of $y''\,x''$, or the line whose equations are $x = \alpha\,z$, $y = \beta\,z$ is perpendicular to the plane

$$(a\alpha + d\beta + e)\,x + (d\alpha + b\beta + f)\,y + (e\alpha + f\beta + c)\,z = 0$$
$$\therefore\ a\alpha + d\beta + e = (e\alpha + f\beta + c)\,\alpha \ (426)$$
$$d\alpha + b\beta + f = (e\alpha + f\beta + c)\,\beta$$

Substituting in the first of these equations the value of α obtained from second, we have the following equation for β;

$$
\begin{aligned}
&\{ (a-b) fe + (f^2 - e^2) d \} \beta^3 \\
&+ \{ (a-b)(c-b) e + (2d^2 - f^2 - e^2) e + (2c - a - b) fd \} \beta^2 \\
&+ \{ (c-a)(c-b) d + (2c^2 - f^2 - d^2) d + (2b - a - c) fe \} \beta \\
&+ \{ (a-c) fd + (f^2 - d^2) e \} = 0.
\end{aligned}
$$

This equation of the third degree has at least one real value for β, and hence a real value of α; thus the position of the axis of x'' is found, and also the position of the perpendicular plane in which y'' and z'' are situated.

Again, we might find a plane $x'' z''$ perpendicular to y'', and such that the terms in $x'' y''$, $y'' z''$ should disappear, and the necessary conditions will, as appears from the similarity of the equations, lead to the same equation of the third degree in β_1, and the same is true for the axis of z''.

Hence the three roots of the above equation of the third degree are the three real values of β, β_1 and β_2.

These three quantities give the three corresponding values of α, α_1 and α_2, and since there are only one value of each quantity, it appears that there is only one system of rectangular axes to which the curve surface can be referred so as not to contain the products of the variables. For further information on this subject, see "Annales Math." ii. p. 144.

482. By the last transformation, the equation when the locus has a centre is reduced to the form

$$a_1 x''^2 + b_1 y''^2 + c_1 z''^2 + k_1 = 0$$

$$\text{or, } \mathrm{L} x^2 + \mathrm{M} y^2 + \mathrm{N} z^2 = 1$$

by substitution and the suppression of accents, which are no longer necessary.

The order of transformation might have been inverted, by first destroying the products of the variables exactly in every respect as in the last article, and then the resulting equation must be deprived of three terms by a simple change of the origin; the result, after both transformations, is

$$\mathrm{L} x^2 + \mathrm{M} y^2 + \mathrm{N} z^2 + \mathrm{P} x = 0.$$

483. The central equation involves three distinct cases, which depend on the signs of the quantities L, M, and N.

(1) They may be all positive.

(2) Two may be positive, and the third negative.

(3) One may be positive, and the other two negative.

They cannot be all negative.

Substituting for L, M and N, the constants $\frac{1}{a^2}$ $\frac{1}{b^2}$ $\frac{1}{c^2}$ respectively, where a is $>$ b and $b > c$, the three cases are

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} + \frac{z^2}{c^2} = 1$$

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} - \frac{z^2}{c^2} = 1$$

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} - \frac{z^2}{c^2} = 1$$

The readiest way of obtaining the form of these surfaces is by sections either in planes parallel to the co-ordinate planes, or on the co-ordinate planes. We remark again, that in the latter case they are called the principal sections or traces.

THE ELLIPSOID.

484. $$\frac{x^2}{a^2}+\frac{y^2}{b^2}+\frac{z^2}{c^2}=1$$

For the trace on $x\,y$, $z=0$, $\therefore\ \frac{x^2}{a^2}+\frac{y^2}{b^2}=1$

.... $x\,z$, $y=0$, $\therefore\ \frac{x^2}{a^2}+\frac{z^2}{c^2}=1$

.... $y\,z$, $x=0$, $\therefore\ \frac{y^2}{b^2}+\frac{z^2}{c^2}=1$

Therefore the principal sections are ellipses.

Let $z=m$ $\therefore$ the section parallel to $x\,y$ is $\frac{x^2}{a^2}+\frac{y^2}{b^2}=1-\frac{m^2}{c^2}$ *

$y=n$ .... $x\,z$ is $\frac{x^2}{a^2}+\frac{z^2}{c^2}=1-\frac{n^2}{c^2}$

$x=p$ .... $y\,z$ is $\frac{y^2}{b^2}+\frac{z^2}{c^2}=1-\frac{p^2}{c^2}$.

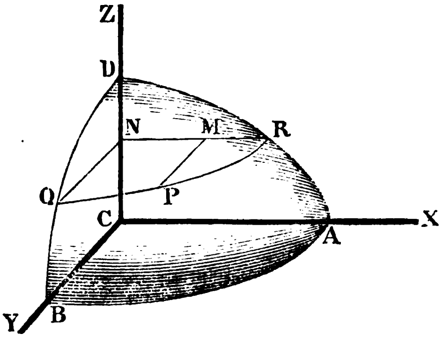
The first of these equations is an ellipse from m, or $z=0$ to $z=c$; when $z=c$ the curve becomes a point, and when z is greater than c the ellipse is imaginary, therefore the surface is limited in the direction of z. Similarly it may be proved, that the other sections are ellipses, and the surface is limited in the directions of x and y. From the circumstance of this surface being thus limited in every direction, and also from the above sections being all ellipses, this surface is called the ellipsoid.

The diameters $2\,a$, $2\,b$, $2\,c$ of the principal sections are called the diameters of the ellipsoid, and their extremities are the vertices of the surface.

If $b=a$, the equation becomes $\frac{x^2}{a^2}+\frac{y^2}{a^2}+\frac{z^2}{c^2}=1$, which is the equation to a spheroid by revolution round the axis of z.

If any other two co-efficients are equal, we have spheroids round the other axes; and if $a=b=c$, the surface becomes a sphere.

485. To render the conception of this surface clear we subjoin a figure representing the eighth part of an ellipsoid.



---

* This equation belongs to the projection on $x\,y$, but since the plane of $x\,y$ is parallel to that of $z=m$, the projection is exactly the same in form as the curve of section itself.

A B is part of the ellipse on $x\,y$
A D . . . . $x\,z$
B D . . . . $y\,z$,

and the section Q P R parallel to $x\,y$ is also an ellipse.

The surface may be conceived to be generated by a variable ellipse C A B moving upwards parallel to itself with its centre in C Z. Let N Q R be one position of this variable ellipse; and let

$C N = z$, $C A = a$, $N R = x_1$;
$N M = x$, $C B = b$, $N Q = y_1$;
$M P = y$, $C D = c$,

Then from the ellipse Q P R we have

$$\frac{x^2}{x_1^2}+\frac{y^2}{y_1^2}=1$$

Also from the ellipses D R A and D Q B we have

$$\frac{x_1^2}{a^2}+\frac{z^2}{c^2}=1,\text{ and }\frac{y_1^2}{b^2}+\frac{z^2}{c^2}=1$$

Therefore $\frac{x_1^2}{a^2}=\frac{y_1^2}{b^2}$; and multiplying the first equation by $\frac{x_1^2}{a^2}$ or its equal $\frac{y_1^2}{b^2}$, we have $\frac{x^2}{a^2}+\frac{y^2}{b^2}=\frac{x_1^2}{a^2}=1-\frac{z^2}{c^2}$.

$$\therefore \frac{x^2}{a^2}+\frac{y^2}{b^2}+\frac{z^2}{c^2}=1.$$

THE HYPERBOLOID.

486. Case 2. $$\frac{x^2}{a^2}+\frac{y^2}{b^2}-\frac{z^2}{c^2}=1.$$

The principal sections are

$$\text{on } x\ y,\ \frac{x^2}{a^2}+\frac{y^2}{b^2}=1 \quad (1)$$

$$\text{on } x\ z,\ \frac{x^2}{a^2}-\frac{z^2}{c^2}=1 \quad (2)$$

$$\text{on } y\ z,\ \frac{y^2}{b^2}-\frac{z^2}{c^2}=1 \quad (3).$$

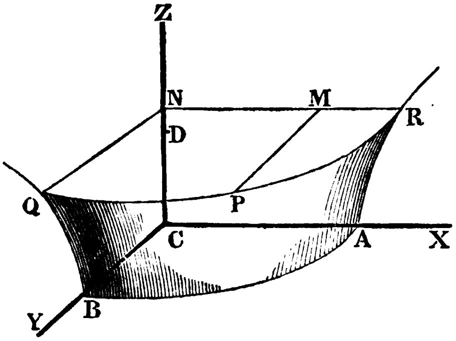
(1) is the equation to an ellipse whose axes are $2\,a$ and $2\,b$; (2) and (3) are hyperbolas with the same imaginary conjugate axis $2c\sqrt{-1}$; if x is less than a, or y less than b, z is imaginary.

Giving to z, y, and x the values m, n, and p, respectively, we have the section parallel to $x\,y$ an ellipse, to $y\,z$ and $x\,z$ hyperbolas.

487. The accompanying figure represents a portion of the eighth part of this surface. A B is the ellipse on $x\,y$, A R the hyperbola on $x\,z$, and B Q is the other hyperbola on $y\,z$. This surface may also be conceived

to be generated by a variable ellipse C A B moving parallel to itself with its centre in C Z. Let N Q R be one position of this variable ellipse ; and let

$$\begin{array}{lll} CN = z, & CA = a, & NR = x_1 ; \\ NM = x, & CB = b, & NQ = y_1 ; \\ MP = y, & CD = c, & \end{array}$$



Then from the ellipse P Q R, we have

$$\frac{x^2}{x_1^2} + \frac{y^2}{y_1^2} = 1$$

Also from the hyperbolas A R and B Q we have

$$\frac{x_1^2}{a^2} - \frac{z^2}{c^2} = 1, \text{ and } \frac{y_1^2}{b^2} - \frac{z^2}{c^2} = 1,$$

therefore $\frac{x_1^2}{a^2} = \frac{y_1^2}{b^2}$; and multiplying the first equation by $\frac{x_1^2}{a^2}$ or its equal $\frac{y_1^2}{b^2}$, we have

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = \frac{x_1^2}{a^2} = 1 + \frac{z^2}{c^2}$$

$$\therefore \frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} - \frac{z^2}{c^2} = 1.$$

This surface is called the hyperboloid of one sheet because it forms one continuous surface or sheet.

If $a = b$ the surface becomes the common hyperboloid of revolution round the *conjugate* axis.

488. Through the origin draw a line, whose equations are $x = \alpha z$, $y = \beta z$, and substituting in the equation $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} - \frac{z^2}{c^2} = 1$, we have

$$\left(\frac{\alpha^2}{a^2} + \frac{\beta^2}{b^2} - \frac{1}{c^2}\right)z^2 = 1$$

$$\therefore z = \pm \frac{abc}{\sqrt{b^2c^2\alpha^2 + a^2c^2\beta^2 - a^2b^2}} ;$$

hence this line meets the surface as long as the denominator of the fraction is real and finite; let $b^2 c^2 \alpha^2 + a^2 c^2 \beta^2 = a^2 b^2$, then the line only meets the surface at an infinite distance, or is an asymptote to the surface. The last equation gives the relation between α and β, when the corresponding line is an asymptote; and if for α and β we substitute their general values $\frac{x}{z}$ and $\frac{y}{z}$, we obtain an equation between x, y, z, whose locus will consist of all the asymptotes to the surface, because the co-ordinates of any point in it have the required relation above.

The equation to this surface is

$$b^2 c^2 x^2 + a^2 c^2 y^2 = a^2 b^2 z^2$$

$$\text{or, } \frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = \frac{z^2}{c^2}:$$

We shall hereafter show (art. 514.) that this is the equation to a cone whose vertex is the origin, and whose base, or section parallel to the axis, is an ellipse.

489. Case 3.

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} - \frac{z^2}{c^2} = 1.$$

The principal sections are

$$\text{on } xy,\ \frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1 \qquad (1)$$

$$\text{on } xz,\ \frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{z^2}{c^2} = 1 \qquad (2)$$

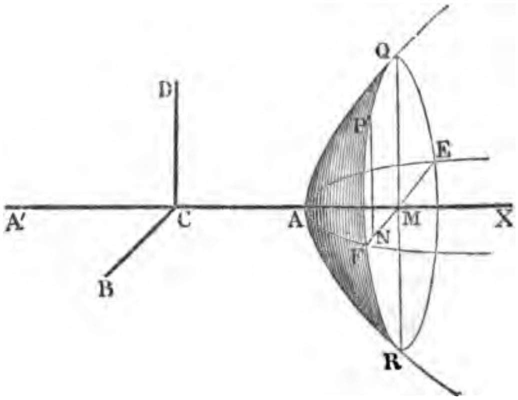
$$\text{on } yz,\ \frac{y^2}{b^2} + \frac{z^2}{c^2} = -1 \qquad (3).$$

(1) is an hyperbola whose axes are $2a$ and $2b\sqrt{-1}$; (2) is an hyperbola whose axes are $2a$ and $2c\sqrt{-1}$; (3) is imaginary, therefore the plane of yz never meets the surface.

Of the sections parallel to the co-ordinate planes, those parallel to xy and xz are hyperbolas, and that parallel to yz is an ellipse, whose equation is

$$\frac{y^2}{b^2} + \frac{z^2}{c^2} = \frac{p^2}{a^2} - 1;$$

hence this ellipse is imaginary, if p or x is less than $\pm a$; therefore, if two planes are drawn parallel to yz, and at distances $\pm a$ from the centre, no part of the surface can be between these planes.



In the figure E A F represents the hyperbolic section on $x y$, and Q A R that on $x z$; E Q F R is an elliptic section parallel to $y z$. There is an equal and opposite sheet with its vertex at A′; hence the surface is called the hyperboloid of two sheets.

490. The equation to the surface is deduced from the figure; let $AM = x$, $MN = y$, $NP = z$; $QM = z_1$, $MF = y_1$;

Then from the elliptic section Q P F R we have

$$\frac{z^2}{z_1^2} + \frac{y^2}{y_1^2} = 1.$$

Also from the hyperbolas E A F and Q A R we have

$$\frac{y_1^2}{b^2} - \frac{x^2}{a^2} = -1, \text{ and } \frac{z_1^2}{c^2} - \frac{x^2}{a^2} = -1$$

therefore $\frac{y_1^2}{b^2} = \frac{z_1^2}{c^2}$; and multiplying the first equation by $\frac{z_1^2}{c^2}$ or its equal $\frac{y_1^2}{b^2}$, we have

$$\therefore \frac{z^2}{c^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = \frac{z_1^2}{c^2} = \frac{x^2}{a^2} - 1$$

$$\therefore \frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} - \frac{z^2}{c^2} = 1.$$

491. $\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} - \frac{z^2}{c^2} = 0$, is the equation to the conical asymptote; hence both in case (2) and (3) we have the conical asymptote by omitting the constant term in the equations.

ON SURFACES WHICH HAVE NO CENTRE.

492. In this case the general equation can be deprived of the products of the variables, as in (479); it will then be of the form

$$a x^2 + b y^2 + c z^2 + 2 g x + 2 h y + 2 i z + k = 0.$$

In order to deprive this equation of three more terms, let

$$x = m + x', y = n + y', z = p + z',$$

$$\therefore a x'^2 + b y'^2 + c z'^2 + 2\,(a m + g)\, x' + 2\,(b n + h)\, y' + 2\,(c p + i)\, z' + k' = 0:$$

Let the co-efficients of x', y' and $z' = 0$;

$$\therefore m = -\frac{g}{a}, n = -\frac{h}{b}, p = -\frac{i}{c}:$$

But since this class has no centre, the values of some, or all the quantities m, n, p, must be infinite; therefore, either one, two, or three of the co-efficients a, b, c, must $= 0$. Thus the original transformation which deprived the equation of the terms $x y$, $x z$, and $y z$, has of itself destroyed one or two of the co-efficients of x^2, y^2, or z^2; this corresponds to the case in art. 92. Now, all three co-efficients cannot $= 0$, for then we fall upon the equation to a plane: hence we have only two cases left, when a vanishes, or when a and b both vanish.

493. Let $a = 0$, then, as we have three quantities, m, n and p to determine, we may let $k' = 0$ as well as the co-efficients of y' and z'; hence the equation is reduced to the form

$$b y'^2 + c z'^2 + 2 g x' = 0.$$

$$\text{or} \left(-\frac{b}{2g}\right) y'^2 + \left(-\frac{c}{2g}\right) z'^2 = x'.$$

This equation has two varieties depending upon the signs of the quantities $-\frac{b}{2g}$ and $-\frac{c}{2g}$.

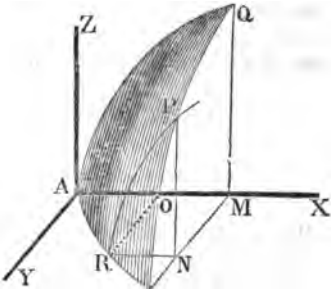
494. Case 1. Let the signs of y'^2 and z'^2 be both alike and positive, (if they were negative we should change the sign of x' to reduce the equation to the same form) substituting $\frac{1}{l}$ for $-\frac{b}{2g}$, and $\frac{1}{l'}$ for $-\frac{c}{2g}$, and suppressing the accents on x, y and z as no longer necessary, the equation is of the form

$$\frac{y^2}{l} + \frac{z^2}{l'} = x.$$

For the principal sections we have

on xy, $y^2 = l x$. (1)
on xz, $z^2 = l x'$. (2)
on yz, $l' y^2 + l z^2 = 0$ (3)

(1) and (2) are parabolas extending on the side of x positive; (3) is a point, which is the origin itself.



For the sections parallel to

$$xy, \text{ put } z = p, \therefore \frac{y^2}{l} = x - \frac{p^2}{l'} \qquad (1)$$

$$xz, \text{ put } y = n, \therefore \frac{z^2}{l'} = x - \frac{n^2}{l} \qquad (2)$$

$$yz, \text{ put } x = m, \therefore \frac{y^2}{l} + \frac{z^2}{l'} = m \qquad (3)$$

(1) and (2) are parabolas, equal to those of the principal sections respectively, (the equation differing by a constant term, implies that the origin is differently situated with regard to the curve): (3) is an ellipse.

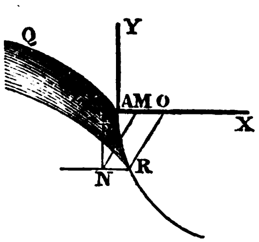
495. In the figure A Q and A R are parts of the parabolas on $x z$ and $x y$, and the surface is described by the motion of the parabola A Q, parallel to itself, its vertex moving along the parabola A R. Let P R N be one position of the generating parabola, and let A M $= x$, M N $= y$, N P $= z$, and draw R O parallel to A Y or M N; then from the parabola R P we have

$$z^2 = l' \, \mathrm{RN} = l' (\mathrm{AM} - \mathrm{AO}) = l' \left(x - \frac{y^2}{l}\right)$$

$$\therefore \frac{z^2}{l'} + \frac{y^2}{l} = x.$$

This surface is called the elliptic paraboloid, and is composed of one entire sheet, like the paraboloid of revolution.

496. Case 2. Let the signs of y'^2 and z'^2 be different.



$$\therefore \frac{y^2}{l} - \frac{z^2}{l'} = x.$$

For the principal sections we have
on xy, $y^2 = lx$ (1)
on xz, $z^2 = -l'x$ (2)
on yz, $l'y^2 - lz^2 = 0$ (3)
(1) and (2) are parabolas, the first corresponding to x positive, and the second to x negative; (3) belongs to two straight lines through the origin.

The sections in planes parallel to xy and xz are parabolas, and those parallel to yz are hyperbolas.

497. AQ is the parabola on xz, and AR is that on xy; and the surface is described by the motion of the parabola AQ parallel to itself, its vertex moving along the parabola AR. Let RPN be one position of the generating parabola, and let AM $= x$, MN $= y$, and NP $= z$, and draw RO parallel to MN; then from the parabola RQ we have

$$z^2 = l'\,\mathrm{RN} = l'(\mathrm{AO} - \mathrm{AM}) = l'\left(\frac{y^2}{l} - x,\right)$$

$$\therefore \frac{y^2}{l} - \frac{z^2}{l'} = x.$$

This surface is called the hyperbolic paraboloid.

498. The equations to the elliptic and hyperbolic paraboloids may be deduced from those of the ellipsoid and hyperboloid of one sheet, as the equation to the parabola was deduced from that to the ellipse (228) by supposing the centre to be infinitely distant.

Let the origin be transferred to a vertex of the surface, by putting $x - a$ for x, then the equation to the ellipsoid and hyperboloid is

$$\frac{(x-a)^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} \pm \frac{z^2}{c^2} = 1.$$

Let m and m' be the distances of the vertex from the foci of the sections on xy and xz;

$$\therefore b^2 = a^2 - (a - m)^2 = 2am - m^2$$

$$\text{and } c^2 = 2am' - m'^2;$$

therefore, by substitution, the equation

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{2x}{a} + 1 + \frac{y^2}{b^2} \pm \frac{z^2}{c^2} = 1$$

$$\text{becomes } \frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{2x}{a} + \frac{y^2}{2am - m^2} \pm \frac{z^2}{2am' - m'^2} = 0$$

$$\text{or } \frac{x^2}{a} - 2x + \frac{y^2}{2m - \frac{m^2}{a}} \pm \frac{z^2}{2m' - \frac{m'^2}{a}} = 0,$$

$$\text{or } \frac{y^2}{2m} \pm \frac{z^2}{2m'} - 2x = 0, \text{ when } a \text{ is infinite.}$$

And hence results obtained for the ellipsoid and hyperboloid will be e for the paraboloids, after making the above substitutions.

499. We stated in article 492, that both a and b might vanish; in this case the equation will be

$$cz^2 + 2gx + 2hy + 2iz + k = 0.$$

And by the transformation in art. 492, we cannot destroy the co-efficients of x and y, but we may destroy that of z, and also the constant term k; hence the transformed equation is reduced to the form

$$cz^2 + 2gx + 2hy = 0;$$

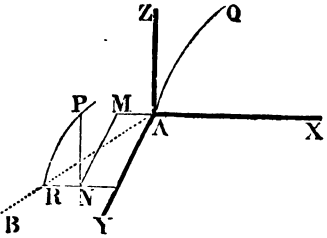
$$\text{or } z^2 = lx + l'y \text{ if } -\frac{2g}{c} = l, \text{ and } -\frac{2h}{c} = l'.$$

500. There are two cases depending on the signs of l and l', which may be both positive, or one positive and the other negative.

Case 1. l and l' both positive.

The section on xy is $lx + l'y = o$ (1)
on xz is $z^2 = lx$ (2)
on yz is $z^2 = l'y$ (3)

(1) is a straight line A B; (2) is a parabola A Q; (3) is also a parabola, not in the figure; the sections on the planes parallel to the above are similar in each case. The surface is formed by the motion of the parabola A Q parallel to itself, its vertex describing the straight line A R; let R P N be one position of the generating parabola; let A M $=x$, M N $=y$, N P $=z$,



$$\text{then } z^2 = l.\,\mathrm{RN} = l\left(\frac{l'}{l}y + x\right) = l'y + lx.$$

Since this surface is a cylinder with a parabolic base, it is not usually classed among the surfaces of the second order.

Case 2. If the signs of l and l' be different, the surface will be the same, but situated in a different manner.

CHAPTER VIII.

CYLINDRICAL AND CONICAL SURFACES.

501. Our notion of surfaces will be very much enlarged, if we take into consideration the general character of classes of surfaces, defining them by their peculiar method of generation, and then expressing that definition in a general algebraical form. For example, we have been accustomed, in common geometry, to consider a cylinder as a surface generated by a straight line, which is carried round the circumference of a given circle, and always parallel to a given straight line. (Geom. b. v

def. 1.) But it is evident that if the base be not a circle, but any other curve, as a parabola, for instance, we shall have a surface partaking of the essential cylindrical character, and which, with others of the same kind, come under a more extended definition; and similarly for conical and many other surfaces.

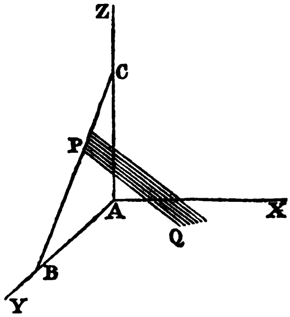
Having seized upon this general character, method of generation, or law by which the lines are compelled to move, the next step is to express this fact in algebraical language; that is, to obtain an equation between co-ordinates x, y, and z, of any point on the surface, which equation shall belong to the class of surfaces in the first instance, and then can be adapted to any particular surface in that class.

THE PLANE.

502. In order to prepare the reader for this subject, we shall take a simple case: to find the surface generated by the motion of a straight line, parallel to itself, and constrained to pass through a given straight line.

Let A X, A Y, A Z be rectangular axes, and let the equations to the given straight line B C (supposed for the sake of simplicity to be in the plane of y z) be

$$\left.\begin{array}{l} n\mathrm{Y} + p\mathrm{Z} = 1 \\ \mathrm{X} \qquad\quad\ \ = 0 \end{array}\right\} 1.$$



Also, let the equations to the generating line P Q, in any one of its positions, be

$$\left.\begin{array}{l} x = \alpha z + a \\ y = \beta z + b \end{array}\right\} 2.$$

Now, α and β are the tangents of the angles which the projections of P Q make with the axes A X and A Y respectively; and in the motion of P Q, parallel to itself, the projections also remain parallel to themselves respectively; and hence α and β are always constant, and therefore are known or given quantities. But a and b being the co-ordinates of the point where the line P Q meets the plane of x y, they change with every change of position of P Q; and therefore, being variable, must not appear in the final equation to the surface. Now, these variable quantities, a and b, can be expressed in terms of the other variable quantities x, y, z; and hence we can thus estimate them from the two given systems above.

At the point P, where P Q meets B C, we have, by comparison of (1) and (2),

$$X = x = 0$$
$$Z = z = -\frac{a}{\alpha}$$
$$Y = y = -\frac{a\,\beta}{\alpha} + b$$

But the system (1) is true for any values of X, Y, Z; therefore, by substitution in (1), we have

$$n\left(-\frac{a\,\beta}{\alpha} + b\right) + p\left(-\frac{a}{\alpha}\right) = 1;$$

and this is the equation connecting a and b together, or expressing the relation which the variable quantities a and b have to each other, or the relation which any quantities equal to a and b have to each other; that is, substituting for a and b the quantities $x - \alpha\, z$, and $y - \beta\, z$ from (2), we shall have the relation between the quantities x, y, and z, which is called the equation to a surface.

$$\therefore -n\frac{\beta}{\alpha}\left(x - \alpha\, z\right) + n\,(y - \beta\, z) - \frac{p}{\alpha}\left(x - \alpha\, z\right) = 1;$$

$$\text{or, } -\frac{n\,\beta + p}{\alpha}\,x + n\,y + p\,z = 1,$$

which is the equation to a plane; and this is the most general method of determining the equation to a plane; for it can be thus found for any system of co-ordinate axes, and it is determined from the most obvious character of the plane.

We now proceed to the discussion of surfaces formed by the motion of a straight line constrained to move after some given law or condition.

ON CYLINDRICAL SURFACES.

503. Definition. A cylindrical surface is generated by a straight line, which moves parallel to itself in space, and describes, with its extremity, a given curve.

The straight line which moves is called the Generatrix; and the given curve is called the Directrix.

To find the equation to the surface,

Let the equation to the generatrix, in any one of its positions, be

$$x = \alpha\, z + a$$
$$y = \beta\, z + b$$

Now, the generatrix, in its movement, always moving parallel to itself; the quantities α and β remain the same for every position of the generatrix; but the quantities a and b, which are the co-ordinates of the point where the generatrix meets the plane of $x\,y$, are constant for the same position of the generatrix, but vary when the generatrix passes from one position to another. Thus, when any point on the surface changes its position without quitting the generatrix, a and b are both constant; and when the point moves from one position of the generatrix to another, a and b are both variable; hence these two quantities, being constant together, and variable together, must be dependent on each other in some way or another; which general dependence is expressed by saying that one of them is a function of the other,

$$\therefore\ b = \phi\,(a);$$

or, putting for b and a their values as above, we have

$$y - \beta z = \phi\,(x - \alpha z),$$

which is the general equation to cylindrical surfaces.

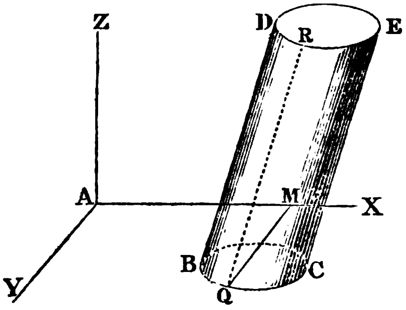
504. The form of the function ϕ will depend upon the nature of the directrix in any particular case.

Let the equations to the directrix be

$$\left.\begin{array}{r} F\,(X, Y, Z,) = 0 \\ f\,(X, Y, Z,) = 0 \end{array}\right\}$$

Then as the generatrix must in all its positions meet the directrix, the equations to this curve and to the generatrix must exist simultaneously for the points of intersection; thus having four equations we may eliminate x, y, z, and arrive at an equation between a, b, and constant quantities, which will determine the form of the function ϕ.

Substituting in this equation for a and b their values $x - \alpha z$, $y - \beta z$, we have the actual equation to the particular cylinder required.



505. Ex. 1. Let the directrix be the circle B Q C, in the plane of $x\,y$, and let x_1 and y_1 be the co-ordinates of its centre; then the equations to the directrix are

$$\left.\begin{array}{r} (X - x_1)^2 + (Y - y_1)^2 = r^2 \\ Z = 0 \end{array}\right\} (1)$$

Let B D, Q R, C E, be various positions of the generatrix whose general equation is

$$\left.\begin{array}{l} x = \alpha z + a \\ y = \beta z + b \end{array}\right\} (2)$$

to express that the generatrix meets the circle as at Q, the equations (1) and (2) must exist together,

$$\begin{array}{l} \therefore\ Z = z = 0 \\ X = x = a \\ Y = y = b \end{array}$$

substituting these values in (1), we have

$$(a - x_1)^2 + (b - y_1)^2 = r^2 \qquad (3)$$

hence the form of the function ϕ is determined.

Substituting in (3) the values of a and b from (2), we have

$$(x - \alpha z - x_1)^2 + (y - \beta z - y_1)^2 = r^2$$

This is the equation to an oblique cylinder, with circular base, situated in the plane of $x\,y$.

506. Let the centre of the circle be at the origin,

$$\therefore\ x_1 = 0 \text{ and } y_1 = 0$$

$$\therefore\ (x - \alpha z)^2 + (y - \beta z)^2 = r^2$$

And if the origin be at the extremity of a diameter parallel to the axis of x,

$$(x - \alpha z)^2 + (y - \beta z)^2 = 2\,r\,(x - \alpha z)$$

507. Let the axis of the cylinder be parallel to the axis of z; then α and β

each $= 0$, since they are the tangents of the angles which the projection of the generatrix on $x\,z$ and $y\,z$ make with A Z;

And if the axis coincide with A Z $\therefore\ (x - x_1)^2 + (y - y_1)^2 = r^2$;

$$x^2 + y^2 = r^2;\ z = 0;$$

in these cases the cylinder is called a right cylinder, and its equation is the same as that of the directrix.

If the directrix be a circle on $x\,z$, the equation to the right cylinder will be

$$x^2 + z^2 = r^2.$$

508. Let the directrix be a parabola on $x\,y$, vertex at the origin, and axis coincident with the axis of x.

Then the equations to the directrix and generatrix are

$$\left.\begin{array}{l} Y^2 = p\,X \\ Z\ = 0 \end{array}\right\} 1 \qquad \left.\begin{array}{l} x = \alpha\,z + a \\ y = \beta\,z + b \end{array}\right\} 2;$$

therefore at the points of junction we have

$$\begin{array}{l} Z = z = 0 \\ X = x = a \\ Y = y = b; \end{array}$$

then by substituting in (1) we have

$$b^2 = p\,a$$

$$\therefore\ (y - \beta\,z)^2 = p\,(x - \alpha\,z)$$

which is the equation to an oblique parabolic cylinder, whose base is on $x\,y$.

509. Let the directrix be a parabola on $x\,z$, axis A X, and vertex at A; and let the generatrix be parallel to the plane $x\,y$.

The equations are

$$\left.\begin{array}{l} Z^2 = p\,X \\ Y\ = 0 \end{array}\right\} 1 \qquad \left.\begin{array}{l} y + \alpha\,x = a \\ z = b \end{array}\right\} 2$$

Then the equation to the surface is

$$z^2 = \frac{p}{\alpha}\,y + p\,x. \qquad \text{See article (499).}$$

ON CONICAL SURFACES.

510. Definition. A conical surface is generated by the movement of a straight line, which passes constantly through a given point, and also describes a given curve.

The given point is called the centre of the surface, the straight line which moves is called the generatrix, and the given curve is called the directrix.

Let a, b, c, be the co-ordinates of the centre; then the equations to the generatrix are

$$\begin{array}{l} x - a = \alpha\,(z - c) \\ y - b = \beta\,(z - c). \end{array}$$

Now when a point on the surface changes its position without quitting the generatrix, the quantities α, β are constant, but when the point passes from one generatrix to another, they are both variable; hence being constant together, and variable together, they are functions of one another;

$\therefore\ \beta = \phi\,(\alpha)$, or substituting their equals,

$$\frac{y - b}{z - c} = \phi\left(\frac{x - a}{z - c}\right)$$ which is the general equation to conical surfaces.

511. The form of the function ϕ will depend upon the nature of the directrix in any particular case.

By combining the equations to the generatrix and directrix we may, as for cylindrical surfaces, eliminate x, y, z, in a particular case, and thus arrive at an equation between α and β, which will determine the form of the function ϕ.

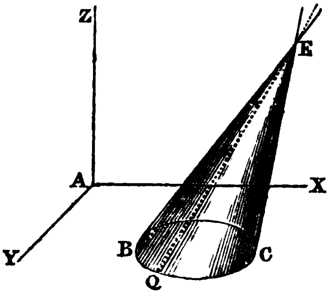
Substituting in this equation for α and β their values $\frac{x-a}{z-c}$ and $\frac{y-b}{z-c}$ we obtain the actual equation to the particular conical surface.

512. Ex. Let the directrix be a circle B Q C in the plane of $x\,y$.

The equations to this directrix are

$$\left.\begin{array}{c}(X - x_1)^2 + (Y - y_1)^2 = r^2\\ Z = 0\end{array}\right\} \quad (1)$$

And the equations to the generatrix B E, or Q E passing through the point E (a, b, c), are



$$\left.\begin{array}{l}x - a = \alpha\,(z - c\\ y - b = \beta\,(z - e\end{array}\right\} \quad (2)$$

To express that the generatrix meets the circle, the equations (1) and (2) must coexist.

$$\begin{array}{l}\therefore\ Z = z = 0\\ \quad X = x = a - \alpha\,c\\ \quad Y = y = b - \beta\,c\end{array}$$

hence by substitution in (1) we have

$$(a - \alpha\,c - x_1)^2 + (b - \beta\,c - y_1)^2 = r^2 \quad (3)$$

Putting for α and β their values from (2) and reducing

$$\left(\frac{a\,z - c\,x}{z - c} - x_1\right)^2 + \left(\frac{b\,z - c\,y}{z - c} - y_1\right)^2 = r^2$$

This is the equation to an oblique cone with a circular base situated in the plane of $x\,y$.

Let the centre of the circle be at the origin $\therefore\ x_1 = o$ and $y_1 = o$;

$$\therefore\ (a\,z - c\,x)^2 + (b\,z - c\,y)^2 = r^2\,(z - c)^2$$

513. Let the axis of the cone be parallel to the axis of z $\therefore\ a = x_1$ and $b = y_1$, and the general equation becomes

$$\left(\frac{x - a}{z - c}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{y - b}{z - c}\right)^2 = \frac{r^2}{c^2}$$

In this case the cone is called a right cone.

Also, if in this case the origin be at the centre of the circle, we have $a = o$ and $b = o$,

$$\therefore\ x^2 + y^2 = \frac{r^2}{c^2}\,(z - c)^2$$

514. Directrix an ellipse on $x\,y$, whose centre is the origin, and the centre of the cone in the axis of z; then the equation to the cone is

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = \left(\frac{z - c}{c}\right)^2$$

or putting $r - c$ for c, that is, measuring from the centre of the cone

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2}+\frac{y^2}{b^2}=\frac{z^2}{c^2}.$$

In this simple case, the equation to the surface is easily found by the method in article (468). Taking the figure in that article, and supposing every section, like P Q, to be an ellipse, whose axes x_1 and y_1 are always proportional to the axes a and b of an ellipse whose centre is in A Z, and at a distance c from A, we have the equation to P Q

$$\frac{x^2}{x_1^2}+\frac{y^2}{y_1^2}=1,$$

$$\text{but } y_1=\frac{b}{a}x_1, \text{ and } x_1=\frac{a}{c}z$$

$$\therefore \frac{x^2}{a^2}+\frac{y^2}{b^2}=\frac{z^2}{c^2}.$$

515. Let the directrix be a parabola parallel to $x\,y$, and vertex in the axis of z. The equations to the directrix and generatrix are

$$\left.\begin{array}{l} Y^2 = p\,X \\ Z = d \end{array}\right\} 1 \qquad \left.\begin{array}{l} x - a = \alpha\,(z - c) \\ y - b = \beta\,(z - c) \end{array}\right\},$$

at the points of junction we have

$$\begin{array}{l} Z = z = d \\ X = x = a + \alpha\,(d - c) \\ Y = y = b + \beta\,(d - c) \end{array}$$

hence the final equation is

$$\left\{b+\frac{y-b}{z-c}(d-c)\right\}^2 = p\left\{a+\frac{x-a}{z-c}(d-c)\right\}.$$

516. Let the vertex or centre of the cone be at the origin $\therefore a = b = c = o$, and the equation to a cone whose directrix is $\{y^2 = p\,x,\ z = d\}$ and whose vertex is at the origin, is

$$d\,y^2 = p\,x\,z.$$

517. The following method of finding the equation to a right cone whose vertex is at the origin, is sometimes useful.

Let the length of the axis of the cone be k, and suppose this axis to pass through the origin, and be perpendicular to a given plane or base whose equation therefore will be of the form

$$\alpha\,x + \beta\,y + \gamma\,z = k$$

where α, β, γ are the co-sines of the angles which k makes with the axis of x, y, and z (410).

Also suppose x, y, and z to be the co-ordinates of a point on the circumference of this base, and let θ be the angle which the generatrix of the cone makes with its axis, then by the property of the right-angle triangle we have the equation

$$k = \sqrt{(x^2 + y^2 + z^2)}\cos.\theta$$

Hence by equating the values of k we have the equation,

$$(\alpha\,x + \beta\,y + \gamma\,z)^2 = (x^2 + y^2 + z^2)\,(\cos.\theta)^2.$$

And this is the equation to any point in the surface, since α, β, γ remain the same for a plane parallel to the base and passing through any point ($x\ y\ z$) of the surface.

If the axis of the cone coincides with the axis of z, we have $\alpha = \beta = o$ and $\gamma = 1$; $z^2 = (x^2 + y^2 + z^2)(\cos.\ \theta)^2$

518. To find the curve of intersection of a plane and an oblique cone, we may suppose the cutting plane to pass through the origin of co-ordinates without detracting from the generality of the result. Substituting for x, y, z, in the equation, their values in 455, we readily find that the sections are lines of the second order and their varieties.

ON CONOIDAL SURFACES.

519. Definition. A conoidal surface is generated by the movement of a straight line constantly parallel to a plane, one extremity of the line moving along a given straight line, the other describing a given curve.

We shall commence with a simple case. Let the axis of z be one directrix, and let the generatrix be parallel to the plane of $x\ y$: then the equations to the generatrix in any one position are

$$\left.\begin{array}{l} y = \alpha x \\ z = b \end{array}\right\}$$

Now it is evident that when a point moves on the surface without quitting the generatrix, α and b are both constant, but when it passes from one position of the generatrix to another α and b are both variable; hence these quantities, being constant together and variable together, are functions of one another.

$$\therefore b = \phi\ (\alpha) \text{ or substituting their values.}$$

$$z = \phi\left(\frac{y}{x}\right)$$

which is the general equation to all conoidal surfaces.

520. The form of the function ϕ will depend upon the nature of the second directrix.

By combining the equations to the generatrix and this directrix, we may, as before, eliminate x, y, z, and arrive at an equation between b and α, we must then substitute the values of b and α, their general values z and $\frac{y}{x}$, and we shall obtain the equation to the particular conoidal surface.

521. Let the second directrix be a circle parallel to $y\ z$, and the centre in the axis of x, therefore the equations to this directrix are

$$\left.\begin{array}{r} Z^2 + Y^2 = r^2 \\ X = a \end{array}\right\} (1)$$

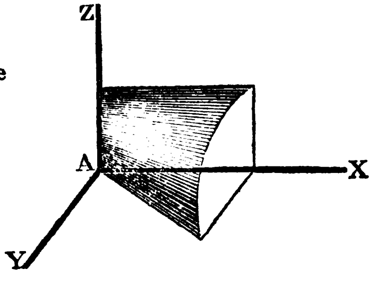
Then where this directrix meets the generatrix we have

$$Z = z = b$$

$$X = x = a$$

$$Y = y = \alpha a$$

$$\therefore b^2 + \alpha^2 a^2 = r^2$$



Hence the required equation is

$$z^2 + a^2 \frac{y^2}{x^2} = r^2.$$

This surface partaking of the form and generation of both the cone and the wedge, was called the cono-cuneus by Wallis, who investigated many of its properties.

If the axis of x be one directrix, and the other be a circle parallel to $x\,z$, and the generatrix be parallel to $y\,z$, the equation is

$$x^2 + \frac{a^2 z^2}{y^2} = r^2.$$

522. Let the axis of z be one directrix, any straight line the other, and let the generatrix move parallel to $x\,y$.

Then the equations to the second directrix are

$$\begin{aligned} X &= \mu Z + m \\ Y &= \nu Z + n \end{aligned}$$

Also the equations to the generatrix being $y = \alpha x$, $z = b$, we have at the points of junction

$$\begin{aligned} Z &= z = b \\ Y &= y = \nu b + n \\ X &= x = \frac{\nu b + n}{\alpha} \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore \frac{\nu b + n}{\alpha} = \mu b + m$$

$$\therefore (\nu z + n) \frac{x}{y} = \mu z + m$$

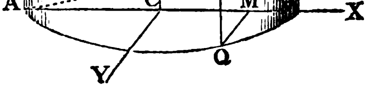
$$\text{or} \qquad \nu z x - \mu z y + n x - m y = 0.$$

523. Let the axis of z be one directrix, and let the second directrix be the thread of a screw whose axis is coincident with the axis of z.

The thread of a screw, or the curve called the helix, is formed by a thread wrapped round the surface of a right cylinder, so as always to make the same angle with the axis; or if the base of a right-angled triangle coincide with the base of the cylinder, and the triangle be wrapped round the cylinder, the hypothenuse will form the helix A P.

To find the equations to the helix,

Let the centre of the cylindrical base be the origin of rectangular axes. C M $= x$, M Q $= y$, P Q $= z$ and the radius of the cylinder $= a$.



Then P Q bears a constant ratio to A Q; namely, that of the altitude to the base of the describing triangle

$$\therefore \text{P Q} = e\,\text{A Q}$$

and A Q is a circular arc whose sine is y and radius a:

$$\therefore z = e\,a \sin.^{-1} \frac{y}{a},$$

$$\text{or } z = e\,a \cos.^{-1} \frac{x}{a};$$

$$\text{also } x^2 + y^2 = a^2$$

And these are the equations to the projections of the helix.

To return to the problem, which is to find the surface described by a line subject to the conditions that it be parallel to the base of the cylinder, that it passes through the axis, and that it follows the course of the helix.

The equations to the directrix (if c be the interval between two threads) are

$$z = e\,a \sin.^{-1}\frac{y}{a} + c$$

$$x^2 + y^2 = a^2$$

And the equations to the generatrix being $y = \alpha\,x$, $z = b$; we have

$$z = b;\ x = \frac{y}{\alpha} = \sqrt{a^2 - y^2}\ \therefore\ y = \frac{\alpha\,a}{\sqrt{1+\alpha^2}}$$

$$\therefore\ b = e\,a \sin.^{-1}\frac{\alpha}{\sqrt{1+\alpha^2}} + c$$

hence the equation to the surface is

$$z = e\,a \sin.^{-1}\frac{y}{\sqrt{y^2 + x^2}} + c$$

This surface is the under side of many spiral staircases.

524. A straight line passes through two straight lines whose equations are $x = a$, $y = b$; and $x = a_1$, $z_{,} = b_1$; and also through a given curve $z = f(y)$ in the plane of $z\,y$; to find the equation to the surface traced out by the straight line.

The three directrices are

$$\left.\begin{array}{l} X = a \\ Y = b \end{array}\right\}1 \qquad \left.\begin{array}{l} X = a_1 \\ Z = b_1 \end{array}\right\}2 \qquad \left.\begin{array}{l} Z = f(Y) \\ X = o\ . \end{array}\right\}(3).$$

And let the equations to the generatrix be

$$x = \alpha\,z + m$$

$$y = \beta\,z + n$$

and consequently $y = \dfrac{\beta}{\alpha}x + p$, if $p = n - \dfrac{\beta}{\alpha}m$;

Then since this line meets the three given lines, we have the following equations

$$b = \frac{\beta}{\alpha}a + p,\quad a_1 = \alpha\,b_1 + m,\quad -\frac{m}{\alpha} = f\left(-\frac{m}{\alpha}\beta + n\right)$$

We must now eliminate α, b, m, n from these equations, and that to the generatrix.

By subtraction we have

$$y - b = \frac{\beta}{\alpha}(x - a);\ x - a_1 = \alpha\,(z - b_1).\ \therefore\ \alpha = \frac{x - a_1}{z - b_1},$$

$$\therefore\ \frac{m}{\alpha} = \frac{x}{\alpha} - z = \frac{a_1\,z - b_1\,x}{x - a_1},\text{ and}$$

$$\frac{n\,\alpha - m\,\beta}{\alpha} = \frac{\alpha\,(y - \beta\,z) - \beta\,(x - \alpha\,z)}{\alpha} = \frac{\alpha\,y - \beta\,x}{\alpha} = y - \frac{\beta\,x}{\alpha} = \frac{b\,x - a\,y.}{x - a}$$

ence the final equation is

$$\frac{b_1\,x - a_1\,z}{x - a_1} = f\left(\frac{b\,x - a\,y}{x - a}\right)$$

525. The following problem is easily solved in the same manner. To find the equation to a surface formed by a straight line moving parallel to the plane of $x\,z$, and having its extremities in two given curves $z = f(y)$ on $z\,y$, and $x = \phi(y)$ on $x\,y$.

∴ The equation is $$\frac{z}{f(y)} + \frac{x}{\phi(y)} = 1.$$

526. In questions of this kind some care is requisite in selecting the position of the axes and co-ordinate planes, so that the equations, both those given and those to be found, may present themselves in the simplest form. For example, —to find the surface formed by the motion of a straight line constantly passing through three other given straight lines;

Take three lines parallel to the given lines for the axes of co-ordinates; then the equations to the three directrices are

$$\left.\begin{matrix} X = a_1 \\ Y = b_1 \end{matrix}\right\} \qquad \left.\begin{matrix} X = a_2 \\ Z = c_2 \end{matrix}\right\} \qquad \left.\begin{matrix} Y = b_3 \\ Z = c_3 \end{matrix}\right\}$$

and the equations to the generating line in any position are

$$x = \alpha z + a,\ y = \beta z + b,$$

and consequently $y = \frac{\beta}{\alpha}x + c$, where $c = b - \frac{\beta}{\alpha}a$;

Then since this line meets each of three given lines, we have the following equations:

$$b_1 = \frac{\beta}{\alpha}a_1 + c\ ;\ a_2 = \alpha c_2 + a\ ;\ b_3 = \beta c_3 + b.$$

We must now eliminate a, b, α, β from these three equations and that to the generatrix; by subtraction we have

$$y - b_1 = \frac{\beta}{\alpha}(x - a_1)\ ;\ x - a_2 = \alpha(z - c_2)\ ;\ y - b_3 = \beta(z - c_3)$$

hence, eliminating α and β, we have the required equation

$$(x - a_1)(y - b_3)(z - c_2) = (x - a_2)(y - b)(z - c_3)$$

which is of the second order, since the term $x\,y\,z$ disappears. See Hymers's Anal. Geom. p. 23, Cambridge, 1830.

CHAPTER IX.

ON CURVES OF DOUBLE CURVATURE.

527. Definition. A curve of double curvature is one whose generating point is perpetually changing not only the direction of its motion, as in plane curves, but also the plane in which it moves.

If a circle be described on a flat sheet of paper, it is a plane curve; let the sheet of paper be rolled into a cylindrical form, then the circle has two curvatures, that which it originally had, and that which it has acquired by the flexion of the paper, hence in this situation it is called a curve of double curvature.

528. Curves of double curvature arise from the intersection of two surfaces; for example, place one foot of a pair of compasses on a cylindrical surface, let the other in revolving constantly touch the surface, it will describe a curve of double curvature, which, though not a circle, has yet all

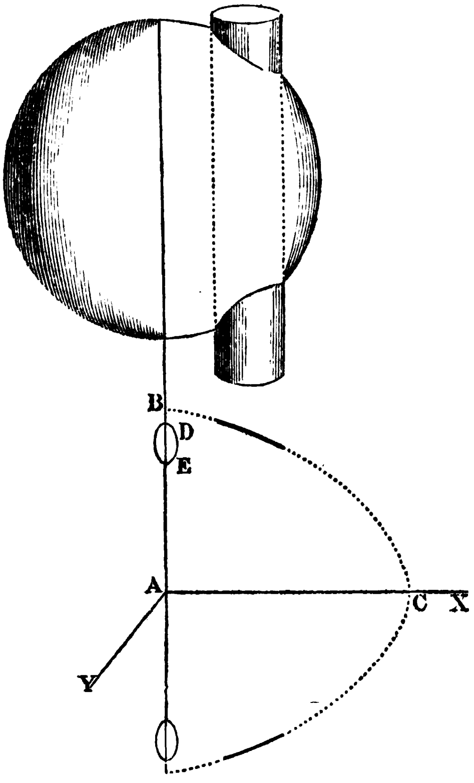
its points at equal distances from the fixed foot of the compasses. The curve is then part of a spherical surface, whose radius is equal to the distance between the feet of the compasses, and consequently is the intersection of this sphere with the cylinder.

529. The equations to the two surfaces taken together are the equations to their intersection, and consequently are the equations to the curve of double curvature.

By the separate elimination of the variables in the two equations, we obtain the respective projections of the curve upon the co-ordinate planes. Two of these are sufficient to define the curve of double curvature; for we may pass two cylinders through two projections of the curve, at right angles to each other, and to the co-ordinate planes, the intersection of these cylinders is the required curve. This is analogous to the consideration of a straight line, being the intersection of two planes.

We proceed to examine curves of double curvature arising from the intersections of surfaces.

530. Let the curve arise from the intersection of a sphere and right cylinder; the origin of co-ordinates being at the centre of the sphere, the axis of the cylinder in the plane $x\,z$ and parallel to the axis of z.



Let the distance between the centres of the sphere and cylinder $= c$, then the equation to the sphere is $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = a^2$, and the equation to the cylinder is $(x - c)^2 + y^2 = b^2$, (507.)

eliminating y, $z^2 = a^2 + c^2 - b^2 - 2\,c\,x$ (1),

eliminating x, $z^2 = a^2 - b^2 - c^2 \mp 2\,c\,\sqrt{b^2 - y^2}$ (2).

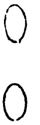
From (1) the projection of the curve on $x\,z$ is a portion of a parabola B C whose vertex is C, where $\text{A C} = \dfrac{a^2 + c^2 - b^2}{2\,c}$. and $\text{A B} = \sqrt{a^2 + c^2 - b^2}$.

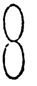
From (2) the projection on $y\,z$ consists of two ovals, whose positions are determined by the two extreme values of z,

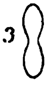
$$\text{A D} = \pm \sqrt{a^2 - (b - c)^2}$$

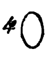
$$\text{A E} = \pm \sqrt{a^2 - (b + c)^2}.$$

As c increases, that is, as the cylinder moves further from A, A E decreases, and the ovals approach nearer to each other, as in fig. (1); when $c = a - b$, that is, when the sphere but just encloses the cylinder A E $= 0$, and the ovals meet, fig. (2). As c increases, we obtain fig. (3), which gradually approaches fig. (4); and lastly, when $c = a$ vanishes entirely.

1


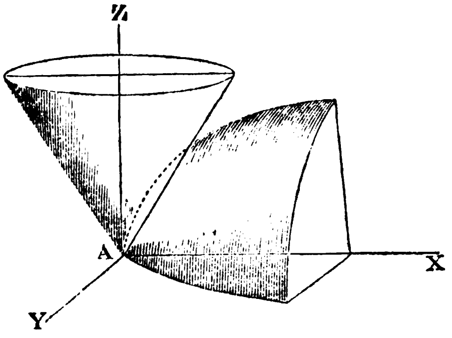
2


3


4


Different values, as c, $\frac{a}{2}$, &c., may be given to b, and we may then trace the projections: they offer no difficulty, but we recommend their investigation, as the complete examination of one example greatly facilitates the comprehension of all others.

531. Ex. 2. A right cone and a paraboloid of revolution have their vertices coincident, the axis of the cone being perpendicular to the axis of the paraboloid.



The equation to the cone is $x^2 + y^2 = e^2\,z^2$, (468) and that to the paraboloid, $y^2 + z^2 = p\,x$ (469); hence the projection on $x\,z$ is $x^2 + p\,x = (1 + e^2)\,z^2$, which is an hyperbola, whose axes are p and $\dfrac{p}{\sqrt{e^2 + 1}}$. (157).

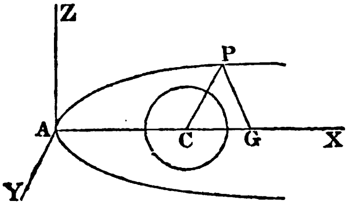
Again, $x^2 + y^2 = e^2 (p\,x - y^2)$ $\therefore$ $(1 + e^2)\,y^2 = e^2\,p\,x - x^2$; hence the projection on $x\,y$ is an ellipse, whose vertex is A and axes $e^2\,p$ and $\dfrac{e^2\,p}{\sqrt{1 + e^2}}$ (103).

The equation to the projection on $y\,z$ is $(y^2 + z^2)^2 + p^2\,y^2 = e^2\,p^2\,z^2$; this is the equation to a Lemniscata, and becomes the Lemniscata of Bernouilli, when $e = 1$, that is, when the cone is right-angled (314).

532. To find the curve of intersection of two surfaces, we have eliminated the variables separately, and thus obtained the equations to the projections on the co-ordinate planes; conversely, by combining these last equations either by addition or multiplication, &c., so as to have an equation between the three variables, we may obtain the surface on which the curve of double curvature may be described. This surface does not at all define the curve of double curvature; since an infinite number of curves may be traced on this individual surface, to all of which the general equation to the surface belongs.

The results of the above combination are often interesting. For example: Let the curve be the intersection of a parabolic cylinder on $x\,y$, with a circular cylinder on $x\,z$, the origin being the vertex of the parabola, and the centre of the circle being in the axis of the parabola, which is also the axis of x.

Let $y^2 = 2\,p\,x$ be the equation to the parabola A P on $x\,y$,
$(x - a)^2 + z^2 = r^2$.... circle on $x\,z$,
Combining these equations by addition,
$(x - a)^2 - 2\,p\,x + y^2 + z^2 = r^2$,
or $(x - a - p)^2 + y^2 + z^2 = r^2 + p^2 + 2\,a\,p$.



Which is the equation to a sphere whose centre is at a distance A G $= a + p$, measured from A along A X. Now, p is the subnormal C G to the point P of the parabola, P C being the ordinate at C (242); hence all the points of the curve of double curvature are on the surface of a sphere whose centre is at the extremity of the subnormal of a point in the parabola, the ordinate of which point passes through the centre of the given circle.

533. The intersections of surfaces are not always curves of double curvature, but often they are plane curves. We proceed, then, to show how plane curves may be detected, and their equations determined.

Whenever we obtain a straight line for a projection, the curve cannot be one of double curvature.

Ex. Let the curve be the intersection of two parabolic cylinders, whose equations are

$$x^2 = a\,z$$
$$b\,y = x^2.$$

Eliminating x, we have $b\,y = a\,z$, hence the projection on $y\,z$ is a straight line; and as no projection of a curve of double curvature can be a straight line, it follows that the curve of intersection is a plane curve.

534. Again, If we can so combine the equations to the projections as to produce the general equation to a plane, the curve, which is necessarily traced on that plane, is itself a plane curve. For example: let the curve

arise from the intersection of two parabolic cylinders, whose equations are

$$x^2 = a\,z$$
$$b\,y = x^2 + c\,x.$$

In the second equation, substituting $a\,z$ for x^2, we obtain

$$b\,y = a\,z + c\,x;$$

which equation belonging to a plane, the curve is a plane curve.

535. There is another and more general method of detecting plane curves. From the two equations to the surfaces eliminate one of the variables, as z, for example, we obtain an equation $F(x, y) = 0$.

Now, if the curve be plane, it may arise from the intersection of either of the surfaces with a plane whose equation is $z = m\,x + n\,y + p$; eliminate z between this equation to the plane and that to one of the surfaces, the result is $f(x, y) = 0$, which must be identical with $F(x, y) = 0$; therefore, comparing $F(x, y) = 0$, with $f(x, y) = 0$, we may obtain various equations to determine m, n, and p; which values of m, n, and p must satisfy all the equations in which these quantities appear; if not, the curve is one of double curvature.

For example; take the intersection of a sphere and cylinder, art. 530.

The equation to the Sphere is $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = a^2$ (1)
................Cylinder $(x - c)^2 + y^2 = b^2$ (2)
................Plane $z = m\,x + n\,y + p$ (3)

Eliminating z between (1) and (3), we have $f(x, y) = 0$

$$(m^2+1)\,x^2 + (n^2+1)\,y^2 + 2\,m\,n\,x\,y + 2\,m\,p\,x + 2\,n\,p\,y + p^2 - a^2 = 0 \quad (4)$$

Comparing (2) and (4), we have $m = 0$, $n = 0$ from the co-efficients of x^2 and y^2; but the condition of $m = 0$ destroys the coefficient of x in (4); and thereby shows that (4) cannot be made identical with (2). The curve is therefore a curve of double curvature.

But let the equation to the cylinder be $x^2 + y^2 = b^2$, then $m = 0$ and $n = 0$ render (4) and (2) identical; therefore the curve is a plane curve, situated in a plane, whose equation is $z = \sqrt{a^2 - b^2}$; this is clear, also, from geometrical considerations.

536. To find the curve represented by the equations

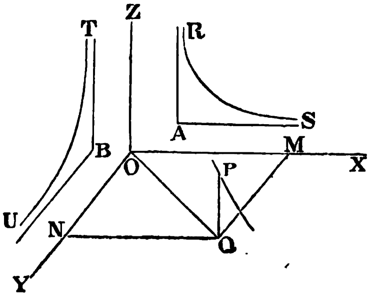
$$\frac{a}{x} + \frac{c}{z} = 1,\ \frac{b}{y} + \frac{c}{z} = 1.$$

These equations, taken separately, belong to two right hyperbolic cylinders; one with the base in $x\,z$, and the other in $y\,z$. (209, Ex. 3.)

R S is the hyperbola on $x\,z$, its centre being at A; T U is the hyperbola on $y\,z$, its centre being at B.

Also, $\frac{a}{x} = \frac{b}{y}$, or $y = \frac{b}{a}\,x$.

Hence the projection of the intersection of the above cylinders on $x\,y$ is a straight line O Q, and therefore the curve is a plane curve, situated in the plane Z O Q, perpendicular to $x\,y$.



537. As we cannot have a very clear notion of the curve itself, merely from the idea of the two hyperbolic cylinders, we shall find the equation to the curve in the plane Z O Q; that is, in its own plane.

Let P be any point in the curve; O M $= x$, M Q $= y$, P Q $= z$. Then, in order to find the relation between O Q ($= u$) and Q P ($= z$), we shall express O M and O N in terms of O Q, and substitute in the given equations.

The equation to O Q is $y = \frac{b}{a} x = x \tan.\theta$ (if $\frac{b}{a} = \tan.\theta$),

$\therefore$ O M = O Q $\cos.\theta$, and O N = O Q $\sin.\theta$.

Hence the equation $\frac{a}{x} + \frac{c}{z} = 1$ becomes $\frac{a}{u\cos.\theta} + \frac{c}{z} = 1$,

and the equation $\frac{b}{y} + \frac{c}{z} = 1$ becomes $\frac{b}{u\sin.\theta} + \frac{c}{z} = 1$.

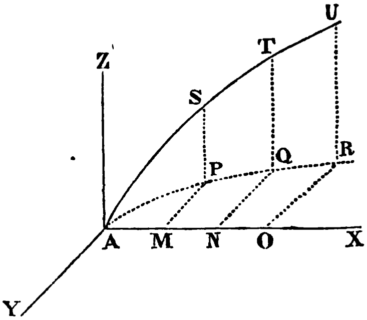
Since $b = a\tan.\theta$, or $b\cos.\theta = a\sin.\theta$, these two equations are the same, and either of them belongs to the required curve; hence the curve is an hyperbola, whose equation referred to its centre is

$$u\,z = \frac{a\,c}{\cos.\theta} = \frac{b\,c}{\sin.\theta}. \quad (209)$$

538. To describe a curve of double curvature by points

Let $f(x, y) = 0$, and $\phi(x, z) = 0$, be two of its projections.

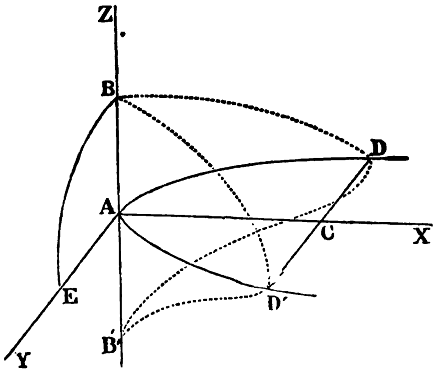
Upon $x\,y$ trace the curve A P Q R, whose equation is $f(x, y) = 0$.



For any value of x, as A M, we obtain a corresponding value M P of y; from $\phi(x, z) = 0$, we can also obtain a corresponding value of z. From P draw P S perpendicular to $x\,y$, and equal to this value of z; then S is a point in the curve. By repeating this process we may obtain any number of points S T U, &c., in the curve.

It is evident, that if any value given to x or y renders z imaginary, no part of the curve can be constructed corresponding to such values of x or y. Also, that if z be negative, P S must be drawn below the plane $x\,y$.

539. Ex. 1. Let the curve arise from the intersection of a parabolic cylinder on $x\,y$, and a circular cylinder on $y\,z$, the axes perpendicular to each other; and the vertex of the parabola together with the centre of the circle at the origin of co-ordinates.



Let $y^2 = a\,x$ be the equation to the parabola D A D′,

$y^2 + z^2 = a^2$ .... circle E B,

∴ $z^2 + a\,x = a^2$ is a parabola on $x\,z$.

Let A B $= a$, A C $= a$, and let the ordinate C D $= a$.

To trace the curve, we have the three equations on the co-ordinate planes,

$$z = \pm\sqrt{a\,(a - x)}$$

$$z = \pm\sqrt{a^2 - y^2},$$

$$y = \pm\sqrt{a\,x}.$$

If $x = 0$, $y = 0$, and $z = a$, ∴ the curve passes through B; as x increases, y increases, and z diminishes;

When $x = a$, $y = a$, and $z = 0$, therefore the curve decreases in altitude from B down to meet the parabola in D. This gives the dotted branch BD.

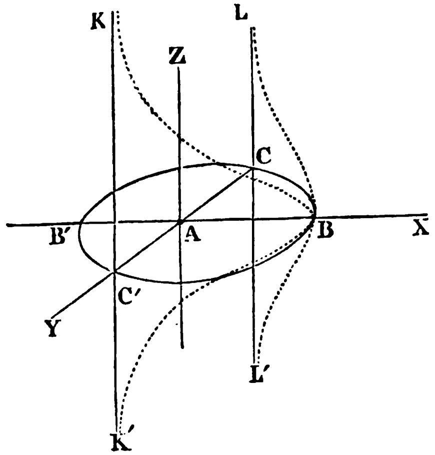
If x is greater than a, z is imaginary; therefore the curve does not extend beyond D.

But since $z = \pm\sqrt{a\,(a-x)}$ there is another ordinate corresponding to every value of x between o and a; hence there is another branch, equal and opposite to B D, but below the plane $x\,y$. This is represented by D B′.

Again, since when y is negative, the values of z do not change, there is another arc, B D′ B′, represented by the double dotted line, which is exactly similar to B D B′.

Therefore, the curve is composed of four parts, B D, D B′, B D′, and D′ B′, equal to one another, and described upon the surface of the parabolic cylinder, whose base is D A D′. These branches form altogether a figure something like that of an ellipse, of which the plane is bent to coincide with the cylinder.

540. Ex. 2. Let the circle, whose equation is $x^2 + y^2 = a^2$, be the projection of the curve of double curvature on $x\,y$; and the curve, of which the equation is $a^2\,y^2 = a^2\,z^2 - y^2\,z^2$, be the projection on $y\,z$, to trace the curve.



Let B C B′ C′ be the circle on $x\ y$ whose equation is $x^2 + y^2 = a^2$; then the equation on $y\ z$ being $a^2 y^2 = a^2 z^2 - y^2 z^2$, the equation on $x\ z$ is $x^2 z^2 = a^4 - a^2 x^2$.

$$\therefore z = \pm \frac{a}{x}\sqrt{a^2 - x^2},$$

$$\text{or } z = \pm \frac{a\,y}{\sqrt{a^2 - y^2}},$$

$$\text{and } y = \pm \sqrt{a^2 - x^2}.$$

If $x = 0$, $y = a$, $z =$ infinity, therefore the vertical line C L through C is an asymptote to the curve. As x increases, y decreases, and z decreases, therefore the curve approaches the plane of $x\ y$. If $x = a$, $y = o$, $z = o$, therefore the curve passes through B. If x is greater than a, y and z are each impossible, therefore no part of the curve is beyond B: for any value of y there are two of z, therefore for the values of y in the quadrant A C B, there are two equal and opposite branches, L B, B L′.

Similarly there are two other equal branches, K B, B K′, for the quadrant B A C′; and as the same values of y and z recur for x negative, there are four other branches equal and opposite to those already drawn, which correspond to the semicircle C B′ C′, and which proceed from B′.

These two examples are taken from Clairaut's Treatise on Curves of Double Curvature; a work containing numerous examples and many excellent remarks on this subject.

Printed by W. Clowes, Duke Street, Lambeth.

USEFUL BOOKS ON THIS BRANCH OF SCIENCE.

Agnesi.—Analytical Institutions. Trans. London, 1801.
Biot.—Essai de Géométrie Analytique. Paris, 1813.
Bourcharlat.—Théorie des Courbes et des Surfaces. Paris, 1810.
Bourdon.—Application de l'Algèbre à la Géométrie. Paris, 1825.
Clairaut.—Recherches sur les Courbes à double Courbure. Paris, 1731.
Cramer.—Introduction à l'Analyse des Lignes Courbes. Genève, 1750.
Francœur.—Course of Pure Mathematics. Trans. Cambridge, 1830.
Garnier.—Géométrie Analytique. Paris, 1813.
Gua.—Usage de l'Analyse de Descartes. Paris, 1740.
Hamilton.—Principles of Analytical Geometry. Cambridge, 1826.
Hamilton.—Analytical System of Conic Sections. Cambridge, 1830.
Hymers.—Treatise on Analytical Geometry of three Dimensions. Cambridge, 1830.
Lacroix.—Traité Elémentaire de Trigonométrie, &c. Paris, 1810.
Lardner.—System of Algebraical Geometry. London, 1823.
Lefebvre de Fourcy.—Leçons de Géométrie Analytique. Paris, 1827.
Monge.—Application de l'Analyse à la Géométrie. Paris, 1809.
Newton.—Arithmetica Universalis. Enumeratio linearum tertii ordinis. Vol. i. Horsley, ed. London, 1779.
Peacock.—Examples on the Differential and Integral Calculus. Cambridge, 1820.
Puissant.—Recueil de Propositions de Géométrie. Paris, 1824.
Reynaud.—Traité d'Application de l'Algèbre à la Géométrie. Paris, 1819.
Stirling.—Lineæ tertii ordinis Newtonianæ. London, 1717.
The Elements of Curves. Oxford, 1828.
Young.—Elements of Analytical Geometry. London, 1830.

Cambridge Philosophical Transactions.
Encyclopædia Metropolitana; arts. Conic Sections; Analytical Geometry.
Annales des Mathématiques, par J. D. Gergonne. Nismes.
Journal de l'Ecole Polytéchnique.
Correspondance sur l'Ecole Polytéchnique.
Journal für die reine und angewandte Mathematic, von A. L. Crelle. Berlin.

COMMITTEE.

Chairman—The Right Hon. LORD BROUGHAM, F.R.S., Memb. Nat. Inst. of France.
Vice-Chairman—The Right Hon. Lord J. RUSSELL, M.P.
Treasurer—WILLIAM TOOKE, Esq., M.P., F.R.S.

W. Allen, Esq., F.R. & R.A.S.
Capt. F. Beaufort, R.N., F.R., and R.A.S., Hydrographer to the Admiralty.
Sir C. Bell, F.R.S.L. & E.
G. Burrows, M.D.
C. Hay Cameron, Esq.
The Rt. Rev. the Bishop of Chichester, D.D.
William Coulson, Esq.
R. D. Craig, Esq.
Wm. Crawford, Esq.
J. Fred. Daniell, Esq., F.R.S.
H. T. Delabeche, Esq., V.P. Geol. Soc.
T. Drummond, Esq., R.E., F.R.A.S.
The Right Hon. Lord Denman.
Right Hon. Viscount Ebrington, M.P.
C. L. Eastlake, Esq., R.A.
T. F. Ellis, Esq., A.M., F.R.A.S.
Sir Henry Ellis, F.R.S., Prin. Lib. Brit. Mus.
John Elliotson, M.D., F.R.S.
Thomas Falconer, Esq.
I. L. Goldsmid, Esq., F.R. and R.A.S.
B. Gompertz, Esq., F.R. and R.A.S.
G. B. Greenough, Esq., F.R. & L.S.
H. Hallam, Esq., F.R.S., M.A.
M. D. Hill, Esq., M.P.,
Rowland Hill, Esq., F.R.A.S.
Edwin Hill, Esq.
The Right Hon. Sir J. C. Hobhouse, Bart. M.P.
David Jardine, Esq., M.A.
Henry B. Ker, Esq.
The Rt. Hon. the Earl of Kerry.
Thos. Hewitt Key, Esq., M.A.
George C. Lewis, Esq., M.A.
James Loch, Esq., M.P., F.G.S.
George Long, Esq., M.A.
J. W. Lubbock, Esq., F.R., R.A., and L.S.S.
H. Malden, Esq., M.A.
A. T. Malkin, Esq. M.A.
James Manning, Esq.
J. Herman Merivale, Esq., M.A., F.A.S.
James Mill, Esq.
W. H. Ord, Esq. M.P.
The Right Hon. Sir H. Parnell, Bart., M.P.
Dr. Roget, Sec. R.S., F.R.A.S.
Sir M. A. Shee, P.R.A., F.R.S.
J. Abel Smith, Esq., M.P.
Rt. Hon. Earl Spencer.
John Taylor, Esq., F.R.S.
Dr. A. T. Thomson, F.L.S.
H. Waymouth, Esq.
J. Whishaw, Esq., M.A., F.R.S.
John Wood, Esq.
John Wrottesley, Esq., M.A. F.R.A.S.

THOMAS COATES, Esq., Secretary, 59, Lincoln's Inn Fields.

LOCAL COMMITTEES.

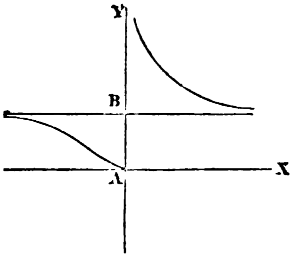
Anglesea—Rev. E. Williams.
Rev. W. Johnson.
Mr. Miller.
Ashburton—J. F. Kingston, Esq.
Barnstaple— — Bancraft, Esq.
William Gribble, Esq.
Belfast—Dr. Drummond.
Bilston—Rev. W. Leigh.
Birmingham—Rev. John Corrie, F.R.S., *Chairman*.
Paul M. James, Esq., *Treasurer*.
Bridport—Wm. Forster, Esq.
James Williams, Esq.
Bristol—J. N. Sanders, Esq., *Chairman*.
J. Reynolds, Esq., *Treas.*
J. B. Estlin, Esq., F.L.S., *Sec.*
Calcutta—Lord Wm. Bentinck.
Sir Edward Ryan.
James Young, Esq.
Cambridge—Rev. James Bowstead, M.A.
Rev. Prof. Henslow, M.A., F.L.S. & G.S.
Rev. Leonard Jenyns, M.A., F.L.S.
Rev. John Lodge, M.A.
R. W. Rothman, Esq., M.A., F.R.A.S. and G.S.
Rev. Geo. Peacock, M.A., F.R.S. & G.S.
Rev. Prof. Sedgwick, M.A., F.R.S. & G.S.
Professor Smyth, M.A.
Rev. C. Thirlwall, M.A.
Canterbury—Alex. B. Higgins, Esq.
John Brent, Esq.
Dr. Harry Wm. Carter, M.D., F.R.S.E.
William Masters, Esq.
Canton—J. F. Davis, Esq., F.R.S.
Cardigan—The Rev. J. Blackwell.
Carnarvon—R. A. Poole, Esq.
William Roberts, Esq.
Chester—Hayes Lyon, Esq.
Henry Potts, Esq.
Chichester—Dr. Forbes, F.R.S.
C. C. Dendy, Esq.
Coventry—Ar. Gregory, Esq.
Corfu—John Crawford, Esq.
Mr. Plato Petrides.
Denbigh—John Madocks, Esq.
Thos. Evans, Esq.
Derby—Joseph Strutt, Esq.
Edward Strutt, Esq., M.P.
Devonport and Stonehouse—
John Cole, Esq.
— Norman, Esq.
Lt.-Col. C. Hamilton Smith, F.R.S.
Etruria—Jos. Wedgwood, Esq.
Exeter—J. Tyrrell, Esq.
John Milford, Esq. (*Coaver.*)
Glasgow—K. Finlay, Esq.
Professor Mylne.
Alexander McGrigor, Esq.
Charles Tennant, Esq.
James Cowper, Esq.
Glamorganshire—
Dr. Malkin, Cowbridge.
W. Williams, Esq., Aberpergwm.
Guernsey—F. C. Lukis, Esq.
Hull—J. C. Parker, Esq.
Keighley, Yorkshire—Rev. T. Dury, M.A.
Launceston—Rev. J. Barfitt.
Leamington Spa—Dr. Loudon, M.D.
Leeds—J. Marshall, Esq.
Lewes—J. W. Woollgar, Esq.
Liverpool Local Association—
W. W. Currie, Esq., *Chairman*.
J. Mulleneux, Esq., *Treas.*
Rev. W. Shepherd.
J. Ashton Yates, Esq.
Ludlow—T. A. Knight, Esq.
Maidenhead—R. Goolden, Esq., F.L.S.
Maidstone—
Clement T. Smyth, Esq.
John Case, Esq.
Malmesbury—B. C. Thomas, Esq.
Manchester Local Association—
G. W. Wood, Esq., *Chairman*.
Benj. Heywood, Esq., *Treas.*
T. W. Winstanley, Esq., *Hon. Sec.*
Sir G. Philips, Bart., M.P.
Benj. Gott, Esq.
Merthyr Tydvil—J. J. Guest, Esq., M.P.
Minchinhampton—John Ball, Esq.
Monmouth—J. H. Moggridge, Esq.
Neath—John Rowland, Esq.
Newcastle—Rev. W. Turner.
Newport, Isle of Wight—
Abr. Clarke, Esq.
T. Cooke, Jun., Esq.
R. G. Kirkpatrick, Esq.
Newport Pagnell—J. Millar, Esq.
Newtown, Montgomeryshire—
William Pugh, Esq.
Norwich—Right Hon. Lord Suffield.
Rich. Bacon, Esq.
Oxford—Dr. Daubeny, F.R.S., Professor of Chemistry.
Rev. Professor Powell.
Rev. John Jordan, B.A.
Rev. R. Walker, M.A., F.R.S.
E. W. Head, Esq., M.A.
W. R. Browne, Esq., M.A.
Penang—Sir B. H. Malkin.
Plymouth—H. Woollcombe, Esq., F.A.S., *Chairman*.
Snow Harris, Esq., F.R.S.
E. Moore, M.D., F.L.S., *Sec.*
G. Wightwick, Esq.
Presteign—Dr. A. W. Davies, M.D.
Ripon—Rev. H. P. Hamilton, A.M., F.R.S. and G.S.
Rev. P. Ewart, M.A.
Ruthen—Rev. the Warden of.
Humphreys Jones, Esq.
Ryde, Isle of Wight—
Sir Rd. Simeon, Bart., M.P.
Sheffield—J. H. Abraham, Esq.
Shepton Mallet—
G. F. Burroughs, Esq.
Shrewsbury—R. A. Slaney, Esq., M.P.
South Petherton—
J. Nicholetts, Esq.
St. *Asaph*—Rev. Geo. Strong.
Stockport—Henry Marsland, Esq., *Treasurer*.
Henry Coppock, Esq., *Sec.*
Tavistock—Rev. W. Evans.
John Rundle, Esq.
Truro—Richard Taunton, M.D.
Henry Sewell Stokes, Esq.
Tunbridge Wells—Dr. Yeats, M.D.
Warwick—Dr. Conolly.
The Rev. W. Field, (*Leam.*)
Waterford—Sir John Newport, Bart.
Wolverhampton—J. Pearson, Esq.
Worcester—Dr. Corbet, M.D.
Dr. Hastings, M.D.
C. H. Hebb, Esq.
Wrexham—Thomas Edgworth, Esq.
J. E. Bowman, Esq., F.L.S., *Treasurer*.
Major William Lloyd.
Yarmouth—C. E. Rumbold, Esq., M.P.
Dawson Turner, Esq.
York—Rev. J. Kenrick, A.M.
J. Phillips, Esq. F.R.S., F.G.S.

ERRATA.

Page 7, line 1, read Let $x = \sqrt{3} = \sqrt{2 + 1}$. In the last figure let A B, B C, and
C D each be equal to the linear unit, then A D $= \sqrt{3}$.
40.....2, read $\therefore y' = \pm \frac{r}{\sqrt{1 + a^2}}$.
40.....3, for $\frac{r^2}{y}$ read $\frac{r^2}{y'}$.
40....17, for 24 read 25.
48....12, for y^3 read y^2.
110....24, for e read c.
111....17, for $\tan. \theta . \tan. = \frac{c}{a}$, read $\tan. \theta . \tan. \theta' = \frac{c}{a}$.
112....20, for $\frac{y^2}{b^3}$ read $\frac{y^2}{b^2}$.
114....18, for conjugate read semi-conjugate.
123....30, for $x' + m \mathrm{S} = \mathrm{P}$, read $x' + m = \mathrm{S\,P}$.
153, in the table, column 7, insert c.
190, line 5 from bottom, for $3\,a$, read $3\,a^2$.
209, line 10, read $\cos. l\,x \ \cos. l_1\,x + \cos. l\,y \ \cos. l_1\,y$.
217, line 13, for (2) read (1).
221, line 27, read $\cos. \theta = \frac{x\,x_1 + y\,y_1 + z\,z_1 + \&c.}{r\,r_1} =$
224, line 10, for 397 read 402.
247, line 3, $\therefore (x - x_1)^2 + (y - y_1)^2 = r^2$;
and if the axis coincide with A Z, $x^2 + y^2 = r^2, z = 0$;
249, line 1, for $r - c$ read z, and for c read $z - c$.

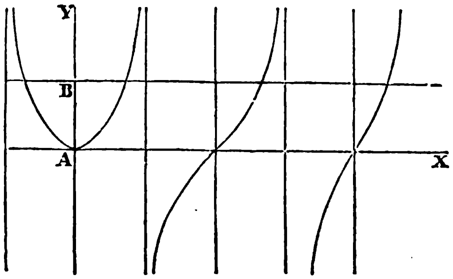
ERRATA IN THE FIGURES.

Art. 352. $y = a^{\frac{1}{x}}$



Art. 353. $y = x^{x}$. See the figure in the same page just above the Art. 353; the letter B should be at the point where the upper curve meets A Y.

Art. 355 $y = x \tan. x$



Art. 363. The involute of the circle.